
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 00862464 5

HIGH SCHOOL

FRENCH GRAMMAR

AND

READER.

BY

W. H. FRASER, B.A.,

Associate-Professor of Italian and Spanish, University of Toronto,

AND

J. SQUAIR, B.A.,

Associate-Professor of French, University College, Toronto.

Authorized by the Education Department of Ontario.

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK CO., LIMITED.

PREFACE.

The present volume has been compiled to meet the requirements of the various grades of High School work in French.

Part I. consists of a series of lessons on the elements of grammar, and includes copious exercises. An effort has been made to render the exercises interesting in themselves by basing them, for the most part, on connected pieces of French dealing with topics of every-day life Considerable prominence has been given to oral practice.

Part II. consists of a systematic grammar of modern French. A series of exercises has been added, dealing with the various topics treated in the text. It was thought best to group these exercises together at the end of this part, in order not to impair the usefulness of the grammar as a book of reference by inserting the exercises immediately after the paragraphs to which they refer. Each exercise is furnished with section references, which will enable the pupil to turn readily to the theory upon which the exercises are based.

The Reader is made up of interesting selections, for the most part complete in themselves, and affording a considerable range as to topic, vocabulary, and idiom. The exercises which have been inserted at the end of the Reader are based on the idiom and vocabulary of the text, and are intended to give practice in the reproduction in French of the substance of the selections.

A word of explanation is required as to the indication of the pronunciation. The system of transcription employed is that of the *Association Phonétique Internationale*, and in the case of doubtful or disputed pronunciations the authority of the *Dictionnaire Phonétique* of Michaelis and Passy has been followed. In order not to confuse the beginner with too minute distinctions, "half long" vowels have not been indicated, and the same rule has been observed for the most part with regard to such vowels in the stressed syllable as are optionally long or short.

The authors take this opportunity of expressing their thanks to Mr. J. H. Cameron, M.A., and Monsieur St. Elme de Champ, of University College, for numerous and valuable suggestions, and also to many modern language teachers throughout Ontario, whose practical advice and criticism have been of very great assistance.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

PART II.

FRENCH READER.

NOTE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

By a decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction, dated February 26th, 1901, certain deviations from commonly accepted rules of grammar are permitted at all examinations held under his control. In the Appendix (see last page of this volume) will be found a reference list explaining the bearing of these deviations upon the various sections of the Grammar affected thereby.

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

PHONETIC INTRODUCTION.

1. General Distinctions. The pronunciation will be explained, as far as possible, by comparison with English sounds, but it must never be forgotten that the sounds of two languages rarely correspond. Important general distinctions between English and French are the following :—

1. English has strong stress (§ 7) and comparatively weak action of the organs in articulation.

2. French has weak stress, while the action of the organs in articulation is very energetic.

3. Hence, French sounds, both vowels and consonants, are almost all 'narrow,' *i.e.*, uttered with tenseness of the organs concerned in their articulation. (To understand 'narrow' and 'wide,' compare the narrow sound of **ea** in '**seat**' with the wide sound of **i** in 'sit.')

4. Tongue and lip positions for French vowels are more definite, and more promptly taken, than in English. Lip-rounding (as in 'who,' 'no,' 'law') and lip-retraction (as in 'let,' 'hat') are much more definite and energetic in forming French vowels.

5. The tongue, both for vowels and consonants, is, in general, either further advanced or further retracted than in forming English sounds requiring tongue action.

6. English long vowels (like **a** in 'fate') are diphthongal (especially as pronounced in the South of England), while French vowels, whether long or short, are uniform throughout their utterance.

7. The nasal vowels of French are entirely foreign to English. They are formed by allowing the soft palate to hang freely, as in ordinary breathing, thus causing the air to escape through both nose and mouth at once. If, for example, the **a** of 'father' be uttered with the soft palate hanging freely, the resulting sound will be approximately that of the nasal [ɑ̃] in 'tante' [tɑ̃ːt]. The position of the soft

palate in forming this sound may be readily observed with a mirror. It must be carefully noted that there is absolutely no sound of **n**, **m**, or **ng**, in French nasal vowels, and hence that great care must be taken neither to raise the tongue nor close the lips until the sound is complete.

2. Sounds. The French language has thirty-seven sounds, exclusive of minor distinctions. The orthography, like that of English, is irregular and inconsistent. Hence, to avoid confusion in indicating the pronunciation, we shall employ a phonetic alphabet (that of the 'Association Phonétique Internationale'), in which each sound is represented by but one symbol, and each symbol has but one sound.

3. Table of Symbols. In the following table, the examples are in ordinary orthography, the heavy type indicates the sounds which correspond to the symbols, and the phonetic transcription is given within brackets :—

SYMBOLS.	EXAMPLES.	SYMBOLS.	EXAMPLES.
i	ni, vive [ni, viːv].	b	beau, robe [bo, rɔb].
y	pu, muse [py, myːz].	d	dame, fade [dam, fad].
e	été [ete].	f	fort, neuf [fɔːr, nœf].
ø	creux, creuse [krø, krøːz].	g	gant, dogue [gɑ̃, dɔg].
ə	le [lə].	h	aha ! [ɑ(h)ɑ].
ɛ	près, père [prɛ, pɛːr].	k	car, roc, [kar, rɔk].
ɛ̃	fin, prince [fɛ̃, prɛ̃ːs].	l	long, seul [lɔ̃, sœl].
œ	neuf, neuve [nœf, nœːv].	m	mot, dame [mo, dam].
œ̃	un, humble [œ̃, œ̃ːbl].	n	ni, âne [ni, ɑːn].
a	patte, part [pat, paːr].	ɲ	agneau, digne [aɲo, diɲ].
ɑ	pas, passe [pɑ, pɑːs].	p	pas, tape [pɑ, tap].
ɑ̃	tant, tante [tɑ̃, tɑ̃ːt].	r	drap, par [dra, par].
ɔ	note, tort [nɔt, tɔːr].	s	si, pense [si, pɑ̃ːs].
ɔ̃	rond, ronde [rɔ̃, rɔ̃ːd].	ʃ	chou, lâche [ʃu, lɑːʃ].
o	sot, chose [so, ʃoːz].	t	tas, patte [tɑ, pat].
u	tout, tour [tu, tuːr].	v	vin, cave [vɛ̃, kaːv].
j	viande [vjɑ̃ːd].	z	zone, rose [zoːn, roːz].
ɥ	lui [lɥi].	ʒ	je, rouge [ʒə, ruːʒ].
w	oui [wi].	ː	sign of length.

4. The Alphabet. The letters of the alphabet, with their French names, are as follows :—

a	a [ɑ].	j	ji [ʒi].	s	esse [ɛs].
b	bé [be].	k	ka [ka].	t	té [te].
c	cé [se].	l	elle [ɛl].	u	u [y].
d	dé [de].	m	emme [ɛm].	v	vé [ve].
e	é [e].	n	enne [ɛn].	w	double vé [dubl ve].
f	effe [ɛf].	o	o [o].	x	iks [iks].
g	gé [ʒe].	p	pé [pe].	y	i grec [i grɛk].
h	ache [aʃ].	q	ku [ky].	z	zède [zɛd].
i	i [i].	r	erre [ɛr].		

Note.—Words are commonly spelled by naming their letters, as above, together with the other orthographic signs, if any.

5. Other Orthographic Signs. In addition to the letters of the alphabet, the following signs are used :—

1. The acute accent ˊ, Fr. 'accent aigu' [aksɑ̃t egy], *e.g.*, l'été, l'Écosse.

2. The grave accent ˋ, Fr. 'accent grave' [aksɑ̃ graːv], *e.g.*, voilà, père, où.

3. The circumflex accent ^, Fr. 'accent circonflexe' [aksɑ̃ sirkɔ̃flɛks], *e.g.*, âne, tête, île, hôte, flûte.

Observe: None of the above accent marks serve to denote stress (§ 7).

4. The cedilla, Fr. 'cédille' [sediːj], used under **c** to give it the sound of [s], before **a**, **o**, **u** (§ 17, 13), *e.g.*, façade, leçon, commençait, commençons, reçûmes, reçu.

5. The diæresis ¨, Fr. 'tréma' [trema], shows that the vowel bearing it is divided in pronunciation from the preceding vowel, *e.g.*, Noël, naïf.

6. The apostrophe, Fr. 'apostrophe' [apɔstrɔf], shows omission of final vowel before initial vowel sound, *e.g.*, l'amie (= la amie), l'ami (=le ami), l'homme (=le homme), s'il (=si il), § 19.

7. The hyphen, Fr. 'trait d'union' [trɛ d ynjɔ̃], used as in English.

6. Syllabication.

1. A single consonant sound between vowel sounds always belongs to the following syllable.

Ex.: Ma-rie, in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té, a-che-ter.

2. Two consonants, of which the second is **l** or **r** (but not the combinations **rl** or **lr**), similarly both belong to the following syllable.

ta-bleau, é-cri-vain.

3. Other combinations of consonants representing two or more sounds are divided.

Ex.: par-ler, per-dre, es-ca-lier.

N.B.—Great care should be taken to avoid the consonantal ending of syllables, so frequent in English. Compare French 'ci-té,' 'ta-bleau,' with English 'cit-y,' 'tab-leau.'

7. Stress.

'Stress' is the force with which a syllable is uttered as compared with other syllables in the same group. In French, the syllables are uttered with almost equal force, a very slight stress falling on the last syllable of a word of two or more syllables, or, on the last but one, if the last vowel of the word is [ə].

Ex.: Che-**val**, par-**ler**, par-**lai**, **per**-dre, cré-di-bi-li-**té** (compare the strong stress of English cred-i-**bil**-it-y).

Note.—In connected discourse the rule above stated varies considerably, but a full treatment of the subject would exceed the limits of an elementary work. The safest practice for the beginner is to pronounce all syllables with almost equal force. It should be remembered that accent-marks have nothing to do with stress, and that all vowels except [ə], see § 19, whether stressed or unstressed, have their full value, never being slurred over as in English.

8. Vowel Quantity. The most important general rules are :—

1. Final vowel sounds (including nasals) are regularly short, *e.g.*, fini [fini], vie [vi], loue [lu], parlé [parle], rideau [rido], mais [mɛ], donner [done], enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃], parlerons [parlərɔ̃].

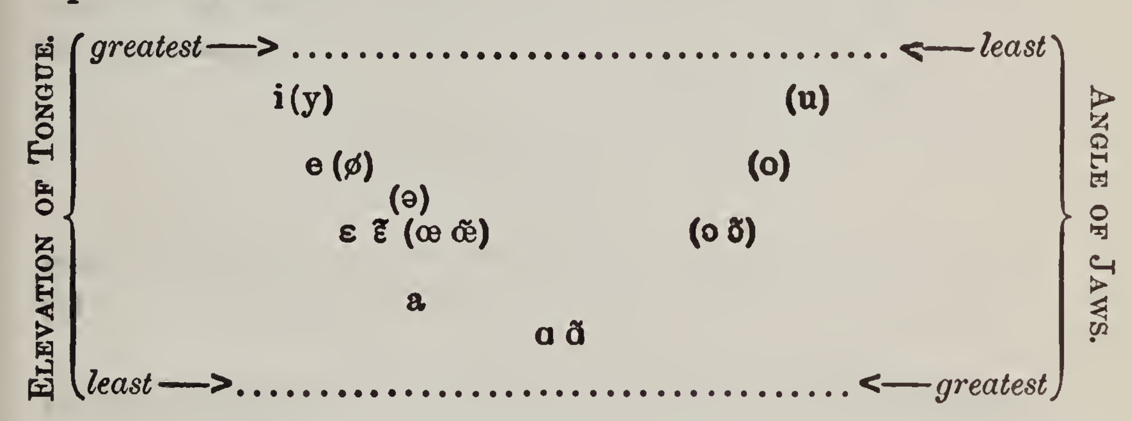
2. Stressed vowels are long before the sounds [v], [z], [ʒ], [j], [r final], *e.g.*, rive [riːv], ruse [ryːz], rouge [ruːʒ], feuille [fœːj], faire [fɛːr].

3. Of stressed vowels standing before other consonant sounds, nasals are long, *e.g.*, prince [prɛ̃ːs]; [o], [ø], long, *e.g.*, faute [foːt], meule [møːl]; [ɑ], long (almost always), *e.g.*, passe [pɑːs]; [ɛ], long or short, *e.g.*, reine [rɛːn], renne [rɛn]; other vowels regularly short, *e.g.*, cap [kap], poche [pɔʃ], koupe [kup], pipe [pip], seul [sœl], lune [lyn].

Note.—It is possible to distinguish also between 'long' and 'half long' vowels, but it has been thought best to omit, in an elementary work, the rules relating to th' distinction, and to indicate 'long' vowels only in the transcriptions.

VOWELS.

9. Tongue Position. The relative position of the tongue for the various vowels may be seen from the following diagram, adapted from Vietor. Rounded vowels are enclosed in parentheses :—



N.B.—In the following descriptions of sounds, the word 'like' means, of course, only 'resembling,' or 'approximately like' (§ 1). The examples given after the word 'also' show the less common orthographical equivalents.

10. i, y.

1. i—Like **ea** in 'seat'; the corners of the mouth retracted as in smiling (§ 1, 4); avoid the sound of **i** in 'sit'; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **ni** [ni], **vive** [viːv]; also, **île** [iːl], **lyre** [liːr].

2. y—Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [i] above; very tense lip-rounding (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3). The sound may be best acquired either by prolonging [i], and at the same time effecting the rounding, or by holding the lips rounded and taking the tongue position of [i].

Ex.: **pu** [py], **muse** [myːz]; also **fût** [fy], **il eut** [il y], **nous eûmes** [nuz ym].

11. e, ø, ə.

1. e—Like the first part of the sound of **a** in 'day,' but with the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **été** [ete]; also, **parler** [parle], **donnai** [done].

2. ø—Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [e], with tense rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, as explained for [y] above, the lip-rounding with the [e] position.

Ex.: creux [krø], creuse [krøːz]; also, **bœufs** [bø].

3. ə—Like English **e** in 'the man,' or **a** in 'Louisa,' but slightly rounded; best acquired by relaxing the tension of the organs required for the production of the [ø] sound.

Ex.: **le** [lə]; also, **monsieur** [məsjø], **faisant** [fəzɑ̃].

12. ɛ ɛ̃, œ, œ̃.

1. ɛ—Like the sound of **e** in 'let,' with the mouth more definitely open and the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: **près** [prɛ], **père** [pɛːr]; also, **fête** [fɛːt], **terre** [tɛːr], **secret** [səkrɛ], **parlais** [parlɛ], **paix** [pɛ], **reine** [rɛːn].

NOTE.—The **e** of a stressed syllable followed by a syllable containing **e** mute has almost always this sound (orthographically denoted by **è**, **ê**, or **e** + double consonant), *e.g.*, je **mène** [mɛn], **tête** [tɛːt], **chère** [ʃɛːr], **j'appelle** [apɛl], **ancienne** [ɑ̃sjɛn]. This principle accounts for the apparent irregularities of certain verbs and adjectives.

2. ɛ̃—The [ɛ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: **fin** [fɛ̃], **prince** [prɛ̃ːs]; also, **faim** [fɛ̃], **sainte** [sɛ̃ːt], **Reims** [rɛ̃ːs], **plein** [plɛ̃], **simple** [sɛ̃ːpl], **symbole** [sɛ̃bɔl], **syntaxe** [sɛ̃taks], **viendrai** [vjɛ̃dre], **soin** [swɛ̃].

3. œ—Has no counterpart in English. It has practically the tongue position of [ɛ], combined with definite rounding of the lips; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, with the [ɛ] position, the rounding described.

Ex.: **neuf** [nœf], **neuve** [nœːv]; also, **cœur** [kœːr], **œil** [œj], **orgueil** [ɔrgœːj].

4. œ̃—The [œ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: **un** [œ̃], **humble** [œ̃ːbl]; also, **à jeun** [a ʒœ̃].

13. a, ɑ, ɑ̃.

1. a—Only very slightly resembles the sound of **a** in 'pat,' which is nearer that of [ɛ]. The [a] sound requires much wider mouth opening than **a** of 'pat,' accompanied by retraction of the lips and lowering

the tongue, though with the point still touching the lower teeth; avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: patte [pat], part [paːr]; also, là [la], femme [fam], moi [mwa], boîte [bwaːt], parlâmes [parlam], parlât [parla].

2. ɑ—Like **a** in 'father'; the mouth well open, the tongue lying flat, and so far retracted that it no longer touches the lower teeth; lips absolutely neutral, *i.e.*, neither rounded nor retracted; avoid especially rounding, as of **a** in 'fall.'

Ex.: pas [pɑ], passe [pɑːs]; also, pâte [pɑːt], roi [rwɑ], poêle [pwɑːl].

3. ɑ̃—The [ɑ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7).

Ex.: tant [tɑ̃], tante [tɑ̃ːt]; also, lampe [lɑ̃ːp], entre [ɑ̃ːtr], membre [mɑ̃ːbr].

14. ɔ, ɔ̃, o.

1. ɔ—Like **o** in 'not,' but with definite bell-like rounding (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: note [nɔt], tort [tɔːr]; also Paul [pɔl], album [albɔm].

2. ɔ̃—The [ɔ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more close.

Ex.: rond [rɔ̃], ronde [rɔ̃ːd]; also tomber [tɔ̃be], comte [kɔ̃ːt].

3. o—Like **o** in 'omen,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: sot [so], chose [ʃoːz], fosse [foːs]; also, côté [kote], côte [koːt], faute [foːt], beauté [bote].

15. u.

1. u—Like **u** in 'rumour,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid diphthongization (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: tout [tu], tour [tuːr]; also, goût [gu], août [u].

CONSONANTS.

16. j, ɥ, w.

When the sounds [i], [y], [u], § 10 and § 15, come before a vowel of stronger stress, they are pronounced with the tongue slightly closer to the palate, and hence assume a consonantal value, indicated by [j], [ɥ], [w] respectively. They are sometimes called semi-vowels.

1. j—Like very brief and narrow **y** in '**yes.**'

Ex.: viande [vjɑ̃ːd]; also, yeux [jø], aïeul [ajœl], fille [fiːj], travailler [travaje], travail [travaj].

2. ɥ—Has no counterpart in English; avoid very carefully the sound of **w** in '**wall**'; may be best acquired by at first substituting [y] for it, and afterward increasing the speed of the utterance and the elevation of the tongue until it can be formed exactly along with what follows.

Ex.: lui [lɥi]; also, nuage [nɥaːʒ], écuelle [ekɥɛl].

3. w—Like very brief and narrow **w** in '**we,**' '**west.**' It is best, however, to proceed from the sound of [u] in the manner described for [ɥ] above.

Ex.: oui [wi]; also, poids [pwɑ], tramway [tramwe].

17. The remaining consonantal sounds can be sufficiently described by noting the differences between their mode of formation and that of the nearest English sounds (see § 1).

1. b—Like **b** in '**barb.**'

Ex.: beau [bo], robe [rɔb], abbé [abe].

2. d—Like **d** in '**did,**' but with the tongue so far advanced that its point, or upper surface, forms a closure with the inner surface of the upper teeth and gums; or the point of the tongue may be thrust against the lower teeth, the upper surface forming a closure with the upper teeth and gums. It must be remembered that in forming English **d** (also **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **z**) the tongue touches at some little distance above the teeth (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: dame [dam], fade [fad], addition [adisjɔ̃].

3. f—Like **f** in '**fat.**'

Ex.: fort [fɔːr], neuf [nœf], difficile [difisil].

4. g—Like **g** in '**go.**'

Ex.: gant [gɑ̃], dogue [dɔg], guerre [gɛːr]; also, second [səgɔ̃].

5. h—In orthography the letter **h** is known as '**h** mute' (Fr. '**h** muette'), or '**h** aspirate' (Fr. '**h** aspirée'), according as it does, or does not, cause elision (§ 19). The learner may regard it, in either case, as absolutely silent.

Ex.: l'homme [l ɔm], le héros [lə ero].

In hiatus, however, a sound resembling, but much weaker than h in 'hat,' is permissible, and is actually used by many Frenchmen.

Ex.: aha ! [aha], le héros [lə hero], fléau [fleho].

6. k—Like k in 'take'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: car [kar], roc [rɔk], accorder [akɔrde]; also, chrétien [kretjɛ̃], cinq [sɛ̃ːk], bouquet [bukɛ], acquérir [akeriːr], kilo [kilo], maxime [maksim].

7. l—Like l in 'law,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: long [lɔ̃], seul [sœl], aller [ale].

8. m—Like m in 'man,' 'dumb.'

Ex.: mot [mo], dame [dam], homme [ɔm].

9. n—Like n in 'not,' 'man,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: ni [ni], âne [aːn], donner [dɔne].

10. ɲ—Somewhat like ny in 'ban-yan,' except that [ɲ] is a single, not a double, sound, and is formed by pressing the middle of the tongue against the hard palate, the tip being usually thrust against the lower teeth.

Ex.: agneau [aɲo], digne [diɲ].

11. p—Like p in 'pan,' 'top'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex. pas [pa], tape [tap], appliquer [aplike].

12. r—Has no English counterpart. It is formed by trilling the tip of the tongue against the upper gums, or even against the upper teeth. This r is called in French 'r linguale.' The tongue must, of course, be well advanced towards the teeth, and not retracted and turned upward, as in our r sound (§ 1, 5). The sound may be advantageously practised at first in combination with d, *e.g.*, dry, drip, drop, drum (as in Scotch or Irish dialect), and afterwards in combinations in which it is less easily pronounced.

Ex.: drap [dra], par [par], torrent [tɔrɑ̃], rond [rɔ̃].

NOTE.—Another r sound (called in French 'r uvulaire'), used especially in Paris and in the large cities and towns, is formed by withdrawing and elevating the root of the tongue so as to cause a trilling of the uvula. This r is usually more difficult for English-speaking people to acquire.

13. s—Like s in 'sea,' 'cease,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: si [si], pense [pɑ̃ːs], casser [kɑse]; also scène [sɛːn], place [plas], façade [fasad], leçon [ləsɔ̃], reçu [rəsy], commençait [kɔmɑ̃sɛ], commençons [kɔmɑ̃sɔ̃], reçûmes [rəsym], portion [pɔrsjɔ̃], soixante [swasɑ̃ːt].

14. ʃ—Like sh in shoe, but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: chou [ʃu], lâche [lɑːʃ], also, schisme [ʃism].

15. t—Like t in 'tall,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: tas [tɑ], patte [pat].

16. v—Like v in 'vine,' 'cave.'

Ex.: vin [vɛ̃], cave [kaːv]; also, wagon [vagɔ̃], neuf heures [nœv œːr].

17. z—Like z in 'zone,' or s in 'rose,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: zone [zoːn], rose [roːz]; also, deux heures, [døz œːr], exact [egzakt].

18. ʒ—Like z in 'azure' or s in 'pleasure,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: je [ʒə], rouge [ruːʒ]; also mangeant [mɑ̃ʒɑ̃], Jean [ʒɑ̃].

18. Liaison. Final consonants are usually silent, but in oral speech, within a group of words closely connected logically, a final consonant (whether usually sounded or not) is regularly sounded, and forms a syllable with the initial vowel sound of the next word. This is called in French 'liaison' = 'linking,' 'joining.'

Ex.: C'est‿un petit‿homme [s‿ɛ-tœ̃-pə-ti-tɔm].

1. A few of the consonants change their sound in *liaison*, thus, final s or x = z, d = t, g = k, f = v, *e.g.*, nos‿amis [no-za-mi], quand‿on parle [kɑ̃-tɔ̃-parl]; the t of et is silent, for examples see p. 12.

2. The n of a nasal is carried on, and the nasal vowel loses its nasality in part, or even wholly, *e.g.*, un bon‿ami [œ̃-bɔ̃-na-mi, *or* œ̃-bɔ-na-mi].

NOTE.—The sounds carried over really belong in pronunciation to the initial syllable of the following word, but to avoid confusion they will be indicated in the transcription with the preceding word, *e.g.*, les‿hommes [lez ɔm, more properly le zɔm].

19. Elision. The letters a, e, i, are entirely silent in certain cases:—

1. The a and e are silent and replaced by apostrophe in le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ne, que (and some of its compounds) before initial vowel

h mute (not, however, **je, ce, le, la** after a verb); so also **i** of **si** before **il(s)**.

Ex.: L'arbre (=le arbre), l'encre (=la encre), j'ai (=je ai), qu'a-t-il (=que a-t-il), jusqu'à (=jusque à), s'il (=si il).

2. In prose the letter **e** is silent at the end of all words (except when **e** is itself the only vowel in the word), silent in the verbal endings -es, -ent, silent within words after a vowel sound, and in the combination **ge** or **je** [ʒ]. In verbs which have stem **g** [ʒ], **g** becomes **ge** [ʒ] before **a** or **o** of an ending, to preserve the [ʒ] sound.

Ex.: rue [ry], donnée [dɔne], rare [raːr], place [plas], ai-je [ɛːʒ], table [tabl], sabre [sɑːbr], prendre [prɑ̃ːdr], tu parles [ty parl], ils parlent [il parl], gaieté [gete], mangeons [mɑ̃ʒɔ̃], Jean [ʒɑ̃].

NOTE.—In ordinary discourse, this sound is usually slighted or wholly omitted in most cases in which consonantal combinations produced by its weakening or elision can be readily pronounced, but beginners will do well to sound it fully, except in the cases above specified. The treatment of the [ə] in poetry is beyond the scope of this work.

20. Punctuation. The same punctuation marks are used in French as in English.

1. Their French names are:

. point.	- trait d'union.	[ ] crochets.
, virgule.	— tiret, or tiret de séparation.	{ accolade.
; point et virgule.		
: deux points.	. . . points suspensifs.	* astérisque.
? point d'interrogation.	" " guillemets.	† croix de renvoi.
! point d'exclamation.	( ) parenthèse.	

2. They are used as in English, but the 'tiret' commonly serves to denote a change of interlocutor.

Ex.: "Qui est là? dis-je.—Personne.—Quoi! personne!—Personne, dit-il."

21. Capitals. The principal differences between French and English in the use of capital letters (Fr. 'lettres majuscules,' 'capitales') may be seen from the following examples:

Un livre canadien écrit en français par un Canadien. Toronto, lundi, le 3 janvier. Je lui ai dit ce que je pensais.

EXERCISE IN PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION.

[The sign (ː) in unstressed syllables indicates 'half long.']

Tu aimeras le Seigneur ton Dieu de tout ton cœur, de toute
ty ɛːmra l sɛɲœːr tɔ̃ djø d tu tɔ̃ kœːr, də tut
ton âme, de toute ta force, et de toute ta pensée; et ton
tɔ̃n ɑːm, də tut ta fɔrs, e d tut ta pɑ̃ːse; e tɔ̃
prochain comme toi-même...
prɔʃɛ̃ kɔm twa mɛːm...

Un homme descendait de Jérusalem à Jéricho; et il est
œ̃n ɔm desɑ̃ːdɛ d ʒeryzalɛm a ʒeriko; e il ɛ
tombé parmi des brigands, qui l'ont dépouillé, ils l'ont chargé
tɔ̃ːbe parmi de brigɑ̃, ki l ɔ̃ depuje, i l ɔ̃ ʃarʒe
de coups, et ils sont partis, en le laissant à moitié mort. Et
d ku, e i sɔ̃ parti, ɑ̃ l lɛːsɑ̃ a mwatje mɔːr. e
par hasard un prêtre descendait par ce chemin-là, et en le
par azaːr œ̃ prɛːtrə desɑ̃ːdɛ par sə ʃmɛ̃ la, e ɑ̃ l
voyant, il a passé outre. De même aussi un lévite, arrivé
vwajɑ̃, il a pɑːse utr. də mɛːm oːsi œ̃ levit, ariːve
dans cet endroit, il est venu, et en le voyant, il a passé outre.
dɑ̃ st ɑ̃ːdrwɑ, il ɛ vny, e ɑ̃ l vwajɑ̃, il a pɑːse utr.
Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait, est venu là, et en le voyant,
me œ̃ samaritɛ̃, ki vwajaʒɛ, ɛ vny la, e ɑ̃ l vwajɑ̃,
il a été ému de pitié; et il s'est approché pour bander ses
il a ete emy d pitje; e il s ɛt aprɔʃe pur bɑ̃ːde se
blessures, en y versant de l'huile et du vin; puis il l'a mis sur
blɛsyːr, ɑ̃n i vɛrsɑ̃ də l ɥil e dy vɛ̃; pɥi i l a mi syr
sa propre bête pour le conduire à une auberge, et il a pris soin
sa prɔprə bɛːt pur lə kɔ̃ːdɥiːr a yn ɔbɛrʒ, e il a pri swɛ̃
de lui. Et le lendemain il a tiré deux deniers, et il les a
d lɥi. e l lɑ̃ːdmɛ̃ il a tiːre dø dənje, e i lez a
donnés à l'aubergiste, en disant, 'prends soin de lui, et ce que
dɔne a l ɔbɛrʒist, ɑ̃ diːzɑ̃, prɑ̃ swɛ̃ d lɥi, e s k[illegible]
tu dépenseras de plus, moi je te le rendrai à mon retour.'
ty depɑ̃sra d plys, mwa ʒ tə l rɑ̃ːdre a mɔ̃ rtuːr.

—Reprinted by kind permission of M. Paul Passy, from his "Version populaire de l'Évangile de Luc en transcription phonétique."

PART I.

LESSON I.

22. Definite Article. 1. The definite article has the following forms in the singular:

'The' =
- **le** [lə], before a masculine beginning with a consonant.
- **la** [la], before a feminine beginning with a consonant.
- **l'** [l], before any noun beginning with a vowel or **h** mute.

Le père, **la** mère.	The father, the mother.
L'enfant (m. or f.), **l'**homme.	The child, the man.

2. The definite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers:

L'oncle et **la** tante.	The uncle and (the) aunt.

23. Gender. 1. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine:

Le papier (m.), la plume (f.).	The paper, the pen.

2. Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings feminine, as in English.

24. Case. French nouns have no case endings. The direct object (accusative) is expressed by verb + noun; the indirect object (dative) by the preposition **à** + noun; the possessive (genitive) by **de** + noun, and these prepositions must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

La mère aime **l'enfant.**	The mother loves the child.
J'ai la plume **de** Robert.	I have Robert's pen (the pen of Robert).
Je donne l'argent **à** Marie et **à** **Jean.**	I give the money to Mary and (to) John.

25. Agreements. French has the following agreements, and they are usually expressed by change of form: (1) Verb and subject, in number and person; (2) adjective and noun, in gender and number; (3) pronoun and antecedent, in gender and number.

VOCABULARY.

avec [avɛk], with.
crayon [krɛjɔ̃], m., pencil.
encre [ɑ̃ːkr], f., ink.
est [ɛ], is.
et [e], and.
livre [liːvr], m., book.
montrez-moi [mɔ̃tre mwa], show me.
où? [u], where?
papier [papje], m., paper.
plume [plym], f., pen.
sur [syr], on, upon.
table [tabl], f., table.
voici [vwasi], here is, here are.
voilà [vwala], there is, there are.

EXERCISE I.

A. 1. Où est le livre? 2. Voici le livre. 3. Où est la table? 4. Voilà la table. 5. Où est le papier? 6. Voici le papier. 7. Où est la plume? 8. Voici la plume. 9. Où est l'encre? 10. Voilà l'encre sur la table. 11. Où est le crayon? 12. Voilà le crayon avec la plume. 13. Voici le livre et la plume sur la table. 14. Voilà le papier avec l'encre sur la table. 15. Montrez-moi le papier, la plume et l'encre. 16. Où est le crayon? 17. Voici le crayon et la plume. 18. Voilà le papier et l'encre.

B. (Oral Exercise—questions to be answered in French by the pupil.) 1. Montrez-moi la table. 2. Montrez-moi le papier. 3. Montrez-moi la plume. 4. Montrez-moi l'encre. 5. Où est la table? 6. Où est le papier? 7. Où est la plume? 8. Où est l'encre? 9. Montrez-moi le papier, la plume et l'encre. Etc., etc.

C. 1. Here is the pen. 2. There is the ink. 3. Where is the paper? 4. There is the paper with the pen. 5. Here is the book. 6. Show me the paper. 7. Here is the paper on the table. 8. Where is the pen? 9. The pen is with the ink. 10. Show me the paper and ink. 11. The paper is on the table. 12. The ink is with the paper.

LESSON II.

26. Indefinite Article. It has the following forms, which must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

'A' or 'an' = { **un** [œ̃], before any masculine noun.
une [yn], before any feminine noun. }

Un livre et **une** plume.	A book and (a) pen.
Un homme, **une** école.	A man, a school.

VOCABULARY.

aussi [osi], too, also.
chaise [ʃɛːz], f., chair.
derrière [dɛrjɛːr], behind.
devant [dəvɑ̃], before, in front of.
fenêtre [fənɛːtr], f., window.
Jean [ʒɑ̃], John.
Marie [mari], Mary.
non [nɔ̃], no.
porte [pɔrt], f., door.
qui? [ki], who?
tableau [tablo], m., picture.

j'ai [ʒ e], I have; **il a** [il a], he has; **elle a** [ɛl a], she has; **vous avez** [vuz ave], you have.

EXERCISE II.

A. 1. Voici une porte et aussi une fenêtre. 2. Montrez-moi la porte. 3. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 4. Montrez-moi une chaise et une table. 5. Voilà une chaise devant la table. 6. Voici une plume sur la table. 7. Voilà un tableau derrière la porte. 8. Qui a un crayon et une plume? 9. Jean a un crayon et Marie a une plume. 10. Non, elle a un crayon et il a une plume. 11. J'ai un crayon et vous avez un livre. 12. Où est Jean? 13. Jean est derrière la table. 14. Marie est devant la fenêtre. 15. Marie a l'encre et elle a la plume aussi. 16. Elle a le papier et vous avez l'encre. 17. Montrez-moi l'encre et aussi la plume. 18. Voici l'encre avec la plume sur la table.

B. (Oral.) 1. Montrez-moi une porte. 2. Montrez-moi une fenêtre. 3. Montrez-moi une table aussi. 4. Où est la chaise? 5. Où est la table? 6. Qui a la plume et l'encre? 7. Où est le crayon? 8. Montrez-moi une plume? 9. Montrez-moi un tableau? 10. Où est le tableau? 11. Où est Marie? 12. Où est Jean? Etc., etc.

C. 1. There is a door and here is a window. 2. Show me a chair and a picture. 3. Here is a chair behind the door. 4. There is a picture. 5. Who has a pen and a pencil? 6. John has a pen and Mary has a pencil. 7. You have a pencil. 8. No, I have a pen. 9. Who has the ink? 10. Mary has the ink. 11. She has the ink. 12. You have the pen and a pencil. 13. There is a chair in front of the window. 14. There is a book on the table. 15. The pen is with the book. 16. The chair is behind the door. 17. Where is the picture? 18. The picture is behind the door also.

LESSON III.

27. Some Possessives. Observe the following, and remember that possessive adjectives must be repeated before each noun to which they refer (for pronunciation, see § 32):

Mon (m.) livre et **ma** (f.) plume.	My book and (my) pen.
Ton (m.) livre et **ta** (f.) plume.	Thy book and (thy) pen.
Son (m.) livre et **sa** (f.) plume.	His *or* her book and pen.
Votre (m.) livre et **votre** (f.) plume.	Your book and (your) pen.

28. Negation. With verbs, 'not' or 'no' = **ne . . . pas**, with the verb placed between them, **ne** becoming **n'** before a vowel (§ 19, 1):

Je **n'**ai **pas**, vous **n'**avez **pas**. I have not, you have not.

29. Interrogation. In questions, the personal pronoun subject comes after the verb, as in English, and is joined to it by a hyphen, or by **-t-** if the verb ends in a vowel:

Avez-vous?; **a-t-il**?; est-elle ici? Have you?; has he?; is she here?

Vocabulary.

autre [otr], other.
boîte [bwaːt], f., box.
cour [kuːr], f., yard.
dans [dɑ̃], in, into.
frère [frɛːr], m., brother.
ici [isi], here.
mais [mɛ], but.
ne...pas [nə...pɑ], not, no.
oui [wi], yes.
salle [sal], f., room (large).
sœur [sœːr], f., sister.

l'encre de votre frère, your brother's ink.

EXERCISE III.

A. 1. Avez-vous votre crayon? 2. Oui, j'ai mon crayon, et Jean a son crayon. 3. Où est votre crayon? 4. Voici mon crayon dans ma boîte. 5. Où est votre frère? 6. Il est dans la cour avec ma sœur. 7. Où est Marie? 8. Elle n'est pas ici. 9. Elle est dans l'autre salle. 10. A-t-elle la boîte et le papier? 11. Elle n'a pas le papier, mais elle a la boîte. 12. Où est Jean? 13. A-t-il le papier et la plume? 14. Il a le papier mais il n'a pas la plume. 15. Montrez-moi votre frère et votre sœur. 16. Voici mon frère, mais ma sœur n'est pas ici. 17. Qui est dans la salle? 18. Votre frère est dans la salle. 19. Qui a l'encre de mon frère? 20. Jean a l'encre de votre frère. 21. Avez-vous un crayon? 22. J'ai un crayon.

B. (Oral.) 1. Où est Jean? 2. Est-il ici? 3. Où est Marie? 4. Est-elle ici? 5. A-t-il son livre et sa plume? 6. A-t-elle son papier et son crayon? 7. Avez-vous votre livre? 8. Avez-vous le livre de Marie? 9. Avez-vous un crayon et une plume? 10. Où est ma plume? 11. Où est mon papier? 12. Où est votre boîte? 13. Où est-elle? 14. Montrez-moi une autre boîte. 15. Montrez-moi votre frère et votre sœur. 16. Est-il ici? 17. Est-elle ici? - Etc., etc.

C. 1. Has he the paper? 2. He has not the paper. 3. Where is my pencil? 4. Where is your pencil? 5. There is my pencil in the box on the table. 6. Where is your sister? 7. Is she in the other room? 8. No, she is in the yard. 9. Where is your brother? 10. Is he here? 11. He is not here. 12. He is in the yard with your brother. 13. Your sister has her pen. 14. I have her pencil. 15. Show me the picture. 16. There is the picture behind the door. 17. Where is the table? 18. Where is it? 19. The table is in the room in front of the window.

LESSON IV.

30. Some Pronoun Objects. 'Him' or 'it' = **le** (m.), and 'her' or 'it' = **la** (f.), both becoming **l'** before a vowel or **h** mute (§ 19, 1). They come next before the verb, or before **voici** and **voilà**:

Où est la plume? Je l'ai. — Where is the pen? I have it.
Où est le livre? **Le** voici. — Where is the book? Here it is.
Où est Marie? **La** voilà. — Where is Mary? There she is.

NOTE.—**Voici** and **Voilà** are derived from **vois** = 'see' + **ici** = 'here' and **vois** = 'see' + **là** = 'there' (literally, 'see here,' 'see there'), and, owing to their verbal force, govern words directly like transitive verbs.

VOCABULARY.

cahier [kaje], m., exercise-book.
école [ekɔl], f., school.
église [egliːz], f., church.
la [la], f., her, it.
le [lə], m., him, it.
madame [madam], f., madam, Mrs.
mademoiselle [madmwazɛl], f., Miss.
maison [mezɔ̃], f., house.
monsieur [məsjø], m., sir, Mr.
pardon [pardɔ̃], I beg your pardon.

EXERCISE IV.

A. 1. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 2. La voilà. 3. Où est mon cahier? 4. Le voilà sur la table. 5. Avez-vous votre plume, mademoiselle? 6. Non, monsieur, je ne l'ai pas. 7. Marie a l'encre. 8. Non, monsieur, elle ne l'a pas. 9. A-t-il mon crayon? 10. Il ne l'a pas. 11. Où est ma sœur? 12. La voilà dans la cour derrière l'école. 13. J'ai mon crayon; Marie ne l'a pas. 14. La cour est derrière l'école; la voilà. 15. Vous avez l'encre. 16. Pardon, madame, je ne l'ai pas. 17. Montrez-moi votre maison. 18. La voilà derrière l'église. 19. A-t-elle sa plume? 20. Non, monsieur, elle ne l'a pas. 21. La voilà sur la chaise. 22. N'avez-vous pas mon cahier? 23. Non, monsieur, je ne l'ai pas.

B. (Oral.) 1. Montrez-moi la fenêtre. 2. Où est votre cahier? 3. Qui a ma plume? 4. Qui a mon crayon? 5. Avez-vous l'encre? 6. Qui a votre cahier? 7. Montrez-moi l'église? 8. Où est le papier de Jean? 9. A-t-il son papier? 10. Avez-vous votre encre? 11. N'avez-vous pas le papier aussi? 12. A-t-elle sa boîte? 13. A-t-elle son papier dans sa boîte? 14. A-t-elle sa plume aussi? 15. Où est votre frère Jean? 16. Où est votre sœur Marie? 17. Montrez-moi votre frère. 18. Montrez-moi votre sœur. Etc., etc.

C. 1. Who has my pen? 2. John has your pen, sir. **3.** John, have you my exercise-book? 4. No, sir, I haven't

it; here it is on the table. 5. Who has your exercise-book? 6. Here it is, sir. 7. John, where is your pen? 8. Another pupil has my pen. 9. The yard is behind the school; there it is. 10. Mary, your pencil is on the chair. 11. I beg your pardon; I have it here. 12. Have you your ink, too? 13. Yes, sir, I have it. 14. Mary has her book, pen and exercise-book. 15. Where is Mr. B.? 16. Here he is. 17. He is here. 18. Where is Miss B.? 19. She is here, too. 20. There she is with her brother.

LESSON V.

31. Plural Forms. 1. The plural of a noun or an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Le grand roi, la grande reine.	The great king, the great queen.
Les grands rois, les grandes reines.	The great kings, the great queens.

2. The plural of the definite article **le, la, l'** is **les**:

Les [le] livres, **les** [lez] enfants.	The books, the children.

3. The plural of the personal pronoun **le, la, l'** is also **les**:

Je **les** ai.	I have them (books, pens, etc.).

32. The Possessive Adjective. 1. The following are its forms in full (for agreement and repetition, see § 27):

Masculine.		Feminine.		Plural.	
mon	[mõ]	**ma**	[ma]	**mes**	[me], my.
ton	[tõ]	**ta**	[ta]	**tes**	[te], thy, your.
son	[sõ]	**sa**	[sa]	**ses**	[se], his, her, its.
notre	[nɔtr]	**notre**	[nɔtr]	**nos**	[no], our.
votre	[vɔtr]	**votre**	[vɔtr]	**vos**	[vo], your.
leur	[lœːr]	**leur**	[lœːr]	**leurs**	[lœːr], their.

2. The forms **mon, ton, son,** are used instead of **ma, ta, sa** before feminines beginning with a vowel or **h** mute:

Mon [mõn] amie (f.).	My friend.
Son [sõn] histoire (f.).	His story.
Son [sõn] autre plume (f.).	His other pen.

3. Since **son (sa, ses)** means 'his,' 'her,' or 'its,' it can only be known from the context which is meant.

Vocabulary.

affaires [afɛːr], f. pl., things.
aujourd'hui [ɔʒurdɥi], to-day.
bon [bɔ̃], good.
canif [kanif], m., penknife.
élève [elɛːv], m. or f., pupil.
porte-plume [pɔrtplym], m., pen-holder.
règle [rɛːgl], f., ruler.
sous [su], under.
ils ont [ilz ɔ̃], they have.
ils sont [il sɔ̃], they are.

EXERCISE V.

A. 1. Mes livres ne sont pas sur la table ; qui les a ? 2. Les voilà sur une chaise. 3. Qui a nos bons crayons ? 4. Les voilà dans la boîte de Marie. 5. Où sont vos plumes ? 6. Voici nos plumes. 7. Où sont nos affaires ? 8. Voici vos crayons et vos plumes sur la table. 9. ~~Leurs plumes et~~ les plumes de leur sœur ne sont pas ici. 10. Pardon, monsieur, les voici sous la table. 11. Les élèves n'ont pas leurs livres aujourd'hui. 12. Montrez-moi la règle de l'élève. 13. La voici dans sa boîte. 14. Leurs canifs sont bons. 15. Nos canifs sont bons aussi. 16. Vos porte-plumes ne sont pas bons. 17. Où est mon encre ? 18. La voilà avec l'encre de ma sœur. 19. Où est mon autre plume ? 20. Elle est dans ma boîte.

B. (Oral.) 1. Où sont les affaires de mon frère ? 2. Qui a le canif de ma sœur ? 3. Montrez-moi votre règle. 4. Où est la plume de Marie ? 5. Où sont nos livres aujourd'hui ? 6. Avez-vous ma boîte ? 7. Qui est dans la salle ? 8. Qui est avec Jean dans la cour ? 9. Où est la cour ? 10. Où est Marie ? 11. N'est-elle pas ici ? 12. Montrez-moi vos bons crayons. 13. Avez-vous mon encre ? 14. Qui a mon autre plume ? Etc., etc.

C. 1. Where are your books to-day ? 2. They are here. 3. There they are on the table. 4. Where are your brother's things ? 5. There is his pen-holder and his ruler. 6. Have you my ink and my other pen ? 7. Where is your sister's ruler ? 8. Her ruler is not here to-day. 9. There is her penknife on the table. 10. Where is Mary's book ? 11. Her brother has her book. 12. And she has her brother's book. 13. John's ink is on the table. 14. Their books are not here. 15. Have you not my pens ? 16. No, your pens are in the

box. 17. Where are John's and Mary's books? 18. Here they are on the table. 19. Where is my sister's ruler? 20. I haven't it; there it is on the table.

LESSON VI.

33. Present Indicative of *avoir*, 'to have.'

1. Affirmative.		2. Negative.	
I have, etc.		I have not, etc.	
j' ai	[ʒ e].	je n'ai pas	[ʒə n e pɑ]
tu as	[ty a].	tu n'as pas	[ty n a pɑ].
il a	[il a].	il n'a pas	[il n a pɑ].
nous avons	[nuz avɔ̃].	nous n'avons pas	[nu n avɔ̃ pɑ].
vous avez	[vuz ave].	vous n'avez pas	[vu n ave pɑ].
ils ont	[ilz ɔ̃].	ils n'ont pas	[il n ɔ̃ pɑ].

34. Pronouns in Address. 'You' is regularly **vous**; the form **tu** = 'thou' or 'you' is used in familiar address:

Avez-**vous** ma plume, monsieur?	Have you my pen, sir?
As-**tu** ta plume, mon enfant?	Have you your pen, my child?

N.B.—Translate 'you' by **vous** in the exercises, unless the use of **tu** is required by the context.

35. Contractions. **De + le** and **de + les** are always contracted into **du** and **des**; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, **de la, de l'** in full:

La plume **du** [dy] frère.	The brother's pen.
Les plumes **des** [de] sœurs.	The sisters' pens.
But: La plume **de** l'élève, etc.	

36. The Partitive Noun and Pronoun. 1. 'Some' or 'any,' whether expressed or implied before a noun in English, is regularly expressed in French by **de** + the definite article:

J'ai **de** l'encre.	I have (some) ink (lit., 'of the ink').
A-t-il **des** frères?	Has he (any) brothers?

2. In a general negation the partitive is expressed by **de** alone:

Il n'a pas **de** pain. — He has no bread.
Il n'a pas **d'**amis. — He has no friends.

3. 'Some' or 'any' as a pronoun = **en**, which must be expressed in French, even when omitted in English:

A-t-il de l'encre?—Il **en** a. — Has he (any) ink?—He has (some).
A-t-il une plume?—Il **en** a une. — Has he a pen?—He has one.

VOCABULARY.

ami [ami], m., friend.
deux [dø], two.
encrier [ãkrie], m., inkstand.
enfant [ãfã], m. or f., child, boy, girl.
fils [fis], m., son.
là [la], there.
un, une [œ̃, yn], one.

il n'en a pas, he has not, he has not any, he has none.

EXERCISE VI.

A. Continue the following throughout the singular and plural: 1. J'ai des plumes, tu as des plumes, etc. 2. Je n'ai pas de plumes, etc. 3. J'ai des amis, etc. 4. Je n'ai pas d'amis, etc. 5. J'ai de l'encre, etc. 6. Je n'ai pas d'encre, etc. 7. J'en ai, etc. 8. Je n'en ai pas, etc.

B. 1. Avez-vous des plumes et des crayons? 2. Je n'ai pas de plumes, mais j'ai des crayons. 3. Mon frère a un canif et ma sœur en a deux. 4. Où est l'encre? 5. La voilà dans l'encrier sur la table. 6. Avez-vous du papier? 7. Je n'en ai pas. 8. Jean est là dans la salle. 9. A-t-il de l'encre? 10. Non, monsieur, il n'a pas d'encre. 11. A-t-il des livres? 12. Non, monsieur, il n'en a pas. 13. As-tu du papier, mon fils? 14. Je n'en ai pas. 15. Tu as de l'encre et des plumes, mon enfant. 16. Pardon, monsieur, je n'en ai pas. 17. Où sont les livres des élèves? 18. Les voilà sur la table. 19. Mes sœurs n'ont pas de papier, mais elles ont de l'encre et des plumes. 20. Où est la règle du frère de Jean? 21. Je l'ai. 22. Nous avons des livres et des plumes. 23. En avez-vous? 24. Nous n'en avons pas.

C. (Oral.) 1. Avez-vous un cahier? 2. Où est votre cahier? 3. Où est le cahier de Marie? 4. A-t-elle des crayons aussi? 5. Qui a de l'encre? 6. Où est son encre? 7. Où sont vos frères et vos sœurs? 8. Avez-vous des crayons? 9. Avons-

nous du papier et des plumes? 10. Avez-vous des amis? 11. Où sont-ils? 12. Qui n'a pas d'amis? 13. As-tu du papier, mon enfant? 14. Qui a ton cahier, Marie? 15. As-tu la règle de ta sœur? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Where is your brother's book? 2. Here it is with our books. 3. Have you any ink? 4. I have some. 5. Show me your ruler. 6. I haven't any, but my sister has one. 7. Have you a pen-holder? 8. Yes, sir, I have one, and my brother has two. 9. Show me your pencils. 10. I haven't any, but my friend has some. 11. We have pens. 12. You have ink. 13. They have no pens. 14. He has no ink. 15. His brother's friend has no books. 16. Where are their books? 17. There are some books on the table. 18. Here are our books on the chair. 19. She has brothers and sisters. 20. Where are they? 21. They are in the yard. 22. Where are the pupils' things? 23. They are in the other room. 24. Where is your ruler, my boy? 25. Here it is. 26. Have you any ink, my son? 27. I haven't any.

LESSON VII.

37. Present Indicative of *avoir* (*continued*).

1. Interrogative. Have I? etc.		2. Negative Interrogative. Have I not? etc.	
ai-je?	[ɛː ʒ].	n'ai-je pas?	[n ɛː ʒ pɑ].
as-tu?	[a ty].	n'as-tu pas?	[n a ty pɑ].
a-t-il?	[a t il].	n'a-t-il pas?	[n a t il pɑ].
avons-nous?	[avɔ̃ nu].	n'avons-nous pas?	[n avɔ̃ nu pɑ].
avez-vous?	[ave vu].	n'avez-vous pas?	[n ave vu pɑ].
ont-ils?	[ɔ̃t il].	n'ont-ils pas?	[n ɔ̃t il pɑ].

38. Interrogation. 1. When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, the word order is noun-verb-pronoun:

L'homme est-il là? — Is the man there?

2. This form of question may be combined with an interrogative word:

Mais Jean où est-il? — But where is John?
Combien de plumes Jean a-t-il? — How many pens has John?

3. 'What?' (as direct object or predicate of a verb) = **que?** See also § 19, 1 :

Qu'avez-vous là ? What have you there ?

VOCABULARY.

chez moi [ʃe mwa], at home.
classe [klɑːs], f., class, class-room.
combien de? [kɔ̃bjɛ̃ də], how many?
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ̃ːbl], together.
maintenant [mɛ̃tnɑ̃], now.
maître [mɛːtr], m., master, teacher.
ou [u], or.
poche [pɔʃ], f., pocket.
quatre [katr], four.
sac [sak], m., bag, satchel.
salle de classe [sal də klɑːs], f., class-room.
trois [trwɑ], three.

EXERCISE VII.

A. Continue the following: 1. Ai-je un canif?, as-tu un canif?, etc. 2. Ai-je des crayons dans une boîte?, as-tu des crayons dans une boîte?, etc. 3. N'ai-je pas un bon ami?, etc.

B. 1. Avez-vous votre crayon dans votre boîte? 2. Non, monsieur, je l'ai dans mon sac. 3. Combien de livres avez-vous? 4. J'en ai trois ou quatre dans mon sac. 5. N'avez-vous pas un canif dans votre poche? 6. Non, monsieur, je n'en ai pas dans ma poche, mais j'en ai un chez moi. 7. Où est votre frère maintenant? 8. Il est dans la cour avec les autres enfants. 9. Où sont Marie et sa sœur? 10. Les voilà ensemble dans la salle de classe. 11. Jean n'a-t-il pas mon porte-plume et mes plumes dans son sac? 12. Non, monsieur, il les a dans sa poche. 13. Où sont le maître et les élèves maintenant? 14. Ils sont dans la salle de classe. 15. Qu'as-tu dans ton sac, mon enfant? 16. J'ai deux livres et quatre plumes dans mon sac. 17. Où sont les porte-plumes? 18. En voilà un sur la table.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est le sac de Jean? 2. Montrez-moi votre papier. 3. Jean, où est ton canif? 4. N'as-tu pas un canif et un porte-plume? 5. Où sont les enfants? 6. Qu'avez-vous dans votre poche? 7. Combien de frères avez-vous? 8. Votre frère combien de plumes a-t-il? 9. Qu'a-t-il dans son sac? 10. Où sont mes affaires? 11. Qui est dans la salle de classe maintenant? 12. Le maître où est-il? 13. Et les élèves **où** sont-ils? 14. Combien de plumes as-tu, mon enfant?

15. Et Marie, combien de plumes a-t-elle? 16. Les élèves sont-ils dans la salle? 17. Les élèves ont-ils leurs affaires dans leurs sacs? 18. Avez-vous mes bons crayons? 19. Qui a mes bons crayons? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Where are our bags? 2. There they are behind the door. 3. What have you in your pocket? 4. I have a knife and a pencil in my pocket. 5. Have you pens and pencils? 6. Yes, sir, I have two pens and three pencils. 7. Where are John and his brother? 8. They are with the other boys in the class-room. 9. Show me your books and pens. 10. I haven't any. 11. John is in the other room with his brother. 12. How many pencils have they? 13. They have four. 14. Where are your things? 15. Here they are in my bag. 16. Have we any pens? 17. Yes, sir, here are some in the box. 18. Where are John and Robert? 19. There they are together in the class-room. 20. How many knives have you? 21. I have one and my brother has two. 22. Have you any paper? 23. We haven't any, but the master has some. 24. Here is his paper.

LESSON VIII.

39. Present Indicative of *être*, 'to be.'

1. Affirmative.

I am, etc.

je suis	[ʒə sɥi].
tu es	[ty ɛ].
il est	[il ɛ].
nous sommes	[nu sɔm].
vous êtes	[vuz ɛːt].
ils sont	[il sɔ̃].

2. Negative.

I am not, etc.

je ne suis pas	[ʒə nə sɥi pɑ].
tu n'es pas	[ty n ɛ pɑ].
il n'est pas	[il n ɛ pɑ].
nous ne sommes pas	[nu nə sɔm pɑ].
vous n'êtes pas	[vu n ɛːt pɑ].
ils ne sont pas	[il nə sɔ̃ pɑ].

3. Interrogative.

Am I? etc.

suis-je?	[sɥiː ʒ].
es-tu?	[ɛ ty].
est-il?	[ɛt il].
sommes-nous?	[sɔm nu].
êtes-vous?	[ɛːt vu].
sont-ils?	[sɔ̃t il].

4. Negative Interrogative.

Am I not? etc.

ne suis-je pas?	[nə sɥiː ʒ pɑ].
n'es-tu pas?	[n ɛ ty pɑ].
n'est-il pas?	[n ɛt il pɑ].
ne sommes-nous pas?	[nə sɔm nu pɑ].
n'êtes-vous pas?	[n ɛːt vu pɑ].
ne sont-ils pas?	[nə sɔ̃t il pɑ].

40. Observe that **il** and **elle** mean not only 'he' and 'she,' but also 'it,' since there are but two genders of nouns in French:

Où est la plume? **Elle** est ici.	Where is the pen? It is here.
Où sont les plumes? **Elles** sont ici.	Where are the pens? They are here.

Vocabulary.

à [a], to, at, in.
commence [kɔmɑ̃ːs], begins.
difficile [difisil], difficult.
facile [fasil], easy.
leçon [ləsɔ̃], f., lesson.
malade [malad], ill, sick.
nous [nu], us.
tableau noir [tablo nwaːr], m., black-board.
à présent [a prezɑ̃], at present.

EXERCISE VIII.

A. Continue the following: 1. Je suis à l'école, tu es, etc. 2. Je suis malade aujourd'hui, tu es, etc. 3. Je ne suis pas malade aujourd'hui, etc. 4. Suis-je malade?, etc. 5. Ne suis-je pas malade?, etc.

B. 1. Nous sommes à l'école aujourd'hui, et nos frères sont avec nous. 2. Nous sommes à présent avec les autres élèves dans la salle de classe, et le maître est ici aussi. 3. Nous avons nos affaires. 4. Nos canifs sont dans nos poches. 5. Nos plumes et nos porte-plumes sont dans nos boîtes. 6. Nos livres sont dans nos sacs. 7. L'encre est dans les encriers. 8. La leçon est sur le tableau noir. 9. Nous avons des cahiers, et les autres élèves en ont aussi. 10. La leçon commence. 11. La leçon n'est pas difficile. 12. Elle est facile.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où êtes-vous à présent? 2. Où suis-je à présent? 3. Où sommes-nous? 4. Qui est avec nous? 5. Où sont les affaires des élèves? 6. Le maître n'est-il pas avec les élèves? 7. Où sont les chaises et les tables? 8. N'avez-vous pas vos livres? 9. Montrez-moi les règles et les porte-plumes. 10. Qui est devant le tableau noir? 11. Où est la leçon? 12. Avez-vous des cahiers? 13. La leçon commence-t-elle? 14. Qui commence la leçon? 15. Ta leçon est-elle facile? 16. Tes leçons sont-elles difficiles, mon enfant? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Our brothers are not in the class-room. 2. They are in the yard with the other pupils. 3. The lesson is not on the black-board. 4. Are you not in our class? 5. Yes, I am

in your class. 6. Have you your things in your bags? 7. No, our things are on the table. 8. Have you exercise-books? 9. Yes, and our brothers have some too. 10. Have you no paper? 11. No, sir, I have none. 12. Are the pencils here? 13. Yes, here they are on the table. 14. What have you in your bags? 15. We have paper, exercise-books and pen-holders. 16. Have you no ink? 17. Yes, I have some. 18. How many books have you? 19. I have four in my bag, and three at home. 20. The lesson is easy to-day; it is easy. 21. John's lessons are difficult. 22. Are your lessons difficult, John? 23. Yes, sir, they are difficult.

LESSON IX.

41. The Regular Conjugations. French verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings **-er, -ir, -re,** into three conjugations:

I.	II.	III.
Donner [dɔne], to give.	**Finir** [finiːr], to finish.	**Vendre** [vɑ̃ːdr], to sell.

Like these are conjugated all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

42. Present Indicative of *donner*, 'to give.'

1. Affirmative.		2. Negative.	
I give, am giving, etc.		I do not give, am not giving, etc.	
je donn **e**	[ʒə dɔn].	je ne donn **e** pas	[ʒə nə dɔn pɑ].
tu donn **es**	[ty dɔn].	tu ne donn **es** pas	[ty nə dɔn pɑ].
il donn **e**	[il dɔn].	il ne donn **e** pas	[il nə dɔn pɑ].
nous donn **ons**	[nu dɔnɔ̃].	nous ne donn **ons** pas	[nu nə dɔnɔ̃ pɑ].
vous donn **ez**	[vu dɔne].	vous ne donn **ez** pas	[vu nə dɔne pɑ].
ils donn **ent**	[il dɔn].	ils ne donn **ent** pas	[il nə dɔn pɑ].

3. Interrogative.		4. Negative Interrogative.	
Am I giving?, do I give?, etc.		Am I not giving?, do I not give?, etc.	
donné-je?	[dɔnɛː ʒ].	ne donné-je pas?	[nə dɔnɛː ʒ pɑ].
donnes-tu?	[dɔn ty].	ne donnes-tu pas?	[nə dɔn ty pɑ].
donne-t-il?	[dɔn t il].	ne donne-t-il pas?	[nə dɔn t il pɑ].
donnons-nous?	[dɔnɔ̃ nu].	ne donnons-nous pas?	[nə dɔnɔ̃ nu pɑ].
donnez-vous?	[dɔne vu].	ne donnez-vous pas?	[nə dɔne vu pɑ].
donnent-ils?	[dɔnt il].	ne donnent-ils pas?	[nə dɔnt il pɑ].

43. Interrogation. By prefixing the words **est-ce que?**, literally, 'is it that?', any statement may be turned into a question:

Vous avez mon canif.	You have my penknife.
Est-ce que vous avez mon canif?	Have you my penknife?

NOTE.—The first singular interrogative form (*e.g.*, donné-je? suis-je? etc.) is avoided in most verbs, and *must* be avoided in some, by using 'est-ce que?' In the exercises, use 'est-ce que?' everywhere in interrogations with the first singular.

44. The Demonstrative Adjective. 1. The following are its forms, and they must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

'This,' 'that' = { **ce** [sə], before a masculine beginning with a consonant. **cet** [sɛt], before a m. beginning with a vowel or **h** mute. **cette** [sɛt], before any feminine. }

'These,' 'those' = **ces** [se], before any plural.

2. To distinguish 'this' from 'that,' or for emphasis, add **-ci** (=ici) and **-là** respectively to the noun:

Ce livre, **cet** homme, **cette** amie.	This (or that) book, man, friend.
Ce crayon-**ci** et **ces** plumes-**là**.	This pencil and those pens.

VOCABULARY.

aller [ale], to go.
arriver [arive], to arrive.
chemin [ʃəmɛ̃], m., road, way.
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se], to begin.
continuer [kɔ̃tinɥe], to continue.
écouter [ekute], to listen to, hear.
en [ɑ̃], in, on.
entrer [ɑ̃tre] **dans**, to enter, go into.
histoire [istwaːr], f., story.
marcher [marʃe], to march, walk.
pour [pur], for, in order to.
raconter [rakɔ̃te], to relate, tell.
ramasser [ramase], to pick up, collect.
rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃tre], to meet.
Robert [rɔbɛːr], Robert.
route [rut], f., way.
rue [ry], f., street.

nous voici [nu vwasi], here we are. **en route** [ɑ̃ rut], on the way.

EXERCISE IX.

A. Je ramasse mes affaires pour aller à l'école. Voici mes livres, mon cahier, mes plumes, ma règle, mon crayon. Les voilà maintenant dans mon sac. Maintenant je suis en route

pour l'école. Dans la rue je rencontre mon ami Robert. Nous marchons ensemble. Nous continuons notre chemin. Il raconte une histoire. Nous arrivons à la porte de l'école. Nous entrons dans l'école. Nous voici dans la classe. Les autres élèves arrivent aussi, et le maître commence les leçons. Ce maître donne des leçons faciles. Cette leçon n'est pas difficile. Ces élèves-ci écoutent. Ces élèves-là n'écoutent pas.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je donne du papier à l'élève, etc. 2. Est-ce que j'arrive à l'école?, etc. 3. Je ne ramasse pas mes affaires, tu ne ramasses pas tes affaires, etc. 4. Est-ce que je ne donne pas un canif à Robert?, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où allons-nous? 2. Qui ramasse nos affaires? 3. Où sont nos cahiers? 4. Avez-vous vos livres? 5. Est-ce que vous avez votre crayon aussi? 6. Où sommes-nous maintenant? 7. Qui est en route pour l'école? 8. Qui rencontrons-nous? 9. Où est-ce que nous le rencontrons? 10. Qui est Robert? 11. Est-ce que Robert est en route pour l'école aussi? 12. Qui raconte une histoire? 13. Qui arrive à la porte de l'école? 14. Où entrons-nous? 15. Où sommes-nous maintenant? 16. Qui est dans la classe? 17. Est-ce que les autres élèves sont dans la classe aussi? 18. Qui commence les leçons? 19. Ce maître donne-t-il des leçons faciles? 20. Ces leçons sont-elles faciles? 21. Cet élève-là écoute-t-il? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Where are you going? 2. Are you going to school? 3. We are going to school. 4. I am collecting my things to go to school. 5. My things are in my bag now. 6. We meet our friends in the street. 7. We continue our way. 8. We arrive at the door of the school. 9. The other pupils arrive also. 10. They enter the school. 11. We enter the school too. 12. The master and the pupils are in the class-room. 13. He begins the lesson. 14. Is he beginning the lesson now? 15. He continues the lesson. 16. This lesson is not easy. 17. It is difficult. 18. These lessons are difficult. 19. The master tells a story. 20. The pupils listen. 21. Are you listening? 22. Yes, sir, I am listening now. 23. Robert, are you listening? 24. Yes, sir. 25. Are those pupils listening?

LESSON X.

45. **Plural Forms.** Note the following exceptions to the rule (§ 31) that the plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

1. Nouns in **-s**, **-x**, **-z**, and adjectives in **-s**, **-x**, remain unchanged in the plural, *e.g.*, **bras**, **bras**, arm(s); **voix**, **voix**, voice(s); **nez**, **nez**, nose(s); **bas**, **bas**, low; **vieux**, **vieux**, old.

2. Nouns and adjectives in **-au**, nouns in **-eu**, and a few nouns in **-ou**, add **-x** instead of **-s**, *e.g.*, **couteau**, **couteaux**, knife, knives; **beau**, **beaux**, fine; **jeu**, **jeux**, game(s); **bijou**, **bijoux**, jewel(s); **caillou**, **cailloux**, pebble(s), and a few rarer nouns in **-ou**.

3. Nouns, and the commoner adjectives, in **-al** change **-al** to **-au** and add **-x** (as above), *e.g.*, **général**, **généraux**, general(s); **rival**, **rivaux**, rival(s), except **bal**, **bals**, ball(s), and a few rarer nouns.

4. **Oeil**, **yeux**, eye(s); **ciel**, **cieux**, sky, skies, heaven(s).

46. **Contractions.** The forms **à + le** and **à + les** are always contracted into **au** and **aux** respectively; the remaining forms are not contracted, thus, **à la**, **à l'** in full:

Je parle **au** [o] frère.	I speak to the brother.
Aux [o] sœurs, **aux** [oz] hommes.	To the sisters, to the men.
But: Je parle **à la** sœur, **à** l'homme.	

47. **Use of *il y a*.** 1. 'There is' and 'there are' are not only translated by **voilà**, but also by **il y a**:

Voilà des plumes sur la table.	There are some pens on the table.
Il y a [il j a] des plumes sur la table.	There are some pens on the table.

2. Observe, however, that **voilà** answers the question 'where is?', 'where are?', and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?', 'where are?', and makes a general statement.

3. **Il y a** governs nouns just like other transitive verbs:

Je donne **des plumes** à Marie.	I give (some) pens to Mary.
Il y a des plumes sur la table.	There are (some) pens on the table.

VOCABULARY.

aimer [ɛme], to love, like.
beau [bo], fine, handsome.
beaucoup [boku], much, very much.
blanc [blɑ̃], white.
bleu [blø], blue.
bord [bɔːr], m., edge, shore, border.
caillou [kaju], m., pebble, stone.
cheval [ʃəval], m., horse.
courageux [kuraʒø], brave.
creuser [krøze], to dig.
eau [o], f., water.
fougueux [fugø], spirited, fiery.
général [ʒeneral], m., general.
grand [grɑ̃], great, large, tall.
jouer [ʒwe], to play.
lac [lak], m., lake.
l'un [l œ̃], the one, one.
naturel [natyrɛl], natural.
noir [nwaːr], black.
oeil, yeux [œj, jø], m., eye, eyes.
parce que [pars kə], because.
pourquoi? [purkwa], why?
qui [ki], indecl., who, whom, which.
représenter [rəprezɑ̃te], to represent.
sable [sɑːbl], m., sand.
si [si], so.
vieux [vjø], old.

à cheval, on horseback. **chez nous,** at home, at our house.

EXERCISE X.

A. Il y a deux tableaux chez nous. Nous les aimons beaucoup, parce qu'ils sont si naturels. L'un représente quatre enfants qui jouent au bord du lac. L'eau du lac est bleue (f.), et les yeux des enfants sont bleus aussi. Il y en a deux qui ramassent des cailloux, et les deux autres creusent dans le sable. L'autre tableau représente deux grands généraux à cheval. Ils sont sur deux beaux chevaux. L'un des chevaux est blanc et l'autre est noir. Les généraux sont courageux et leurs chevaux sont beaux et fougueux.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je parle aux généraux, etc. 2. Je parle à l'enfant, etc. 3. Est-ce que je ramasse des cailloux?, etc. 4. Il y a des plumes dans ma boîte, dans ta boîte, etc. 5. Il n'y en a pas dans ma boîte, ta boîte, etc. 6. Mes yeux sont bleus, tes yeux, etc. 7. J'ai deux beaux chevaux, etc. 8. J'aime ces vieux tableaux, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où sont les tableaux? 2. Est-ce que vous les aimez? 3. Pourquoi est-ce que vous les aimez? 4. Y a-t-il des tableaux dans cette salle? 5. Montrez-moi ces tableaux. 6. Qui joue? 7. Où est-ce qu'ils jouent? 8. Les yeux des enfants sont-ils bleus ou noirs? 9. Vos yeux sont-ils noirs?

10. Qui ramasse des cailloux? 11. Que ramassez-vous? 12. Qui creuse dans le sable? 13. Où sont les deux grands généraux? 14. Les chevaux des généraux sont-ils blancs ou noirs? 15. Vos frères sont-ils courageux? 16. À qui est-ce que je parle? 17. À qui est-ce que vous parlez? 18. Y a-t-il des plumes dans votre boîte? 19. Combien de tableaux y a-t-il chez nous? 20. Aimez-vous ces vieux tableaux? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There are two fine pictures in our class-room. 2. The pupils like them. 3. These pictures are natural and beautiful. 4. In this picture there are four children. 5. They are playing. 6. The children's eyes are blue. 7. Three of the children are picking up pebbles on the shore of the lake. 8. The other child is digging in the sand. 9. He is talking to the other children. 10. There is the other picture. 11. In that picture there are two generals. 12. Their horses are fine and spirited. 13. The generals are brave. 14. I like these pictures very much. 15. The master is relating the story of the generals to the pupils. 16. There is a pupil who is not listening. 17. Show me the pupil who is not listening. 18. I am listening, because I like this story. 19. Now, show me the fine pictures. 20. There they are.

LESSON XI.

48. An Indefinite Pronoun. 1. 'One,' 'some one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' used indefinitely, are represented in French by **on**, with the verb always in the singular:

On [ɔ̃] parle de Jean.	We (you, they, etc.) speak of John.

2. When following a verb with a final vowel, **on** is joined to it by **-t-** (cf. § 29):

Par où commence-t-on?	Where do we (etc.) begin?

3. An **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not mentioned:

Ensuite on apporte le potage.	Next the soup is brought.

49. Interrogation. Observe the frequently used interrogative phrase '**qu'est-ce que?**' = 'what?' which is made up of **que?** (§ 38, 3) + **est-ce que?** (§ 43):

Qu'a-t-il? *or* **Qu'est-ce qu'il a?**	What has he?

50. Present Indicative of *faire,* 'to do,' 'make' (irreg.).

I do, am doing, etc.	We do, are doing, etc.
je fais [ʒə fɛ].	nous faisons [nu fəzɔ̃].
tu fais [ty fɛ].	vous faites [vu fɛt].
il fait [il fɛ].	ils font [il fɔ̃].

VOCABULARY.

d'abord [d abɔːr], first (of all).
apporter [apɔrte], to bring.
assiette [asjɛt], f., plate.
bientôt [bjɛ̃to], soon.
bibliothèque [bibliɔtɛk], f., library.
bonne [bɔn], f., maid, servant.
café [kafe], m., coffee.
chapeau [ʃapo], m., hat.
couteau [kuto], m., knife.
cuiller [kyjɛːr], f., spoon.
dessert [desɛːr], m., dessert.
ensuite [ɑ̃sɥit], then, next.
escalier [ɛskalje], m., stairs.
fourchette [furʃɛt], f., fork.
fruit [frɥi], m., fruit.
journal [ʒurnal], m., newspaper.
légume [legym], m., vegetable.
lire [liːr], to read.
manger [mɑ̃ʒe], to eat.
moment [mɔmɑ̃], m., moment.
monter [mɔ̃te], to go up.
nappe [nap], f., table-cloth.
ôter [ote], to take off.
place [plas], f., place.
potage [pɔtaːʒ], m., soup.
prend [prɑ̃], 3 sg. pres. ind. *prendre,* to take.
puis [pɥi], then, afterwards.
remporter [rɑ̃pɔrte], to take away.
repas [rəpɑ], m., meal, repast.
retourner [rəturne], to return, go back; **de retour**, back.
salle à manger [sal a mɑ̃ʒe], f., dining-room.
sonner [sɔne], to ring.
vestibule [vɛstibyl], m., hall, entrance.
viande [vjɑ̃ːd], f., meat.

en haut [ɑ̃ o], up stairs. **en bas** [ɑ̃ bɑ], down stairs.

EXERCISE XI.

A. **Nous voici de retour de l'école.** Nous entrons dans la maison. Dans le vestibule nous ôtons nos chapeaux. Ensuite nous montons l'escalier. Nous sommes en haut maintenant, et nous entrons dans la bibliothèque un moment pour lire les journaux. Bientôt on sonne, et nous allons en bas. Nous voici dans la salle à manger. La nappe est sur la table. Les assiettes, les cuillers, les couteaux et les fourchettes sont à leur place. On commence le repas. La bonne apporte le potage. Puis, elle apporte la viande et les légumes. On mange, on

raconte des histoires. La bonne remporte les assiettes. Au dessert on mange du fruit et on prend du café.

B. Continue the following: 1. J'ôte mon chapeau, tu ôtes ton chapeau, etc. 2. Je ne suis pas en haut, etc. 3. Qu'est-ce que je fais?, etc. 4. Est-ce que je ne sonne pas?, etc. 5. Je ne monte pas l'escalier, etc. 6. On apporte mon repas, ton repas, etc. 7. Est-ce qu'on n'apporte pas mon repas?, ton repas?, etc. 8. Il n'y a pas de viande sur mon assiette, ton assiette, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est-ce que nous allons maintenant? 2. Que faisons-nous dans le vestibule? 3. Qu'est-ce que vous faites dans le vestibule? 4. Ensuite que faites-vous? 5. Pourquoi est-ce que j'entre dans la bibliothèque? 6. La bibliothèque est-elle en haut ou en bas? 7. Où est la salle à manger? 8. Qui sonne? 9. Est-ce que la bonne sonne pour le repas? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a sur la table dans la salle à manger? 11. Où sont les couteaux et les fourchettes? 12. Les cuillers sont-elles sur la table? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'on apporte d'abord? 14. Ensuite, qu'est-ce qu'on apporte? 15. Qu'est-ce qu'on fait au repas? 16. Raconte-t-on des histoires aussi? 17. Qui apporte le dessert? 18. Qu'est-ce qu'on mange au dessert? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I am returning home now. 2. I enter the house. 3. First, I take off my hat in the hall. 4. You take off your hat. 5. I meet my brother in the hall. 6. We go into the library for a moment to read the newspapers. 7. Somebody rings. 8. We listen. 9. We are up stairs. 10. The dining-room is down stairs. 11. There is a cloth on the table in the dining-room. 12. There are plates, spoons, knives and forks on the table also. 13. First, the soup is brought. 14. The soup is eaten, and the maid brings the meat. 15. There is no fruit on the table now. 16. The maid brings it at (the) dessert. 17. People take coffee at dessert. 18. Then they go up stairs. 19. Then they go into the library. 20. What am I doing now? 21. What are you doing? 22. We are going into the library.

LESSON XII.

51. Feminine of Adjectives. It is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged.

Grand, m., grande, f., tall; facile, m. *or* f., easy.

52. Irregularities. Change of stem takes place in certain adjectives on adding **-e**. The following list shows the commoner types:

M.	F.	M.	F.
actif,	active, active.	**cruel,**	cruelle, cruel.
heureux,	heureuse, happy.	**gentil,**	gentille, nice.
flatteur,	flatteuse, flattering.	**ancien,**	ancienne, ancient.
		gros,	grosse, big.
blanc,	blanche, white.	**muet,**	muette, dumb.
long,	longue, long.	**cher,**	chère, dear.
faux,	fausse, false.	**sec,**	sèche, dry.

Observe also: m. beau *or* bel, f. belle, fine; m. nouveau *or* nouvel, f. nouvelle, new; m. vieux *or* vieil, f. vieille, old, with two forms for the masculine, one of which gives the feminine. The masculine forms in **-l** are used before a vowel or **h** mute:

Le **bel** arbre, le **bel** homme. The fine tree, the handsome man.

But: L'arbre est **beau**; le **beau** livre; les **beaux** arbres; les arbres sont **beaux**.

53. Position. 1. An attributive adjective more usually follows its noun:

Un homme **riche**, une pomme **mûre**. A rich man, a ripe apple.

2. Adjectives from proper nouns, adjectives of physical quality, participles as adjectives, almost always follow:

La langue **anglaise**. The English language.
Du café **chaud**, une lampe **cassée**. Hot coffee, a broken lamp.

3. The following of very common occurrence nearly always precede:

Bon, good, **mauvais,** bad; **beau,** fine, handsome, **joli,** pretty, **vilain,** ugly; **jeune,** young, **vieux,** old; **grand,** tall, great, **gros,** big, **petit,** small; **long,** long, **court,** short.

54. Interrogative Adjective. 'Which?', 'what?', 'what (a)!' = m. **quel?**, f. **quelle?**, m. pl. **quels?**, f. pl. **quelles?**

Quel [kɛl] livre?	Which (what) book?
Quelle [kɛl] plume?	Which (what) pen?
Quelle belle vue! **Quels** héros!	What a fine view! What heroes!

55. 'There,' 'in that place' = **y**. It stands for a place already referred to, is put before the verb like a pronoun object, and is less emphatic than **là** = 'there':

Est-il à l'école? Il **y** [i] est.	Is he at school? He is (there).

VOCABULARY.

agneau [aɲo], m., lamb.
animal [animal], m., animal, beast.
arbre [arbr], m., tree.
beau, belle [bo, bɛl], fine, handsome.
blanc, blanche [blɑ̃, blɑ̃ːʃ], white.
bois [bwɑ], m., wood(s).
campagne [kɑ̃paɲ], f., country.
champ [ʃɑ̃], m., field.
chemin de fer [ʃəmɛ̃ də fɛːr], m., railway.
comme [kɔm], how!
comment [kɔmɑ̃], how?
cousin(e) [kuzɛ̃, kuzin], cousin.
fer [fɛːr], m., iron.
fleur [flœːr], f., flower.
gare [gaːr], f., station.
heureux -se [œrø, œrøːz], happy (to, de).
joli [ʒɔli], pretty.
oncle [ɔ̃ːkl], m., uncle.
par [par], by.
parents [parɑ̃], m. pl., relatives.
passer [pɑse], to pass.
petit [pəti], small.
regarder [rəgarde], to look at.
semaine [səmɛːn], f., week.
tante [tɑ̃ːt], f., aunt.
tout [tu], all, everything.
travailler [travaje], to work.
trouver [truve], to find.
vache [vaʃ], f., cow.
visiter [vizite], to visit.
vite [vit], quickly.
voir [vwaːr], to see.
voiture [vwatyːr], f., carriage.
y [i], there, in that place.

à la campagne, in the country.
aller visiter, to go to visit, go and visit.
de nous voir, to see us.
en fleurs, in flower, blooming.

EXERCISE XII.

A. Nous allons visiter nos parents à la campagne. Nous y allons par le chemin de fer. Nous arrivons à la petite gare. Nous y trouvons ma tante et une de mes cousines avec leur voiture. Comme nous sommes heureux de les voir! Mon oncle et mes cousins n'y sont pas, parce qu'ils travaillent dans

les champs. Nous montons dans la voiture, et nous voilà en route. Comme la campagne est belle ! Tout est en fleurs, les arbres et les champs. Nous passons devant les beaux champs et les jolies maisons blanches. Les chevaux marchent vite, et nous arrivons bientôt chez nos parents. Nous y passons deux ou trois semaines. Nous allons dans les bois et les champs. Nous y trouvons des fleurs et des fruits. Nous allons regarder les animaux, les belles vaches et les jolis agneaux.

B. Continue the following: 1. Quelle plume est-ce que je donne à l'enfant ?, etc. 2. Est-ce que j'ai des fleurs blanches ?, etc. 3. Mes fleurs sont belles et blanches, tes fleurs, etc. 4. Je ne suis pas heureuse, etc. 5. Je suis à la campagne ; j'y suis, etc. 6. J'ai un bel arbre devant ma maison, tu as un bel arbre devant ta maison, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où sont vos parents ? 2. Comment allons-nous à la campagne ? 3. Comment y allons-nous ? 4. La gare est-elle grande ou petite ? 5. Qui trouve-t-on à la gare ? 6. Notre tante est-elle heureuse de nous voir ? 7. Que fait votre oncle ? 8. Pourquoi vos cousins ne sont-ils pas à la gare ? 9. Aimez-vous la campagne ? 10. Pourquoi ? 11. Les chevaux de votre oncle sont-ils beaux ? 12. Et sa maison est-elle belle ? 13. Combien de semaines passez-vous chez vos parents ? 14. Aimez-vous les fleurs blanches ? 15. Quelles fleurs aimez-vous ? 16. Êtes-vous heureuse de visiter votre tante, mademoiselle ? 17. Où trouve-t-on ces belles fleurs ? 18. Où sont les belles vaches et les jolis agneaux ? 19. Quels animaux y a-t-il dans les champs ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I have an uncle and aunt in the country. 2. They have a fine house and a carriage. 3. There is my uncle's house. 4. We are going to visit them. 5. We are going *(y)* by (the) railway. 6. We find my uncle and cousins at the station. 7. My aunt is not there. 8. How beautiful the country is ! 9. The flowers in *(de)* the fields are so pretty ! 10. We go to see the animals in the fields. 11. There are some cows and some white lambs in the fields. 12. We are going to pass two or three weeks with *(chez)* our relatives. 13. They are happy to see us. 14. We are happy to see them too. 15. I like my aunt and uncle. 16. Which uncle are you going to visit now ? 17. What are you going to do in the country ?

LESSON XIII.

56. Present Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I give, am giving, etc.		I finish, am finishing, etc.		I sell, am selling, etc.	
donn **e**	[dɔn].	fini **s**	[fini].	vend **s**	[vɑ̃].
donn **es**	[dɔn].	fini **s**	[fini].	vend **s**	[vɑ̃].
donn **e**	[dɔn].	fini **t**	[fini].	vend*	[vɑ̃].
donn **ons**	[dɔnɔ̃].	finiss **ons**	[finisɔ̃].	vend **ons**	[vɑ̃dɔ̃].
donn **ez**	[dɔne].	finiss **ez**	[finise].	vend **ez**	[vɑ̃de].
donn **ent**	[dɔn].	finiss **ent**	[finis].	vend **ent**	[vɑ̃ːd].

* **Vendre** is irregular in this one form. The regular verb **rompre** has rompt, but **vendre** is here given as being more useful for practice.

NOTE.—The pronouns je, tu, il, etc., have been omitted in this paradigm and in some others to economize space in printing. They should be supplied in learning or reciting the paradigms.

57. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense takes the definite article in French, though not commonly in English :

L'homme est mortel.	Man is mortal.
Les hommes sont mortels.	Men are mortal.
Le miel est très doux.	Honey is very sweet.
Le cheval est un animal utile.	**The** horse is a useful animal.

58. Tout. 'All,' 'the whole,' 'every,' = **tout,** with the following forms, which precede the article, when it is present :

m. s., **tout** [tu]. f. s., **toute** [tut]. m. pl., **tous** [tu]. f. pl., **toutes** [tut].

Tout homme, **toute** femme.	Every man, every woman.
Tous les hommes.	All the men.
Toute la journée.	The whole day.

VOCABULARY.

août [u], m., August.
bâtir [bɑtiːr], to build.
bon, bonne [bɔ̃, bɔn], good.
cerise [səriːz], f., cherry.
cerisier [sərizje], m., cherry-tree.
espèce [ɛspɛs], f., species, kind.
fruitier [frɥitje], fruit (adj.).
goût [gu], m., taste.
grimper [grɛ̃pe], to climb.
majorité [maʒɔrite], f., majority.

marchand [marʃɑ̃], m., merchant.
mois [mwɑ], m., month.
mûr [myːr], ripe.
mûrir [myriːr], to ripen.
poire [pwaːr], f., pear.
poirier [pwarje], m., pear-tree.
pomme [pɔm], f., apple.
pommier [pɔmje], m., apple-tree.
prune [pryn], f., plum.
prunier [prynje], m., plum-tree.
quand [kɑ̃], when.
rouge [ruːʒ], red.
septembre [sɛptɑ̃ːbr], m., September.
souvent [suvɑ̃], often.
vendre [vɑ̃ːdr], to sell.
verger [vɛrʒe], m., orchard.
vert [vɛːr], green.
ville [vil], f., town, city.

à la maison, at home. **pour en avoir**, to get some. **en quel mois ?**, in what month ? **au mois d'août**, in the month of August.

EXERCISE XIII.

A. Chez notre oncle à la campagne il y a un verger. Dans ce verger il y a des arbres fruitiers. La majorité des arbres sont des pommiers, et ils donnent des pommes de toute espèce. Il y en a qui mûrissent au mois d'août, et il y en a qui mûrissent au mois de septembre. On ne mange pas toutes les pommes à la maison. On en vend beaucoup aux marchands des villes. Il y a aussi dans le verger des cerisiers, des pruniers et des poiriers. Les cerises sont rouges et ont un bon goût quand elles sont mûres. Les prunes et les poires sont bonnes aussi. Nous les aimons beaucoup, et souvent nous grimpons dans les arbres pour en avoir.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je vends des pommes aux marchands, etc. 2. Est-ce que je vends des pommes aux marchands ?, etc. 3. Je ne vends pas de pommes, etc. 4. Je finis mes leçons, tu finis tes leçons, etc. 5. Est-ce que je bâtis une maison ?, etc. 6. Je ne bâtis pas une maison, etc. 7. J'aime les pommes, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est le verger de votre oncle ? 2. Quels arbres y a-t-il dans son verger ? 3. Quel fruit les pommiers donnent-ils ? 4. Quel fruit est-ce que le prunier donne ? 5. Ces pommes sont-elles mûres ou vertes ? 6. Les pommes ont-elles un bon goût quand elles sont vertes ? 7. En quel mois les prunes mûrissent-elles ? 8. À qui est-ce qu'on vend les cerises ? 9. En quel mois est-ce que votre oncle vend ses pommes ? 10. Ne vendez-vous pas toutes vos poires ? 11.

Aimez-vous les poires? 12. Mange-t-on les poires quand elles sont vertes? 13. Mange-t-on toutes les poires à la maison? 14. En quel mois la pomme mûrit-elle? 15. Pourquoi grimpez-vous dans le pommier de votre oncle? 16. Allons-nous visiter le verger de votre oncle aujourd'hui? 17. Est-ce que vous finissez vos leçons maintenant? 18. Qui bâtit cette maison derrière le verger? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There is a pear-tree in our orchard. 2. There are also apple-trees, plum-trees and cherry-trees. 3. What fruit does the apple-tree bear (*donner*)? 4. What fruit do plum-trees bear? 5. The cherry-tree bears cherries. 6. Are the plums ripe now? 7. In what month do plums ripen? 8. They ripen in the month of September. 9. The apple also ripens in the month of September. 10. The pears on (*de*) these trees are green. 11. There are ripe cherries on that tree. 12. When the apples ripen they are sold. 13. We sell them to the merchants. 14. We do not eat apples when they are green. 15. They have not a good taste. 16. When we finish our lessons we go into the orchard. 17. All the apples are ripening now. 18. I climb into the pear-tree to get pears. 19. We sell the good pears. 20. We give the others to the animals.

LESSON XIV.

59. Partitives. In partitive constructions (§ 36), **de** alone is used:—

1. In a general negation (§ 36, 2):

Il n'a pas **de** plumes.	He has no pens.

2. When an adjective precedes the noun:

Marie a **de** jolies fleurs.	Mary has (some) pretty flowers.
J'ai **de** votre argent.	I have some of your money.
But: J'ai des pommes mûres.	I have (some) ripe apples.

3. Similarly when a noun after an adjective is understood.

De bons rois et **de** mauvais.	Good kings and bad (kings).

4. As in English, in such constructions as the following:

Beaucoup **de** thé.	A great deal of tea (much tea).
Une livre **de** viande.	A pound of meat.
Assez **de** viande.	Enough (of) meat.
Trop **de** pain.	Too much bread.

60. The preposition **de** + a noun forms adjectival phrases:

Une robe de soie.	A silk dress.
La feuille d'érable.	The maple leaf.

61. Observe the following expressions of frequent use, formed from **avoir** + an undetermined noun:

avoir **besoin** [bəzwɛ̃] **de**, be in need of, need.
avoir **chaud** [ʃo], be warm.
avoir **froid** [frwɑ], be cold.
avoir **faim** [fɛ̃], be hungry.
avoir **soif** [swaf], be thirsty.
avoir **sommeil** [sɔmɛːj], be sleepy.
avoir **raison** [rɛzɔ̃], be (in the) right.
avoir **tort** [tɔːr], be (in the) wrong.

VOCABULARY.

abriter [abrite], to shelter.
alors [alɔːr], then.
brise [briːz], f., breeze.
canadien [kanadjɛ̃], Canadian.
chaud [ʃo], m., heat.
chose [ʃoːz], f., thing.
écureuil [ekyrœːj], m., squirrel.
emblème [ɑ̃blɛːm], m., emblem.
érable [erabl], m., maple.
feuille [fœːj], f., leaf.
feuillage [fœjaːʒ], m., foliage.
fournir [furniːr], to furnish.
hêtre [ɛːtr], m., beech.
insecte [ɛ̃sɛkt], m., insect.
intéressant [ɛ̃terɛsɑ̃], interesting.
mauvais [movɛ], bad.
moins [mwɛ̃], less.
national [nasjɔnal], national.
nombreux [nɔ̃brø], numerous.
nourriture [nurityːr], f., food.
oiseau [wazo], m., bird.
ombre [ɔ̃ːbr], f., shade.
orme [ɔrm], m., elm.
parmi [parmi], among.
très [trɛ], very.
utile [ytil], useful.

il fait chaud, it is warm, hot (of weather or temperature).

EXERCISE XIV.

A. Quand nous sommes à la campagne nous allons souvent aux bois. On y trouve beaucoup de choses intéressantes. Il y a là de grands arbres et de petites fleurs. Les arbres abritent beaucoup de petits animaux. Les écureuils et les petits oiseaux trouvent leur nourriture dans les arbres. Les fleurs fournissent de la nourriture aux insectes nombreux. Parmi les arbres nous aimons l'érable. L'érable est un bel arbre et il est très utile. La feuille d'érable est l'emblème national canadien. Il y a d'autres arbres, comme le hêtre et l'orme, qui sont beaux et utiles aussi. Leur feuillage est vert et donne

de l'ombre. Quand il fait chaud nous trouvons souvent à l'ombre une bonne brise, et alors nous avons moins chaud.

B. Continue the following: 1. J'ai de jolies fleurs, etc. 2. Est-ce que j'ai des pommes mûres?, etc. 3. J'ai de bonnes pommes et de mauvaises, etc. 4. J'aime la feuille d'érable, etc. 5. Est-ce que je vends beaucoup de pommes?, etc. 6. J'ai raison, etc. 7. Je n'ai pas tort, etc. 8. Est-ce que j'ai chaud?, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce qu'on trouve dans les bois? 2. Où trouve-t-on de grands arbres? 3. Y a-t-il de petites fleurs dans les bois aussi? 4. Quels animaux les arbres abritent-ils? 5. Les oiseaux ont-ils besoin de nourriture? 6. Où est-ce que les oiseaux trouvent leur nourriture? 7. Où trouvons-nous notre nourriture? 8. À quels petits animaux les fleurs fournissent-elles de la nourriture? 9. Quels arbres trouve-t-on dans les bois? 10. Quels arbres aimez-vous? 11. L'érable est-il un bel arbre? 12. Aimez-vous la feuille d'érable? 13. Trouve-t-on des arbres fruitiers dans les bois? 14. Où est-ce qu'on les trouve? 15. Les arbres des bois sont-ils beaux? 16. Y a-t-il de beaux arbres chez votre oncle? 17. Qu'est-ce que le feuillage des arbres donne? 18. Est-ce qu'il fait chaud aujourd'hui? 19. Avez-vous chaud? 20. Où allons nous quand il fait chaud? 21. Est-ce qu'on a soif quand il fait chaud? 22. Avez-vous soif? Etc., etc.

D. 1. To-day it is hot, and we are going to the woods. 2. There are many interesting things in the woods. 3. One finds there great trees and beautiful flowers. 4. Among the trees there are pretty little animals. 5. The leaves of the trees and the flowers shelter many little insects. 6. These trees are very beautiful and very useful also. 7. The maple is a very fine tree. 8. We love the maple leaf because it is our national emblem. 9. The beech and the elm are useful trees. 10. The foliage of trees gives shade. 11. In the woods behind our house there are large trees and small ones. 12. People like the shade of trees when it is hot. 13. We go into the woods to find shade. 14. The animals in the woods have need of food. 15. The fruits of the trees furnish food to the animals. 16. Many little insects find food in the flowers. 17. When it is hot the animals are thirsty. 18. Then they need water. 19. They find it in the woods. 20. We need water when we are thirsty. 21. People need food when they are hungry.

LESSON XV.

62. Past Participles.

Given.	Finished.	Sold.	Had.	Been.
donné [dɔne].	fini [fini].	vendu [vɑ̃dy].	eu [y].	été [ete].

63. Compound Tenses. They are formed from the past participle along with an auxiliary (usually **avoir,** sometimes **être,** see § 155), as in the following section.

64. The Past Indefinite.

I have given, *or* I gave, etc.	I have finished, *or* I finished, etc.	I have sold, *or* I sold, etc.
j'ai donné [ʒ e dɔne]	j'ai fini [ʒ e fini]	j'ai vendu [ʒ e vɑ̃dy]
tu as donné [ty a dɔne],	tu as fini [ty a fini],	tu as vendu [ty a vɑ̃dy],
etc.	etc.	etc.

I have had, *or* I had, etc.	I have been, *or* I was, etc.
j'ai eu [ʒ e y].	j'ai été [ʒ e ete].
tu as eu [ty az y].	tu as été [ty az ete].
il a eu [il a y].	il a été [il a ete].
etc.	etc.

65. Word Order. The auxiliary is the verb in a compound tense, and all rules of word order apply to it:

Nous ne l'avons pas fini.	We have not finished it.
N'a-t-elle pas été ici?	Has she not been here?

66. Use of Past Indefinite. It denotes not only what has happened or has been happening, as in English, but also what happened (= English past tense):

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
Elle a chanté toute la matinée.	She has been singing all the morning.
Il a été longtemps ici.	He was here for a long time.
J'ai quitté Paris l'hiver passé.	I left Paris last winter.

N.B.—The past indefinite is the ordinary past tense of French. For the past tense of narrative in the literary style, see § 148.

67. Idiomatic Present Indicative. Besides its use in general, as in English, the present indicative is used idiomatically, in certain phrases, to denote what has been and still continues to be:

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?	How long have you been here?
Je suis ici depuis trois jours.	I have been here for three days (*or* for three days past, *or* for the last three days).

VOCABULARY.

acheter [aʃte], to buy.
battre [batr], to beat, thresh.
blé [ble], m., wheat.
contre [kõtr], against, from.
couper [kupe], to cut.
depuis [dəpɥi], since.
fait [fɛ], p.p. *faire*, to do.
farine [farin], f., flour.
froid [frwɑ], m., cold.
germer [ʒɛrme], to sprout.
grandir [grɑ̃diːr], to grow large.
grange [grɑ̃ːʒ], f., barn.
hier [jɛːr], yesterday.
meunier [mønje], m., miller.
morceau [mɔrso], m., piece.
neige [nɛːʒ], f., snow.
paysan [peizɑ̃], m., peasant, farmer.
plante [plɑ̃ːt], f., plant.
protéger [prɔteʒe], to protect.
saison [sɛzõ], f., season.
sec [sɛk], dry.
semer [səme], to sow.
transporter [trɑ̃spɔrte], to carry, bring.

en quelle saison?, in what season?, when?; **au printemps** [o prɛ̃tɑ̃], in spring; **en été** [ɑ̃n ete], in summer; **en automne** [ɑ̃n ɔtɔn], in autumn; **en hiver** [ɑ̃n ivɛːr], in winter.

EXERCISE XV.

A. Voici l'histoire d'un morceau de pain. En automne le paysan a semé le blé, et puis le blé a germé. En hiver la neige a protégé les jeunes plantes contre le froid. Au printemps elles ont grandi. En été le blé a mûri. Les paysans l'ont coupé. Ils l'ont transporté dans la grange, et ils l'ont battu. Le meunier a acheté le blé pour faire de la farine. Il a fourni la farine au boulanger. Le boulanger a fait le pain, et ensuite il l'a vendu. Voilà un morceau de pain sur la table. Il est là depuis hier, et il est très sec.

B. (Oral.) 1. Quelle histoire est-ce que vous racontez? 2. Qui a travaillé pour faire le pain? 3. Qui a semé le blé? 4. En quelle saison l'a-t-il semé? 5. Quand le blé a-t-il germé? 6. Qu'est-ce

que la neige a fait en hiver? 7. En quelle saison est-ce que les plantes ont grandi? 8. Quand le blé a-t-il mûri? 9. Avez-vous coupé le blé? 10. Est-ce que j'ai coupé le blé? 11. Qui a coupé le blé? 12. Où l'ont-ils transporté? 13. Et ensuite qu'est-ce qu'ils ont fait? 14. À qui l'ont-ils vendu? 15. Qu'est-ce que le meunier a fait? 16. Le boulanger qu'a-t-il acheté pour faire le pain? 17. Qui a fourni la farine au boulanger? 18. Avons-nous vendu le pain? 19. Qui l'a vendu? 20. Depuis quand ce morceau de pain est-il sur la table? 21. Pourquoi est-il sec? 22. Depuis quand êtes-vous ici? Etc., etc.

C. 1. This bread is dry. 2. It has been on the table since yesterday. 3. Here is the story of a piece of bread. 4. The farmer sowed the wheat. 5. He sowed it in the autumn. 6. The wheat sprouted. 7. In the winter the snow protected the young plants from the cold. 8. When did they grow large? 9. In spring. 10. When did the wheat ripen? 11. It ripened in summer. 12. Who cut the wheat? 13. Did we bring it into the barn? 14. Did you thresh it? 15. Who bought the wheat? 16. The miller bought it, and made the flour. 17. We are the bakers; we made the bread. 18. Then we sold it to the farmers. 19. Here are two pieces of dry bread. 20. Did you make this bread? 21. Who made it? 22. Our baker made it.

LESSON XVI.

68. Comparatives. Place **plus** = 'more,' **moins** = 'less,' or **aussi** = 'as,' before the adjective, and **que** = 'than' or 'as' after it, to form comparatives:

Il est **plus** grand **que** Jean.	He is tall**er than** John.
Il est **moins** grand **que** Jean.	He is **less** tall **than** (not so t. as) John.
Il est **aussi** grand **que** Jean.	He is **as** tall **as** John.

69. Superlatives. 1. Place the definite article or a possessive adjective before **plus** or **moins** to form superlatives:

Marie est **la plus** jeune de toutes.	Mary is the young**est** of all.
Obs.: **La plus** jeune des deux.	The young**er** of the two.

2. Do not omit the definite article when the superlative follows the noun:

La leçon **la** plus difficile.	The most difficult lesson.
Mes livres **les** plus utiles.	My most useful books.

70. Irregular Comparison. Observe the irregular forms:

bon [bɔ̃], good.	**meilleur** [mɛjœːr], better.	**le meilleur** [lə mɛjœːr], the best.

71. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. They are compared by **plus** and **moins** like adjectives, but **le** in the superlative is invariable.

2. Observe the irregular forms:

bien [bjɛ̃], well.	**mieux** [mjø], better.	**le mieux** [lə mjø], (the) best.
peu [pø], little.	**moins** [mwɛ̃], less.	**le moins** [lə mwɛ̃], (the) least.

72. Present Indicative of *aller*, 'to go' (irreg.).

I go, am going, etc.	We go, are going, etc.
je **vais** [ʒə ve].	nous all**ons** [nuz alɔ̃].
tu **vas** [ty va].	vous all**ez** [vuz ale].
il **va** [il va].	ils **vont** [il vɔ̃].

73. Imperative of *aller*, 'to go.'

va [va], go.	allons [alɔ̃], let us go.	**allez** [ale], go.

VOCABULARY.

année [ane], f., year.
avril [avril], m., April.
carotte [karɔt], f., carrot.
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃], charming.
chou [ʃu], m., cabbage.
chenille [ʃəniːj], f., caterpillar.
côté [kote], m., side.
couleur [kulœːr], f., colour.
déjà [deʒa], already.
dernier, -ière [dɛrnje, -jɛːr], last.
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr], yet.
entre [ɑ̃ːtr], among.
graine [grɛːn], f., seed.
gros, -se [gro, groːs], big.
jardin [ʒardɛ̃], m., garden.
modeste [mɔdɛst], modest.
muguet [mygɛ], m., lily of the valley.
oignon [ɔɲɔ̃], m., onion.
partie [parti], f., part.
peu [pø], m., little.
peut-être [pøt ɛːtr], perhaps.
planter [plɑ̃te], to plant.
pomme de terre [pɔm də tɛːr], f., potato.
pousser [puse], to grow.
probablement [prɔbabləmɑ̃], probably.
reine [rɛːn], f., queen.
réservé [rezɛrve], reserved.
rose [roːz], f., rose.
semaine [səmɛːn], f., week.
terre [tɛːr], f., earth.
toujours [tuʒuːr], still.
tout à fait [tut a fɛ], quite.
tulipe [tylip], f., tulip.

aimer mieux, to like better, prefer; **d'un côté, de l'autre côté**, on the one side, on the other side; **l'année dernière**, last year.

EXERCISE XVI.

A. Nous sommes toujours à la campagne. Allons voir maintenant le jardin. D'un côté il y a des légumes, de l'autre côté il y a des fleurs. Il y a des pommes de terre, des choux, des oignons et des carottes. On a planté les pommes de terre au mois d'avril, et elles sont maintenant en fleurs. On a planté les choux la semaine dernière. Ils ont déjà poussé un peu. Ils vont être probablement meilleurs cette année que l'année dernière. L'année dernière les chenilles en ont mangé beaucoup. On a semé la graine de deux espèces de carottes : des carottes rouges et des carottes blanches. Nous aimons mieux les rouges pour le potage que les blanches. Les oignons sont d'une espèce plus grosse que les oignons de l'année dernière.

Dans la partie du jardin réservée aux fleurs nous trouvons, entre autres, des roses, des tulipes et des muguets. La rose est la reine des fleurs. Elle est peut-être la plus belle de toutes les fleurs. Les tulipes sont très jolies. Elles sont de toutes les couleurs. Le muguet est une petite fleur blanche, très modeste mais tout à fait charmante.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je suis plus grand que Robert, etc. 2. Est-ce que je suis aussi grande que Marie ?, etc. 3. Je suis le meilleur élève de la classe, etc. 4. N'ai-je pas la leçon la plus difficile ?, etc. 5. J'ai vendu mes meilleurs livres, tu as vendu tes, etc. 6. Est-ce que j'aime mieux les fleurs rouges ?, etc. 7. Est-ce que je vais visiter mes parents ?, est-ce que tu vas visiter tes parents ?, etc. 8. Je n'ai pas encore visité mes parents, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce que vous allez voir aujourd'hui ? 2. Qu'y a-t-il de ce côté ? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a de l'autre côté ? 4. Dans quel mois plantez-vous vos choux ? 5. Les choux poussent-ils aussi vite que les pommes de terre ? 6. Vos pommes de terre sont-elles bonnes cette année ? 7. Sont-elles meilleures que l'année dernière ? 8. Sont-elles plus grosses ? 9. Est-ce qu'elles ont un meilleur goût ? 10. Combien d'espèces de carottes y a-t-il dans ce jardin ? 11. Aimez-vous mieux les carottes blanches que les carottes rouges ? 12. Pourquoi ? 13. Quelle est la reine des fleurs ? 14. De quelle couleur les tulipes sont-elles ? 15. De quelle couleur le muguet est-il ? 16. Est-il aussi blanc que la neige ?

17. Quelle est la fleur la plus charmante de votre jardin? 18. Quels sont vos meilleurs légumes? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I am going to see your garden. 2. Your garden is large and fine. 3. What have you planted on this side? 4. Where are the flowers? 5. I planted my potatoes in the month of April. 6. I am going to plant my cabbage this week. 7. The potato is a very useful plant. 8. It is perhaps the most useful of all the vegetables. 9. It is good for men and for animals. 10. Carrots are not so useful. 11. I like the red carrots better than the white. 12. They are better for soup. 13. The white ones are larger, but they are not so good. 14. Now let us go and see the flowers. 15. How beautiful those tulips are! 16. They are finer this year than last year. 17. The lily of the valley and the rose are not yet in flower. 18. Do you like roses better than tulips? 19. Yes, but I like the lily of the valley better than all the other flowers. 20. It is smaller than the others, but more charming. 21. I like your garden very much. 22. I am going to visit it often this summer.

LESSON XVII.

74. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In a compound tense with **avoir** the past participle agrees in gender and number with a direct object which precedes it:

J'ai fini mes leçons.	I have finished my lessons.
Je **les** ai fini**es**.	I have finished them.
Quels **livres** a-t-il acheté**s**?	What books has he bought?

N.B.—Remember that the participle does not agree with **en**, *e.g.*, 'Avez-vous des plumes? Oui, j'en ai acheté hier.' 'Have you any pens? Yes, I bought some yesterday.'

2. When used as an adjective, the past participle agrees like an adjective:

La plume achetée hier.	The pen bought yesterday.

75. Some Relatives. 1. The relative pronouns of most common use are **qui** as subject, and **que** as direct object of a verb:

La dame **qui** chante.	The lady who sings.
Les livres **qui** sont ici.	The books which are here.
Les pommes **que** j'ai achetées.	The apples that I have bought.

2. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French :

Le pain **que** j'ai acheté hier. — The bread I bought yesterday.

VOCABULARY.

banane [banan], f., banana.
car [kar], for.
cher, -ère [ʃɛːr, ʃɛːr], dear.
cuisinière [kɥizinjɛːr], f., cook.
dîner [dine], m., dinner.
douzaine [duzɛn], f., dozen.
franc [frɑ̃], m., franc.
laitue [lɛty], f., lettuce.
marché [marʃe], m., market.
matin [matɛ̃], m., morning.
œillet [œjɛ], m., pink.
oie [wa], f., goose.
orner [ɔrne], to decorate, adorn
payer [pɛje], to pay, pay for.
plusieurs [plyzjœːr], several.
poulet [pulɛ], m., chicken, fowl.
préparer [prepare], to prepare.
quant à [kɑ̃t a], as for, as to.
salade [salad], f., salad.
soir [swaːr], m., evening.
sou [su], m., sou, cent.
train [trɛ̃], m., train, act **of**, etc.
vingt [vɛ̃], twenty.
volaille [vɔlɑːj], f., poultry.

être en train de, to be in the act of, be busy (doing a thing).

je les ai payés vingt [vɛ̃] **sous la douzaine,** I paid twenty cents a dozen for them.

EXERCISE XVII.

A. Nous avons été au marché ce matin. Nous avons acheté plusieurs choses pour ce soir: des légumes, des fleurs, des fruits et de la volaille. Nous allons avoir des amis à dîner. Voici les légumes que nous avons achetés. Il y a des pommes de terre, des carottes et de la laitue. Les carottes sont pour le potage, et la laitue est pour la salade. Voilà, sur la table, les fleurs que nous avons achetées. Il y a des roses et des œillets. Nous les avons achetées pour orner la table. Quant à la volaille, nous avons acheté un poulet et une oie. La volaille n'est pas très chère, car il y en a beaucoup en cette saison. Nous avons payé le poulet vingt sous et l'oie trois francs. La cuisinière est en train de les préparer. Pour le dessert nous avons acheté des pommes et des bananes. Les bananes sont chères. Nous les avons payées vingt sous la douzaine.

B. Continue the following: 1. Voilà les pommes que j'ai achetées, etc. 2. Quelles fleurs ai-je achetées au marché ?, etc.

3. J'ai vendu les pommes qu'on a achetées hier, etc. 4. Est-ce que j'ai été au marché ce matin?, etc. 5. J'ai acheté les livres qui sont sur la table, etc.

Relate the story of Part *A*, using the first singular instead of the first plural.

C. (Oral.) 1. Avez-vous été au marché ce matin? 2. Qu'avez-vous acheté? 3. Pourquoi avez-vous acheté toutes ces choses? 4. Combien d'amis allez-vous avoir à dîner? 5. Montrez-moi les légumes que vous avez achetés. 6. Sont-ils très chers en cette saison? 7. Combien avez-vous payé les pommes de terre que vous avez achetées? 8. Quels autres légumes avez-vous achetés? 9. Où sont-ils? 10. Quelle belle oie! combien l'avez-vous payée? 11. Qu'est-ce que la cuisinière fait maintenant? 12. Où sont les fleurs que vous avez achetées? 13. Quelles espèces de fleurs y a-t-il là? 14. Qu'allons-nous faire de ces fleurs? 15. Les fleurs qu'on a achetées hier les avez-vous encore? 16. Quels fruits allez-vous avoir pour le dessert? 17. Les bananes sont-elles plus chères que les pommes cette année? 18. Combien avez-vous payé ces pommes? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We are going to have some friends to dinner this evening. 2. I have bought some flowers to decorate the table. 3. The cook has been at the market to buy meat and vegetables. 4. Here are the things she brought. 5. What poultry did she buy? 6. Is poultry dear at this season? 7. Here is a goose which she paid three francs for. 8. There are two chickens which she bought. 9. Chickens are not so dear as geese; they are not so large. 10. What pretty flowers! 11. Where did you buy them? 12. I bought them at the market this morning. 13. I bought some yesterday, but they are not so pretty. 14. My flowers are dearer. 15. I paid three francs a dozen for the roses. 16. Last year I bought roses for twenty cents a dozen. 17. Fruit is dear this year. 18. How much did you pay for the bananas? 19. I paid twenty cents a dozen for them. 20. We are going to have a good dinner. 21. The cook is busy preparing it now.

LESSON XVIII.

76. Tenses with *être*. 1. The verb **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 82) and of a few intransitive verbs, of which **aller,** 'to go,' **arriver,** 'to arrive,' and **venir,** 'to come,' are of very frequent use.

2. The past participle of a verb (not reflexive) conjugated with **être** agrees with the subject, thus:

I have arrived, etc.

je suis arrivé(e) [arive].	nous sommes arrivé(e)s [arive].
tu es arrivé(e) [arive].	vous êtes arrivé(e)s [arive].
il (elle) est arrivé(e) [arive].	ils (elles) sont arrivé(e)s [arive].

VOCABULARY.

admirablement [admirabləmɑ̃], admirably.
admirer [admire], to admire.
amuser [amyze], to amuse.
célèbre [selɛːbr], celebrated.
chanter [ʃɑ̃te], to sing.
concert [kɔ̃sɛːr], m., concert.
depuis que [dəpɥi kə], conj., since.
dimanche [dimɑ̃ːʃ], m., Sunday.
édifice [edifis], m., edifice, building.
emplette [ɑ̃plɛt], f., purchase.
entendre [ɑ̃tɑ̃ːdr], to hear.
hôtel de ville [otɛl də vil], m., town-hall.
hier soir [jɛːr swaːr], yesterday evening.
intention [ɛ̃tɑ̃sjɔ̃], f., intention.
jour [ʒuːr], m., day.
lundi [lœ̃di], m., Monday.
magasin [magazɛ̃], m., shop.
mener [məne], to lead, take.
nuit [nɥi], f., night.
partout [partu], everywhere.
prédicateur [predikatœːr], m., preacher.
principal [prɛ̃sipal], principal.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], next.
public [pyblik], public.
rencontre [rɑ̃kɔ̃ːtr], f., meeting.
sermon [sɛrmɔ̃], m., sermon.
songe [sɔ̃ːʒ], m., dream.
théâtre [teɑːtr], m., theatre.
tour [tuːr], m., circuit.
tramway [tramwe], m., street-cars.
venu [vəny], p.p. *venir*, to come.

aller à la rencontre de, to go to meet.
faire le tour de, to go around.

EXERCISE XVIII.

A. Nos parents de la campagne sont chez nous depuis quatre jours. Ils sont arrivés lundi dernier par le chemin de fer. Nous sommes allés à la gare à leur rencontre. Depuis qu'ils

sont ici nous les menons partout pour les amuser. Nous montons en tramway et nous faisons le tour de la ville. Nous entrons dans les grands magasins pour faire des emplettes. Nous avons visité les principaux édifices publics. Nous avons admiré les églises et l'hôtel de ville. Hier soir nous avons été au théâtre. On y a joué le "Songe d'une nuit d'été" de Shakespeare. Nous l'avons beaucoup admiré. Nous avons été aussi à un concert. On y a chanté admirablement. Dimanche prochain nous avons l'intention d'aller à l'église pour entendre un sermon par un des plus célèbres prédicateurs de la ville.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je suis arrivé hier, etc. 2. Je (f.) suis venue ce matin, etc. 3. Est-ce que je ne suis pas allé à la gare?, etc. 4. Est-ce que je ne suis-je pas allée à la rencontre de mes amies?, est-ce que tu n'es pas allée à la rencontre de tes amies?, etc. 5. Je fais le tour de la ville, etc. 6. Je suis entré dans les magasins, etc. 7. Je n'ai pas été au théâtre, etc. 8. J'ai l'intention d'aller à l'église, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui est chez vous? 2. Vos parents sont-ils toujours chez vous? 3. Depuis quand sont-ils chez vous? 4. Quand est-ce qu'ils sont arrivés? 5. Votre tante est-elle venue ce matin? 6. Qui est allé à sa rencontre? 7. L'avez-vous trouvée à la gare? 8. Que faites-vous pour amuser vos amis? 9. Comment faites-vous le tour de la ville? 10. Sont-ils entrés dans les magasins? 11. Dans quels magasins sont-ils entrés? 12. Quels sont les plus grands édifices de votre ville? 13. Votre tante a-t-elle admiré les églises? 14. Où est-elle allée hier soir? 15. Qu'est-ce qu'on va jouer au théâtre ce soir? 16. Aime-t-elle mieux aller au concert qu'au théâtre? 17. A-t-elle l'intention de retourner bientôt à la campagne? 18. Vos parents où sont-ils allés dimanche dernier? 19. Où avez-vous l'intention d'aller l'été prochain? Etc., etc.

D. 1. My uncle and aunt are at our house. 2. They arrived this morning. 3. They came by the railway. 4. My sister went to meet them at the station. 5. They came from the station in a carriage. 6. They soon arrived at our house. 7. To-day we took them into the city to amuse them. 8. First we went around the city in the street-cars. 9. Then my aunt went to one of the large shops to make purchases. 10. To-morrow we are going to visit the largest churches. 11. They

admire very much the public buildings of the city. 12. We are going to the concert this evening, perhaps. 13. We went to the theatre yesterday evening. 14. My aunt did not go (*y*); she does not like the theatre. 15. I always go (*y*) when they play Shakespeare's "Midsummer Night's Dream." 16. I admire it very much. 17. The churches of this city are very fine. 18. My aunt intends to go to church next Sunday to hear a sermon. 19. Next Monday my uncle and aunt return to the country. 20. They admire the city, but they like the country better.

LESSON XIX.

77. Pronoun Objects. 1. The personal pronoun has, for the indirect object of the third person, the following forms:

lui [lɥi], (to, for) him, (to, for) her. **leur** [lœːr], (to, for) them.

2. **Lui** and **leur** precede the verb (§ 30), but follow **le, la, les**:

Nous **lui** parlons.	We speak to him (to her).
Je donne une rose à Marie.	I am giving Mary a rose.
Je **la lui** donne.	I give her it (it to her).
Je donne mes livres aux enfants.	I give the children my books.
Je **les leur** donne.	I give them (to) them.

78. Observe the following orthographical peculiarities:

1. **commencer, nous commençons**—stem **c** [s] becomes **ç** [s] before **o** of ending (cf. § 5, 4).

2. **manger, nous mangeons**—stem **g** [ʒ] becomes **ge** [ʒ] before **o** of ending (cf. § 19, 2).

3. **mener, je mène** [mɛn], **tu mènes, il mène, ils mènent**—stem **e** [ə] becomes **è** [ɛ] in most verbs when ending is **e** mute (cf. § 12, 1, n.).

Vocabulary.

accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe], to accompany.
article [artikl], m., article.
avoir [avwaːr], to have, get.
bonbon [bɔ̃bɔ̃], m., bonbon, candy.
chapelier [ʃapəlje], m., hatter.
chaussures [ʃosyːr], f. pl., boots, shoes.
confiseur [kɔ̃fizœːr], m., confectioner.
couru [kury], p.p. *courir*, to run (about).

demander [dəmɑ̃de], to ask (for).
dentelle [dɑ̃tɛl], f., lace.
dollar [dɔlaːr], m., dollar.
examiner [egzamine], to examine.
fatigué [fatige], tired.
faux-col [fo kɔl], m., collar.
à la fin [a la fɛ̃], at last, finally.
manchette [mɑ̃ʃɛt], f., cuff.
même [mɛːm], same.
montrer [mɔ̃tre], to show.
mouchoir [muʃwaːr], m., handkerchief.
nouveauté [nuvote], f., novelty.
paille [pɑːj], f., straw.
paire [pɛːr], f., pair.
prix [pri], m., price.
soulier [sulje], m., shoe.
toilette [twalɛt], f., toilet.

à bon marché, cheap. **magasin de nouveautés**, dry-goods store.
aller faire des emplettes, to go shopping.

EXERCISE XIX.

A. Que nous sommes fatigués ! Nous avons couru beaucoup aujourd'hui. J'ai accompagné mon cousin chez plusieurs marchands pour avoir des articles de toilette. D'abord nous sommes entrés chez le chapelier. Mon cousin a demandé un chapeau de paille. Le chapelier lui a montré un très joli chapeau à un dollar, que mon cousin a acheté. J'en ai acheté un aussi au même prix. Ensuite nous sommes allés chez le marchand de chaussures où nous avons examiné plusieurs paires de souliers. Mais nous n'en avons pas acheté. Puis nous sommes entrés dans un grand magasin de nouveautés. Mon cousin y a demandé des faux-cols et des manchettes. On lui en a montré à très bon marché, et il en a acheté. Nous y avons acheté aussi des mouchoirs pour mon oncle et de la dentelle pour ma tante. À la fin nous sommes entrés chez un confiseur où nous avons acheté pour mes cousines des bonbons, que nous leur avons donnés.

B. Continue the following: 1. Qu'est-ce que je lui donne?, etc. 2. Je parle à mes amis, je leur parle ; tu parles à tes amis, tu leur parles, etc. 3. Voici une plume ; je la lui donne, etc. 4. Voici des bonbons ; je ne les leur donne pas, etc. 5. Est-ce que je ne mange pas beaucoup de bonbons?, etc. 6. Je commence mes leçons, etc. 7. Est-ce que je mène mon cousin chez le confiseur?, est-ce que tu mènes ton cousin, etc.

Relate part *A*, using 'ma tante' and 'elle' as subject, and changing 'cousin' to 'cousine.'

C. (Oral.) 1. Votre oncle est-il fatigué? 2. Pourquoi? 3. Est-ce que votre frère l'a accompagné partout? 4. Où

sont-ils entrés d'abord? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'on trouve chez le chapelier? 6. Votre frère qu'a-t-il demandé chez le chapelier? 7. Quels chapeaux le chapelier lui a-t-il montrés? 8. Qui les leur a montrés? 9. Combien votre frère a-t-il payé le chapeau? 10. Où sont-ils allés ensuite? 11. Qu'est ce que le marchand de chaussures leur a montré? 12. Les souliers de ce marchand sont-ils chers ou bon marché? 13. Votre oncle a-t-il acheté les souliers que le marchand lui a montrés? 14. Votre tante et votre sœur qu'est-ce qu'elles ont acheté dans le magasin de nouveautés? 15. Pour qui est la dentelle que votre tante a achetée? 16. Est-ce qu'elle la lui a donnée? 17. Et pour qui sont les bonbons? 18. Quand est-ce qu'elles vont les leur donner? 19. Mangeons-nous des bonbons au dessert? 20. Où est-ce qu'on achète les bonbons? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We are going shopping again to-day. 2. My relatives are buying a great many things. 3. They always buy articles of dress when they are here. 4. I take them to all the large dry-goods stores. 5. They bought several articles yesterday. 6. First I went with my uncle to a hatter's. 7. The hatter showed him several straw hats. 8. My uncle bought one at a dollar. 9. Afterwards I went with my cousin to buy shoes. 10. The shop-keeper showed him some. 11. He bought two pairs. 12. Then the shop-keeper gave them to him, and he brought them home. 13. My aunt has been to a dry-goods store to buy handkerchiefs. 14. The shop-keeper showed her handkerchiefs at a dollar a dozen. 15. She bought some of them for my uncle. 16. Finally my aunt and my cousin (f.) went to a confectioner's. 17. The confectioner showed them several kinds of bonbons. 18. Who paid for the bonbons? 19. My cousin paid for them. 20. They are for her little sister, and she is going to give them to her after dinner.

LESSON XX.

79. Personal Pronoun Objects. The remaining forms serve both as direct and indirect object of verbs (for elision, see §19):

me [mə], me, to (for) me.

te [tə], thee, to (for) thee.

se [sə], himself, herself, itself, one's self, to (for) himself, etc.

nous [nu], us, to (for) us.

vous [vu], you, to (for) you.

se [sə], themselves, to (for) themselves.

80. Pronominal Adverbs. They are used with verbs, and are equivalent to a preposition + a pronoun, standing usually for things:

y = **à** (dans, sur, etc.) + a pronoun, means 'to (at, on, in, into, etc.) it or them,' 'there.'

en = **de** + a pronoun, means 'of (from, etc.) it or them,' 'some of it,' 'some of them,' 'some,' 'any,' 'thence,' 'from there.'

81. Position. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs, coming before the verb, are arranged thus:

me, **te**, **se**, **nous**, **vous**	before	**le**, **la**, **les**	before	**lui**, **leur**	before	**y**	before **en**.

Il **me** donne les plumes.	He gives me the pens.
Il **me les** donne.	He gives them to me.
Il **les leur** donne.	He gives them to them.
Il **nous en** donne.	He gives us some of it.
Il **y en** a.	There is (are) some.

82. Reflexive Verb. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs, *e.g.*, **se flatter**, to 'flatter one's self,' are formed with **être**:

Present Indicative.		Past Indefinite.	
I flatter myself, etc.		**I (have)** flattered myself, etc.	
je **me** flatte	[ʒə mə flat].	je **me suis**	flatté(e) [flate].
tu **te** flattes	[ty tə flat].	tu **t'es**	
il (elle) **se** flatte	[il sə flat].	il (elle) **s'est**	
nous **nous** flattons	[nu nu flatõ].	nous **nous sommes**	flatté(e)s [flate].
vous **vous** flattez	[vu vu flate].	vous **vous êtes**	
ils (elles) **se** flattent	[il sə flat].	ils(elles) **se sont**	

83. Agreement. The past participle agrees with a preceding reflexive object, unless the object be indirect:

Elles **se** sont flatté**es**.	They have flattered themselves.
But: Ils se sont lavé les mains.	They have washed their hands.

84. Observe the possessive force of the article, or of the article with an indirect object, when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor:

Je vous donne **la** main.	I give you my hand.
La bonne **leur** lave **les** mains.	The maid is washing their hands.
Ils **se** lavent **les** mains.	They are washing their hands.

VOCABULARY.

après [aprɛ], after.
armoire [armwaːr], f., cupboard, clothes-press.
bonjour [bɔ̃ʒuːr], m., good morning.
brosse [brɔs], f., brush.
brosser [brɔse], to brush.
chercher [ʃɛrʃe], to seek, look for.
cheveux [ʃəvø], m. pl., hair.
déjeuner [deʒøne], m., breakfast.
dent [dɑ̃], f., tooth.
descendre [desɑ̃ːdr], to descend, go down (stairs).
dire [diːr], to say, tell.
dormir [dɔrmiːr], to sleep.
figure [figyːr], f., face.
gilet [ʒilɛ], m., vest, waistcoat.
habiller [abije], to dress.
habit [abi], m., coat.
instant [ɛ̃stɑ̃], m., instant.
laver [lave], to wash.
main [mɛ̃], f., hand.
mère [mɛːr], f., mother.
mettre [mɛtr], to put, place.
peigne [pɛːɲ], m., comb.
père [pɛːr], m., father.
prêt [prɛ], ready.
se lever [ləve], to rise.
se promener [prɔmne], to go for a walk, drive, etc.
savon [savɔ̃], m., soap.
serviette [sɛrvjɛt], f., towel.
temps [tɑ̃], m., time.

tout de suite [tu də sɥit], at once.
à l'instant [a l ɛ̃stɑ̃], at once, instantly.
donner la main à, to shake hands with.
je suis levé, I am up.

EXERCISE XX.

A. Comme nous avons bien dormi ! Il est temps de se lever maintenant. Nous nous levons tout de suite, et nous faisons notre toilette. Je vais me laver les mains et la figure, mais où sont l'eau et le savon ?—Les voici ; je vais vous les donner.—Maintenant, où est la serviette ?—La voici.—Je cherche maintenant mes brosses et mon peigne.—Les voilà sur la table de toilette.—Je me brosse les cheveux et les dents. Je vais mettre mon gilet et mon habit, mais où sont-ils ?—Les voici dans l'armoire, je vous les donne à l'instant.—Me voilà prêt. Êtes-vous prêt aussi ?—Oui, me voilà habillé.—Nous descendons

à la salle à manger. Mon père et ma mère y sont déjà. Nous allons leur dire bonjour. Après le déjeuner nous allons nous promener.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je me lève, etc. 2. Je me suis lavé les mains, etc. 3. Voilà du savon; je lui en donne, etc. 4. Je leur en ai donné, etc. 5. Me voilà prêt, te voilà prêt, etc. 6. Me voilà prête, te voilà prête, etc. 7. Je descends à la salle à manger, etc. 8. Je me suis promené hier, tu t'es, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Avez-vous bien dormi? 2. Est-il temps de se lever maintenant? 3. Allez-vous vous lever tout de suite? 4. Qui se lave les mains? 5. Est-ce que Jean et Robert se sont lavé les mains? 6. Allez-vous leur donner de l'eau et du savon? 7. Qui en donne aux autres enfants? 8. En donne-t-elle aussi à Marie? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous cherchez? 10. Qui est-ce qui va me donner la serviette et les brosses? 11. Où est mon gilet? 12. Qui vous a donné ce beau gilet? 13. Est-ce que les enfants sont habillés? 14. Que font-ils ensuite? 15. Qui est dans la salle à manger? 16. Les enfants donnent-ils la main à leur père? 17. Est-ce que je lui donne la main aussi? 18. Les enfants que vont-ils faire après le déjeuner? 19. Ne sont-ils pas encore prêts? 20. Où est-ce que vous vous êtes promenés hier? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Have you slept well? 2. Yes, and it is time to rise now. 3. I rise, you rise, we rise, we are up. 4. Now I make my toilet. 5. I am washing my hands and my face. 6. You have already washed your hands and your face. 7. I give you your comb and brushes. 8. I give you them. 9. You are brushing your hair. 10. I brush my teeth. 11. Have you brushed your teeth yet? 12. You need your vest and coat now. 13. Why do you not give me them? 14. There they are in the clothes-press. 15. I am going to give you them at once. 16. We are ready now, and we are going down stairs. 17. We shake hands with our father and mother. 18. They shake hands with us. 19. We shake hands with each other. 20. They are going for a walk in the garden after breakfast. 21. We are going for a walk there too.

LESSON XXI.

85. Imperfect Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I was giving, etc.		I was finishing, etc.		I was selling, etc.	
donn **ais**	[dɔnɛ].	finiss **ais**	[finisɛ].	vend **ais**	[vɑ̃dɛ].
donn **ais**	[dɔnɛ].	finiss **ais**	[finisɛ].	vend **ais**	[vɑ̃dɛ].
donn **ait**	[dɔnɛ].	finiss **ait**	[finisɛ].	vend **ait**	[vɑ̃dɛ].
donn **ions**	[dɔnjɔ̃].	finiss **ions**	[finisjɔ̃].	vend **ions**	[vɑ̃djɔ̃].
donn **iez**	[dɔnje].	finiss **iez**	[finisje].	vend **iez**	[vɑ̃dje].
donn **aient**	[dɔnɛ].	finiss **aient**	[finisɛ].	vend **aient**	[vɑ̃dɛ].

86. Imperfect Indicative of *avoir, être.*

I had, used to have, etc.		I was, used to be, etc.	
av **ais** [avɛ].	av **ions** [avjɔ̃].	ét **ais** [etɛ].	ét **ions** [etjɔ̃].
av **ais** [avɛ].	av **iez** [avje].	ét **ais** [etɛ].	ét **iez** [etje].
av **ait** [avɛ].	av **aient** [avɛ].	ét **ait** [etɛ].	ét **aient** [etɛ].

To form the Pluperfect tense, add a past participle, see § 63.

87. Use of Imperfect. 1. It denotes what used to happen or continued to happen:

Nous **parlions** souvent de cela.	We often used to speak of that.
Mon oncle **était** très vieux.	My uncle was very old.
Il **allait** souvent à pied à la ville.	He would often walk to town.

2. It denotes what was happening when something else happened or was happening:

On **chantait** quand je suis arrivé.	They were singing when I arrived.
Il **parlait** pendant que nous chantions.	He was speaking while we sang (were singing).

88. Imperfect of *faire* (irreg.).

I was doing, etc.

je fais **ais** [ʒə fəzɛ].	nous fais **ions** [nu fəzjɔ̃].
tu fais **ais** [ty fəzɛ].	vous fais **iez** [vu fəzje].
il fais **ait** [il fəzɛ].	ils fais **aient** [il fəzɛ].

89. For imperfect of **commencer, manger,** cf. §§ 78, 156.

e commençais [ʒə kɔmɑ̃sɛ], etc. je mangeais [mɑ̃ʒɛ], etc.

EXERCISE XXI.

[The vocabularies for this and the remaining exercises will be found at the end of the volume.]

A. Nous avons été à l'église ce matin. Quand nous sommes arrivés on chantait déjà le premier cantique. Il y avait beaucoup de monde, et nous avons trouvé un banc avec difficulté. Le pasteur a lu *(read)* un chapitre des proverbes. Tout le monde écoutait attentivement pendant la lecture du chapitre. Ensuite le pasteur a prié Dieu, et on a chanté des versets d'un autre cantique. Après cela le pasteur a choisi comme texte un verset du "Sermon sur la montagne." Voici le texte qu'il a choisi: "Tout arbre qui est bon porte de bons fruits; mais un mauvais arbre porte de mauvais fruits." Le pasteur l'a expliqué, et en a tiré de bonnes leçons. Il a comparé les hommes avec les arbres. Le mérite des hommes consiste dans leurs bonnes actions, comme le mérite des arbres dans leurs bons fruits. Ce sermon a été un encouragement à faire le bien. Le sermon fini, on a fait la quête, on a chanté encore et le pasteur a donné la bénédiction.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je chantais le premier cantique, etc. 2. J'avais déjà chanté le premier cantique, etc. 3. Le pasteur priait Dieu quand je suis arrivé, le pasteur, etc., quand tu, etc. 4. Je comparais les hommes avec les arbres, etc. 5. Est-ce que je faisais la quête?, etc. 6. Est-ce que je ne finissais pas mes leçons?, est-ce que tu . . . tes leçons?, etc. 7. À qui est-ce que je vendais mes pommes?, à qui est-ce que tu . . . tes pommes?, etc. 8. Y avait-il beaucoup de plumes dans ma boîte?, dans ta boîte, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où avez-vous été ce matin? 2. Y avait-il beaucoup de monde? 3. Que faisait-on quand vous êtes entrés? 4. Qu'est-ce que le pasteur a fait après cela? 5. Est-ce que nous écoutions pendant la lecture du chapitre? 6. Votre tante écoutait-elle attentivement aussi? 7. Tout le monde écoutait-il attentivement? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'on faisait pendant que le pasteur priait Dieu? 9. Et après cela qu'est-ce que le pasteur a fait? 10. Quel était le texte qu'il a choisi? 11. Le sermon était-il intéressant? 12. Qui a expliqué le texte? 13. Quels fruits les bons arbres portent-ils? 14. Et les mauvais arbres quels fruits portent-ils? 15. Qu'est-ce qu'on a fait après le sermon? 16. Est-ce qu'on chantait pendant qu'on

faisait la quête? 17. Qui a donné la bénédiction? 18. Que faisait-on quand vous êtes arrivé chez vous? 19. Alliez-vous souvent à l'église quand vous étiez à la campagne? 20. Votre vieil oncle allait-il à l'église tous les dimanches? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I often used to go to church when I was in the country. 2. My relatives used to go (*y*) every Sunday. 3. My old uncle used to go (*y*) in his carriage. 4. I went to church last Sunday. 5. While I was at church my brother was taking a walk on the mountain. 6. There were a great many people in the little church. 7. There were people everywhere, in the seats and at the door. 8. I met one of my cousins at the door. 9. When we went in the pastor was finishing the reading of the chapter. 10. They (*on*) had already sung and prayed. 11. Then they sang two verses of another hymn, and the pastor began the sermon. 12. What was the text? 13. The text was a verse from the "Sermon on the mount." 14. While the pastor was speaking, everybody listened attentively. 15. He finished the sermon, and then the collection was taken up. 16. While they were taking up the collection, the pastor read some verses. 17. We sang again, and after the last hymn the pastor pronounced the benediction. 18. As I was going home I met my brother. 19. We were hungry when we arrived at the house. 20. My uncle had already arrived, and we had a good dinner.

LESSON XXII.

90. Future Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I shall give, etc.		I shall finish, etc.		I shall sell, etc.	
donner **ai**	[dɔnəre].	finir **ai**	[finire].	vendr **ai**	[vɑ̃dre].
donner **as**	[dɔnəra].	finir **as**	[finira].	vendr **as**	[vɑ̃dra].
donner **a**	[dɔnəra].	finir **a**	[finira].	vendr **a**	[vɑ̃dra].
donner **ons**	[dɔnərɔ̃].	finir **ons**	[finirɔ̃].	vendr **ons**	[vɑ̃drɔ̃].
donner **ez**	[dɔnəre].	finir **ez**	[finire].	vendr **ez**	[vɑ̃dre].
donner **ont**	[dɔnərɔ̃].	finir **ont**	[finirɔ̃].	vendr **ont**	[vɑ̃drɔ̃].

91. Future Indicative of *avoir, être.*

I shall have, etc.				I shall be, etc.			
aur **ai**	[ɔre].	aur **ons**	[ɔrɔ̃].	ser **ai**	[səre].	ser **ons**	[sərɔ̃].
aur **as**	[ɔra].	aur **ez**	[ɔre].	ser **as**	[səra].	ser **ez**	[səre].
aur **a**	[ɔra].	aur **ont**	[ɔrɔ̃].	ser **a**	[səra].	ser **ont**	[sərɔ̃].

92. Future Indicative of *aller* (irreg.), and *faire* (irreg.).

I shall go, etc.		I shall do, etc.	
ir **ai** [ire].	ir **ons** [irõ].	fer **ai** [fəre].	fer **ons** [fərõ].
ir **as** [ira].	ir **ez** [ire].	fer **as** [fəra].	fer **ez** [fəre].
ir **a** [ira].	ir **ont** [irõ].	fer **a** [fəra].	fer **ont** [fərõ].

93. For the future of **lever** and **acheter**, cf. § 78, 3:

je lèverai [lɛvəre], etc. j'achèterai [aʃɛtəre], etc.

94. Use of Future. It is used in general as in English, but observe its use in a subordinate sentence, when futurity is implied:

Je lui parlerai quand il **arrivera**. I shall speak to him when he **comes**.

EXERCISE XXII.

A. Il est déjà tard. Maintenant nous allons nous coucher. Nous avons fait nos plans pour demain. Nous nous lèverons de bonne heure. Le déjeuner sera prêt quand nous nous lèverons, et nous sortirons bientôt après. S'il fait beau temps, nous irons à pied, mais s'il fait mauvais temps, nous prendrons le tramway. Nous passerons d'abord chez la modiste. Si nos chapeaux ne sont pas prêts, nous attendrons un peu. Mais ils seront prêts, parce que je les ai vus hier, et ils étaient bien avancés. Avant midi nous serons chez la couturière pour essayer nos robes. Nous y resterons probablement une heure. Alors nous irons prendre une glace au café. Ensuite nous entrerons dans un magasin de nouveautés pour acheter de la dentelle et des rubans. Puis nous monterons encore dans le tramway, et nous serons de retour de bonne heure dans l'après-midi, parce que nous attendons des amies. Si nous ne sommes pas trop fatiguées, nous irons le soir au théâtre ou au concert. Si nous nous amusons bien, nous ne serons pas chez nous avant minuit.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je vais me coucher, etc. 2. Je me lèverai de bonne heure demain, etc. 3. Est-ce que je sortirai après le déjeuner?, etc. 4. Est-ce que j'achèterai des rubans?, etc. 5. J'attendrai au café, etc. 6. Est-ce que je ne serai pas de retour de bonne heure?, etc. 7. Si je suis

fatiguée, je ne sortirai pas, si tu, etc. 8. S'il fait beau temps demain, j'irai en ville, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Pour quand faites-vous vos plans? 2. Sortirez-vous demain s'il fait beau temps? 3. Que ferez-vous s'il fait mauvais temps? 4. Vous lèverez-vous de bonne heure? 5. Le déjeuner sera-t-il prêt? 6. Qu'est-ce que vous ferez après le déjeuner? 7. Irez-vous à pied ou dans le tramway? 8. Qui va vous accompagner? 9. Où irez-vous d'abord? 10. Votre sœur ira-t-elle aussi chez la modiste? 11. Qu'est-ce que vous ferez si votre chapeau n'est pas prêt? 12. Nous attendrez-vous chez la modiste ou au café? 13. Pourquoi allez-vous chez la couturière? 14. Quand y serez-vous? 15. Irez-vous au café ensuite? 16. Qu'est-ce que vous achèterez au magasin de nouveautés? 17. Quand serez-vous de retour? 18. Vos amies seront-elles chez vous? 19. Où allez-vous le soir? 20. Quand serez-vous de retour? Etc., etc.

D. 1. After (the) dinner I shall make my plans for to-morrow. 2. Then I shall go to bed. 3. To-morrow I shall rise early. 4. After (the) breakfast I shall go out if it is fine. 5. My sister will go out too. 6. We shall take the street-cars if it is not fine. 7. First I shall go to the milliner's. 8. I shall wait for my sister there. 9. Our hats will probably be ready. 10. They were well advanced yesterday. 11. After that we shall go to the dressmaker's. 12. We shall remain an hour there to try on our dresses. 13. If we have (the) time we shall probably go to the café. 14. What shall you do next? 15. I shall go to the dry-goods store to buy some ribbons. 16. My sister will return home. 17. Some friends will be waiting for her there. 18. I shall go to the concert in the evening with my brother if I am not too tired. 19. My sister will stay at home with my mother. 20. They will expect us before midnight.

LESSON XXIII.

95. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns already given are used as subject or object with the verb, and are hence called 'conjunctive.' The following forms, not being immediately connected with a verb, are called **'disjunctive'**:

moi [mwa], I, me.	**nous** [nu], we, us.
toi [twa], thou, thee, you.	**vous** [vu], you.
lui [lɥi], he, him.	**eux** [ø], they (m.), them (m.).
elle [ɛl], she, her.	**elles** [ɛl], they (f.), them (f.).

96. The following are some of their uses :—

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là ?—**Moi** (**eux**, **elles**).	Who is there ?—I (they).

2. After a preposition :

Pour **elles**; avec **moi**; sans **eux**.	For them; with me; without them.

3. As logical subject after **ce + être**:

C'est **moi**, c'est **toi**.	It is I, it is thou (you).
C'est **lui**, c'est **elle**.	It is he, it is she.
C'est **nous**, c'est **vous**.	It is we, it is you.
Ce sont **eux**, ce sont **elles**.	It is they (m.), it is they (f.).

97. Hitherto in the exercises **il(s)**, **elle(s)**, standing before a verb as subject, have been used for 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they' (§40). When the logical subject follows the verb **être**, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they' = **ce**, as representative subject, in cases like the following:

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
C'est nous, **ce** sont eux.	It is we, it is they.
C'est un homme célèbre.	He is a celebrated man.
C'est une jolie dame.	She is a pretty lady.
Ce sont des amis de Jean.	They are friends of John.
Ce sont mes meilleures amies.	They are my best friends.
C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	It is Monday to-day (to-day is, etc.).
C'est à nous qu'il parle.	It is to us that he is speaking.
C'est ici qu'il demeure.	It is here that he lives (he lives here).

EXERCISE XXIII.

NOTE.—Before doing this exercise learn the present indicative of *voir*, 'to see,' §124, and its past participle *vu*, 'seen.'

A. Nous irons en ville à pied ce matin, n'est-ce pas ?—Oh oui, il fait beau, et nous causerons en route. Qui est ce monsieur qui est là-bas de l'autre côté de la rue ?—C'est un de nos anciens voisins. Il demeure à présent dans une autre

rue.—Voilà un autre monsieur qui attend le tramway; c'est votre professeur de français, n'est-ce pas?—Oui, c'est lui. Il va donner probablement une leçon.—Voilà maintenant le tramway qui passe. Avez-vous vu ces deux messieurs qui nous ont salués?—Oui, je les ai vus. Ce sont les messieurs que nous avons rencontrés l'autre soir.—Voyez-vous cette dame qui monte en voiture? C'est l'amie de votre mère, n'est-ce pas?—Non, ce n'est pas elle. L'amie de ma mère est plus grande.—Qui est ce monsieur qui approche? Il va nous parler, n'est-ce pas?—Non, ce n'est pas à nous qu'il va parler, mais à ce monsieur qui est derrière nous.—Voilà encore un autre monsieur qui vous salue.—Ce n'est pas moi qu'il salue, c'est vous.—Mais non, c'est bien vous. Il m'est inconnu. C'est la première fois que je le vois.—Nous voici arrivés maintenant. C'est ici que vous alliez entrer pour acheter vos gants.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je vais donner une leçon, n'est-ce pas?, etc. 2. C'est ici que je demeure, etc. 3. C'est moi qui vais en ville, c'est toi qui vas en ville, etc. 4. J'irai à pied, etc. 5. Je vois un monsieur qui monte en voiture, tu vois, etc. 6. Ce n'est pas moi qu'il a salué, ce n'est pas toi, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est-ce que vous allez ce matin? 2. Allez-vous à pied ou en voiture? 3. Qu'est-ce que nous ferons en route pour nous amuser? 4. Qui est ce vieux monsieur là-bas? 5. Où est-ce qu'il demeure à présent? 6. Voilà un monsieur qui attend le tramway; qui est-ce? 7. Voyez-vous ces messieurs qui nous saluent? 8. Ce sont des amis de votre père, n'est-ce pas? 9. Qui est cette dame qui se promène en voiture? 10. Quand est-ce que je l'ai vue? 11. Est-ce bien elle? 12. Ce monsieur qui approche est votre voisin, n'est-ce pas? 13. Est-ce moi qu'il a salué? 14. Qui est-ce que vous avez salué devant l'hôtel de ville? 15. Est-ce un de vos anciens amis? 16. Est-ce ici que vous allez acheter vos gants? 17. N'est-ce pas dans cet autre magasin là-bas? 18. Est-ce la première fois que vous allez dans ce magasin? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We are going down town on foot. 2. We are chatting on the way. 3. We see a gentleman on the other side of the street. 4. He is one of my old neighbours. 5. He lived on the other side of the street. 6. He is your old French teacher, is he not? 7. No, he is an old merchant.

8. A carriage passes next. 9. Who are those two gentlemen in the carriage who bowed to us? 10. They are the gentlemen we met yesterday evening. 11. Was it I that they bowed to? 12. Who bowed to them, you or I? 13. I see a lady (who is) waiting for the street-cars. 14. She is a friend of your family, is she not? 15. She is a friend of my mother. 16. Do you see that gentleman who is approaching? 17. Yes, who is it? 18. He is a celebrated general who lives in this city. 19. Is it here that you buy your gloves? 20. No, it is in that large shop over yonder.

LESSON XXIV.

98. Impersonal Verbs. They are conjugated in the third person singular only, with the subject **il** = 'it,' used indefinitely and absolutely. Among such are verbs describing natural phenomena, as in English:

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait beau temps.	It is fine (weather).
Il pleut, il pleuvait.	It is raining, it was raining.
Il a plu, il pleuvra.	It has rained, it will rain.
Il neige, il a neigé.	It is snowing, it has snowed.
Il fait chaud, il fait du vent.	It is hot, it is windy.

EXERCISE XXIV.

A. C'est mardi dernier que nous avons fait notre pique-nique. Nous nous sommes levés presque au lever du soleil. La première question a été: quel temps fera-t-il? Le temps était couvert, et il faisait très lourd. Il y avait de gros nuages à l'ouest, et le tonnerre grondait déjà. Il a fait des éclairs, et après un grand coup de tonnerre la pluie a commencé. Il a plu pendant une heure. Ensuite le soleil s'est montré, et un bon vent a chassé les nuages. Bientôt il a fait très beau, et nous sommes partis. Le pique-nique a eu lieu dans les bois au bord du lac. Nous avions l'intention de nous promener en bateau, mais il faisait du vent, et il y avait des vagues. C'est pourquoi nous ne sommes pas allés sur l'eau. Il a fait chaud, mais nous étions à l'ombre, et un vent frais nous arrivait du lac. Vers midi nous avons mangé notre goûter. Dans l'après-

midi nous avons joué et chanté. Avant le coucher du soleil nous sommes arrivés chez nous.

B. Commit to memory:

La semaine au lundi commence,
Et mardi l'ouvrage avance,
Ensuite vient le mercredi,
Le jeudi, puis le vendredi;
Le samedi comble nos vœux,
Et le dimanche nous prions Dieu.

C. (Oral.) 1. Aimez-vous les pique-niques? 2. Quand avez-vous fait votre pique-nique cette année? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'on demande quand on va partir? 4. Quel temps faisait-il quand vous vous êtes levés? 5. Est-ce qu'il a fait des éclairs? 6. Est-ce qu'il a plu? 7. Quand la pluie a-t-elle commencé? 8. Pendant combien de temps est-ce qu'il a plu? 9. Quel temps faisait-il quand vous êtes partis? 10. Où votre pique-nique a-t-il eu lieu? 11. Êtes-vous allés sur l'eau? 12. Pourquoi pas? 13. Y avait-il de grosses vagues? 14. Quand avez-vous mangé votre goûter? 15. Vous êtes-vous bien amusés? 16. Êtes-vous arrivés très tard chez vous? 17. Quand êtes-vous arrivés? 18. Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui? 19. Et demain? 20. Et après-demain? 21. Quels sont les autres jours de la semaine? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I like picnics. 2. I always enjoy myself at picnics. 3. If the weather is fine, we shall have a picnic to-morrow. 4. What kind of weather is it now? 5. It is raining. 6. There will be no rain to-morrow. 7. The sun is showing itself already. 8. This afternoon it rained for (*pendant*) two hours. 9. Where will your picnic take place? 10. It will take place in the woods, at the lake shore. 11. We had a picnic there last summer too. 12. If it is not windy, we shall go for a row. 13. Last summer we did not go upon the water. 14. The waves were too large. 15. Shall you eat your lunch before noon? 16. What shall you do in the afternoon? 17. We shall sing and play. 18. When shall you reach home? 19. We shall set out before sunset, and we shall reach home early. 20. The days of the week are: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday.

LESSON XXV.

99. The Infinitive. Some of the commoner uses of the infinitive are:—

1. Without any preposition, after such verbs as **vouloir,** 'will,' **pouvoir,** 'can, may,' **désirer,** 'wish, desire,' **savoir,** 'know how to,' **devoir,** 'ought,' **falloir,** 'be necessary,' **aller,** 'go'; after verbs of perceiving, such as **voir,** 'see,' **écouter,** 'listen (to),' **regarder,** 'look at'; also after **faire,** 'make, cause to,' **laisser,** 'let':

Désire-t-il aller en ville?	Does he wish to go down town?
Il lui faut travailler.	He must work.
Je vais chercher des plumes.	I am going to get some pens.
Je vois venir des soldats.	I see some soldiers coming.
Je fais sonner la cloche.	I make the bell ring.

2. Preceded by **de,** after **être** impersonally + an adjective; after many verbs like **cesser,** 'cease,' **regretter,** 'regret,' **prier,** 'beg'; after nouns to form adjective phrases; and after most adjectives:

Il est facile **de** parler.	It is easy to talk.
Il a cessé **de** chanter.	He has ceased singing.
Le crime **de** voler.	The crime of stealing.
Vous êtes libre **de** partir.	You are free to go.

3. Preceded by **à,** after verbs like **réussir,** 'succeed,' **aimer,** 'like,' **enseigner,** 'teach,' etc.; and after some adjectives:

J'aime **à** patiner.	I like to skate (like skating).
Je m'amuse **à** patiner.	I amuse myself (by) skating.
Cela est facile **à** faire.	That is easy to do.

4. Observe that the same adjective may take **à** or **de,** according to the construction in which it is used:

Il est facile **à** contenter.	He is easy to satisfy.
Il est facile **de** le contenter.	It is easy to satisfy him.
C'est facile **à** faire.	That (*or* it) is easy to do.

5. A verb governed by a preposition must be in the infinitive, except after **en** (cf. § 101):

Je l'ai fait **sans** penser.	I did it without thinking.

100. Present Participle of *donner, finir, vendre,* etc.

Giving.	Finishing.	Selling.
donn **ant** [dɔnɑ̃].	finiss **ant** [finisɑ̃].	vend **ant** [vɑ̃dɑ̃].

Having.	Being.
ay **ant** [ɛjɑ̃].	ét **ant** [etɑ̃].

101. Agreement. Used as an adjective, the present participle agrees like an adjective; otherwise it is invariable:

Une scène charmante.	A charming scene.
Elle tombait souvent en **marchant.**	She often fell while walking.

102. Present Indicative of *pouvoir,* 'be able,' 'can,' 'may' (irreg.).

I can, am able, etc.

je puis *or* peux	[ʒə pɥi, pø].	nous pouvons	[nu puvɔ̃].
tu peux	[ty pø].	vous pouvez	[vu puve].
il peut	[il pø].	ils peuvent	[il pœːv].

103. Observe the use of the impersonal **il faut** + infinitive:

Il lui faut partir.	He must (it is necessary for him to) go.
Il me faudra travailler.	I shall have to work.
Il ne faut pas voler.	We (one) must not steal.

EXERCISE XXV.

A. Bonjour mon ami; je suis charmé de vous voir. Comment vous portez-vous?—Je me porte très bien, merci.—Comme j'aime à me promener le matin! Il a gelé cette nuit, mais maintenant le soleil brille et il fait presque chaud. Malgré le froid tout est gai.—Il n'y a pas de fleurs, mais il y a de petits oiseaux qui n'ont pas encore cessé de chanter. En passant j'ai regardé le petit lac, et j'ai vu qu'il y avait de la glace. Nous pouvons bientôt patiner.—Aimez-vous à patiner?—Oui, j'aime beaucoup à patiner. Nous avons beaucoup d'amusements en hiver, n'est-ce pas?—Oh oui, il est très facile de s'amuser en hiver quand on se porte bien.—Aimez-vous à vous promener en traîneau? C'est très amusant, n'est-ce pas?—C'est surtout le soir que j'aime une promenade en traîneau. C'est si joli quand il fait clair de lune. La neige est blanche, tout le monde est gai, et les chevaux font sonner leurs grelots.—Et si on ne

désire pas sortir, on peut s'amuser à la maison. Vous aimez la lecture, n'est-ce pas ?—J'aime beaucoup à lire. Hier j'ai commencé un roman de Daudet. Quelquefois nous invitons nos amis à passer la soirée chez nous. Nous aimons à chanter et à danser. Il est facile de passer le temps quand on a des amis.

B. Continue the following : 1. Je ne peux pas partir ce matin, etc. 2. Il me faut partir ce soir, il te faut, etc. 3. Est-ce que je ne me porte pas bien ?, etc. 4. Est-ce que j'aime à patiner ?, etc. 5. Je ne cesse pas de chanter, etc. 6. Je vois une scène charmante, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Comment vous portez-vous ce matin ? 2. Avez-vous bien dormi ? 3. Est-ce qu'il a gelé cette nuit ? 4. En quelle saison les oiseaux cessent-ils de chanter ? 5. Quand est-ce qu'ils commencent à chanter ? 6. Est-ce qu'il y a déjà de bonne glace sur le lac ? 7. Peut-on y patiner ce soir ? 8. Aimez-vous à patiner ? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous faites en hiver pour vous amuser ? 10. Est-il facile de s'amuser en hiver ? 11. Pouvez-vous vous promener en traîneau ce soir ? 12. Ne désirez-vous pas sortir ce soir ? 13. Qu'avez-vous l'intention de faire ? 14. Allez-vous passer toute la soirée chez vous ? 15. Faut-il avoir des amis pour s'amuser ? 16. Aimez-vous à passer la soirée à lire ? 17. Quand avez-vous commencé à lire ces romans ? 18. Ce sont des romans charmants, n'est-ce pas ? 19. Vous faut-il rester à la maison ce soir ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Good morning ; I am charmed to see you. 2. The weather is very fine for the season, is it not ? 3. Did you look at the ice on the lake in passing ? 4. Yes, the ice is good, and we can soon skate. 5. Do you like to skate ? 6. Yes, but I cannot go skating this evening. 7. I must stay at home. 8. You can amuse yourself reading. 9. I like to pass the evening at home sometimes. 10. It is easy to find amusements. 11. We often invite friends to pass the evening with us. 12. We have begun to read a novel together. 13. It is charming to go for a sleigh-ride sometimes. 14. The white snow and the moonlight make a charming scene. 15. It is so charming to hear the sleigh-bells ring. 16. We must go for a sleigh-ride to-morrow. 17. I shall go if I can. 18. We shall go too. 19. We must have some friends with us. 20. To enjoy one's self one must have friends.

LESSON XXVI.

104. Present Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I (may) give, etc.		I (may) finish, etc.		I (may) sell, etc.	
donn **e**	[dɔn].	finiss **e**	[finis].	vend **e**	[vɑ̃ːd].
donn **es**	[dɔn].	finiss **es**	[finis].	vend **es**	[vɑ̃ːd].
donn **e**	[dɔn].	finiss **e**	[finis].	vend **e**	[vɑ̃ːd].
donn **ions**	[dɔnjɔ̃].	finiss **ions**	[finisjɔ̃].	vend **ions**	[vɑ̃djɔ̃].
donn **iez**	[dɔnje].	finiss **iez**	[finisje].	vend **iez**	[vɑ̃dje].
donn **ent**	[dɔn].	finiss **ent**	[finis].	vend **ent**	[vɑ̃ːd].

N.B.—The paradigm meanings 'I may give,' etc., are only approximate, as will be seen from the examples below.

105. Present Subjunctive of *avoir, être.*

I (may) have, etc.				I (may) be, etc.			
aie	[ɛ].	ayons	[ɛjɔ̃].	sois	[swa].	soyons	[swajɔ̃].
aies	[ɛ].	ayez	[ɛje].	sois	[swa].	soyez	[swaje].
ait	[ɛ].	aient	[ɛ].	soit	[swa].	soient	[swa].

106. Use of the Subjunctive. Some of the commoner uses of the subjunctive are:—

1. In a subordinate noun clause introduced by **que**, 'that,' after expressions of *willing* or *desiring*:

Je désire que vous restiez.	I desire you to remain (=that you may *or* should remain).

2. Similarly, after expressions of *joy* or *sorrow*:

Je suis content qu'il soit ici.	I am glad he is here.

3. So also after expressions of *necessity*, like **il faut**:

Il faut que vous restiez.	You must remain.
Il est nécessaire que vous restiez.	It is necessary for you to remain.

4. It is used in adverbial clauses after certain conjunctions, *e.g.*, **afin que**, 'in order that,' **pour que**, 'in order that,' **avant que**, 'before,' **bien que**, 'although,' **quoique**, 'although,' etc.

Bien qu'il soit pauvre il est heureux.	Although he is poor he is happy.

5. **Que** is never omitted, as 'that' often is in English:

Je suis content qu'il soit ici.	I am glad (that) he is here.

107. Tense Sequence. Present or Future is regularly followed by Present Subjunctive:

PRES.	Il faut	que vous parliez.	You must speak.
FUT.	Il faudra		You will have to speak.

108. Present Indicative of *vouloir*, 'will,' 'wish,' etc. (irreg.).

I will, wish, etc.

je veux [ʒe vø].	nous voulons [nu vulɔ̃].
tu veux [ty vø].	vous voulez [vu vule].
il veut [il vø].	ils veulent [il vœl].

109. Present Subjunctive of *faire* (irreg.).

I (may) do, etc.

fasse [fas].	fassions [fasjɔ̃].
fasses [fas].	fassiez [fasje].
fasse [fas].	fassent [fas].

EXERCISE XXVI.

A. On frappe à la porte. Je vais voir qui c'est. C'est une de mes amies. Elle entre. Nous causons ensemble.—Qu'allez-vous faire aujourd'hui?—Ma robe n'est pas encore prête. Il faut que je sois chez la couturière avant midi. Après cela je vais porter des fleurs à une amie qui est un peu souffrante, et je désire que vous m'accompagniez, si vous pouvez. C'est assez loin, mais nous n'irons pas à pied. Je serai si contente que vous soyez avec moi. Il faut que vous fassiez connaissance avec mon amie; elle est si charmante.—Je regrette de ne pouvoir pas vous accompagner ce matin; j'ai mal aux dents depuis hier. Il y en a deux qui me font souffrir.—Que je regrette que vous ayez tant d'ennui! C'est très fâcheux. Et qu'allez-vous faire?—Il me faut aller voir le dentiste. Il arrachera une de mes dents probablement, car elle est entièrement gâtée. Mais je désire qu'il tâche de me conserver l'autre.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je suis content qu'il soit arrivé, tu es, etc. 2. Je veux qu'elle attende, tu veux, etc. 3. Il faut que je sois là avant midi, il faut que tu, etc. 4. Il désire que je le finisse, que tu, etc. 5. Il faut que je vende ma maison, que tu, etc. 6. Bien que j'aie des amis, bien que tu, etc. 7. Je suis fâché qu'elle soit souffrante, tu es, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui frappe à la porte? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle demande? 3. Votre robe est-elle prête? 4. Faut-il que je sois en ville avant midi? 5. Me faut-il partir tout de suite? 6. Désirez-vous que je vous accompagne? 7. Regrettez-vous que votre amie soit souffrante? 8. Êtes-vous contente qu'elle se porte mieux à présent? 9. Qu'est-ce que vous avez ce matin? 10. Désirez-vous que le dentiste arrache votre dent malade? 11. Voulez-vous qu'il vous arrache les deux dents malades? 12. Que désirez-vous? 13. Ne voulez-vous pas que je vous attende au café? 14. Désirez-vous que je sois avec vous chez le dentiste? 15. Faut-il que nous soyons de retour avant midi? 16. Êtes-vous fâchée que votre père ait vendu sa maison? 17. Désirez-vous qu'il en achète une dans cette rue? 18. Cette maison est jolie bien qu'elle soit petite, n'est-ce pas? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There is a knock at the door. 2. I do not wish you to knock at my door. 3. I wish you to ring. 4. Must you be at the dressmaker's at noon? 5. Yes, I must have my dress for this evening. 6. I am going afterwards to see my friend who is indisposed. 7. I am very sorry that she is indisposed. 8. I must take her some flowers. 9. Do you wish me to accompany you? 10. No, I desire you to remain at home. 11. I am very sorry you have toothache. 12. Is it necessary that the dentist should extract your two teeth? 13. I must go and see him first. 14. I wish him to try and save one of the two. 15. Although this tooth is a little decayed, it is better than the other. 16. Do you wish me to be with you at the dentist's? 17. No, I wish you to buy some fruit for our dinner. 18. Although fruit is dear, I shall buy a great deal. 19. One must eat to live. 20. Everybody must eat enough.

LESSON XXVII.

110. Imperative of *donner, finir, vendre.*

Give, etc.		Finish, etc.		Sell, etc.	
donn **e**	[dɔn].	finis	[fini].	vend **s**	[vɑ̃].
qu'il donn **e**	[dɔn].	qu'il finiss **e**	[finis].	qu'il vend **e**	[vɑ̃ːd].
donn **ons**	[dɔnɔ̃].	finiss **ons**	[finisɔ̃].	vend **ons**	[vɑ̃dɔ̃].
donn **ez**	[dɔne].	finiss **ez**	[finise].	vend **ez**	[vɑ̃de].
qu'ils donn **ent**	[dɔn].	qu'ils finiss **ent**	[finis].	qu'ils vend **ent**	[vɑ̃ːd].

Obs.: The 3rd sing. and 3rd plur. are subjunctive forms used as imperatives.

111. Imperative of *avoir, être.*

Have, etc.		Be, etc.	
aie	[ɛ].	sois	[swa].
qu'il ait	[k il ɛ].	qu'il soit	[swa].
ay **ons**	[ɛjõ].	soy **ons**	[swajõ].
ay **ez**	[ɛje].	soy **ez**	[swaje].
qu'ils aient	[k ilz ɛ].	qu'ils soient	[k il swa].

112. Imperative Negative.

ne donne **pas**. qu'il **ne** donne **pas**. **ne** donnons **pas**, etc.

113. Position of Objects. 1. Personal pronoun objects follow the positive imperative (but not the subjunctive as imperative), and are joined to it and to one another by hyphens:

Donnez-**lui** la plume.	Give him the pen.
Donnez-**la-lui**.	Give it to him.
Donnons-**leur-en**.	Let us give them some.
Qu'il **me la** donne.	Let him give it to me.

2. If the imperative be negative, the general rule of position (§ 81) holds good:

Ne **la lui** donnez pas.	Do not give it to him.

3. **Moi** and **toi** are used after an imperative instead of **me** and **te** (unless before **y** and **en**, in which case apostrophe replaces hyphen):

Donnez-**moi** des pommes.	Give me some apples.
Donnez-**m'**en.	Give me some (of them).

4. When a verb has two objects, they are arranged thus after it (for slight exceptions, see Part II):

le (la, les)	before **moi** (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur).
me (te, lui, nous, vous, leur)	before **y** (en).
y	before **en**.

EXERCISE XXVII.

A. Nous allons étudier nos leçons. Le professeur nous a laissés ici dans cette salle afin qu'on ne nous dérange pas. Travaillons ferme. Quel est le livre que vous avez à la main? —C'est ma grammaire française.—Donnez-la-moi un moment

s'il vous plaît. Je désire chercher quelque chose.—Où est donc mon cahier? Le voyez-vous?—Oui, le voici.—Donnez-le-moi, s'il vous plaît.—Maintenant c'est ma règle que je cherche.—Je ne l'ai pas vue.—Si vous la trouvez, ne la cassez pas.—Avez-vous de l'encre?—Oui, j'en ai.—Soyez assez bon pour m'en donner. Mon petit ami n'en a pas, non plus. Donnez-lui-en un peu aussi.—En voilà. Est-ce assez?—Oui, je vous remercie infiniment.—Allons, dépêchons-nous! Il est déjà tard, et nous n'avons pas encore fait grand'chose.—Soyez tranquille, nous finirons bientôt.—" Ayez de la patience" est une bonne maxime, mais n'en abusons pas.—Avez-vous parlé de cette affaire au professeur?—Pas encore.—Eh bien, parlez-lui-en cette après-midi.—Pour vous contenter, je lui en parlerai.

B. Complete the following by adding a noun object, and then repeating the phrase with the proper pronoun: 1. Cherchez... 2. Ne cherchez pas... 3. Finissez... 4. Ne finissez pas... 5. Vendez... 6. Ne vendez pas... 7. Qu'il écoute... 8. Chante... 9. Ne chante pas... 10. Choisissez... 11. Ne choisissez pas... 12. Vends... 13. Ne vends pas... 14. Finissons... 15. Ne finissons pas... 16. Vendons... 17. Ne vendons pas...

C. 1. Go and study your lessons. 2. Study them for an hour. 3. Remain in this class-room. 4. Remain in it for an hour. 5. Do not disturb me; I wish to study. 6. Now let us work hard. 7. Show me the lesson. 8. Show me it. 9. Find me my exercise-book, if you please. 10. Find it for me. 11. I have your ruler. 12. Do not break it, please. 13. If you have any ink, give me some of it, please. 14. Give some to Robert, too; he hasn't any, either. 15. Now Robert, thank him. 16. Come, hurry up. 17. Have patience, but don't have too much of it. 18. Let us finish our lessons. 19. Let us finish them before noon. 20. Have you spoken to the master of that affair? 21. Do not speak of it to him to-day. 22. Speak to him of it to-morrow. 23. We have finished our lessons. 24. The lessons are finished now. 25. Have the kindness to bring me my hat. 26. Look for it, please. 27. Let us go for a walk. 28. Let us not take advantage of the patience of our masters. 29. Let us not take advantage of it.

LESSON XXVIII.

114. Conditional of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I should give, etc.			I should finish, etc.			I should sell, etc.		
donner	**ais**	[dɔnərɛ].	finir	**ais**	[finirɛ].	vendr	**ais**	[vɑ̃drɛ].
donner	**ais**	[dɔnərɛ].	finir	**ais**	[finirɛ].	vendr	**ais**	[vɑ̃drɛ].
donner	**ait**	[dɔnərɛ].	finir	**ait**	[finirɛ].	vendr	**ait**	[vɑ̃drɛ].
donner	**ions**	[dɔnərjɔ̃].	finir	**ions**	[finirjɔ̃].	vendr	**ions**	[vɑ̃driɔ̃].
donner	**iez**	[dɔnərje].	finir	**iez**	[finirje].	vendr	**iez**	[vɑ̃drie].
donner	**aient**	[dɔnərɛ].	finir	**aient**	[finirɛ].	vendr	**aient**	[vɑ̃drɛ].

115. Conditional of *avoir, être.*

I should have, etc.				I should be, etc.			
aur **ais**	[ɔrɛ].	aur **ions**	[ɔrjɔ̃].	ser **ais**	[sərɛ].	ser **ions**	[sərjɔ̃].
aur **ais**	[ɔrɛ].	aur **iez**	[ɔrje].	ser **ais**	[sərɛ].	ser **iez**	[sərje].
aur **ait**	[ɔrɛ].	aur **aient**	[ɔrɛ].	ser **ait**	[sərɛ].	ser **aient**	[sərɛ].

Obs. : In all verbs the stem of the conditional is the same as that of the future.

116. Conditional Sentences. 1. The conditional is used to express what would happen (result) in case something else were to happen (condition):

S'il avait le temps (condition), il finirait sa leçon (result). — If he had time (had he time, etc.), he would finish his lesson.

2. A 'result' clause in the conditional (English 'should' or 'would') regularly has the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form:

Si j'étudiais bien (condition), le maître serait content (result). — If I studied (*or* if I were to s., *or* were I to s., *or* should I s.) well, the master would be glad.

3. A 'result' clause in the future requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative, whatever be the corresponding English form:

S'il est ici demain (condition), je lui donnerai l'argent (result). — If he is (*or* be, *or* will be, *or* should be) here to-morrow, I shall give him the money.

117. Future and Conditional of ***faire*** **(irreg.) and aller (irreg.).**

ir ai [ire].	**ir** ais [irɛ].	**fer** ai [fəre].	**fer** ais [fərɛ].
ir as [ira], etc.	**ir** ais [irɛ], etc.	**fer** as [fəra], etc.	**fer** ais [fərɛ], etc.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

A. Si j'avais mes livres, j'étudierais mes leçons. Je les ai laissés à l'école.—Cependant il n'est pas nécessaire que vous perdiez votre temps. J'ai mes livres et je puis vous les prêter, si vous désirez préparer vos leçons.—Vous êtes trop aimable, je les accepterai avec plaisir.—De quels livres avez-vous besoin?—J'ai besoin d'une arithmétique et d'une géographie. Si j'avais aussi un crayon et du papier, j'en ferais usage.—Ma bibliothèque entière est à votre disposition.—À propos, qu'allez-vous faire pendant les vacances?—Si j'avais beaucoup d'argent, j'irais bien loin. Je suis si fatigué depuis quelque temps. Et qu'est-ce que vous allez faire?—Si je n'avais pas été si souvent à la campagne, j'y serais allé encore cette année. Mais il me faut un plus grand changement s'il est possible.—Alors vous n'êtes pas encore décidé.—Pas encore, il y a tant de réflexions à faire. S'il ne fait pas trop chaud, nous resterons ici. On sera très bien ici, s'il fait frais. Mais s'il fait très chaud, nous partirons pour un endroit plus agréable.

B. Complete the following by adding a 'result' clause or an 'if' clause as the case may be: 1. Le maître sera content... 2. S'il fait chaud demain... 3. S'il ne faisait pas si chaud... 4. Je lui donnerai l'argent... 5. Je lui donnerais l'argent... 6. Si j'avais du papier et des plumes... 7. Si j'avais ma grammaire française... 8. J'irais bien loin... 9. Vendriez-vous votre maison... 10. Seriez-vous parti...

C. (Oral.) 1. Où sont vos livres? 2. Si vous les aviez, qu'est-ce que vous feriez? 3. Si je vous prêtais ma grammaire, en feriez-vous usage? 4. Qu'est-ce que vous ferez si je vous prête mes livres? 5. Le maître sera-t-il content si nous ne préparons pas nos leçons? 6. Ne sera-t-il pas content si nous étudions deux heures entières? 7. Serait-il content si je perdais mon temps? 8. Le maître est-il content si nous perdons notre temps? 9. Est-ce que je serai content si je perds mon temps? 10. Serions-nous contents si nous perdions notre temps?

11. Seriez-vous fatigué si vous travailliez toute la soirée? 12. Irez-vous à la campagne s'il fait chaud demain? 13. Qu'est-ce que nous ferons s'il fait chaud demain? 14. Si vous aviez des vacances, est-ce que vous resteriez à la maison? 15. Que feriez-vous? 16. Iriez-vous à la campagne? 17. Si vous aviez beaucoup d'argent, que feriez-vous pendant l'été? 18. Serons-nous bien ici s'il fait chaud? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I have left all my books at school. 2. If I had them, I should prepare my lessons for to-morrow. 3. If I do not prepare them, the master will not be pleased. 4. If you wish to study, I shall lend you my books. 5. If you were to lend me them, I should be very glad. 6. I should study the whole evening. 7. I do not wish to lose my time. 8. I am never happy, if I am not working. 9. Should you make use of my pens and paper, if I lent you them? 10. I should accept them with pleasure, if you were kind enough to lend me them. 11. If we work the whole evening, we shall be tired. 12. By the way, what are you going to do in the holidays? 13. I shall go to the country, if it is hot. 14. I should go too, if I had not been there so often. 15. If I had a great deal of money, I should go a long way off. 16. If one has no money, one cannot go far. 17. If it is possible, I shall spend some days with my relatives. 18. It (*ce*) will be for me a great pleasure, if my cousins are at home.

LESSON XXIX.

118. Use of Article. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large islands, regularly take the definite article:

La France est un beau pays.	France is a beautiful country.
Nous aimons le Canada.	We love Canada.
Il demeure **aux** États-Unis.	He lives in the United States.

2. The article is omitted after the preposition **en** = 'in,' 'to;' it is also omitted after **de** in certain constructions:

Mon père est en Angleterre.	My father is in England.
Nous allons en France.	We are going to France.
Il vient d'Italie.	He comes from Italy.
Les vins d'Espagne.	Spanish wines.

119. 1. Place 'where,' 'where to,' is usually denoted by **en** before names of continents, European countries singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe; other countries usually take the preposition **à** + the definite article:

Il est **en** (va en) Europe.	He is in (goes to) Europe.
Il est **au** (va au) Canada.	He is in (goes to) Canada.

2. Cities, towns, etc., usually take **à**, without any article:

Il est **à** (va à) Paris.	He is in *or* at (goes to) Paris.
But: **À la** Nouvelle-Orléans.	At New Orleans.

120. Present Indicative of *savoir*, 'to know' (irreg.).

I know, etc.

je sais [se].	nous savons [savõ].
tu sais [se].	vous savez [save].
il sait [se].	ils savent [saːv].

EXERCISE XXIX.

A. Savez-vous que votre ami est parti hier pour la France?—Oui, je le sais. Il était si content! Il sait déjà bien le français; dans quelques mois il le parlera comme un Français.—Avez-vous jamais été en France?—Non, je n'y ai jamais été, mais j'ai l'intention d'y aller l'année prochaine. Vous y avez été, n'est-ce pas?—Oui, j'y ai passé deux années. C'est un beau pays. J'aime beaucoup la France, j'aime les Français et le français. C'est une belle langue.—Oh oui, vous, vous êtes bien avancé. Vous parlez français couramment, mais moi, je trouve cela difficile.—En commençant, c'est difficile, mais avec le temps vous l'apprendrez, surtout si vous passez une année en France.—Quelle partie de la France avez-vous habitée?—J'ai habité Paris, mais j'ai visité d'autres grandes villes. J'ai été à Rouen et à Lyon.—Avez-vous jamais été au Bas-Canada?—Oui, j'y ai été. J'ai été à Montréal et à Québec. Ce sont deux belles villes. J'ai été aussi à la Nouvelle-Orléans, où il y a beaucoup de Français. On y parle encore aujourd'hui français. Mais en général aux États-Unis les Français n'ont pas conservé leur langue si fidèlement que les Français du Canada.

B. Continue the following: 1. Je parle anglais, tu, etc. 2. Est-ce que je parle français?, est-ce que tu?, etc. 3. Je sais bien le français, tu, etc. 4. Ai-je été en France?, as-tu été?, etc. 5. Demain je partirai pour le Canada, tu, etc. 6. Je vais aux États-Unis, tu, etc. 7. J'habite les États-Unis, tu, etc. 8. J'irai à Paris l'année prochaine, tu, etc. 9. J'ai demeuré une année à Paris, tu as, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Où est la France? 2. Quelle langue les Français parlent-ils? 3. Savez-vous le français? 4. Parlez-vous français? 5. Le parlez-vous couramment? 6. Avez-vous jamais été en France? 7. Combien de temps avez-vous passé à Paris? 8. Avez-vous été aussi à Rouen et à Lyon? 9. Aimez-vous la France? 10. Aimez-vous les Français? 11. Est-ce que le français est une belle langue? 12. Quelle langue parlez-vous? 13. Est-ce que nous sommes Anglais ou Français? 14. Les habitants de la France parlent français, n'est-ce pas? 15. Y a-t-il beaucoup de Français aux États-Unis? 16. Quelle langue parle-t-on au Bas-Canada? 17. Parle-t-on aussi la langue française à la Nouvelle-Orléans? 18. Quelle langue parle-t-on à Montréal et à Québec? 19. Les Français des États-Unis ont-ils conservé fidèlement leur langue? 20. Depuis quand étudiez-vous le français? 21. Avez-vous l'intention d'aller en France l'année prochaine? 22. Dans quels pays avez-vous passé les vacances l'année dernière? Etc., etc.

D. 1. France is in Europe. 2. France is a beautiful country. 3. Its inhabitants speak French. 4. French is spoken also in Canada and in the United States. 5. It is spoken at Montreal, Quebec and New Orleans. 6. French is a fine language. 7. We like the French and the French language. 8. We have been studying French for three months. 9. I have not been in France yet. 10. I intend to go there next year. 11. I shall set out for France in the summer. 12. I shall spend a month in Paris, and some time also at Lyons and Rouen. 13. On my return, I shall remain some days at Montreal and Quebec. 14. French is a difficult language for the English. 15. We speak English. 16. We live in Canada. 17. Our relatives live in the United States. 18. They live in New Orleans. 19. They have never been in France, but they speak French like Frenchmen. 20. If you were to spend a year in France, you would speak it fluently also.

LESSON XXX.

121. The Possessive Pronouns.

Singular.		Plural.		
le mien	[mjɛ̃], m.	les miens	[mjɛ̃], m.	mine.
la mienne	[mjɛn], f.	les miennes	[mjɛn], f.	
le tien	[tjɛ̃], m.	les tiens	[tjɛ̃], m.	thine, yours.
la tienne	[tjɛn], f.	les tiennes	[tjɛn], f.	
le sien	[sjɛ̃], m.	les siens	[sjɛ̃], m.	his, hers,
la sienne	[sjɛn], f.	les siennes	[sjɛn], f.	its, one's own.
le nôtre	[noːtr], m.	les nôtres	[noːtr],	ours.
la nôtre	[noːtr], f.			
le vôtre	[voːtr], m.	les vôtres	[voːtr],	yours.
la vôtre	[voːtr], f.			
le leur	[lœːr], m.	les leurs	[lœːr],	theirs.
la leur	[lœːr], f.			

122. Agreement. Possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

J'ai mes livres ; elle a **les siens**. I have my books ; she has hers.

123. Use of Possessive Pronouns. 1. After **être,** mere ownership is regularly expressed by **à** + a personal pronoun disjunctive, while the use of a possessive pronoun implies distinction of ownership:

Cette montre est **à moi.** This watch is mine.
Cette montre est **la mienne.** This watch is *mine.*

2. **De** and **à + le** mien, etc., contract as usual (cf. §§ 35, 46):

Je parle de son ami et **du** mien. I speak of his friend and of mine.

3. Since **le sien, la sienne,** etc., mean 'his,' 'hers,' 'its,' 'one's,' the context determines which sense is intended:

Il a ses livres ; elle a **les siens.** He has his books ; she has hers.

4. Observe the idioms :

Un de mes amis. A friend of mine.
Un Parisien de mes amis. A Parisian, a friend of mine.

124. Present Indicative of *dire*, 'to say,' 'tell' (irreg.), and of **voir,** 'to see' (irreg.).

I say, etc.		I see, etc.	
je dis [di].	nous disons [dizɔ̃].	je vois [vwa].	nous voyons [vwajɔ̃].
tu dis [di].	vous dites [dit].	tu vois [vwa].	vous voyez [vwaje].
il dit [di].	ils disent [diːz].	il voit [vwa].	ils voient [vwa].

EXERCISE XXX.

A. Un de mes amis, qui voyage actuellement en Europe, m'a envoyé une lettre l'autre jour. Dans cette lettre il fait les comparaisons les plus intéressantes entre les habitudes des Européens et les nôtres. Par exemple, les chemins de fer européens sont différents des nôtres. Nos voitures sont plus grandes que les leurs, et elles ont un seul compartiment, tandis que les leurs sont divisées en plusieurs. Les petits compartiments sont souvent très commodes; on peut y être seul ou avec une petite compagnie agréable. Mais il y a un inconvénient: on risque de se trouver face à face avec un compagnon de voyage très désagréable, ou même dangereux. Un jour, par exemple, mon ami se trouvait dans un compartiment avec un individu qui ne respectait pas trop la différence entre le mien et le tien. Mon ami avait une jolie montre d'or. Son compagnon la remarque. Le train approche d'une petite ville, et ralentit sa marche. L'individu tire un revolver de sa poche et dit à mon ami: "Vous avez là une belle montre, donnez-la-moi et je vous donnerai la mienne." Mon ami a peur, il donne sa montre, et le voleur saute du train.

B. Complete the following by supplying a suitable possessive pronoun form: 1. Ma montre est en or; . . . est en argent. 2. Mes parents sont à Paris; . . . sont aux États-Unis. 3. Marie va chercher mes plumes et . . . 4. Nous avons fini nos leçons; ils ont fini . . . 5. J'ai fini mes leçons, et Jean a fini . . . 6. Vos leçons sont faciles, mais . . sont difficiles. 7. J'ai mon crayon, et Marie a . . . 8. Marie a ses crayons et . . . aussi. 9. Les Français aiment leur pays, et nous aimons . . . 10. Nous aimons notre langue; les Français aiment . . . 11. Je parle de mes amis, et vous parlez . . . 12. Jean donne des fleurs à ses sœurs, et Robert en donne . . .

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui vous a envoyé une lettre? 2. Les habitudes des Européens sont-elles les mêmes que les nôtres? 3. Nos chemins de fer sont-ils meilleurs que les leurs? 4. Leurs voitures sont-elles plus grandes que les nôtres? 5. Les nôtres sont-elles plus commodes que les leurs? 6. Avec qui votre ami se trouvait-il dans un compartiment? 7. La montre du voleur était-elle meilleure que la sienne? 8. En quoi est votre montre? 9. Voulez-vous me donner la vôtre en échange de la mienne? 10. À qui était la belle montre d'or? 11. Qu'est-ce que le voleur veut donner en échange de la montre de votre ami? 12. Qui a tiré un revolver de sa poche? 13. Votre ami a-t-il tiré le sien aussi de sa poche? 14. Auriez-vous donné au voleur votre belle montre en échange de la sienne? 15. L'auriez-vous donnée si la sienne avait été meilleure que la vôtre? 16. Qui ne respecte pas la différence entre le mien et le tien? Etc., etc.

D. 1. A friend of mine is travelling in France. 2. There is much difference between the customs of the French and ours. 3. For example, our railways and theirs are different. 4. Their railways are not so long as ours. 5. The carriages of our trains are larger than theirs. 6. But their carriages are often more comfortable than ours. 7. Ours are not divided into compartments. 8. One day I find myself in one of these compartments. 9. I draw my watch from my pocket to look at it. 10. My travelling companion is an individual who does not respect the difference between mine and thine. 11. He draws out his also from his pocket, and looks at it. 12. He looks at mine too. 13. He says to me: "Here are two watches; yours is of (*en*) gold and mine is of silver. 14. Give me yours, and I shall give you mine." 15. At these words, I draw a revolver which I have in another pocket. 16. The thief does not draw his from his pocket, because he has no revolver. 17. At this moment the train arrives at a little town. 18. The thief is afraid, and jumps from the carriage, leaving me his watch. 19. I have now two watches, mine and his. 20. If he had had his revolver, and if I had not had mine, the affair would have been very different.

LESSON XXXI.

125. The Demonstrative Pronouns.

ce [sə], this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they.
ceci [səsi], this.
cela [səla], that.

celui [səlɥi], m. **celle** [sɛl].	that (one), the (one), he, she.	**ceux** [sø], m. **celles** [sɛl], f.	those (ones), the ones, they.
celui-ci [səlɥi si], m. **celle-ci** [sɛl si], f.	this (one), the latter.	**ceux-ci** [sø si], m. **celles-ci** [sɛl si], f.	these (ones), the latter.
celui-là [səlɥi la], m. **celle-là** [sɛl la], f.	that (one), the former.	**ceux-là** [sø la], m. **celles-là** [sɛl la], f.	those (ones), the former.

126. For the use of **ce** as distinguished from the personal pronoun **il** (elle, etc.), see § 97.

127. **Ceci** = 'this,' and **cela** = 'that,' are used to denote something pointed out or indicated, but not named. **Cela** is often contracted into **ça** in familiar language:

Cela est joli; je préfère **ceci**.	That is pretty; I prefer this.
Pouvez-vous faire **cela**?	Can you do that?
J'aime **ça**.	I like that.

128. **Celui**, 'that (one),' 'the (one),' 'he,' is used of persons or things, and is regularly followed by a relative clause or a **de** clause:

Celui que j'attendais est arrivé.	He whom I expected has arrived.
Ceux qui cherchent trouvent.	Those who seek find.
Mes fleurs et **celles de** Marie.	My flowers and Mary's.
Celles que vous aimez.	The ones (flowers) you like.

129. 1. **Celui-ci**, 'this,' 'this one,' 'he,' and **celui-là**, 'that,' 'that one,' are used of persons or things already mentioned, to contrast the nearer and the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez **celle-ci** et donnez-moi **celle-là**.	Here are the two chains; keep this (one) and give me that (one).

2. 'The latter' is **celui-ci**, and 'the former' is **celui-là**, the order of ideas being inverted as compared with English:

Cicéron et Virgile étaient tous deux célèbres; **celui-ci** était poète et **celui-là** orateur.	Cicero and Virgil were both celebrated; the former was an orator and the latter a poet.

EXERCISE XXXI.

A. Un certain homme possédait un âne et un petit chien. À celui-ci il donnait des caresses et à celui-là des fardeaux à porter. Le chien s'amusait toute la journée. Il courait par-ci par-là. À table il mangeait avec son maître. Il donnait la patte à tout le monde, et tout le monde lui donnait des baisers. Le pauvre âne voyait tout cela, et il en était très mécontent. Un jour il se demande : "Pourquoi ne me donne-t-on pas autant de bonnes choses qu'à ce misérable petit chien? Pourquoi donne-t-on toutes les caresses à celui qui ne travaille pas, et tous les coups de bâton à celui qui travaille toujours? Je cesserai de travailler. J'entrerai dans la salle à manger de mon maître, je donnerai la patte à tous ceux qui y sont, et ils me donneront des caresses." Le pauvre âne tâche de faire cela. Il entre dans la salle à manger, il salue la compagnie. Il chante de sa belle voix. Il veut donner la patte à son maître. Mais en levant la patte il fait tomber la vaisselle. On a peur, on crie. Les valets entrent, et donnent à la pauvre bête, non des caresses, mais des coups de bâton.

B. Complete the following by supplying suitable demonstrative pronoun forms : 1. Ceci est bon, . . . est mauvais. 2. Cela est grand, . . . est petit. 3. Voilà deux montres d'or ; . . . est plus jolie que . . . 4. . . . de mon père est plus jolie encore. 5. Voici des livres pour nous ; donnez-moi . . . , et je vous donnerai . . . 6. Donnez-moi d'autres plumes, j'ai perdu . . . que vous m'avez prêtées. 7. Je parle de Cicéron et de Virgile ; . . . était poète et . . . était orateur. 8. . . . qui volent sont des voleurs. 9. Cet homme a volé mon argent et . . . de mon ami.

C. 1. Give me that. 2. I do not need this. 3. There are two pens ; give me this one and keep that one. 4. My watch is finer than John's. 5. My father's is still finer. 6. He who steals is a thief. 7. Those who steal are thieves. 8. I have two brothers, John and Robert ; the former is taller than I, the latter smaller.

D. (Oral.) 1. Quels étaient les deux animaux que possédait cet homme? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il donnait à celui-ci? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il donnait à celui-là? 4. L'âne était-il content de cela? 5. Qu'est-ce que l'âne se demande? 6. Où est-ce qu'il veut

entrer? 7. Est-ce qu'il a fait cela? 8. La voix de l'âne est-elle plus belle que celle du chien? 9. À qui veut-il donner la patte? 10. Ceux qui sont dans la salle sont-ils contents? 11. Qu'est-ce que font les valets? 12. Est-ce qu'on donne toujours des coups de bâton à ceux qui les méritent? Etc., etc.

E. 1. The ass and the dog are useful animals. 2. The former carries burdens, and the latter is the faithful friend of man. 3. The ass in this story is dissatisfied. 4. He asks himself why people give good things to those who do not work. 5. His master gives caresses to the dog and blows to him who works. 6. The unhappy animal is dissatisfied with that. 7. He ceases to work, and enters the dining-room. 8. He salutes those who are there. 9. He sings with his beautiful voice. 10. That is not very agreeable to the company. 11. You know that the voice of the ass is not so pleasant as that of the dog. 12. The master is afraid. 13. All those who are present scream. 14. The servants hear this, and enter the room. 15. They give the poor ass blows with a stick. 16. People do not always give blows to those who deserve them.

LESSON XXXII.

130. The Relative Pronouns.

qui [ki], who, which, that, whom (after a preposition).
que [kə], whom, which, that.
dont [dɔ̃], whose, of whom, of which.
où [u], in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.
lequel [ləkɛl], m. s., **lesquels** [lekɛl], m. pl. } who, whom, which, that.
laquelle [lakɛl], f. s., **lesquelles** [lekɛl], f. pl. }
quoi [kwa], what, which.

131. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number and person of its antecedent:

Moi **qui** étais (vous **qui** étiez) là.	I who was (you who were) there.
Les lettres **que** j'ai apportées.	The letters which I have brought.

132. Use of the Relative. 1. The relative of most common use is **qui**, as subject, and **que**, as direct object, of a verb (cf. §75).

2. **Qui** = 'whom' (of persons only) is also used after a preposition:

L'oncle chez **qui** je demeurais.	The uncle with whom I lived.

3. The force of **de** + a relative is generally expressed by **dont**:

Les amis **dont** nous parlions.	The friends of whom we spoke.
L'église **dont** je vois la tour.	The church whose tower I see.

4. **Où** = **dans** (or some other preposition of position) + a relative:

La ville **où** (*or* dans laquelle) je demeure.	The city in which I live.

5. **Lequel** is often used instead of **qui** (que, etc.), to avoid ambiguity, and must be used of things after a preposition:

Les sœurs de nos amis, **lesquelles** sont chez nous à présent.	The sisters of our friends, who (*i.e.*, the sisters) are with us now.

6. **Quoi** stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà **de quoi** je parlais.	That is what I was speaking of.

7. The absolute 'what,' 'which,' 'that which' as subject is **ce qui**, and, as object or predicate, **ce que**; 'of what,' 'that of which,' is **ce dont**:

Je vois **ce qui** vous amuse.	I see what amuses you.
Je sais **ce que** je sais.	I know what I know.
Vous savez **ce que** je suis.	You know what I am.
Ce dont j'ai besoin.	That which I need.

8. 'He who,' 'the one who,' etc. = **celui qui**:

J'aime **ceux qui** m'aiment.	I love those who love me.
Ma montre est plus jolie que **celle que** vous avez.	My watch is prettier than the one you have.

9. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le tableau **que** j'ai vu hier.	The picture I saw yesterday.

133. Present Indicative of *connaître*, 'to know,' 'be acquainted with,' etc. (irreg.).

I know, etc.

je connais [ʒə kɔnɛ].	nous connaissons [nu kɔnɛsɔ̃].
tu connais [ty kɔnɛ].	vous connaissez [vu kɔnɛse].
il connaît [il kɔnɛ].	ils connaissent [il kɔnɛːs].

EXERCISE XXXII.

A. C'est ma première promenade à Paris. Un Parisien de mes amis m'accompagne. Nous voilà à la place de la Concorde.—Quelle est cette église dont on voit la façade au bout de cette rue?—C'est l'église de la Madeleine dont je vous ai déjà parlé ce matin. C'est une très belle église. Je vous y mènerai un de ces jours pour assister à la messe.—Quel est cet autre édifice de l'autre côté du fleuve?—C'est le palais de la Chambre des députés. C'est là que se font les lois du pays. Je connais un député qui m'a donné des billets d'entrée pour demain. Voulez-vous m'y accompagner?—Avec plaisir. Et quel est ce grand monument tout près de nous?—C'est un obélisque égyptien qu'on a apporté en France sous Louis-Philippe. Voyez-vous aussi ces huit statues situées à différents points autour de la Place? Ce sont des statues qui représentent les villes les plus importantes de la France. Regardez surtout celle de Strasbourg qui est couverte de couronnes. C'est une société patriotique qui a fait cela pour marquer la douleur que lui a causée la perte de cette ville. Regardons encore ce qui se trouve autour de nous. A droite il y a les fameux Champs-Élysées avec leurs belles promenades. Cette avenue splendide qui les traverse mène au bois de Boulogne, en passant par l'Arc de Triomphe qu'on voit là-bas à l'horizon. À gauche nous voyons les jardins des Tuileries, et plus loin le Louvre, ancien palais des rois de France. C'est là que nous irons visiter les grandes galeries de peintures. Tout ce qu'on voit d'ici est intéressant.

B. Complete the following by supplying suitable relative pronoun forms: 1. La ville...nous habitons. 2. La ville ...nous demeurons. 3. L'oncle chez...je demeurais. 4. Les amis... m'accompagnent. 5. L'église... on voit la façade là-bas. 6. Les sœurs de nos amis...sont chez nous à présent. 7. Les dames...j'ai donné les fleurs. 8. Les chiens...j'ai donné la viande. 9. Vous savez ce...il a perdu. 10. Je vois ce...vous amuse. 11. Nous aimons ceux...nous aiment. 12. Ce...j'ai besoin.

C. (Oral.) 1. Est-ce la première promenade que vous faites à Paris? 2. Quel est l'ami qui vous accompagne? 3. L'ami que vous accompagnez connaît-il la ville? 4. Quel est l'endroit où vous commencez votre promenade? 5. L'église dont on voit la façade, quelle est-elle? 6. Est-ce l'église dont vous m'avez parlé ce matin? 7. Et cet autre édifice dont on voit la façade de l'autre côté du fleuve, quel est-il? 8. Vous dites que vous avez des billets d'entrée; qui vous les a donnés? 9. Est-ce le député chez qui vous étiez hier soir? 10. Où est cet obélisque égyptien dont vous m'avez parlé? 11. Est-ce le grand monument près duquel on voit tant de monde? 12. Que représentent ces statues-là? 13. Celle sur laquelle on voit tant de couronnes, la connaissez-vous? 14. Voulez-vous me dire ce qu'elle représente? 15. Cet espace qui se trouve à droite, est-ce un jardin public? 16. Cette avenue par laquelle on voit passer les voitures, où mène-t-elle? 17. Quels sont les jardins qui sont à gauche? 18. Quel est cet édifice dont on voit d'ici les fenêtres? 19. M'avez-vous montré tout ce qui est intéressant? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Paris is a city of which we have often spoken. 2. To-day I take my first walk in Paris. 3. The gentleman who accompanies me knows the city well. 4. He shows me everything that is interesting. 5. The point at which we begin our walk is the "place de la Concorde." 6. From this square we see the church of the Madeleine, whose façade we admire. 7. We see also the "chambre des Députés," where the laws of the country are made. 8. A member of parliament (*député*), at whose house we were yesterday, has given us tickets of admission. 9. Near the middle of the square there is an obelisk which was brought to France in the time of (*sous*) Louis-Philippe. 10. Statues which represent the most important cities of France are situated around the square. 11. What is that statue on which I see so many wreaths? 12. It is a statue which represents a city the loss of which caused much sorrow to France. 13. Let us look again at what is around us. 14. Where does that avenue lead, through which we see the carriages passing? 15. And what public gardens are those on our left, to which we are going (*se rendre*)? 16. They (*ce*) are the gardens of the Tuileries. 17. Farther off you see the Louvre, in which lived (*vivre*) the kings of France. 18. All that you have shown me is very interesting. 19. I thank you very much.

LESSON XXXIII.

134. The Interrogative Pronouns.

qui? [ki], who?, whom?
que? [kə], what?
quoi? [kwa], what?
lequel? [ləkɛl], m. s., **lesquels?** [lekɛl], m. pl. } which?, which one(s)?,
laquelle? [lakɛl], f. s., **lesquelles?** [lekɛl], f. pl. } what one(s)?

135. Use of Interrogatives. 1. **Qui?** = 'who?,' 'whom?,' is used of persons:

Qui sonne? **Qui** sont-elles?	Who is ringing? Who are they?
Dites-moi **qui** sonne.	Tell me who is ringing.
Qui a-t-il frappé?	Whom has he struck?
De **qui** parlez-vous?	Of whom are you speaking?

2. 'Whose?' denoting ownership simply = **à qui?**, otherwise generally **de qui?**, but never **dont**:

À qui est ce livre?	Whose book is this?
De qui êtes-vous (le) fils?	Whose son are you?

3. **Que?** = 'what?,' stands always as the object or the predicate of a verb:

Que vous a-t-il dit? **Qu'est-ce?**	What did he tell you? What is it?

4. 'What?' as subject is usually **qu'est-ce qui?**, and 'what' in indirect question is usually **ce qui** (ce que, etc.):

Qu'est-ce qui vous a intéressé?	What has interested you?
Je ne sais pas **ce qui** m'a frappé.	I do not know what struck me.
Dites-moi **ce que** vous désirez.	Tell me what you desire.

5. **Quoi?** = 'what?' stands regularly after a preposition, or absolutely, the verb being understood:

À **quoi** pensez-vous?	What are you thinking of?
Je cherche quelque chose.—**Quoi?**	I am looking for something.—What?

6. **Lequel?** (laquelle?, etc.) = 'which?,' 'which *or* what one?,' agrees in gender with the noun referred to. Both parts of **lequel** (**le** and **quel**) are inflected, and the usual contractions with **de** and **à** (cf. §§ 35, 46) take place:

Laquelle des dames est là?	Which of the ladies is there?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?	To which of the men does he speak?

EXERCISE XXXIII.

A. Mon ami et moi continuons aujourd'hui notre promenade. Nous allons voir d'autres choses intéressantes. Je demande à mon ami : "Qu'est-ce que c'est que l'île de la Cité dont vous me parlez ?"—L'île de la Cité est une île de la Seine où on trouve plusieurs des grands édifices publics de Paris. Mais vous allez voir tout de suite. Nous voici au Pont-Neuf par lequel on entre dans la Cité.—Quel est ce grand édifice dont nous approchons ?—C'est le Palais de Justice.—Qu'est-ce que c'est que le Palais de Justice ?—C'est l'endroit où les juges règlent les différends qui existent entre les particuliers.—Quelle est cette partie de l'édifice qui ressemble à une église ?—C'est, en effet, une église qui s'appelle la Sainte-Chapelle.—Par qui a-t-elle été bâtie ?—Elle a été bâtie par un roi de France qui s'appelait Saint-Louis, fils de la célèbre Blanche de Castille. Mais continuons notre chemin. En avançant nous voyons l'Hôtel-Dieu.—Qu'est-ce que c'est que l'Hôtel-Dieu ?—C'est un hôpital.—Et en face de nous quelle est cette grande église ?—C'est l'église de Notre-Dame dont nous avons déjà tant parlé.—Oh oui, je me rappelle. Je ne sais pas à quoi je pensais. Que je suis bête ! Laquelle est la plus ancienne, l'église de Notre-Dame ou la Madeleine ?—Notre-Dame est beaucoup plus ancienne ; elle est parmi les plus anciennes églises de l'Europe. C'est une belle façade ; admirons-la un peu. Regardez les trois portails qui sont ornés de statues.—Qu'est-ce que c'est que cette rangée de statues au-dessus des portails ?—C'est ce qu'on appelle la galerie des rois.—Qu'est-ce que cela signifie ?—On dit que les vingt-huit statues représentent des rois de France. Au-dessus de la galerie il y a une belle rosace, plus haut, une deuxième galerie où il n'y a pas de statues, et encore plus haut, les deux grandes tours où se trouvent les cloches.

B. Write in French one example of the correct use of each of the following interrogative forms and locutions : 1. Que ? 2. Est-ce que ? 3. Qu'est-ce que ? 4. Quel ? 5. Quelle ? 6. Quels ? 7. Quelles ? 8. Qui ? 9. Qu'est-ce que c'est que ? 10. Quoi ? 11. Lequel ? 12. Laquelle ? 13. Lesquels ? 14. Lesquelles. 15. À qui ? 16. De qui ?

C. (Oral.) 1. Avec qui vous promenez-vous aujourd'hui ? 2. Qu'est-ce que vous allez voir ? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'est que

l'île de la Cité? 4. Où est-ce qu'elle est située? 5 Quels édifices s'y trouvent? 6. Comment s'appelle ce pont-là? 7. Qu'est-ce que c'est que ce grand palais? 8. J'en vois deux, lequel voulez-vous dire? 9. Voulez-vous me dire par qui la Sainte-Chapelle a été bâtie? 10. Savez-vous de qui il était le fils? 11. Savez-vous ce que c'est que l'Hôtel-Dieu? 12. Quelle est la plus ancienne de ces deux églises, Notre-Dame ou la Madeleine? 13. Quel est l'autre édifice que vous voulez visiter maintenant? 14. Auquel voulez-vous aller? 15. Où sont ces fameux portails dont vous parliez? 16. Qu'y a-t-il au-dessus des portails? 17. Qu'est-ce que c'est que la galerie des rois? 18. Voulez-vous me dire ce qu'il y a dans cette tour-là? 19. Qu'est-ce qui vous a intéressé le plus dans cet édifice? Etc., etc.

D. 1. What interesting things are you going to see to-day? 2. What is the île de la Cité? 3. What is the name of the bridge by which one enters it (*y*)? 4. Which of those buildings is the Palais de Justice? 5. What is the Palais de Justice? 6. What is a judge? 7. A judge is a man who settles disputes. 8. There is a part of the building which resembles a church; what is it? 9. Will you tell me by whom the Sainte-Chapelle was built? 10. Which of those buildings is the Hôtel-Dieu? 11. Do you know what the Hôtel-Dieu is? 12. What is the name of that large church in front of us? 13. Which is the more ancient of those two churches, Notre-Dame or la Madeleine? 14. Which of these two churches do you admire the most? 15. In which do you attend mass? 16. What is it that people call "la galerie des rois"? 17. What is there in the two high towers on the right hand and on the left? 18. What has interested you most in Notre-Dame?

LESSON XXXIV.

136. Indefinite Pronouns. The indefinite pronouns of most frequent occurrence are:—

1. **On** [ɔ̃], 'one,' 'some one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' etc. (cf. §48).

2. **Quelqu'un** [kɛlk œ̃], m., **quelqu'une** [kɛlk yn], f., 'somebody,' 'some one,' 'any one,' plural **quelques-uns** [kɛlkəz œ̃], m., **quelques-unes** [kɛlkəz yn], f., 'some,' 'some people,' 'any,' 'a few':

Il y a **quelqu'un** à la porte.	There is somebody at the door.
J'ai vu **quelques-unes** de vos amies.	I have seen some of your friends.
Avez-vous des cerises, madame ?	Have you any cherries, madam ?
J'en ai **quelques-unes.**	I have a few.

3. **Quelque chose** [kɛlkə ʃoːʒ], m., 'something,' 'anything' :

Quelque chose est tombé.	Something has fallen.
J'ai **quelque chose** de bon.	I have something good.

4. Along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, **personne** [pɛrsɔn], m., means 'nobody, 'not anybody,' 'no one,' and **rien** [rjɛ̃], m., 'nothing,' 'not anything' :

Je **n'**ai parlé à **personne.**	I did not speak to anybody.
Vous **n'**avez **rien** apporté.	You have brought nothing.
Il **n'**a **rien** dit de mauvais.	He said nothing bad.
Qu'a-t-il dit ?—**Rien.**	What did he say ?—Nothing.
Personne ici !	Nobody here !

137. Certain forms serve both as adjectives and as pronouns. Those of most frequent occurrence are :—

1. **Autre** [otr], 'other' (adjective) ; **un autre,** 'another,' **l'autre,** 'the other' (pronoun) :

Une **autre** fois ; d'**autres** causes.	Another time ; other causes.
Les autres iront aussi.	The others will go too.

2. Distinguish **un autre** from **encore un :**

Une autre plume.	Another (a different) pen.
Encore une plume.	Another (an additional) pen.

3. From **autre** are formed various locutions :

L'une et l'autre occasion.	Both occasions.
Les uns et les autres partent.	All are going away.
Donnez-le à **l'un ou** à **l'autre.**	Give it to either.
Ce n'est **ni** pour **les uns ni** pour **les autres.**	It is for none of them.
Elles se flattent **les unes les autres.**	They flatter each other.
Ils ont peur **les uns des autres.**	They are afraid of one another.

4. When used with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, the verb being understood, **aucun** [okœ̃], **nul** [nyl], **pas un** [pɑz œ̃], as adjectives = 'no,' 'not one,' 'not any,' and as pronouns = 'none,' 'no one,' 'not one' :

Aucun auteur **ne** dit cela.	No author says that.
A-t-on de l'espoir ?—**Aucun.**	Have they any hope ?—None.

5. **Tel** [tɛl] = 'such,' **un tel** = 'such a.' 'Such' as an adverb is **si** [si] or **tellement** [tɛlmɑ̃]:

Telles sont mes douleurs.	Such are my griefs.
Qui raconte **une telle** histoire?	Who tells such a story?
Une **si** belle maison.	Such a beautiful house.
Un homme **tellement** cruel.	Such a cruel man.

6. **Tout** [tu], m., **toute** [tut], f., **tous** [tu (as adj.), tus (as pron.)], m. pl., **toutes** [tut], f. pl., = 'all,' 'every,' 'any,' 'whole,' etc.:

Tous les hommes.	All (the) men.
Toute ma vie.	All my (my whole) life.
Tous (toutes) sont arrivé(e)s.	All have come.

7. **Même** [mɛːm], before a noun or as a pronoun = 'same'; **même**, following the noun or pronoun qualified = 'self,' 'very,' 'even,' and agrees, but has no article; as adverb **même** = 'even':

La **même** chose.	The same thing.
Ce sont les **mêmes**.	They are the same.
Dieu est la bonté **même**.	God is goodness itself.
Les enfants **mêmes** le savent.	The very children know it.
Nous-**mêmes**; elles-**mêmes**.	We ourselves; they themselves.
Ils nous ont **même** battus.	They even beat us.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

A. À Paris on peut s'amuser facilement. On y trouve des amusements pour tout le monde. On y trouve des théâtres, des cirques, des spectacles de toute espèce. Hier nous avons été à un spectacle qui nous a amusés beaucoup. Un monsieur en était le directeur, mais tous les acteurs étaient des chats et des chiens. C'était quelque chose de magnifique. On n'a jamais rien vu de plus amusant! Personne n'avait jamais vu des animaux si intelligents! Il y avait des chiens noirs et des chiens blancs. Il y en avait des grands et des petits. Il y en avait de toutes les races: des chiens danois, des chiens de berger, des terre-neuve, des lévriers et des caniches. Les grands chiens portaient les petits sur le dos. Quelques-uns étaient habillés en homme et d'autres en femme: ils faisaient beaucoup de tours comiques. Il y en avait qui fumaient la pipe. Il y en avait d'autres qui causaient ensemble comme des personnes D'autres promenaient des voitures d'enfant comme des bonnes. Quelques-uns se promenaient à bicyclette, quelques-uns mar-

chaient sur les pattes de derrière, et un, plus fort que les autres, marchait sur les pattes de devant. Il y en avait d'autres qui se battaient à coups de poing. Il y en avait même qui tiraient des coups de pistolet. Ils couraient, ils sautaient, et pas un ne semblait s'ennuyer. Les personnes qui assistaient au spectacle ne s'ennuyaient pas non plus. On riait, on applaudissait, on battait des mains, et personne n'a quitté la salle en mauvaise humeur.

B. Write in French one example for the use of each of the following in a sentence: 1. On. 2. Quelque chose. 3. Quelque chose de. 4. Quelqu'un. 5. Quelques-unes. 6. Ne . . . personne. 7. Ne . . . rien. 8. Autre (adj.). 9. L'une l'autre. 10. Les uns aux autres. 11. Pas une (adj.). 12. Un tel. 13. Toutes (adj.). 14. Tous (pron.). 15. Même (=self). 16. Même (=even).

C. (Oral.) 1. Est-ce qu'on s'amuse facilement à Paris? 2. Y a-t-il des amusements pour tous? 3. Quelques-uns des théâtres sont-ils très célèbres? 4. Avez-vous été à quelque spectacle hier? 5. Était-ce quelque chose d'amusant? 6. N'avez-vous jamais rien vu de plus amusant? 7. Avez-vous jamais vu un tel spectacle? 8. A-t-on vu des animaux si intelligents? 9. Quelles espèces de chiens y avait-il? 10. Qu'est-ce que les uns faisaient pendant que les autres fumaient la pipe? 11. Avez-vous dit que les uns parlaient aux autres? 12. Comment se battaient-ils? 13. Jouaient-ils tous en même temps? 14. Est-ce que tous les chiens semblaient contents? 15. Est-ce que les personnes qui y assistaient s'amusaient bien? 16. Et personne n'a quitté la salle avant la fin, n'est-ce pas? 17. Ces chiens sont-ils les mêmes que nous avons vus l'année passée? 18. Est-ce que les enfants iront les voir encore une fois? 19. Irez-vous vous-même? 20. Irez-vous même s'il fait mauvais temps? Etc., etc.

D. 1. There are amusements in Paris for all sorts of people. 2. There is something new every day. 3. One can find amusement in the promenades and public gardens for nothing. 4. You can also visit the picture galleries for nothing. 5. Some of the theatres of Paris are among the best in the world. 6. Some of its promenades are very celebrated, for example, the Champs-Élysées. 7. Yesterday evening I was at a very amusing show. 8. Two of my cousins (f.), who are at our

house, were with me. 9. Both enjoyed themselves very much. 10. I have never seen anything more amusing myself. 11. It was a kind of theatre, in which the actors were dogs and cats. 12. There were dogs of all races: shepherd's dogs, poodles, and many other kinds. 13. Several of the dogs were dressed like men and women. 14. Some were walking on their hind feet. 15. Others were smoking pipes. 16. And there were even a few that were chatting together like people in the street. 17. Nobody left the hall before the end of the show. 18. We were all very much pleased. 19. We saw the same dogs last year, but they seemed all cleverer this year. 20. I should go to see them again to-morrow if somebody accompanied me. 21. I shall go with you myself.

LESSON XXXV.

138. Cardinal Numerals.

1.	un, une	[œ̃, yn].	21.	vingt et un	[vɛ̃t e œ̃].
2.	deux	[dø].	22.	vingt-deux	[vɛ̃nd dø].
3.	trois	[trwɑ].	30.	trente	[trɑ̃ːt].
4.	quatre	[katr].	31.	trente et un	[trɑ̃ːt e œ̃].
5.	cinq	[sɛ̃ːk].	40.	quarante	[karɑ̃ːt].
6.	six	[sis].	50.	cinquante	[sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt].
7.	sept	[sɛt].	60.	soixante	[swasɑ̃ːt].
8.	huit	[ɥit].	70.	soixante-dix	[swasɑ̃ːt dis].
9.	neuf	[nœf].	71.	soixante et onze	[swasɑ̃ːt e ɔ̃ːz].
10.	dix	[dis].	80.	quatre-vingts	[katr vɛ̃].
11.	onze	[ɔ̃ːz].	81.	quatre-vingt-un	[katr vɛ̃ œ̃].
12.	douze	[duːz].	90.	quatre-vingt-dix	[katr vɛ̃ dis].
13.	treize	[trɛːz].	91.	quatre-vingt-onze	[katr vɛ̃ ɔ̃ːz].
14.	quatorze	[katɔrz].	100.	cent	[sɑ̃].
15.	quinze	[kɛ̃ːz].	101.	cent un	[sɑ̃ œ̃].
16.	seize	[sɛːz].	200.	deux cents	[dø sɑ̃].
17.	dix-sept	[dis sɛt].	201.	deux cent un	[dø sɑ̃ œ̃].
18.	dix-huit	[diz ɥit].	1000.	mille	[mil].
19.	dix-neuf	[diz nœf].	1001.	mille un	[mil œ̃].
20.	vingt	[vɛ̃].	2000.	deux mille	[dø mil].

Nouns of Number: 1,000,000 = un million [œ̃ miljɔ̃]; 2,000,000 = deux millions [dø miljɔ̃]; 1,000,000,000 = un milliard [œ̃ miljaːr].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, is optional in 70, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

Notes on Pronunciation: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: 'Cinq livres' [sɛ̃ liːvr], but 'le cinq mai' [lə sɛ̃ːk mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit, onze**: Le huit [lə ɥit]; les huit livres [le ɥi liːvr]; le onze [lə ɔ̃ːz]; les onze francs [le ɔ̃ːz frɑ̃]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, becomes **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un, deux cent un**, etc.

139. **Million** and **milliard** require **de** before the object enumerated; **cent** = 'a (*or* one) hundred'; **mille** = 'a (*or* one) thousand':

Il a payé un million **de** francs.	He has paid a million (of) francs.
Ceci vaut **cent** francs.	This is worth a hundred francs.

140. **Quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent** take **-s** only when immediately preceding a noun, or when they themselves are used as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingt**s** francs.	Eighty francs.
Trois cent**s** francs.	Three hundred francs.
Les cinq cent**s**.	The five hundreds.

But: Trois cent un francs; quatre-vingt-un francs, etc.

Obs.: They are not nouns of number in dates, or when used as ordinals.

141. **Multiplicatives.** 'Once' = **une fois,** 'twice' = **deux fois,** 'three times' = **trois fois,** etc.:

Dix fois dix font cent.	Ten times ten make a hundred.

142. **Ordinal Numerals.** They are formed from 'third' upwards by adding **-ième** to the corresponding cardinal, final **e** being dropped; **cinq** adds **u,** and **neuf** changes **f** to **v** before **-ième:**

1st	premier	[prəmje].	7th	septième	[sɛtjɛm].
2nd	second	[səgɔ̃].	8th	huitième	[ɥitjɛm].
	deuxième	[døzjɛm].	9th	neuvième	[nœvjɛm].
3rd	troisième	[trwɑzjɛm].	10th	dixième	[dizjɛm].
4th	quatrième	[katriɛm].	11th	onzième	[ɔ̃zjɛm].
5th	cinquième	[sɛ̃kjɛm].	21st	vingt et unième	[vɛ̃t e ynjɛm].
6th	sixième	[sizjɛm].	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛ̃nd døzjɛm].

143. **Fractions.** The numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal, as in English. 'Half' = **moitié**, f. (as noun), and **demi** (as adjective); $\frac{1}{4}$ = **un quart**, $\frac{1}{3}$ = **un tiers**. Before a noun, **demi** is invariable, and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere. Use **la moitié** (not **demi**) where 'the half of' is, or may be, used in English:

Un huitième; les trois dixièmes.	One-eighth; the three tenths.
La **moitié** de l'année.	(The) half (of) the year.
Une heure et **demie**.	An hour and a half.
Une **demi**-heure.	Half an hour.
Les trois quarts de cette somme.	Three-fourths of that sum.

EXERCISE XXXV.

A. En France on indique la valeur des objets par francs et centimes. Le franc vaut à peu près vingt "cents" de la monnaie canadienne ou américaine. Le centime est la centième partie du franc. On compte souvent aussi par sous pour les petites sommes. Un sou, aussi bien qu'un "cent" américain, vaut cinq centimes. Pour trouver la valeur, en monnaie canadienne, d'une somme quelconque, exprimée en francs, on la divise par cinq. Par exemple, une somme de sept francs quarante centimes (7 fr. 40) vaut un dollar et quarante-huit "cents" de notre monnaie. Au contraire, pour trouver la valeur en francs d'une somme quelconque, exprimée en dollars, on la multiplie par cinq. Ainsi $7.45 vaut, en monnaie française, trente-sept francs vingt-cinq centimes (37 fr. 25).

B. (Oral.) 1. Comptez en français jusqu'à dix; de dix à vingt; de vingt à trente. 2. Nommez les nombres 40, 41, 50, 51, 53, 60, 61, 64, 70, 71, 75, 76, 80, 81, 87, 90, 91, 92, 93, 100, 101, 102, 118, 171, 179, 200, 220, 1000, 1001, 75,000, 2,000,000, $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{4}{9}$, $2\frac{1}{4}$. 3. Deux fois un font deux; deux fois

deux font quatre, etc... continuez jusqu'à deux fois douze. 4. Trois fois un font trois, etc. 5. Combien font 2 fois 10; 7 fois 9; 9 fois 9; 11 fois 11?, etc. 6. Donnez les nombres ordinaux jusqu'à vingtième. 7. Nommez les ordinaux 21e, 51e, 71e, 89e, 101e, 200e, 2000e. 8. Comment indique-t-on la valeur des objets en France? 9. Combien vaut le franc en notre monnaie? 10. Combien de centimes y a-t-il en un franc? 11. Quelle partie du franc le centime est-il? 12. Combien vaut le sou? 13. Quelle est la valeur de cent francs en monnaie canadienne? 14. Quelle est la valeur de cent dollars en monnaie française? Etc., etc.

C. Give in dollars and cents the equivalents of: 1. Cinq centimes. 2. Dix centimes. 3. Quinze centimes. 4. Vingt centimes. 5. Vingt-cinq centimes. 6. Cinquante centimes. 7. Soixante-quinze centimes. 8. Quatre-vingt-quinze centimes. 9. Un franc dix (centimes). 10. Un franc vingt-cinq. 11. Un franc soixante-quinze. 12. Un franc cinquante. 13. Dix sous. 14. Vingt sous. 15. Cinquante sous. 16. Cent francs. 17. Cent cinquante francs. 18. Deux cents francs. 19. Cinq cents francs. 20. Mille francs. 21. Deux millions de francs.

D. Give in French, in francs and centimes, the equivalents of: 1. One cent. 2. Five cents. 3. Eight cents. 4. Ten cents. 5. Fifteen cents. 6. Eighteen cents. 7. Twenty cents. 8. Twenty-five cents. 9. Thirty cents. 10. Fifty cents. 11. Seventy-five cents. 12. Ninety cents. 13. One dollar. 14. One dollar and twenty-five cents. 15. One dollar and fifty cents. 16. One dollar and seventy-five cents. 17. Two dollars. 18. Ten dollars. 19. Fifty dollars. 20. A hundred dollars. 21. A thousand dollars.

LESSON XXXVI.

144. Dates, Titles, etc. 1. The form **mil** is used in dates of the Christian era, from 1001 to 1099; from 1100 onward dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

(En) l'an **mil** six.	(In) the year 1006.
En mil neuf cent neuf.	In nineteen hundred and nine.
En dix-neuf cent neuf.	In 1909.

2. Days of the month and numerical titles of rulers are indicated by cardinals, except 'first' = **premier**:

Le **premier** mai. Charles **premier.**	The first of May. Charles the First.
Paris, le **deux** mai.	Paris, the 2nd of May.
Louis **quatorze** (XIV).	Louis XIV.

3. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	What day of the month is this?
Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	" " " "
Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	" " " "
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	**On** the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came **on** Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (future).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

4. The names of the months may be conveniently learned from the following rhyme:

Trente jours ont septembre,
Avril, juin, novembre;
Trente et un ont mars et mai,
Août, octobre, puis juillet,
Et décembre et janvier;
De vingt-huit est février.

5. Observe the following idioms referring to age:

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fille âgée de six ans.	A girl six years old (*or* of age).
À l'âge de vingt-cinq ans.	At the age of twenty-five (years).

EXERCISE XXXVI.

A. Dans tous les pays il y a des jours de fête, où on ne travaille pas. En France, les jours de fête reconnus par la loi sont: les dimanches, le jour de l'An, où on se donne des étrennes; le lundi de Pâques, qui tombe entre le 21 mars et le

26 avril ; l'Ascension, qui tombe quarante jours après Pâques ; le lundi de la Pentecôte, qu'on célèbre cinquante jours après Pâques en mémoire de la descente du Saint-Esprit sur les apôtres ; la Fête Nationale, qu'on célèbre le 14 juillet en mémoire de la destruction de la Bastille (le 14 juillet, 1789) ; l'Assomption, qu'on célèbre le 15 août en mémoire de l'ascension de la sainte Vierge ; la Toussaint, la fête de tous les saints, qui tombe le Ier novembre; et le jour de Noël, le 25 décembre, en mémoire de la naissance de Jésus-Christ. Il y a beaucoup d'autres fêtes religieuses, comme par exemple le vendredi saint et la Fête-Dieu. Il y a aussi, en outre, plusieurs fêtes plutôt populaires que religieuses, quoiqu'ayant une origine religieuse, comme le jour des Rois et le mardi gras.

B. Parmi les rois de France les plus célèbres se trouvent ceux-ci : François Ier, né le 12 septembre, 1494. Il a commencé à régner en 1515, à l'âge de vingt ans. Il est mort le 31 mars, 1547. Louis XIV, né le 5 septembre, 1638. Lorsqu'il n'avait que cinq ans il a succédé à son père le 14 mai, 1643. Après un long règne de soixante-douze ans, il est mort le Ier septembre, 1715. Louis XVI, né le 23 août, 1754, a succédé à son grand-père, Louis XV, le 10 mai, 1774, à l'âge de vingt ans. C'est sous son règne que la Révolution a éclaté. Il a été décapité le 21 janvier, 1793.

C. (Oral.) 1. Répétez-moi les noms des six premiers mois de l'année. 2. Quels sont les noms des six derniers mois de l'année ? 3. Quels sont les mois qui n'ont que trente jours ? 4. Le mois de février combien de jours a-t-il ? 5. Quelle est la première fête de l'année en France ? 6. Entre quelles dates le lundi de Pâques tombe-t-il ? 7. Combien de jours y a-t-il entre Pâques et l'Ascension ? 8. Quand est-ce qu'on célèbre la Fête Nationale ? 9. En mémoire de quoi la célèbre-t-on ? 10. Dites-moi la date de la fête de l'Assomption. 11. Qu'est-ce que c'est que la Toussaint ? 12. Quand est-ce qu'elle se célèbre ? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'on célèbre le jour de Noël ? 14. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui ? 15. Quel jour du mois serons-nous demain ? 16. Quel jour du mois serons-nous d'aujourd'hui en huit ? 17. Et lundi de la semaine prochaine quel jour du mois serons-nous ? 18. Quel jour de la semaine Noël tombe-t-il cette année ? Etc., etc.

D. (Oral.) 1. Quel âge avez-vous? 2. Dans quel mois êtes-vous né? 3. Quel jour du mois? 4. Quand François Ier est-il né? 5. Quel âge avait-il quand il a commencé à régner? 6. Quand a-t-il commencé à régner? 7. Dites-moi la date de sa mort? 8. En quelle année Louis XIV est-il né? 9. Quel jour du mois? 10. Quel âge avait-il quand il a succédé à son père? 11. Combien de temps a-t-il régné? 12. Quand est-il mort? 13. À qui a succédé Louis XVI? 14. Quand a-t-il été décapité? Etc., etc.

E. 1. The months of April, June, September and November have thirty days. 2. The months of January, March, May, July, August, October and December have thirty-one days. 3. The month of February has twenty-eight, and sometimes twenty-nine days. 4. The 1st of January is New-Year's Day. 5. On (à l'occasion de) New-Year's Day in France people (*on*) give each other gifts (*étrennes*). 6. Easter Monday falls between the 21st of March and the 26th of April. 7. The Fête Nationale is celebrated on the 14th of July. 8. It is celebrated in memory of the destruction of the Bastille, in 1789. 9. The 15th of August is the date of the Feast of the Assumption. 10. All Saints' Day falls on the 1st of November. 11. The 25th of December is Christmas Day.

F. 1. Francis I., Louis XIV., and Louis XVI., are among the most celebrated kings of France. 2. Francis I. was born (*est né*) on the 12th of September, 1494. 3. He was twenty years of age when (*lorsque*) he began to reign. 4. He reigned thirty-two years, and died (*est mort*) in 1547. 5. Louis XIV. began to reign at the age of five years. 6. He was born in 1638, on the 5th of September. 7. He reigned seventy-two years. 8. The day of his death was the 1st of September, 1715. 9. In the reign of (*sous*) Louis XVI. the French Revolution broke out. 10. Louis XVI. had succeeded Louis XV. in 1774. 11. On the 21st of January, 1793, he was decapitated. 12. How old are you? 13. How old were you when you began to go to school? 14. What is the date of your birthday? 15. What day of the month is it to-day? 16. Two weeks from to-day (it) will be the 24th May.

LESSON XXXVII.

145. The Time of Day. The hours and fractions of hours are indicated as follows:

Quelle heure est-il?	What o'clock is it?
Il est deux heures.	It is two o'clock.
Trois heures et demie.	Half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Quatre heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to four.
Trois heures cinquante-cinq.	Three fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit.	It is twelve o'clock (night).
À sept heures du soir.	At seven o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what o'clock?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	About three o'clock.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

A. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous? C'est le quinze, n'est-ce pas? J'ai une lettre à écrire à mon frère pour lui raconter ce que j'ai fait aujourd'hui. Ç'a été une journée bien remplie. Le matin à neuf heures un quart j'arrive chez le tailleur pour essayer mon vêtement. C'est un complet en serge. Il me va très bien. Il coûtera cent dix francs. À dix heures dix je me trouve chez le chapelier. Il n'a pas de chapeaux que j'aime, et j'en commande un. Le prix sera de vingt-deux francs. J'entre chez le gantier à onze heures précises. J'achète deux paires de gants de chevreau. À onze heures et demie me voilà chez le marchand de chaussures. On prend ma mesure, et on me fera une paire de souliers. Ils seront prêts dans huit jours. À midi précis je fais ma deuxième visite au médecin. J'ai fait ma première visite il y a huit jours. Il m'a ausculté, et il a trouvé chez moi une légère faiblesse de poitrine. Il m'a fait une ordonnance, et j'irai le voir pour la troisième fois d'aujourd'hui en huit. À midi et demi je déjeune dans un restaurant rue de Rivoli. L'addition est de deux francs vingt-cinq, avec cinq sous de pourboire. À une heure

vingt-cinq me voilà dans les galeries du Louvre. J'y passe une heure et demie. À trois heures un quart j'arrive au Théâtre-Français. Je paie ma place au parterre deux francs cinquante. On joue *le Cid* de Corneille. À six heures moins vingt-cinq j'arrive ici. J'étais très fatigué, et je me repose pendant une heure avant de m'habiller pour dîner. À sept heures dix nous nous mettons à table. Nous dînons bien. Nous causons après. Et voilà maintenant huit heures et demie. Je vais écrire ma lettre.

B. 1. Relate the above, beginning at the fifth sentence, using 'mon frère' as the subject, and making the necessary changes throughout. 2. Re-write the extract, substituting a time five minutes later for each hour of the day mentioned.

C. (Oral.) 1. C'est aujourd'hui le dix, n'est-ce pas? 2. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce? 3. Quelle heure est-il à votre montre? 4. Avez-vous été en ville aujourd'hui? 5. À quelle heure êtes-vous parti ce matin? 6. Chez qui êtes-vous allé d'abord? 7. Quand êtes-vous arrivé chez lui? 8. Combien votre complet en serge coûtera-t-il? 9. À quelle heure vous êtes-vous trouvé chez le chapelier? 10. Quel sera le prix du chapeau que vous avez commandé? 11. Êtes-vous resté une demi-heure chez le gantier? 12. Où étiez-vous à onze heures et demie précises? 13. Quand vos souliers seront-ils prêts? 14. À quelle heure votre médecin se trouve-t-il chez lui? 15. Quand êtes-vous allé le voir l'autre fois? 16. À quelle heure avez-vous déjeuné? 17. Combien avez-vous payé? 18. À quelle heure êtes-vous arrivé au Louvre? 19. À quelle heure avez-vous dîné ce soir? 20. Quelle heure est-il à présent? Etc., etc.

D. 1. My brother has related to me what he did to-day down town. 2. He has told me the precise hour at which he was at the tailor's, the hatter's, etc. 3. He set out at half-past eight. 4. He arrived at the tailor's at half-past nine. 5. He says that his serge suit fits him well. 6. He was trying on hats at the hatter's at ten minutes after ten. 7. He bought two pairs of gloves at eleven o'clock precisely. 8. Half an hour later he was at the shoemaker's. 9. His shoes will be ready in a week. 10. At five minutes after twelve he visited his doctor for the second time. 11. He will visit him again a week from to-day. 12. At half-past twelve he lunched in a restaurant. 13. His lunch cost him two francs and fifty cen-

times. 14. At twenty-five minutes past one he went to the Louvre to see the paintings. 15. At a quarter to three he was at the door of the Théâtre-Français. 16. At ten minutes to six he left the theatre. 17. In a quarter of an hour he was at home. 18. He rested for half an hour. 19. At ten minutes after seven (the) dinner was ready. 20. All that is interesting for him, but not for me.

LESSON XXXVIII.

146. Past Definite of *donner, finir, vendre.*

I gave, etc.		I finished, etc.		I sold, etc.	
donn **ai**	[dɔne].	fin **is**	[fini].	vend **is**	[vɑ̃di].
donn **as**	[dɔna].	fin **is**	[fini].	vend **is**	[vɑ̃di].
donn **a**	[dɔna].	fin **it**	[fini].	vend **it**	[vɑ̃di].
donn **âmes**	[dɔnam].	fin **îmes**	[finim].	vend **îmes**	[vɑ̃dim].
donn **âtes**	[dɔnat].	fin **îtes**	[finit].	vend **îtes**	[vɑ̃dit].
donn **èrent**	[dɔnɛːr].	fin **irent**	[finiːr].	vend **irent**	[vɑ̃diːr].

147. Past Definite of *avoir, être.*

I had, etc.		I was, etc.	
eus [y].	eûmes [ym].	fus [fy].	fûmes [fym].
eus [y].	eûtes [yt].	fus [fy].	fûtes [fyt].
eut [y].	eurent [yːr].	fut [fy].	furent [fyːr].

148. Use of the Past Definite. The past definite is used in the literary narrative style to denote what happened (completed past action), or what happened next (successive events). It never denotes, like the imperfect (§ 87), what was happening or used to happen, or continued to happen :

Les Romains **brûlèrent** Carthage.	The Romans **burnt** Carthage.
Dieu **accepta** les présents d'Abel, qui *était* plus pieux que son frère ; mais il **détourna** les yeux de ceux de Caïn, parce que son cœur n'*était* pas pur....Un jour Caïn et Abel *étaient* seuls dans un champ, et Caïn se **jeta** sur Abel, et le **tua**.	God **accepted** the gifts of Abel, who *was* more righteous than his brother ; but he **turned away** his eyes from those of Cain, because his heart *was* not pure......One day Cain and Abel *were* alone in a field, and Cain **fell** upon Abel, and **slew** him.

149. Past Definite of *faire* (irreg.).

I did, etc.

je fis [ʒə fi].	nous fîmes [nu fim].
tu fis [ty fi].	vous fîtes [vu fit].
il fit [il fi].	ils firent [il fiːr].

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Note.—Up to this point the past indefinite has been used exclusively in the exercises to express completed action in past time. It was thought well to give ample practice in the past indefinite, owing to its almost exclusive use as a past tense in the language of every-day life. Since the past definite, however, is so extensively employed in narration in the literary or elevated style, and since familiarity with its forms is so necessary for the reading of books, this tense will be given prominence in the extracts and exercises which follow.

A. Un petit rouge-gorge frappa à notre fenêtre. "Ayez pitié de moi ! Ouvrez-moi, je vous prie ; la neige tombe, la bise souffle, et j'ai bien faim."

Nous eûmes pitié du petit rouge-gorge, et j'ouvris la fenêtre. Le gentil oiseau vola dans la chambre, et ramassa les miettes de pain qui étaient tombées de la table. Bientôt même il becqueta le grain dans la main qu'on lui tendait.

Mais lorsque la neige fut fondue, le printemps revint et les haies se couvrirent de feuilles. Nous ouvrîmes la fenêtre, et notre petit hôte s'envola dans le bois voisin, où il bâtit son nid, et nous entendîmes ses joyeuses chansons.

L'hiver revint, et le rouge-gorge revint aussi, cette fois avec sa compagne. Les deux petits oiseaux entrèrent avec confiance dans la chambre, et nous nous réjouîmes beaucoup de les revoir.

B. Continue the following : 1. J'eus pitié de lui, tu eus, etc. 2. J'ouvris la fenêtre, tu, etc. 3. Je volai dans la chambre, tu, etc. 4. Je ramassai les miettes de pain, tu, etc. 5. Je me couvris la tête, tu, etc. 6. Je m'envolai dans le bois, tu, etc. 7. Je bâtis une maison de pierre, tu, etc. 8. J'entendis des chansons d'oiseau, tu, etc. 9. J'entrai dans la chambre, tu, etc. 10. Je me réjouis de les revoir, tu, etc. 11. Je fis mon devoir, tu fis ton, etc. 12. Je fus joyeux, tu, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quel oiseau raconte-t-on cette histoire ? 2. Où frappa ce petit rouge-gorge ? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il a dit ? 4. Est-ce que vous eûtes (*or* avez eu) pitié de lui ? 5. Qui

ouvrit la fenêtre? 6. Et alors que fit le rouge-gorge? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il ramassa? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'on lui tendait souvent dans la main? 9. Quelle saison arriva enfin? 10. La neige était-elle déjà fondue? 11. Qu'est-ce que vous fîtes (*or* avez fait) alors? 12. Et le petit rouge-gorge où s'envola-t-il? 13. Qu'est-ce qu'il bâtit dans le bois? 14. Chantait-il souvent? 15. Ses chansons étaient-elles joyeuses ou tristes? 16. Entendîtes-vous ses chansons? 17. Quand le rouge-gorge revint-il? 18. Qui l'accompagna? 19. Qui ouvrit la fenêtre de la chambre cette fois? 20. Et les oiseaux que firent-ils? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Here is the story of a little robin. 2. The snow was falling, the north wind was blowing, and the robin was hungry. 3. He often knocked at our window. 4. At last I had pity on the poor bird, and I opened the window. 5. The pretty little robin flew into the room. 6. There were some crumbs of bread on the table, and he picked them up. 7. My sister used to hold out crumbs to him in her hand. 8. At last he pecked at them. 9. In spring the snow melted, and the hedges were covered with leaves and flowers. 10. The little robin was sad, and did not sing. 11. I opened the window, and he flew away. 12. He built his nest in a neighbouring wood. 13. We heard his joyful song again. 14. The robin returned (*revint*) with the winter. 15. Another robin accompanied him this time. 16. We rejoiced very much at this. 17. We opened our windows, and the two birds flew into the room. 18. They passed a second winter with us, and flew away again in spring.

LESSON XXXIX.

150. Imperfect Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre.*

(That) I gave, might give, etc.		(That) I finished, might finish, etc.		(That) I sold, might sell, etc.	
donn **asse**	[dɔnas].	fin **isse**	[finis].	vend **isse**	[vɑ̃dis].
donn **asses**	[dɔnas].	fin **isses**	[finis].	vend **isses**	[vɑ̃dis].
donn **ât**	[dɔna].	fin **ît**	[fini].	vend **ît**	[vɑ̃di].
donn **assions**	[dɔnasjɔ̃].	fin **issions**	[finisjɔ̃].	vend **issions**	[vɑ̃disjɔ̃].
donn **assiez**	[dɔnasje].	fin **issiez**	[finisje].	vend **issiez**	[vɑ̃disje].
donn **assent**	[dɔnas].	fin **issent**	[finis].	vend **issent**	[vɑ̃dis].

151. Imperfect Subjunctive of *avoir, être.*

(That) I had, might have.		(That) I was, were, might be, etc.	
eusse [ys].	eussions [ysjɔ̃].	fusse [fys].	fussions [fysjɔ̃].
eusses [ys].	eussiez [ysje].	fusses [fys].	fussiez [fysje].
eût [y].	eussent [ys].	fût [fy].	fussent [fys].

152. Tense Sequence. Any other tense than the present or future (§107) in the governing clause regularly requires the imperfect subjunctive in the governed clause ; so also for compound subjunctive tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb :

IMPF.	**Je désirais**	**qu'il restât.**	I was desiring him to remain.
P. DEF.	**Je désirai**		I desired him to remain.
CONDL.	**Je désirerais**		I should desire him to remain.
PLUPF.	**J'avais désiré**		I had desired him to remain.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

A. L'éducation d'Henri IV, roi de France, fut dirigée par son grand-père Henri d'Albret, roi de Navarre, qui ne voulut pas qu'on élevât le jeune prince avec la délicatesse qu'on a d'ordinaire pour les gens de cette qualité, sachant bien que dans un corps mou et tendre n'habite ordinairement qu'une âme molle et faible. Il défendit aussi qu'on l'habillât richement, qu'on lui donnât des babioles, et qu'on le flattât, parce que toutes ces choses élèvent le cœur des enfants plutôt dans l'orgueil que dans les sentiments de la générosité. Mais il ordonna qu'on habillât et qu'on nourrît son petit-fils comme les autres enfants du pays, et même qu'il fût accoutumé à courir et à grimper sur les rochers, pour l'habituer à la fatigue.

NOTE.—The imperfect subjunctive is of very limited use in the language of everyday life, being rarely employed except in the literary or elevated style. A knowledge of its forms and their use is, however, necessary for reading purposes.

B. Continue the following : 1. Mon père ne voulait pas que je partisse hier, que tu partisses, etc. 2. Le maître défendit que je parlasse à Henri, que tu, etc. 3. Notre voisin désirait que je lui vendisse des pommes, que tu, etc. 4. Un bon roi désirerait que je fusse heureux, que tu, etc. 5. Un tel roi regretterait que j'eusse besoin de rien, que tu, etc.

Turn the governing verbs in the extract into the present indicative, and make the necessary changes in the subjunctive forms.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était le grand-père d'Henri IV? 2. Par qui l'éducation d'Henri IV fut-elle dirigée? 3. Le jeune prince fut-il élevé avec délicatesse ou avec sévérité? 4. Est-ce qu'on a ordinairement beaucoup de délicatesse pour les jeunes princes? 5. Le vieux roi voulait-il qu'on élevât le prince avec délicatesse? 6. Quelle âme trouve-t-on souvent dans un corps mou et tendre? 7. Henri d'Albret désirait-il que son petit-fils eût une telle âme? 8. Les gens de la cour aiment-ils à flatter les jeunes princes? 9. Le grand-père aimait-il qu'on flattât ce jeune prince? 10. Permettait-il que les gens de la cour flattassent son petit-fils? 11. Votre père permettait-il que vous vous habillassiez richement quand vous étiez jeune? 12. Henri d'Albret ordonna-t-il que son petit-fils eût une nourriture riche? 13. Comment voulut-il qu'on le nourrît? 14. Pourquoi ordonna-t-il que le jeune prince fût accoutumé à courir et à grimper? 15. Désireriez-vous que je fusse accoutumé à courir et à grimper? 16. Pourquoi le désireriez-vous? 17. Désireriez-vous que j'eusse des sentiments de générosité? Etc., etc.

D. 1. Henry d'Albret was the grandfather of Henry IV. of France. 2. His grandfather directed his education. 3. Here is what the old king said to the people of the court. 4. "I desire my grandson to have a strong mind (*âme*). 5. Knowing that a weak mind usually dwells in a weak body, I desire his body to be strong. 6. I desire that nobody should flatter him." 7. So you see that the king did not wish the prince to be brought up with delicacy. 8. He did not wish his grandson to have a soft and weak mind. 9. He wished his body to be strong in order that his mind might not be weak. 10. He did not like the people of the court to flatter him. 11. He forbade them to flatter him. 12. He did not permit them even to give him trinkets. 13. He ordered the prince to be dressed like the other children of the country. 14. He allowed him to play with the other children and to climb the rocks. 15. He wished him to be fed like the other children too. 16. All this he did because he wished his grandson to be a good king. 17. Our parents wish us to be strong and good. 18. They would not wish us to be weak and bad.

EXERCISE XL.

A. Un matelot, à bord d'un vaisseau, ayant[1] eu la maladresse de laisser tomber par-dessus le bord une théière d'argent, alla[2] trouver le capitaine et lui dit[3] : "Peut-on[4] dire[3] d'une chose, qu'elle est[5] perdue[6], lorsqu'on sait[7] où elle est[5]?—Non, mon ami.—En ce cas, vous n'avez[1] rien à craindre[8] pour votre théière ; car je sais[7] qu'elle est[5] au fond de la mer."

[1] § 154. [2] § 160. [3] § 193. [4] § 221. [5] § 154. [6] § 210. [7] § 222. [8] § 190.

(The sections indicated give the forms of the irregular verbs.)

B. Complete the following by conjugating the tense in full, repeating also the remainder of the expression along with the verb : 1. Il alla trouver le capitaine. 2. Il lui dit. 3. Peut-il dire? 4. Il sait où il est. 5. Elle est perdue. 6. Vous n'avez rien à craindre.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Où étaient ces personnes? 3. Qu'avait fait le matelot? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une théière? 5. En quoi était cette théière? 6. À qui était-elle? 7. Où était-elle tombée? 8. Savait-on où elle était? 9. Était-elle alors vraiment perdue? 10. Mais quel était l'argument du matelot? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The sailor was so clumsy as to let the tea-pot fall. 2. If you let a silver tea-pot fall into the sea, it is lost. 3. Go to the captain. 4. I went to the captain. 5. Tell him that the tea-pot is not lost. 6. The captain will say : "My good fellow, did you drop my silver tea-pot into the sea?" 7. When we are on board of a ship we do not let tea-pots fall into the sea. 8. Where is the tea-pot? 9. I do not know where it is. 10. No one finds tea-pots at the bottom of the sea.

E. A sailor dropped the captain's silver tea-pot into the sea. The captain went to the sailor and said to him : "You let my tea-pot fall into the sea, did you not? It is lost." "No, no," said the sailor, "I know where it is. It is at the bottom of the sea."

EXERCISE XLI.

A. Un Arabe, égaré dans le désert, n'avait[1] pas mangé[2] depuis deux jours, et se voyait[3] menacé[4] de mourir[5] de faim. En passant près d'un de ces puits où les caravanes viennent[6] abreuver leurs chameaux, il voit[3] sur le sable un petit sac de cuir. Il le ramasse et le tâte. "Allah soit[7] béni[8] ! dit-il[9]; ce sont,[7] je crois,[10] des dattes ou des noisettes." Plein de cette douce espérance, il se hâte d'ouvrir[11] le sac ; mais, à la vue de ce qu'il contient[12] : "Hélas ! s'écrie-t-il douloureusement, ce ne sont[7] que des perles !"

[1] § 154. [2] § 156. [3] § 224. [4] § 156. [5] § 174. [6] § 178. [7] § 154. [8] § 163. [9] § 193. [10] § 191. [11] § 176. [12] § 177.

B. Complete the following, as in the preceding exercise: 1. Il n'avait pas mangé. 2. Il se voyait menacé. 3. Ils viennent. 4. Il voit son sac. 5. Il le tâte. 6. Qu'il soit béni ! 7. Je le crois. 8. Il se hâte d'ouvrir le sac. 9. Il s'écria.

Relate the story in the first person singular, thus : "Égaré dans le désert, je n'avais pas, etc."

C. (Oral.) 1. Où demeurent les Arabes ? 2. Où est l'Arabie ? 3. Où s'était égaré l'Arabe ? 4. Est-ce qu'il y a beaucoup de déserts dans ce pays ? 5. Dans quel état se trouvait l'Arabe ? 6. Par où passait-il ? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il a vu ? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans le sac ? 9. Était-il content de trouver les perles ? 10. Est-ce que les perles ne sont pas des choses précieuses ? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'il espérait trouver dans le sac ? 12. Pourquoi préférait-il des noisettes à des perles ? 13. Lesquelles préféreriez-vous maintenant ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The Arab has lost his way. 2. If we had not eaten for two days, we should be hungry. 3. We saw ourselves threatened with starvation. 4. The caravans will come to water their camels at the well. 5. We shall water our camels. 6. If I saw pearls on the sand, I should pick them up. 7. He felt the dates in the bag. 8. If there had been hazel-nuts in the leathern bag, he would have hastened to open it. 9. But

the bag did not contain nuts, it contained only pearls. **10.** At the sight of that he exclaimed: "I shall die of hunger."

E. An Arab had lost his way in the desert. Not having eaten for two days he saw that he would soon starve. As he was passing near a well where the caravans came to water their camels, he saw there on the sand a leathern bag which he hoped to find full of dates or hazel-nuts. He picked it up, felt it, and opened it. Alas, it contained only pearls!

EXERCISE XLII.

A. Un paysan accompagné de son fils, le petit Auguste alla[1] un jour visiter ses champs pour voir[2] dans quel état était[3] son blé. Ils arrivèrent à un champ où certains épis se tenaient[4] droits tandis que d'autres étaient[3] lourdement inclinés vers la terre. Auguste s'écria: "Quel dommage que ces épis soient[3] si courbés! Combien je préfère[5] ceux-là qui sont[3] vigoureux et droits." Le père prit[6] deux des épis, les roula entre ses doigts pour faire[7] sortir[8] le grain, et répondit[9]: "Regarde un peu mon enfant; ces épis courbés sont[3] pleins du meilleur blé, car c'est[3] le poids qui fait[7] pencher leur tête, tandis que ceux qui la relèvent[10] si fièrement sont[3] vides et ne valent[11] rien."

[1] § 160. [4] § 177. [6] § 202. [8] § 166. [10] § 158.
[2] § 224. [5] § 158. [7] § 195. [9] § 210. [11] § 223.
[3] § 154.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il alla visiter ses champs. 2. Ils arrivèrent à un champ. 3. Ils se tenaient droits. 4. Il s'écria. 5. Quel dommage qu'ils soient si courbés! 6. Je préfère ceux-là. 7. Il en prit deux. 8. Il fait pencher leur tête. 9. Ils ne valent rien.

Give the present indicative in full of: 1. Alla. 2. Se tenaient. 3. Prit. 4. Fait. 5. Valent.

Relate the story, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite, thus: "Un paysan . . . est allé visiter," etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 2. Où ce paysan est-il allé? 3. Est-ce qu'il était seul? 4. Qui est allé avec lui? 5. Pourquoi sont-ils allés aux champs? 6. Comment se tenaient certains épis dans les champs qu'ils ont

visités ? 7. Tous les épis se tenaient-ils droits ? 8. Comment les autres se tenaient-ils ? 9. Quel épis préférait le petit Auguste ? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il s'est écrié ? 11. Lesquels préférez-vous ? 12. Pourquoi les préférez-vous ? 13. Lesquels des épis étaient courbés ? 14. Qu'est-ce qui leur faisait pencher la tête ? 15. Pourquoi les autres se tenaient-ils si droits ? 16. Lesquels valent le plus ? 17. Comment le père a-t-il démontré cela à son fils ? 18. Les personnes fières valent-elles ordinairement grand'chose ? 19. Préférez-vous les personnes modestes ? Etc., etc.

D. 1. I am going to see the fields. 2. If you were to go and visit the fields, in what condition would you find the wheat ? 3. Hold yourself upright. 4. Take two ears of wheat. 5. Rub the grain out. 6. The best wheat is not in the upright ears. 7. The full ears are bent, whilst the empty ears are upright. 8. Just look, my boy, the upright ears are empty. 9. Full heads are worth a great deal, but empty heads are worth nothing.

Use either the past definite or the past indefinite for the narrative tenses of the following :

E. Little Augustus went one day to the fields. He went with his father, who was going to see whether his wheat was ripe. They arrived at a wheat-field. Augustus observed that certain ears of wheat were bent down towards the earth. He observed also that others held themselves upright. He said to his father : "Look at those ears of wheat. What a pity they are so bent down ! I prefer those which hold themselves upright." His father wished to teach him a lesson. He took two of the ears of wheat, and rolled them between his fingers. The one was empty and was worth nothing. The other was full of good wheat. Then he said : "Look, my boy, this ear which raised its head so proudly was almost empty. On the contrary, this other which was so bent down was full of the best grain. We observe the same thing amongst men. Those who are proud have an (the) empty head. They are worth nothing. On the contrary, those who are modest and humble are generally the best."

EXERCISE XLIII.

A. Un laboureur étant sur le point de mourir[1], et voulant[2] donner à ses enfants une dernière preuve de sa tendresse, les fit[3] venir[4] auprès de lui, et leur dit[5]: "Mes enfants, après moi vous aurez le champ que mon père a possédé[6], le champ qui m'a servi[7] à élever[8] et à nourrir ma famille. Cherchez bien dans ce champ, et vous trouverez un trésor."

Les enfants, après la mort de leur père, se mirent[9] à retourner le champ en tous sens, bêchant, labourant la terre. Ils n'y trouvèrent ni or ni argent; mais la terre bien remuée, bien labourée, produisit[10] une moisson abondante. Le sage vieillard ne les avait pas trompés; il leur avait enseigné que le travail est un trésor.

[1] § 174. [3] § 195. [5] § 193. [7] § 166. [9] § 198.
[2] § 225. [4] § 178. [6] § 158. [8] § 158. [10] § 185.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il les fit venir auprès de lui. 2. Ils se mirent à retourner le champ. 3. Il produisit une moisson. 4. Il ne les avait pas trompés.

Give the future and the past definite in full of: 1. Mourir. 2. Voulant. 3. Fit. 4. Venir. 5. Dit. 6. Servir.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle l'histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un laboureur? 3. Ce laboureur-ci était-il un jeune homme? 4. Dans quel état se trouvait-il? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il allait laisser à ses enfants? 6. Avait-il acheté ce champ? 7. Était-ce un bon champ? 8. Quel conseil le laboureur a-t-il donné à ses enfants? 9. Ont-ils bien cherché? 10. Est-ce qu'ils y ont trouvé de l'or? 11. Leur père les avait-il trompés, alors? 12. Quel trésor ont-ils trouvé? 13. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire? Etc., etc.

D. 1. The father gave his children a proof of his love. 2. He called his children into his presence. 3. The children will own the field after the father. 4. The children delved and ploughed the field. 5. Stir the land, and it will produce a harvest. 6. If you plough this field, you will find a treasure. 7. It will not be silver or gold, but it will be a good harvest. 8. Your father is not deceiving you, he is teaching you a good lesson.

E. A husbandman, who was at the point of death, wished to teach his children that labour is a treasure. Calling his children into his presence, he told them that they would have the field which his father had owned. It was a good field, and it had fed his father and his father's family. If they would seek in it, they would find a treasure there. After the old man's death, the children dug everywhere in the field, but they found no treasure. There was no gold or silver, but they stirred the land so well that they had an abundant harvest. They had not been deceived. Their father had taught them a good lesson.

EXERCISE XLIV.

A. Louis XIV, traversant avec sa cour la galerie de Versailles, aperçoit[1] Jean Bart fumant sa pipe dans l'embrasure d'une fenêtre ouverte[2]; il le fait[3] appeler[4], et lui dit[5] d'un ton affectueux : "Jean Bart, je viens[6] de vous nommer chef d'escadre.—Vous avez bien fait[3], sire, répondit[7] le marin en continuant de fumer tranquillement sa pipe." Cette brusque réponse ayant excité parmi les sots courtisans un grand éclat de rire : "Vous vous trompez, messieurs, leur dit[5] gravement le roi, cette réponse est celle d'un homme qui sent[8] ce qu'il vaut[9], et qui compte m'en donner bientôt de nouvelles preuves. Sans doute, Jean Bart ne parle pas comme vous ; mais qui de vous peut[10] faire[3] ce que fait[3] Jean Bart ?"

[1] § 213. [3] § 195. [5] § 193. [7] § 210. [9] § 223.
[2] § 176. [4] § 158. [6] § 178. [8] § 166. [10] § 221.

B. Complete the following, as above : 1. Il aperçoit Jean Bart. 2. Il le fait appeler. 3. Je viens de le nommer. 4. Vous avez bien fait. 5. Vous vous trompez. 6. Il sent ce qu'il vaut. 7. Il ne parle pas comme les autres.

Give the imperfect indicative and the imperfect subjunctive of : 1. Aperçoit. 2. Fait. 3. Dit. 4. Viens. 5. Sent.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Louis XIV? 2. Où est Versailles ? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'était autrefois ? 4. Quel est l'autre personnage de notre histoire? 5. Quelle était sa profession? 6. Était-il, ce jour-là, à bord de son vaisseau ? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il faisait qui montrait qu'il n'était pas courtisan ? 8. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il montré qu'il n'en était pas mécontent ? 9. Quelle

sorte de réponse Jean Bart a-t-il faite au roi? 10. Quelle impression a-t-elle faite sur les courtisans? 11. Quelle en était l'opinion du roi? 12. Pourquoi était-il permis à Jean Bart, et non pas aux courtisans, de faire une brusque réponse? Etc., etc

D. 1. The king sends for Jean Bart. 2. I shall call him 3. We have just called Jean Bart. 4. The king had just appointed him rear-admiral. 5. A great outburst of laughter was excited by Jean Bart's blunt answer. 6. The king did not appoint the stupid courtiers rear-admirals. 7. We are mistaken; it is not a blunt answer. 8. Do not make a mistake 9. The stupid courtiers did not make blunt answers, because they did not feel their own worth. 10. Jean Bart hopes soon to give the king new proofs of his worth. 11. We can not do what Jean Bart did.

E. Jean Bart was coolly smoking his pipe in the embrasure of a window in the palace (*château*) of Versailles, as the king accompanied by his courtiers, was passing through the great gallery. The king sent for the brave sailor, and told him that he had just been appointed rear-admiral. The sailor's blunt reply: "You have done well, sire," caused a burst of laughter among those who were with the king. But Louis knew that it was the reply of a man who would soon give proofs of his worth. Jean Bart did not talk like a courtier, but he did what courtiers could not do.

EXERCISE XLV.

A. J'ai vu[1] une petite fourmi qui allait[2] çà et là cherchant fortune. Elle a rencontré sur son chemin un brin d'herbe qu'elle voudrait[3] bien emporter; mais comment faire[4]? Il est si gros, et elle est si faible. Alors elle est montée sur un caillou, du haut duquel elle regarde la campagne, comme du haut d'une tour. Elle regarde, elle regarde; enfin elle a aperçu[5] deux de ses compagnes qui passent par là, et elle court[6] à elles. Elle se frotte le nez contre leur nez pour leur dire[7]: "Venez[8] vite avec moi; il y a par là quelque chose de bon!" Les trois fourmis se précipitent vers le brin d'herbe et le saisissent. Ce que l'une ne pouvait[9] faire[4], les trois le font aisément, et elles emportent en triomphe le brin devenu léger pour elles.

[1] § 224. [2] § 160. [3] § 225. [4] § 195. [5] § 213. [6] § 164. [7] § 193. [8] § 178. [9] § 221. [10] § 178.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Elle allait çà et là. 2. Elle voudrait bien l'emporter. 3. Elle est montée. 4. Elle court à elles. 5. Elle se frotte le nez. 6. Venez. 7. Elles se précipitent. 8. Elles le saisissent. 9. Elle ne pouvait pas le faire. 10. Elles le font aisément.

Give in full the past definite of: 1. Vu. 2. Rencontré. 3. Regardé. 4. Aperçu. 5. Court. 6. Se précipitent. 7. Font.

Beginning at the second sentence, relate the story in the past definite, thus: "Elle rencontra, etc."

C. (Oral.) 1. De quel insecte parle-t-on ici? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle faisait? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a rencontré sur son chemin? 4. Le brin d'herbe était-il gros ou petit? 5. Et la fourmi était-elle forte ou faible? 6. Qu'est-ce que la fourmi aurait voulu faire? 7. Est-ce qu'elle pouvait le faire toute seule? 8. Où est-elle montée? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a regardé du haut du caillou? 10. Pour la fourmi le caillou était comme une tour, n'est-ce pas? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'elle aperçoit enfin? 12. Que faisaient les deux compagnes de la fourmi? 13. Et la fourmi qu'est-ce qu'elle a fait? 14. Est-ce qu'elle leur a parlé? 15. Comment leur a-t-elle parlé? 16. Qu'est-ce qu'elle leur a dit? 17. Quelle est la première chose qu'ont faite les trois fourmis? 18. Et ensuite qu'ont-elles fait? 19. Une fourmi pouvait-elle emporter le brin d'herbe? 20. Les trois fourmis ensemble pouvaient-elles le faire aisément? 21. Pourquoi le brin d'herbe est-il devenu léger? Etc., etc.

D. A little ant was going hither and thither one day. She found a blade of grass on the road. "This blade of grass is very big," thought the ant. "I am too weak to carry it off alone. I know what I shall do. I shall climb upon a pebble. From the top of the pebble I shall look around. The pebble will be for me like a tall tower." She did so. She looked about her a long time. At last she saw two of her companions. They were passing along (*par*) the same road. She called them, and they ran to her. She said to them: "Come here, for I have found something good." She said this by rubbing her nose against theirs. Ants, as you know, cannot speak like men. After that the three ants rushed towards the blade of grass. They seized it quickly. It had been very heavy for the one ant. But the three together carried it off easily.

EXERCISE XLVI.

A. Un homme descendit[1] de Jérusalem à Jéricho, et tomba parmi des brigands, qui le dépouillèrent. Après l'avoir blessé de plusieurs coups, ils s'en allèrent[2], le laissant à demi mort.[3] Un prêtre, qui par hasard descendait[1] par ce chemin-là, l'ayant vu[4], passa outre. Un lévite, venant[5] aussi dans le même endroit, et le voyant[4], passa outre. Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait[6], vint[5] vers cet homme, et le voyant[4], fut touché de compassion. S'approchant de lui, il banda ses plaies, et il y versa de l'huile et du vin; puis il le mit[7] sur sa monture, le mena[8] à une auberge, et prit[9] soin de lui. Le lendemain, en partant[10], il tira de sa poche deux deniers d'argent, et les donnant à l'aubergiste, lui dit[11]: "Aie soin de lui, et tout ce que tu dépenseras de plus je te le rendrai[1] à mon retour."

[1] § 210. [2] § 160. [3] § 174. [4] § 224. [5] § 178. [6] § 156. [7] § 198. [8] § 158. [9] § 202. [10] § 166. [11] § 193.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il descendit. 2. Ils le dépouillèrent. 3. Ils s'en allèrent. 4. Il descendit par ce chemin. 5. Il passa outre. 6. Il vint vers cet homme. 7. Il y versa de l'huile. 8. Il le mit sur sa monture. 9. Il prit soin de lui.

Give the present indicative and present subjunctive of: 1. S'en allèrent. 2. Mort. 3. Venant. 4. Voyant. 5. Mit.

C. (Oral.) 1. D'où a-t-on tiré cette histoire? 2. Comment s'appelle l'histoire? 3. Où sont Jérusalem et Jéricho? 4. Est-ce que la terre sainte est un grand ou un petit pays? 5. Qu'ont fait les brigands au voyageur? 6. En quel état se trouvait-il après leur départ? 7. Quelles personnes sont venues ensuite? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'elles ont fait? 9. Qui est venu après le prêtre et le lévite? 10. Est-ce que les Samaritains étaient bien aimés des Juifs? 11. Est-ce que cela a empêché le Samaritain de faire le bien? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait au Juif? 13. Après l'avoir soigné qu'a-t-il fait? 14. Qu'a-t-il donné à l'aubergiste? 15. En quittant l'auberge, qu'a-t-il dit? Etc., etc.

D. 1. If we fall among thieves, they will strip us. 2. After having wounded us they will depart. 3. If you should see a

poor traveller half dead, would you pass by on the other side? 4. If the priest had been touched with compassion, he would have bound up the wounds. 5. Let us pour oil and wine into his wounds. 6. Let us put the poor man on our own beast. 7. Let us take him to the inn. 8. Let us take care of him there. 9. The next day we shall give money to the innkeeper. 10. On our return we shall give him back whatever he shall have spent for our friend.

E. A man, who was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho, fell among thieves. They stripped him and wounded him, and left him half dead. Then a priest and a Levite came by chance to the same place, and they saw him and passed by on the other side. But a Samaritan, who was going down by that road, saw him, and was touched with compassion. Then, after having bound up his wounds, he put him on his beast and took him to an inn. On the morrow he gave money to the innkeeper, and said that on his return he would give the innkeeper whatever he should spend if he took care of the poor man.

EXERCISE XLVII.

A. Lorsque M. Laffitte, le fameux banquier, vint[1] à Paris, en 1788, à l'âge de 21 ans, toute son ambition se bornait à obtenir[2] une petite place dans une maison de banque. Il se présenta chez un riche banquier. "Impossible de vous admettre[3] chez moi, du moins pour le moment, lui dit[4] le banquier: mes bureaux sont au complet." Le jeune homme salue et se retire. En traversant la cour, il aperçoit[5] à terre une épingle, et la ramasse. Debout devant la fenêtre de son cabinet le riche banquier avait suivi[6] des yeux la retraite du jeune homme. Il lui vit[7] ramasser l'épingle et ce trait lui fit[8] plaisir. Le soir même le jeune homme reçut[5] un billet du banquier, qui lui disait[4]: "Vous avez une place dans mes bureaux; vous pouvez[9] venir[1] l'occuper dès demain." Le jeune homme devint[1] bientôt caissier, puis associé, puis maître de la première maison de banque de Paris, et enfin homme d'État très influent sous Louis-Philippe.

[1] § 178. [3] § 198. [5] § 213. [7] § 224. [9] § 221.
[2] § 177. [4] § 193. [6] § 206. [8] § 195.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il vint à Paris 2. Elle se bornait à cela. 3. Il se présenta chez le banquier. 4. Il se retire. 5. Il aperçoit à terre une épingle. 6. Il l'avait suivi des yeux. 7. Il vit ramasser l'épingle. 8. Il reçut un billet. 9. Il lui disait. 10. Vous pouvez venir. 11. Il devint maître.

Give in full the future and conditional of: 1. Tenir. 2. Admettre. 3. Aperçoit. 4. Suivi. 5. Vit.

C. (Oral.) 1. Quel âge avait M. Laffitte à son arrivée à Paris? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il cherchait? 3. Réussit-il d'abord à trouver une place? 4. Où se présenta-t-il? 5. Que lui a-t-on dit? 6. En se retirant où va-t-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il trouve? 8. Qui l'a vu? 9. En était-il content? 10. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement? 11. Qu'est devenu le jeune homme par la suite? 12. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire? Etc., etc

D. 1. If your ambition is only to get a humble position, you will get it. 2. Present yourself at the office of the rich banker. 3. He will admit you into his employ. 4. His offices are not full. 5. Do you see that pin on the ground? 6. Pick it up. 7. There is the rich banker standing at his office window. 8. The banker is watching the young man as he retires. 9. If we see him pick up a pin, it (*cela*) will please us. 10. Did you receive a note from the banker? 11. You shall have a position in his banking-house. 12. You shall soon become his partner, shall you not? 13. Those who pick up pins may become statesmen.

E. When M. Laffitte was twenty-one years of age he came to Paris. He wished to get a humble position with a rich banker. But when he presented himself, the rich banker told him that his offices were full, and that he could not admit him. He withdrew. The rich banker watched him from his office window, and saw him pick up a pin which he noticed on the ground as he was crossing the yard. This action pleased the banker. That very evening he sent a note to the young man, which said that he could have a position in his offices the very next day. The young man became head of a great banking-house, and at last an influential statesman.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. Benjamin Franklin raconte l'anecdote suivante[1]: "Quand j'étais un enfant de cinq ou six ans, mes amis, un jour de fête, remplirent ma petite poche de sous. Je partis[2] tout de suite pour une boutique où l'on vendait[3] des jouets. Chemin faisant[4], je vis[5] dans les mains d'un autre petit garçon un sifflet, dont le son me charma. Je lui donnai en échange tout mon argent. Revenu[6] chez moi, fort content de mon achat, sifflant par toute la maison, je fatiguai les oreilles de toute la famille. Mes frères et mes sœurs apprenant[7] que j'avais tout donné pour un mauvais instrument, me dirent[8] que je l'avais payé[9] dix fois plus cher qu'il ne valait[10]. Alors ils énumérèrent[11] toutes les jolies choses que j'aurais pu[12] acheter[11] avec mon argent si j'avais été plus prudent. Ils me tournèrent tellement en ridicule que j'en pleurai. Cependant, cet accident fut de quelque utilité pour moi. Lorsque plus tard j'étais tenté d'acheter[11] quelque chose qui ne m'était pas nécessaire, je disais[8] en moi-même: *Ne donnons pas trop pour le sifflet*, et j'épargnais mon argent."

[1] § 206. [4] § 195. [7] § 202. [9] § 157. [11] § 158.
[2] § 166. [5] § 224. [8] § 193. [10] § 223. [12] § 221.
[3] § 210. [6] § 178.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Quand j'étais un enfant. 2. Ils remplirent ma poche. 3. Je partis tout de suite. 4. Je vis un sifflet. 5. Je fatiguai tous mes amis. 6. Je remplis mes poches, tu remplis tes poches, etc. 7. Ils me dirent, ils te dirent, etc. 8. Je disais en moi-même, tu disais en toi-même, etc.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Benjamin Franklin? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quel âge avait-il à l'époque de l'anecdote? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il avait dans sa poche? 5. Qui le lui avait donné? 6. Pour quel endroit est-il parti ensuite? 7. Y est-il jamais arrivé? 8. Quel était l'obstacle? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait de son argent? 10. À son retour chez lui, qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 11. A-t-il charmé ses frères et ses sœurs? 12. Est-ce qu'il avait payé assez cher son sifflet? 13. Est-ce que la famille était contente de son achat? 14. De quelle façon la famille a-t-elle fait voir son mécontentement? 15. Le pauvre

Franklin était-il content à la fin? 16. Quelle leçon Franklin a-t-il reçue par cet accident? Etc., etc.

D. 1. You have paid twice as much for that apple as it is worth. 2. If you pay ten cents for that pencil, that will be three times as much as it is worth. 3. Never pay more for things than they are worth. 4. We could have bought many pretty things with our money, if we had been prudent. 5. If our friend had been less prudent, he could not have bought so many pretty things. 6. That accident will be of some use to our friends. 7. When we are (fut.) tempted to buy something which is not necessary for us, we shall say to ourselves: "We are not going to give too much for the whistle."

E. When Benjamin Franklin was five years old, his brother, on a holiday, filled his pockets with coppers. Starting off at once for a shop where toys were sold, he met on the way another little boy who had a whistle. The sound of the instrument charmed him, and he gave all his money to have it. He was much pleased with his purchase, but he whistled so much all over the house that he tired the whole family. His brothers and sisters asked him where he had bought his whistle and how much he had paid for it. He told them he had given all his money to the little boy. Then they told him he had paid too much for it. They said too that if he had been more prudent, he could have bought ten times as many pretty things, and he cried on account of it. But the affair was of some use to him later on. Whenever he was tempted to buy things which he did not need, he would always say to himself: "I will not give too much for the whistle."

EXERCISE XLIX.

A. Henri IV, dans une chasse, s'étant écarté, suivant[1] sa coutume, de ses gardes et de sa cour, rencontra un paysan assis[2] sous un arbre. "Que fais-tu[3] là? lui dit[4] le prince.— J'étais venu[5] ici dès le point du jour, pour voir[6] passer le roi, répondit[7] le paysan; sans ce désir, je serais à labourer mon champ, qui n'est pas fort éloigné.—Si tu veux[8] monter sur la croupe de mon cheval, lui répliqua Henri, je te conduirai[9] où est le roi, et tu le verras[6] à ton aise."

Le paysan, enchanté, profite de la rencontre, monte à côté du roi, et demande, chemin faisant[3], comment il pourra[10] recon-

naître[11] le roi. "Tu n'auras qu'à regarder celui qui sera couvert[12] pendant que tous les autres auront la tête nue."

Enfin le moment arrive où le roi rejoint[13] une partie de sa cour et se trouve parmi ses courtisans; tous se découvrent[12], excepté lui. Alors il demande au paysan: "Eh bien, quel est le roi?—Ma foi, monsieur, lui répondit-il[7], c'est vous ou moi, car il n'y a que nous deux qui ayons le chapeau sur la tête."

[1] § 206. [2] § 215. [3] § 195. [4] § 193. [5] § 178. [6] § 224. [7] § 210. [8] § 225. [9] § 185. [10] § 221. [11] § 188. [12] § 176. [13] § 190.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. J'étais venu. 2. Tu veux voir le roi. 3. Tu le verras à ton aise. 4. Il pourra reconnaître le roi. 5. Il sera couvert. 6. Il rejoint les courtisans. 7. Ils se découvrent. 8. Il n'y a que nous qui ayons.

C. (Oral.) 1. Qui était Henri IV? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quelle était sa coutume quand il était à la chasse? 4. Qui a-t-il rencontré un jour? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 6. Que faisait le paysan? 7. Depuis combien de temps y était-il? 8. Pourquoi y était-il venu? 9. S'il n'était pas venu où aurait-il été? 10. Qu'est-ce que le roi a proposé au paysan? 11. Le paysan a-t-il accepté? 12. Qu'est-ce que le paysan a demandé au roi en chemin? 13. Quel était le signe par lequel on reconnaîtrait le roi? 14. Le roi et le paysan où arrivent-ils bientôt? 15. Qu'est-ce que les courtisans ont fait à leur approche? 16. Combien de personnes restaient couvertes? 17. Et combien de rois y avait-il dans la compagnie? Etc., etc.

D. 1. We have wandered from the court. 2. If the king had not wandered from the court, he would not have met the peasant. 3. We came here at the very peep of day. 4. I have not seen the king go by. 5. The peasants are busy ploughing the field. 6. If you get up beside me, you will see the king. 7. As they went along, the peasant said to the king: "Take me where the king is." 8. Everybody had his hat on, and we could not recognize the king. 9. If the courtiers had taken off their hats, we could have recognized the king.

E. One day Henry IV. had wandered from his courtiers. Meeting a peasant who was sitting under a tree, he asked the latter what he was doing there. The peasant replied that he had been there since daybreak, and that he wished to see the king, and that if he had not come, he would be busy ploughing his field. The king said to him: "Get up behind me, and I shall take you where you can see the king." The peasant was delighted, and got up beside the king. As they went along, he asked how he should recognize the king, and the king told him to look at the one who should have his hat on, whilst the others should be bareheaded. When they arrived where the courtiers were, the latter took off their hats. Then the king asked the peasant which was the king. He replied: "We two have our hats on, the others are bareheaded: it is you or I."

EXERCISE L.

A. Un paysan traversait la campagne avec son fils Thomas. "Regarde! lui dit-il[1] en chemin, voilà par terre un fer à cheval perdu[2], ramasse-le!"

"Bah! répondit[2] Thomas, il ne vaut[3] pas la peine de se baisser pour si peu de chose!" Le père ne dit[1] rien, ramassa le fer et le mit[4] dans sa poche. Arrivé au village voisin, il le vendit[2] pour quelques centimes au maréchal ferrant, et acheta[5] des cerises avec cet argent.

Cela fait[6], ils se remirent[4] en route. Le soleil était brûlant. Thomas mourait[7] de soif, et avait de la peine à poursuivre[8] son chemin. Le père, qui marchait le premier, laissa, comme par hasard, tomber une cerise. Thomas la ramassa avec empressement, et la mangea[9]. Quelques pas plus loin, une seconde cerise s'échappa des mains du père, et Thomas la saisit avec le même empressement. Le père fit[6] de même avec toutes les cerises. Lorsque l'enfant eut porté à la bouche la dernière cerise, le père se retourna et lui dit[1]: "Vois[10], mon ami, tu n'as pas voulu[11] te baisser une fois pour ramasser le fer à cheval, et tu as été obligé[12] de te baisser plus de vingt fois pour ramasser les cerises."

1 § 193.
2 § 210.
3 § 223.
4 § 198.
5 § 158.
6 § 195.
7 § 174.
8 § 206.
9 § 156.
10 § 224.
11 § 225.
12 § 156.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il ne dit rien. 2. Il le mit dans sa poche. 3. Il vendit le fer. 4. Il acheta des cerises. 5. Il mourait de soif. 6. Il mangea une cerise. 7. Il la saisit. 8. Il fit de même. 9. Ils se remirent en route. 10. Il s'échappa de ses mains. 11. Il se retourna. 12. Tu t'es baissé.

C. (Oral.) 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 3. Était-il seul? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont vu en chemin? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un fer à cheval? 6. Qu'est-ce que le père a dit au fils? 7. Qu'est-ce que le fils a répondu? 8. Lequel des deux était le plus prudent? 9. Par quelle action a-t-il montré sa prudence? 10. À qui a-t-on vendu le fer à cheval? 11. Pourquoi l'a-t-on vendu à un maréchal ferrant? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'on a acheté avec l'argent? 13. Quel temps faisait-il? 14. Quel était l'effet de la chaleur sur le petit Thomas? 15. Est-ce que le père n'avait rien pour la soif? 16. Est-ce que les cerises sont bonnes pour la soif? 17. Qu'est-ce que le père a fait des cerises? 18. Et qu'est-ce que son fils en a fait? 19. Combien en a-t-il mangées? 20. Pourquoi aurait-il mieux fait de se baisser pour le fer à cheval? Etc., etc.

D. 1. It was not worth the trouble. 2. It will not be worth the trouble. 3. If it is worth the trouble, we shall pick up the horse-shoe. 4. Put the horse-shoe into your pocket and buy cherries. 5. We shall set out again on our journey. 6. If the sun is hot, they will not set out again. 7. I am very thirsty (dying with thirst); give me some cherries. 8. We have difficulty in picking up the cherries. 9. If you are dying with thirst, I shall drop a cherry. 10. The cherries are on the ground; pick them up. 11. If you walk ahead, will you pick up the cherries? 12. A few steps farther on, I stooped to pick up the horse-shoe. 13. Why did you seize the horse-shoe so eagerly? 14. We did not seize it eagerly. 15. If you had been willing to turn round, we should have given you the cherries. 16. Stoop, if you wish to pick up. 17. He who is not willing to stoop once, will perhaps stoop more than twenty times.

E. As a peasant and his son were crossing the country, they saw a horse-shoe on the ground. The father told his son

to pick it up and put it into his pocket. The son replied that it was not worth while to stoop for a horse-shoe. Then the father stooped and picked it up. They sold it to the blacksmith of the neighboring village, and bought some cherries, which the father put into his pocket. They pursued their way, the father walking ahead. The sun was hot and Thomas was very thirsty, and, as if by chance, a cherry fell from his father's pocket. The son seizing it, ate it, and also a second one, which slipped from his father's pocket. Soon the last cherry was carried to his mouth, and his father, turning round, told him that if he had been willing to stoop once for the horse-shoe, he would not have been obliged to stoop twenty times for the cherries.

EXERCISE LI.

A. Un jour Frédéric le Grand, roi de Prusse, ayant sonné sans que personne répondît[1] à cet appel, ouvrit[2] la porte de son antichambre et trouva son page endormi[3] sur une chaise. Au moment où il allait[4] le réveiller, il aperçut[5] un papier écrit[6] sortant[7] de la poche du page. La curiosité du roi fut excitée, il prit[8] le papier et le lut[9]. C'était une lettre de la mère du jeune homme, dans laquelle elle remerciait son fils de ce qu'il lui envoyait[10] une partie de ses gages pour la soulager[11] dans sa misère. Le roi, ayant lu[9] la lettre, prit[8] un rouleau de ducats et le glissa avec la lettre dans la poche du page. Un instant après il sonna si fort que le page se réveilla et accourut[12] auprès de lui. "Vous avez dormi[3]," lui dit[13] le roi. Le jeune homme, ayant honte, tâcha de s'excuser. Dans son embarras il mit[14] la main dans sa poche, et y trouva le rouleau de ducats. Il le prit[8], pâlit, trembla, et ne put[15] articuler un seul mot. "Qu'avez-vous? dit[13] le roi.—Hélas! sire, dit[13] le page, quelqu'un veut[16] me perdre[1]; je ne sais[17] pas d'où m'est venu[18] cet or.—La fortune ne vient-elle[18] pas souvent en dormant[3]? reprit[8] Frédéric. Envoie[10] cette somme à ta mère, en lui faisant[19] mes compliments et assure-la bien que j'aurai soin d'elle et de toi."

1 § 210.	5 § 213.	9 § 197.	13 § 193.	17 § 222.
2 § 176.	6 § 194.	10 § 157.	14 § 198.	18 § 178.
3 § 166.	7 § 166.	11 § 156.	15 § 221.	19 § 195.
4 § 160.	8 § 202.	12 § 164.	16 § 225.	

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Sans qu'il répondît. 2. Il ouvrit la porte. 3. Il lut le billet. 4. Il allait le réveiller. 5. Il aperçut un papier. 6. Il remerciait le roi. 7. Il envoyait l'argent. 8. Il prit le rouleau. 9. Il se réveilla. 10. Il accourut auprès du roi. 11. Il ne put dire un mot. 12. Il veut me perdre. 13. Je sais d'où c'est venu. 14. Envoie cette somme.

Re-write the anecdote, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite.

C. (Oral.) 1. Quel est le sujet de cette anecdote? 2. À quelle époque vivait Frédéric le Grand? 3. Où est la Prusse? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un page? 5. Où était le page dont parle l'histoire? 6. Qu'est-ce qu'il y faisait? 7. Qu'est-ce que les pages devraient faire dans les antichambres des rois? 8. Est-ce que le roi s'est mis en colère contre le page? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 10. En lisant la lettre qu'est-ce que le roi a découvert? 11. Est-ce que la mère du page était riche? 12. Qu'est-ce que le page faisait pour elle? 13. Le roi en était-il content? 14. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement? 15. Comment le jeune homme a-t-il découvert ce que le roi avait fait? 16. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un ducat? 17. Que pensait-il en sentant les ducats dans sa poche? 18. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il calmé le jeune homme? 19. Est-ce que le proverbe est toujours vrai: "La fortune nous vient en dormant?" 20. Qu'est-ce que cette histoire nous apprend? Etc., etc.

D. 1. He rings without anyone answering him. 2. If we open the door, we shall find the page. 3. I am going to wake him. 4. He will waken. 5. The paper was sticking out of his pocket. 6. She thanked her son for sending her a part of his wages. 7. She sent a letter in which she thanked her son. 8. We have been asleep. 9. We had been asleep. 10. The king asked: "What is the matter with him?" 11. Somebo will ruin me. 12. He took care of him and her.

E. One day Frederick the Great rang, and nobody answered him. Opening the door of the antechamber, he finds his page asleep. A letter, which was sticking out of the page's pocket aroused the king's curiosity. The young man used to send h mother a part of his wages, and in this letter she was thanki

him for it. The king read the letter, and, taking a roll of ducats, slipped it, with the letter, into the young man's pocket. Then ringing very loud, he waked the page, who hastened into his presence. He asked the young man if he had been asleep. The young man was ashamed, and tried to excuse himself. Putting his hand into his pocket he finds the ducats. He trembles, and cannot utter a word. The king asked him what was the matter with him, and he replied that somebody wished to ruin him, for he did not know where the ducats came from. The king replies that good luck comes to us often while we sleep. He tells the page that he will take care of his mother and him.

PART II.

THE VERB.

REGULAR VERBS.

153. Regular Conjugations. Regular verbs are conveniently divided into three classes or conjugations, according as the present infinitive ends in **-er, -ir, -re,** and are inflected in their simple tenses as follows :—

I.	II.	III.
Infinitive Mood.		
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
donn **er**, *to give.*	fin **ir**, *to finish.*	romp **re**, *to break.*
Participles.		
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
donn **ant**, *giving.*	fin **iss ant**, *finishing.*	romp **ant**, *breaking.*
PAST.	PAST.	PAST.
donn **é**, *given.*	fin **i**, *finished.*	romp **u**, *broken.*
Indicative Mood.		
PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
I give, am giving, etc.	*I finish, am finishing, etc.*	*I break, am breaking, etc.*
je donn **e.**	je fin **i s.**	je romp **s.**
tu donn **es.**	tu fin **i s.**	tu romp **s.**
il donn **e.**	il fin **i t.**	il romp **t.**
nous donn **ons.**	nous fin **iss ons.**	nous romp **ons.**
vous donn **ez.**	vous fin **iss ez.**	vous romp **ez.**
ils donn **ent.**	ils fin **iss ent.**	ils romp **ent.**

Imperfect.	Imperfect.	Imperfect.
I was giving, used to give, etc.	*I was finishing, used to finish, etc.*	*I was breaking, used to break, etc.*
je donn **ais.**	je fin **iss ais.**	je romp **ais.**
tu donn **ais.**	tu fin **iss ais.**	tu romp **ais.**
il donn **ait.**	il fin **iss ait.**	il romp **ait.**
nous donn **ions.**	nous fin **iss ions.**	nous romp **ions.**
vous donn **iez.**	vous fin **iss iez.**	vous romp **iez.**
ils donn **aient.**	ils fin **iss aient.**	ils romp **aient.**

Past Definite.	Past Definite.	Past Definite.
I gave, etc.	*I finished, etc.*	*I broke, etc.*
je donn **ai.**	je fin **is.**	je romp **is.**
tu donn **as.**	tu fin **is.**	tu romp **is.**
il donn **a.**	il fin **it.**	il romp **it.**
nous donn **âmes.**	nous fin **îmes.**	nous romp **îmes.**
vous donn **âtes.**	vous fin **îtes.**	vous romp **îtes.**
ils donn **èrent.**	ils fin **irent.**	ils romp **irent.**

Future.	Future.	Future.
I shall give, etc.	*I shall finish, etc.*	*I shall break, etc.*
je donner **ai.**	je finir **ai.**	je rompr **ai.**
tu donner **as.**	tu finir **as.**	tu rompr **as.**
il donner **a.**	il finir **a.**	il rompr **a.**
nous donner **ons.**	nous finir **ons.**	nous rompr **ons.**
vous donner **ez.**	vous finir **ez.**	vous rompr **ez.**
ils donner **ont.**	ils finir **ont.**	ils rompr **ont.**

Conditional.	Conditional.	Conditional.
I should give, etc.	*I should finish, etc.*	*I should break, etc.*
je donner **ais.**	je finir **ais.**	je rompr **ais.**
tu donner **ais.**	tu finir **ais.**	tu rompr **ais.**
il donner **ait.**	il finir **ait.**	il rompr **ait.**
nous donner **ions.**	nous finir **ions.**	nous rompr **ions.**
vous donner **iez.**	vous finir **iez.**	vous rompr **iez.**
ils donner **aient.**	ils finir **aient.**	ils rompr **aient.**

Imperative Mood.

Present.	Present.	Present.
Give, etc.	*Finish, etc.*	*Break, etc.*
donn **e.***	fin **is.**	romp **s.**
(qu'il donn **e.**)	(qu'il fin **iss e.**)	(qu'il romp **e.**)
donn **ons.**	fin **iss ons.**	romp **ons.**
donn **ez.**	fin **iss ez.**	romp **ez.**
(qu'ils donn **ent.**)	(qu'ils fin **iss ent.**)	(qu'ils romp **ent.**)

*This form becomes 'donn **es**' when followed by **-y** or **-en** (cf. § 370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Present.	Present.
(That) I (may) give, etc.	*(That) I (may) finish, etc.*	*(That) I (may) break, etc.*
(que) je donn **e.**	(que) je fin **iss e.**	(que) je romp **e.**
(que) tu donn **es.**	(que) tu fin **iss es.**	(que) tu romp **es.**
(qu') il donn **e.**	(qu') il fin **iss e.**	(qu') il romp **e.**
(que) nous donn **ions.**	(que) nous fin **iss ions.**	(que) nous romp **ions.**
(que) vous donn **iez.**	(que) vous fin **iss iez.**	(que) vous romp **iez.**
(qu') ils donn **ent.**	(qu') ils fin **iss ent.**	(qu') ils romp **ent.**

Imperfect.	Imperfect.	Imperfect.
(That) I (might) give, etc.	*(That) I (might) finish, etc.*	*(That) I (might) break, etc.*
(que) je donn **asse.**	(que) je fin **isse.**	(que) je romp **isse.**
(que) tu donn **asses.**	(que) tu fin **isses.**	(que) tu romp **isses.**
(qu') il donn **ât.**	(qu') il fin **ît.**	(qu') il romp **ît.**
(que) nous donn **assions.**	(que) nous fin **issions.**	(que) nous romp **issions.**
(que) vous donn **assiez.**	(que) vous fin **issiez.**	(que) vous romp **issiez.**
(qu') ils donn **assent.**	(qu') ils fin **issent.**	(qu') ils romp **issent.**

AUXILIARY VERBS.

154. The auxiliary verbs **avoir**, 'to have,' and **être**, 'to be,' are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows :—

Infinitive.

Pres. avoir, *to have.* Pres. être, *to be.*

Participles.

PRES. ayant, *having.*	PRES. étant, *being.*
PAST. eu, *had.*	PAST. été, *been.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
I have, am having, etc.		*I am, am being, etc.*	
j'ai.	nous avons.	je suis.	nous sommes.
tu as.	vous avez.	tu es.	vous êtes.
il a.	ils ont.	il est.	ils sont.
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT.	
I had, was having, etc.		*I was, was being, etc.*	
j'avais.	nous avions.	j'étais.	nous étions.
tu avais.	vous aviez.	tu étais.	vous étiez.
il avait.	ils avaient.	il était.	ils étaient.
PAST DEFINITE.		PAST DEFINITE.	
I had, etc.		*I was, etc.*	
j'eus.	nous eûmes.	je fus.	nous fûmes.
tu eus.	vous eûtes.	tu fus.	vous fûtes.
il eut.	ils eurent.	il fut.	ils furent.
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
I shall have, etc.		*I shall be, etc.*	
j'aurai.	nous aurons.	je serai.	nous serons.
tu auras.	vous aurez.	tu seras.	vous serez.
il aura.	ils auront.	il sera.	ils seront.
CONDITIONAL.		CONDITIONAL.	
I should have, etc.		*I should be, etc.*	
j'aurais.	nous aurions.	je serais.	nous serions.
tu aurais.	vous auriez.	tu serais.	vous seriez.
il aurait.	ils auraient.	il serait.	ils seraient

Imperative.

PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
Have, etc.		*Be, etc.*	
	ayons.		soyons.
aie.	ayez.	sois.	soyez.
(qu'il ait.)	(qu'ils aient.)	(qu'il soit.)	(qu'ils soient.)

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
(That) I (may) have, etc.		*(That) I (may) be, etc.*	
(que) j'aie.	(que) nous ayons.	(que) je sois.	(que) nous soyons.
(que) tu aies.	(que) vous ayez.	(que) tu sois.	(que) vous soyez.
(qu') il ait.	(qu') ils aient.	(qu') il soit.	(qu') ils soient.

IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
(That) I (might) have, etc.		*(That) I (might) be, etc.*	
(que) j'eusse.	(que) nous eussions.	(que) je fusse.	(que) nous fussions.
(que) tu eusses.	(que) vous eussiez.	(que) tu fusses.	(que) vous fussiez.
(qu') il eût.	(qu') ils eussent.	(qu') il fût.	(qu') ils fussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

155. Formation. Compound tenses are formed from the past participle of the principal verb along with an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir**, sometimes **être**), see §§ 227-229.

Avoir.	**Être.**
Infinitive.	
PERFECT.	PERFECT.
To have given.	*To have arrived.*
avoir donné.	être arrivé(e)(s).
Participle.	
PERFECT.	PERFECT.
Having given.	*Having arrived.*
ayant donné.	étant arrivé(e)(s).
Indicative.	
PAST INDEFINITE.	PAST INDEFINITE.
I have given, etc.	*I have arrived, etc.*
j'ai donné.	je suis arrivé(e).
tu as donné.	tu es arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
I had given, etc.	*I had arrived, etc.*
j'avais donné.	j'étais arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.	PAST ANTERIOR.
I had given, etc.	*I had arrived, etc.*
j'eus donné.	je fus arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
FUTURE ANTERIOR.	FUTURE ANTERIOR.
I shall have given, etc.	*I shall have arrived, etc.*
j'aurai donné.	je serai arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.	CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.
I should have given, etc.	*I should have arrived, etc.*
j'aurais donné.	je serais arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.

Subjunctive.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have given, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*may*) *have arrived, etc.*
(que) j'aie donné.	que je sois arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have given, etc.*	(*That*) *I* (*might*) *have arrived, etc.*
(que) j'eusse donné.	(que) je fusse arrivé(e).
etc.	etc.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL PECULIARITIES.

156. Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger.*

1. Verbs in **-cer**, *e.g.*, **avancer** [avɑ̃se], 'to advance,' require the [s] sound of **c** throughout their conjugation, and hence **c** becomes **ç** before **a** or **o** of an ending (§ 5, 4), but not elsewhere :

Pres. Part.	*Pres. Indic.*	*Impf. Indic.*	*Past Def.*	*Impf. Subj.*
avançant.	avance.	avançais.	avançai.	avançasse.
	avances.	avançais.	avanças.	avançasses.
	avance.	avançait.	avança.	avançât.
	avançons.	avancions.	avançâmes.	avançassions.
	avancez.	avanciez.	avançâtes.	avançassiez.
	avancent.	avançaient.	avancèrent.	avançassent.

2. Verbs in **-ger**, *e.g.*, **manger** [mɑ̃ʒe], 'to eat,' require the [ʒ] sound of **g** throughout their conjugation, and hence **g** becomes **ge** before **a** or **o** (§ 19, 2), but not elsewhere :

Pres. Part.	*Pres. Indic.*	*Impf. Indic.*	*Past Def.*	*Impf. Subj.*
mangeant.	mange.	mangeais.	mangeai.	mangeasse.
	manges.	mangeais.	mangeas.	mangeasses.
	mange.	mangeait.	mangea.	mangeât.
	mangeons.	mangions.	mangeâmes.	mangeassions.
	mangez.	mangiez.	mangeâtes.	mangeassiez.
	mangent.	mangeaient.	mangèrent.	mangeassent.

157. Verbs in *-yer.*

Verbs in **-oyer** and **-uyer** change **y** to **i** whenever it comes before [ə] in conjugation, but not elsewhere ; verbs in **-ayer** and **-eyer** may either retain **y** throughout, or change it to **i** before [ə] :

Pres. Indic.	*Fut.*	*Condl.*	*Pres. Subj.*
nettoie, etc.	nettoierai, etc.	nettoierais, etc.	nettoie, etc.
paye, paie, } etc.	payerai, paierai, } etc.	payerais, paierais, } etc.	paye, paie, } etc.

158. Verbs with Stem-vowel *e* or *é.*

Verbs with stem-vowel **e** require the [ɛ] sound of **e** (§ 12, 1) whenever, in conjugation, the next syllable contains [ə] ; so also verbs with the stem-vowel **é**, shown orthographically as follows :—

1. By changing **e** or **é** to **è** (§ 12, 1), *e.g.*, **mener**, 'to lead,' **céder**, 'to yield' :

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Fut.*	*Condl.*
mène.	mène.	mènerai.	mènerais.
mènes.	mènes.	mèneras.	mènerais.
mène.	mène.	mènera.	mènerait.
menons.	menions.	mènerons.	mènerions.
menez.	meniez.	mènerez.	mèneriez.
mènent.	mènent.	mèneront.	mèneraient.

But **céder** with the stem-vowel **é** :

cède, etc. cède, etc. céderai [sɛdəre], etc. céderais [sɛdərɛ], etc.

Obs.: In **mené-je**? [mənɛːʒ], **e** of the ending is not mute, and hence the stem-vowel **e** is unchanged.

Like **mener** : Verbs with stem-vowel e (for exceptions in **-eler** and **-eter**, see below).

Like **céder**: Verbs with stem-vowel **é**+consonant, *e.g.*, **régner**, 'reign,' etc.

NOTE.—Verbs like **créer**, *create*, with stem-vowel followed by a vowel, are regular: Je crée, etc.

2. Most verbs in **-eler**, **-eter**, however, indicate the [ɛ] sound by doubling **l** or **t** (§ 12, 1), *e.g.*, **appeler**, 'to call,' **jeter**, 'to throw':

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Subj.*	*Fut.*	*Condl.*
appelle.	appelle.	appellerai.	appellerais.
appelles.	appelles.	appelleras.	appellerais.
appelle.	appelle.	appellera.	appellerait.
appelons.	appelions.	appellerons.	appellerions.
appelez.	appeliez.	appellerez.	appelleriez.
appellent.	appellent.	appelleront.	appelleraient.

So also, **jeter**:

jette, etc.	jette, etc.	jetterai, etc.	jetterais, etc.

A few verbs in **-eler**, **-eter** take the grave accent precisely like **mener**, *e.g.*, **acheter**, 'to buy':

achète, etc.	achète, etc.	achèterai, etc.	achèterais, etc.

Exceptions like **acheter**:

agneler, *lamb*.
becqueter, *peck*.
bourreler, *goad*.
démanteler, *dismantle*.
écarteler, *quarter*.
*épousseter, *dust*.
étiqueter, *label*.
geler, *freeze*.
harceler, *harass*.
marteler, *hammer*.
modeler, *model*.
peler, *peel*.
rapiéceter, *piece*.
trompeter, *trumpet*.

Fut.* **épousseterai according to the 'Dictionnaire de l'Académie.'

Exceptions like **appeler** *or* **acheter**:

botteler, *bale* (hay, etc.).
canneler, *groove*.
caqueter, *cackle*.
ciseler, *chisel*.
crocheter, *pick* (a lock).

FORMATION OF TENSES.

159. Principal Parts. By the following rules, the various tenses of all regular verbs and of most irregular verbs may be known from five forms of the verb, called principal parts or primary tenses :—

1. The *Infinitive* gives the *Future* by adding **-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont**, and the *Conditional* by adding **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez,**

-aient—dropping the final infinitive **-e** of the third conjugation for both tenses.

2. The *Present Participle* gives the *Imperfect Indicative* by changing **-ant** into **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient,** and the *Present Subjunctive* by changing **-ant** into **-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.**

3. The *Past Participle* gives the *Compound Tenses*, with the auxiliary **avoir** (§227) or **être** (§228), and the *Passive*, with the auxiliary **être** (§239).

4. The *Present Indicative* gives the *Imperative* by dropping the pronoun subject of the second singular and first and second plural, the **-s** of the first conjugation second singular being also dropped, except before **y** and **en** (cf. §370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

5. The *Past Definite* gives the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by changing the final letter of the first singular (**-i** or **-s**) into **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent,** and putting a circumflex accent over the last vowel of the third singular.

Obs.: The tenses, except the future and conditional, are not really *derived* from the principal parts, as is sometimes said in grammars; the method is merely an aid to memory.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -er.

160. Aller, 'to go.'

1. *Infinitive.* **aller**; *fut.* *irai, iras, ira, etc.; *condl.* irais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **allant**; *impf. indic.* allais, etc.; *pres. subj.* aille [aːj], ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.

3. *Past Part.* **allé**; *past indef.* je suis allé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vais** [ve], vas, va, allons, allez, vont; *impve.* va, allons, allez.

5. *Past Def.* **allai**, allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; *impf. subj.* allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.

* The stem of the future is from the Latin infinitive **ire**.

Like **aller**:

s'en aller, *go away.*

161. Envoyer, 'to send.'

1. *Infinitive.* **envoyer**; *fut.* enverrai, etc.; *condl.* enverrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **envoyant**; *impf. indic.* envoyais, envoyais, envoyait, envoyions [ɑ̃vwaijɔ̃], envoyiez, envoyaient; *pres. subj.* envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions [ɑ̃vwaijɔ̃], envoyiez, envoient.

3. *Past Part.* **envoyé**; *past indef.* j'ai envoyé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **envoie,** envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient; *impve.* envoie, envoyons, envoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **envoyai,** envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent; *impf. subj.* envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent.

Like **envoyer**:

renvoyer, *send away, dismiss.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -ir.

162. Acquérir, 'to acquire.'

1. *Infinitive.* **acquérir**; *fut.* acquerrai, acquerras, etc.; *condl.* acquerrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **acquérant**; *impf. indic.* acquérais, etc.; *pres. subj.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

3. *Past Part.* **acquis**; *past indef.* j'ai acquis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **acquiers,** acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent; *impve.* acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

5. *Past Def.* acquis, acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent; *impf. subj.* acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent.

Like **acquérir**:

conquérir, *conquer.*
s'enquérir, *inquire.*
***querir** *or* **quérir,** *seek.*
reconquérir, *reconquer.*
requérir, *require, claim.*

* Has only the infinitive.

163. Bénir, 'to bless.'

Is regular, but has also an irregular past participle **bénit,** used only as adjective:

De l'eau **bénite**; du pain **bénit.** Holy water; consecrated bread.

164. Courir, 'to run.'

1. *Infinitive.* **courir**; *fut.* courrai, courras, etc.; *condl.* courrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **courant**; *impf. indic.* courais, etc.; *pres. subj.* coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent.

3. *Past Part.* **couru**; *past indef.* j'ai couru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cours,** cours, court, courons, courez, courent; *impve.* cours, courons, courez.

5. *Past Def.* **courus,** courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, coururent; *impf. subj.* courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent.

Like **courir** are its compounds:

accourir, *run up, hasten.*
concourir, *co-operate, concur, compete.*
discourir, *discourse.*
encourir, *incur.*
parcourir, *run over.*
recourir, *run again, apply.*
secourir, *succor, help.*

NOTE.—**Courre,** *chase* (a hunting term), sometimes replaces **courir** in the infinitive.

165. Cueillir, 'to gather,' 'pick.'

1. *Infinitive.* **cueillir**; *fut.* cueillerai, etc.; *condl.* cueillerais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **cueillant**; *impf. indic.* cueillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent.

3. *Past Part.* **cueilli**; *past indef.* j'ai cueilli, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cueille,** cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent; *impve.* cueille, cueillons, cueillez.

5. *Past Def.* **cueillis,** cueillis, cueillit, cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent; *impf. subj.* cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent.

Obs.: The present indicative, future, and conditional are like those of **donner.**

Like **cueillir**:

accueillir, *welcome.*
recueillir, *gather, collect.*
*assaillir, *assail.*
†saillir, *jut out.*
tressaillir, *start.*

* Regular in future and conditional: **assaillirai,** etc.

† **Saillir,** *gush out, rush forth,* is regular, like **finir.**

166. Dormir, 'to sleep.'

1. *Infinitive.* **dormir**; *fut.* dormirai, etc.; *condl.* dormirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **dormant**; *impf. indic.* dormais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment.

3. *Past Part.* **dormi**; *past indef.* j'ai dormi, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dors,** dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment; *impve.* dors, dormons, dormez.

5. *Past Def.* **dormis,** dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent; *impf. subj.* dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.

Like **dormir**:

endormir, *put to sleep.*
s'endormir, *fall asleep.*
redormir, *sleep again.*
rendormir, *put to sleep again.*
se rendormir, *go to sleep again.*
bouillir, *boil.*
ébouillir, *boil away.*
rebouillir, *boil again.*
mentir, *lie.*
démentir, *contradict, belie.*
partir, *set out.*
départir, *distribute.*
se départir, *desist.*

repartir, *set out again, reply.*
se repentir, *repent.*
sentir, *feel.*
consentir, *consent.*
pressentir, *forebode.*
ressentir, *resent.*
servir, *serve.*
se servir, *make use.*
desservir, *clear the table.*
sortir, *go out.*
ressortir, *go out again.*

NOTE.—**Asservir,** *enslave,* **assortir,** *sort, match,* **ressortir,** *depend* (on, à) **répartir,** *distribute,* are like **finir.**

Observe the Present Indicative of the following types, which are represented in the above list:

bouillir: bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.
mentir: mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent.
partir: pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent.
se repentir: repens, repens, repent, repentons, repentez, repentent.
sentir: sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent.
servir; sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent.
sortir: sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent.

167. Faillir, 'to fail.'

1. *Infinitive.* **faillir**; *fut.* faudrai, faudras, etc.; *condl.* faudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **faillant**; *impf. indic.* faillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* faille, failles, faille, faillions, failliez, faillent.

3. *Past Part.* **failli**; *past indef.* j'ai failli, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **faux,** faux, faut, faillons, faillez, faillent; *impve.* ——, ——, ——.

5. *Past Def.* **faillis,** faillis, faillit, faillîmes, faillîtes, faillirent; *impf. subj.* faillisse, faillisses, faillît, faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent.

Like faillir:

*défaillir, *faint, fail.*

* Pres. indic. usually **défaus, défaus, défaut.**

NOTE.—**Faillir,** *fail in business,* is usually like **finir.**

168. Férir, 'to strike.'

Used only in 'Sans coup **férir,**' 'Without striking a blow,' and in the *past part.* **féru,** *wounded* (a veterinary term).

169. Fleurir, 'to flourish,' etc.

Pres. Part. **florissant**; *impf. indic.* florissais, etc., when used of persons or a collection of persons, *or* fleurissais, etc., when used of things; otherwise like **finir.**

NOTE.—**Fleurir,** *blossom, bloom* (in a literal sense) is like **finir.**

170. **Fuir**, 'to flee,' 'fly.'

1. *Infinitive.* **fuir**; *fut.* fuirai, etc.; *condl.* fuirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **fuyant**; *impf. indic.* fuyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
3. *Past Part.* fui; *past indef.* j'ai fui, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **fuis**, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient; *impve.* fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
5. *Past Def.* **fuis**, fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent; *impf. subj.* fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent.

Like **fuir**:

s'enfuir, *flee, escape.*

171. **Gésir**, 'to lie,' 'lie buried.'

1. *Infinitive.* **gésir**; *fut.* ——; *condl.* ——.
2. *Pres. Part.* **gisant**; *impf. indic.* gisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ——.
3. *Past Part.* ——.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, **gît**, gisons, gisez, gisent; *impve.* ——, ——, ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Note.—Its most frequent use is in epitaphs: '**Ci-gît**,' 'Here lies,' '**Ci-gisent**,' 'Here lie.'

172. **Haïr**, 'to hate.'

1. *Infinitive.* **haïr**; *fut.* haïrai, etc.; *condl.* haïrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **haïssant**; *impf. indic.* haïssais, etc.; *pres. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.
3. *Past Part.* haï; *past indef.* j'ai haï, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **hais**, hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, haïssent; *impve.* hais, haïssons, haïssez.
5. *Past Def.* **haïs**, haïs, haït, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent; *impf. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haït, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.

Obs.: **Haïr** loses its diæresis in the present indicative and imperative singular, and takes no circumflex accent; otherwise like **finir**.

173. **Issir**, 'to spring (from, de),' etc.

Used only in the *past part.* **issu**; *past indef.* je suis issu, etc.

174. **Mourir**, 'to die.'

1. *Infinitive.* **mourir**; *fut.* mourrai, mourras, etc.; *condl.* mourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mourant**; *impf. indic.* mourais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

3. *Past Part.* **mort**; *past indef.* je suis mort, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **meurs**, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent; *impve.* meurs, mourons, mourez.

5. *Past Def.* **mourus**, mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent; *impf. subj.* mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **mourir**:

se mourir, *be dying* (used only in infin., pres. indic., impf. indic.).

175. Ouïr, 'to hear.'

Is hardly used beyond the infinitive and past participle: 'J'ai **ouï** dire.' 'I have heard said,' etc.

176. Ouvrir, 'to open.'

1. *Infinitive.* **ouvrir**; *fut.* ouvrirai, etc.; *condl.* ouvrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **ouvrant**; *impf. indic.* ouvrais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent.

3. *Past Part.* **ouvert**; *past indef.* j'ai ouvert, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **ouvre**, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent; *impve.* ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

5. *Past Def.* **ouvris**, ouvris, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent; *impf. subj.* ouvrisse, ouvrisses, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent.

Obs.: The present indicative is like that of **donner**.

Like **ouvrir**:

entr'ouvrir, *open slightly.*
rouvrir, *open again.*
couvrir, *cover.*
découvrir, *discover.*
recouvrir, *cover again.*
offrir, *offer.*
souffrir, *suffer.*

177. Tenir, 'to hold.'

1. *Infinitive.* **tenir**; *fut.* tiendrai, tiendras, etc.; *condl.* tiendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **tenant**; *impf. indic.* tenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent.

3. *Past Part.* **tenu**; *past indef.* j'ai tenu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **tiens**, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent; *impve.* tiens, tenons, tenez.

5. *Past Def.* **tins,** tins, tint, tînmes [tɛ̃ːm], tîntes [tɛ̃ːt], tinrent [tɛ̃ːr]; *impf. subj.* tinsse, [tɛ̃ːs], tinsses, tînt, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **tenir** are its compounds:

s'abstenir, *abstain.* **appartenir,** *belong.* **contenir,** *contain.* **détenir,** *detain.* **entretenir,** *entertain.* **maintenir,** *maintain.* **obtenir,** *obtain.* **retenir,** *retain.* **soutenir,** *sustain.*

178. Venir, 'to come.'

1. *Infinitive.* **venir**; *fut.* viendrai, viendras, etc.; *condl.* viendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **venant**; *impf. indic.* venais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent.

3. *Past Part.* **venu**; *past indef.* je suis venu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **viens,** viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent; *impve.* viens, venons, venez.

5. *Past Def.* **vins,** vins, vint, vînmes [vɛ̃ːm], vîntes [vɛ̃ːt], vinrent [vɛ̃ːr]; *impf. subj.* vinsse [vɛ̃ːs], vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Obs.: 1. The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress. 2. **Venir** is precisely like **tenir** in its irregularities, but owing to its difficulty it is given in full.

Like **venir** are its compounds:

avenir, *happen.* advenir, *happen.* convenir, *agree, suit.* contrevenir, *violate.* circonvenir, *circumvent.* devenir, *become.* disconvenir, *be discordant.* intervenir, *intervene.* parvenir, *attain.* prévenir, *prevent.* provenir, *proceed* (from, de). revenir, *come back.* redevenir, *become again.* se souvenir, *recollect.* subvenir, *aid.* survenir, *occur.* se ressouvenir, *recollect.*

179. Vêtir, 'to clothe.'

1. *Infinitive.* **vêtir**; *fut.* vêtirai, etc.; *condl.* vêtirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vêtant**; *impf. indic.* vêtais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent.

3. *Past Part.* **vêtu**; *past indef.* j'ai vêtu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vêts,** vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent; *impve.* vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

5. *Past Def.* **vêtis,** vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vêtirent; *impf. subj.* vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent.

Like **vêtir**:

dévêtir, *divest.* **se dévêtir,** *take off clothing.* revêtir, *clothe, invest.* **se revêtir,** *put on clothing.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **-re.**

180. **Battre,** 'to beat.'

Loses one **t** in the present indicative singular: **Bats, bats, bat;** otherwise like **rompre.**

Like **battre:**

abattre, *fell.*
combattre, *fight, oppose.*
débattre, *debate.*
se débattre, *struggle.*
rabattre, *beat down.*

181. **Boire,** 'to drink.'

1. *Infinitive.* **boire**; *fut.* boirai, etc.; *condl.* boirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **buvant**; *impf. indic.* buvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent.
3. *Past Part.* **bu**; *past indef.* j'ai bu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **bois,** bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent; *impve.* bois, buvons, buvez.
5. *Past Def.* **bus,** bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent; *impf. subj.* busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent.

Like **boire:**

emboire, *coat* (in painting).
*s'emboire, *become dull.*
  *used in third person.
imboire, *imbibe, imbue.*
reboire, *drink again.*

182. **Bruire,** 'to murmur,' 'rustle.'

1. *Infinitive.* **bruire**; *fut.* bruirai, etc.; *condl.* bruirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **bruyant**; *impf. indic.* bruyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ——.
3. *Past Part.* **bruit**; *past indef.* j'ai bruit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **bruis,** bruis, bruit, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

NOTES.—1. The *pres. part.* **bruyant,** *noisy,* is used as adjective only. 2. The forms **bruissant, bruissais,** etc., **bruisse,** etc., are also in use.

183. **Clore,** 'to close,' 'enclose.'

1. *Infinitive.* **clore**; *fut.* clorai, etc.; *condl.* clorais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent.
3. *Past Part.* **clos**; *past indef.* j ai clos, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **clos,** clos, clôt, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Like **clore**:

déclore, *throw open.*
*éclore, *hatch, open* (of flowers).
†enclore, *inclose.*
††forclore, *foreclose, debar.*

*Has also *pres. plur.* **éclosons**, etc.; *impf. indic.* **éclosais**, etc. Its future and conditional have circumflex, **éclôrai**, etc.

†Has also *pres. plur.* **enclosons**, etc.; *pres. part.* **enclosant**; *impf. indic.* **enclosais**, etc.

††Hardly used beyond the infinitive, past participle, and compound tenses.

184. Conclure, 'to conclude.'

1. *Infinitive.* **conclure**; *fut.* conclurai, etc.; *condl.* conclurais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **concluant**; *impf. indic.* concluais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluiez, concluent.

3. *Past Part.* **conclu**; *past indef.* j'ai conclu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **conclus**, conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concluent; *impve.* conclus, concluons, concluez.

5. *Past Def.* **conclus**, conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent; *impf. subj.* conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent.

Like **conclure**:

exclure, *exclude.*
*inclure, *inclose.*
†reclure, *shut up.*

Past Part.* **inclus.

†Used only in infin., past part., and comp. tenses. *Past part.* **reclus**.

185. Conduire, 'to conduct,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **conduire**; *fut.* conduirai, etc.; *condl.* conduirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **conduisant**; *impf. indic.* conduisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent.

3. *Past Part.* **conduit**; *past indef.* j'ai conduit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **conduis**, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent; *impve.* conduis, conduisons, conduisez.

5. *Past Def.* **conduisis**, conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent; *impf. subj.* conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent.

Like **conduire**:

se conduire, *conduct one's self.*
éconduire, *show out, dismiss.*
reconduire, *lead back.*
*duire, *please, suit.*
déduire, *deduct.*
enduire, *coat (with plaster).*
induire, *induce.*
introduire, *introduce.*
produire, *produce.*
réduire, *reduce.*
reproduire, *reproduce.*
séduire, *seduce.*
traduire, *translate.*
construire, *construct.*

déconstruire, *take apart.*	détruire, *destroy.*	†luire, *shine.*
instruire, *instruct.*	cuire, *cook.*	†reluire, *glisten.*
reconstruire, *reconstruct.*	recuire, *cook again.*	‡nuire, *injure.*

* Only in third sing. and plu. pres. indic. and third sing. impf. indic. Obsolescent.

† *Past part.* **lui** and **relui** respectively. No past def. or impf. subj.

‡ *Past part.* **nui.**

186. Être, 'to be.'

See § 154 for the full conjugation.

187. Confire, 'to preserve,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **confire**; *fut.* confirai, etc.; *condl.* confirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **confisant**; *impf. indic.* confisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent.

3. *Past Part.* **confit**; *past indef.* j'ai confit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **confis**, confis, confit, confisons, confisez, confisent; *impve.* confis, confisons, confisez.

5. *Past Def.* **confis**, confis, confit, confîmes, confîtes, confirent; *impf. subj.* confisse, confisses, confît, confissions, confissiez, confissent.

Like **confire**:

déconfire, *discomfit.*	circoncire (p.p. **-cis**), *circumcise.*	suffire (p.p. **suffi**), *suffice.*

188. Connaître, 'to know,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **connaître**; *fut.* connaîtrai, etc.; *condl.* connaîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **connaissant**; *impf. indic.* connaissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* connaisse, connaisses, connaisse, connaissions, connaissiez, connaissent.

3. *Past Part.* **connu**; j'ai connu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **connais**, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent; *impve.* connais, connaissons, connaissez.

5. *Past Def.* **connus**, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent; *impf. subj.* connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel **i** has circumflex (**î**) everywhere before **t**.

Like **connaître**:

méconnaître, *not to know.*	comparaître, *appear* (law term).	*paître, *graze.*
reconnaître, *recognize.*	disparaître, *disappear.*	repaître, *feed, feast.*
paraître, *appear.*	reparaître, *reappear.*	se repaître, *feed, feast.*
apparaître, *appear.*		

* Lacks the past part., past def., and impf. subj.

Note.—**Apparoir** (also used in third singular **il appert**, 'it appears') and **comparoir**, are infinitive archaic variants of **apparaître** and **comparaître**.

189. **Coudre**, 'to sew.'

1. *Infinitive.* **coudre**; *fut.* coudrai, etc.; *condl.* coudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **cousant**; *impf. indic.* cousais, etc.; *pres. subj.* couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent.

3. *Past Part.* **cousu**; *past indef.* j'ai cousu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **couds**, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent; *impve.* couds, cousons, cousez.

5. *Past Def.* **cousis**, cousis, cousit, cousîmes, cousîtes, cousirent; *impf. subj.* cousisse, cousisses, cousît, cousissions, cousissiez, cousissent.

Like **coudre**:

découdre, *rip, unsew.*
recoudre, *sew again.*

190. **Craindre**, 'to fear.'

1. *Infinitive.* **craindre**; *fut.* craindrai, etc.; *condl.* craindrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **craignant**; *impf. indic.* craignais, etc.; *pres. subj.* craigne, craignes, craigne, craignions, craigniez, craignent.

3. *Past Part.* **craint**; *past indef.* j'ai craint, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crains**, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent; *impve.* crains, craignons, craignez.

5. *Past Def.* **craignis**, craignis, craignit, craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent; *impf. subj.* craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent.

Like **craindre**:

in **-aindre**:
contraindre, *constrain.*
plaindre, *pity.*
se plaindre, *complain.*
in **-eindre**:
astreindre, *abstract.*
atteindre, *attain.*
ceindre, *enclose, gird, gird on* (a sword, etc.).
dépeindre, *depict.*
empreindre, *imprint.*
enceindre, *gird.*
enfreindre, *infringe.*
épreindre, *squeeze out.*
éteindre, *extinguish.*
étreindre, *draw tight.*
feindre, *feign.*
geindre, *groan.*
peindre, *paint.*
ratteindre, *overtake.*
repeindre, *paint again.*
restreindre, *restrain.*
teindre, *dye.*
déteindre, *fade.*
reteindre, *dye again.*
in **-oindre**:
joindre, *join.*
adjoindre, *adjoin.*
conjoindre, *conjoin.*
déjoindre, *disjoin.*
disjoindre, *disjoin.*
enjoindre, *enjoin.*
rejoindre, *rejoin.*
oindre, *anoint.*
*poindre, *dawn.*

*Hardly used beyond the infinitive and future.

191. **Croire**, 'to believe.'

1. *Infinitive.* **croire**; *fut.* croirai, etc.; *condl.* croirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croyant**; *impf. indic.* croyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.

3. *Past Part.* **cru**; *past indef.* j'ai cru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crois**, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient; *impve.* crois, croyons, croyez.

5. *Past Def.* **crus**, crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Like **croire**:

*accroire, *believe* (an untruth). †décroire, *disbelieve.*

* Found only in **faire accroire**, *to cause to believe* (an untruth).

† Used only in '**je ne crois ni ne décrois**,' 'I neither believe nor disbelieve.'

192. Croître, 'to grow.'

1. *Infinitive.* **croître**; *fut.* croîtrai, etc.; *condl.* croîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croissant**; *impf. indic.* croissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent.

3. *Past Part.* **crû** (f. crue); *past indef.* j'ai crû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **croîs**, croîs, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent; *impve.* croîs, croissons, croissez.

5. *Past Def.* **crûs**, crûs, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent; *impf. subj.* crûsse, crûsses, crût, crûssions, crûssiez, crûssent.

Obs.: The circumflex accent distinguishes otherwise like forms of **croître** and **croire**, but is optional in the imperfect subjunctive (except the third singular).

Like **croître**:

*accroître, *increase.* *recroître, *grow again.* *surcroître, *overgrow.*
décroître, *decrease.*

*No circumflex in past participle, past definite third singular and third plural.

193. Dire, 'to say,' 'tell.'

1. *Infinitive.* **dire**; *fut.* dirai, etc.; *condl.* dirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **disant**; *impf. indic.* disais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

3. *Past Part.* **dit**; *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dis**, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent; *impve.* dis, disons, dites.

5. *Past Def.* **dis**, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like **dire**:

*contredire, *contradict.* *interdire, *interdict.* *prédire, *predict.*
*dédire, *retract, deny.* *médire (de), *slander.* redire, *say again.*

*The 2nd plur. pres. indic. and impve. is: Contre**disez**, dé**disez**, inter**disez**, etc.

—**Maudire** is like **dire** only in infinitive, past participle (**maudit**), future and conditional; otherwise like **finir**.

194. **Écrire,** 'to write.'

1. *Infinitive.* **écrire**; *fut.* écrirai, etc., *condl.* écrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **écrivant**; *impf. indic.* écrivais, etc., *pres. subj.* écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent.

3. *Past Part.* **écrit**; *past indef.* j'ai écrit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **écris**, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent; *impve.* écris, écrivons, écrivez.

5. *Past Def.* **écrivis**, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent; *impf. subj.* écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent.

Like **écrire** are all verbs in **-(s)crire**:

circonscrire, *circumscribe.*
décrire, *describe.*
inscrire, *inscribe.*
prescrire, *prescribe.*
proscrire, *proscribe.*
récrire, *rewrite.*
souscrire, *subscribe.*
transcrire, *transcribe.*

195. **Faire,** 'to do,' 'make.'

1. *Infinitive.* **faire**; *fut.* ferai [fəre], etc.; *condl.* ferais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **faisant** [fəzɑ̃]; *impf. indic.* faisais [fəzɛ], etc.; *pres. subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.

3. *Past Part.* **fait**; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **fais**, fais, fait, faisons [fəzɔ̃], faites, font; *impve.* fais, faisons, faites.

5. *Past Def.* **fis**, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Like **faire**:

contrefaire, *imitate.*
défaire, *undo.*
forfaire, *forfeit.*
*malfaire, *do ill.*
méfaire, *harm.*
parfaire, *complete.*
redéfaire, *undo again.*
refaire, *do again.*
satisfaire, *satisfy.*
surfaire, *overcharge.*

*Used in infinitive only.

196. **Frire,** 'to fry' (intr.).

1. *Infinitive.* **frire**; *fut.* frirai, etc.; *condl.* frirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* ——; *impf. indic.* ——; *pres. subj.* ——.

3. *Past Part.* **frit**; *past indef.* j'ai frit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **fris**, fris, frit, ——, ——, ——; *impve.* fris, ——, ——.

5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

197. Lire, 'to read.'

1. *Infinitive.* **lire**; *fut.* lirai, etc.; *condl.* lirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **lisant**; *impf. indic.* lisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent.

3. *Past Part.* lu; *past indef.* j'ai lu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **lis**, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent; *impve.* lis, lisons, lisez.

5. *Past Def.* **lus**, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent; *impf. subj.* lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent.

Like **lire**:

élire, *elect.* **réélire**, *re-elect.* **relire**, *read again.*

198. Mettre, 'to place,' 'put.'

Infinitive. **mettre**; *fut.* mettrai, etc.; *condl.* mettrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mettant**; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc.; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.

3. *Past Part.* **mis**; *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **mets**, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent; *impve.* mets, mettons, mettez.

5. *Past Def.* mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent.

Like **mettre**:

se mettre, *begin.*
admettre, *admit.*
commettre, *commit.*
compromettre, *compromise.*
démettre, *dismiss.*
émettre, *emit.*
s'entremettre, *interpose.*
omettre, *omit.*
permettre, *permit.*
promettre, *promise.*
remettre, *put back, hand to.*
repromettre, *promise again.*
soumettre, *submit.*
transmettre, *transmit.*

199. Moudre, 'to grind.'

1. *Infinitive.* **moudre**; *fut.* moudrai, etc.; *condl.* moudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **moulant**; *impf. indic.* moulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent.

3. *Past Part.* **moulu**; *past indef.* j'ai moulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **mouds**, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent; *impve.* mouds, moulons, moulez.

5. *Past Def.* **moulus**, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent; *impf. subj.* moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Like **moudre**:

émoudre, *whet.* remoudre, *grind again.* rémoudre, *sharpen.*

200. Naître, 'to be born,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **naître**; *fut.* naîtrai, etc.; *condl.* naîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **naissant**; *impf. indic.* naissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent.

3. *Past Part.* **né**; *past indef.* je suis né, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **nais**, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, **naissent**; *impve.* **nais**, **naissons**, naissez.

5. *Past Def.* **naquis**, naquis, naquit, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquirent; *impf. subj.* naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel **i** has the circumflex (**î**) everywhere before **t**.

Like **naître**:
renaître, *revive.*

201. Plaire, 'to please.'

1. *Infinitive.* **plaire**; *fut.* plairai, etc.; *condl.* plairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **plaisant**; *impf. indic.* plaisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* plaise, plaises, plaise, plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent.

3. *Past Part.* **plu**; *past indef.* j'ai plu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **plais**, plais, **plaît**, plaisons, plaisez, **plaisent**; *impve.* **plais**, **plaisons**, plaisez.

5. *Past Def.* **plus**, **plus**, **plut**, **plûmes**, **plûtes**, **plurent**; *impf. subj.* plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent.

Like **plaire**:
complaire, *humour.* **déplaire**, *displease.* * **taire**, *say nothing about.*

* **Il tait** has no circumflex.

202. Prendre, 'to take.'

1. *Infinitive.* **prendre**; *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **prenant**; *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.

3. *Past Part.* **pris**; *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **prends**, prends, prend, prenons, **prenez**, prennent; *impve.* prends, prenons, prenez.

5. *Past Def.* **pris**, pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Like **prendre** are its compounds:
apprendre, *learn.* entreprendre, *undertake.* rapprendre, *learn again.*
déprendre, *part.* s'éprendre, *be taken.* reprendre, *take back.*
désapprendre, *unlearn.* se méprendre, *be mistaken.* surprendre, *surprise.*
comprendre, *understand.*

203. **Résoudre**, 'to resolve.'

1. *Infinitive.* **résoudre**; *fut.* résoudrai, etc.; *condl.* résoudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **résolvant**; *impf. indic.* résolvais, etc.; *pres. subj* résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent.

3. *Past Part.* **résolu** and **résous**; *past indef.* j'ai résolu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **résous**, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent; *impve.* résous, résolvons, résolvez.

5. *Past Def.* **résolus**, résolus, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent; *impf. subj.* résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.

Like **résoudre**:

*absoudre, *absolve.* *dissoudre, *dissolve.*

* *Past part.* **absous** (f. absoute), **dissous** (f. dissoute), respectively, lack the past definite and imperfect subjunctive.

204. **Rire**, 'to laugh.'

1. *Infinitive.* **rire**; *fut.* rirai, etc.; *condl.* rirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **riant**; *impf. indic.* riais, etc.; *pres. subj.* **rie**, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient.

3. *Past Part.* **ri**; *past indef.* j'ai ri, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **ris**, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient; *impve.* ris, rions, riez.

5. *Past Def.* ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent; *impf. subj.* risse, risses, rît, rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Like **rire**:

se rire, *make sport* (of, de). sourire, *smile.*

205. **Sourdre**, 'to rise,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **sourdre**; *fut.* il sourdra; *condl.* il sourdrait.

2. *Pres. Part.* **sourdant**; *impf. indic.* il sourdait; *pres. subj.* il sourde.

3. *Past Part.* ——; *past indef.* ——.

4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, sourd, ——, ——, sourdent; *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* il **sourdit**; *impf. subj.* il sourdît.

Note.—Little used beyond the infin. and third sing. pres. indic.

206. **Suivre**, 'to follow.'

1. *Infinitive.* **suivre**; *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **suivant**; *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* **suive**, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.

3. *Past Part.* **suivi**; *past indef.* j'a suivi, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **suis**, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent; *impve.* suis, suivons, suivez.

5. *Past Def.* **suivis**, suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent; *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Like **suivre**:

s'ensuivre (impers.), *it follows.* **poursuivre**, *pursue.*

207. Tistre, 'to weave.'

Used only in the *past part.* **tissu**, and compound tenses.

208. Traire, 'to milk.'

1. *Infinitive.* **traire**; *fut.* trairai, etc.; *condl.* trairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **trayant**; *impf. indic.* trayais, etc.; *pres. subj.* **traie** traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.

3. *Past Part.* **trait**; *past indef.* j'ai trait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **trais**, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, **traient**; *impve* trais, trayons, trayez.

5. *Past Def.* ——; *impf. subj.* ——.

Like **traire**:

abstraire, *abstract*	extraire, *extract.*	soustraire, *subtract.*
attraire, *attract.*	rentraire, *darn.*	*braire, *bray.*
distraire, *distract.*	retraire, *redeem* (legal).	

* Commonly used only in the infin. and the third pers. pres. indic. fut. and condl.

209. Vaincre, 'to conquer.'

1. *Infinitive.* **vaincre**; *fut.* vaincrai, etc.; *condl.* vaincrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vainquant**; *impf. indic.* vainquais, etc.; *pres. subj* vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent.

3. *Past Part.* **vaincu**; *past indef.* j'ai vaincu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaincs** [vɛ̃], vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent; *impve.* vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.

5. *Past Def.* **vainquis**, vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent; *impf. subj.* vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.

Obs.: Stem **c** [k] becomes **qu** [k] before any vowel except **u.**

Like **vaincre**:

convaincre, *convince.*

210. **Vendre,** 'to sell.'

Irregular only in third singular present indicative: Il **vend** (**t** omitted).

Like **vendre**:

All verbs in **-andre, -endre***, **-erdre, -ondre, -ordre.**

* Except **prendre, reprendre, surprendre,** etc.

211. **Vivre,** 'to live.'

1. *Infinitive.* **vivre**; *fut.* vivrai, etc.; *condl.* vivrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vivant**; *impf. indic.* vivais, etc.; *pres. subj.*, vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent.

3. *Past Part.* **vécu**; *past indef.* j'ai vécu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vis**, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent; *impve.*, vis, vivons, vivez.

5. *Past Def.* **vécus**, vécus, vécut, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent; *impf. subj.* vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.

Like **vivre**:

revivre, *revive.* survivre, *survive.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -oir.

Note.—The few verbs in **-oir**, which are all irregular, form, in some grammars, a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in **-re** being the fourth.

212. **Avoir,** 'to have.'

See §154 for the full conjugation of this verb.

Like **avoir**:

* ravoir, *have again.*

* Used only in the infinitive.

213. **Recevoir,** 'to receive.'

1. *Infinitive.* **recevoir**; *fut.* recevrai, etc.; *condl.* recevrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **recevant**; *impf. indic.* recevais, etc.; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.

3. *Past Part.* **reçu**; *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **reçois**, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.

5. *Past def.* **reçus**, reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Obs.: 1. Stem-vowel becomes **oi** wherever it bears the stress. 2. Stem **c** [s] is written **ç** [s] before **o** or **u** (§ 5, 4).

Like **recevoir**:

apercevoir, *perceive.* décevoir, *deceive.* percevoir, *collect taxes.*
concevoir, *conceive.*

214. Devoir, 'to owe.'

1. *Infinitive.* **devoir**; *fut.* devrai, etc.; *condl.* devrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **devant**; *impf. indic.* devais, etc.; *pres. subj.* doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.

3. *Past Part.* **dû** (f. due, pl. du(e)s); *past indef.* j'ai dû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dois**, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; *impve.* ——.

5. *Past Def.* **dus**, dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; *impf. subj.* dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.

NOTE.—**Devoir** follows the **recevoir** model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Like **devoir**:

redevoir, *still owe.*

215. Asseoir, 'to seat.'

1. *Infinitive.* **asseoir**; *fut.* assiérai, etc., *or* asseyerai, etc., *or* assoirai, etc.; *condl.* assiérais, etc., *or* asseyerais, etc., *or* assoirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **asseyant** *or* **assoyant**; *impf. indic.* asseyais, etc., *or* assoyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent, *or* assoie, assoies, assoie, assoyions, assoyiez, assoient.

3. *Past Part.* **assis**; *past indef.* j'ai assis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **assieds**, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent, *or* **assois**, assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient; *impve.* assieds, asseyons, asseyez, *or* assois, assoyons, assoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **assis**, assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent; *impf. subj.* assisse, assisses, assît, assissions, assissiez, assissent.

Like **asseoir**:

s'asseoir, *sit down.* se rasseoir, *sit down again.* *messeoir, *fit badly.*
rasseoir, *reseat, calm.* *seoir, *be becoming.* †surseoir, *suspend, reprieve.*

*Used in third person of the following *Pres. indic.* sied, siéent (messied, messiéent); *impf. indic.* seyait, seyaient (messeyait, messeyaient); *pres. subj.* siée, siéent (messiée, messiéent); *fut.* siéra, siéront (messiéra, messiéront); *condl.* siérait, siéraient (messiérait, messiéraient).

† Like the forms in **oi** (**oy**) of **asseoir**, but *fut.* and *condl.* **surseoirai(s)**.

216. **Déchoir**, 'to decline,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **déchoir** ; *fut.* décherrai, etc. ; *condl.* décherrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* —— ; *impf. indic.* —— ; *pres. subj.* déchoie, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient.
3. *Past Part.* déchu ; *past indef.* j'ai déchu *or* je suis déchu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **déchois**, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient; *impve.* déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.
5. *Past Def.* **déchus**, déchus, déchut, déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent ; *impf. subj.* déchusse, déchusses, déchût, déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.

Like **déchoir** :

*choir, *fall.* *rechoir, *fall again.*

*Hardly used beyond the infin. and comp. tenses.

217. **Échoir**, 'fall due,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **échoir** ; *fut.* il *écherra ; *condl.* il *écherrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* **échéant** ; *impf. indic.* il échoyait ; *pres. subj.* il échoie.
3. *Past Part.* **échu** ; *past indef.* je suis échu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ——, ——, échoit *or* échet, ——, ——, échoient *or* échéent ; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* ——, ——, il **échut** ; ——, ——, ils échurent ; *impf. subj.* il échût.

* Or regular : il **échoira(it).**

218. **Falloir**, 'must,' etc. (impers.).

1. *Infinitive.* **falloir** ; *fut.* il faudra ; *condl.* il faudrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* —— ; *impf. indic.* il fallait ; *pres. subj.* il faille.
3. *Past Part.* **fallu** ; *past indef.* il a fallu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il **faut** ; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* il **fallut** ; *impf. subj.* il fallût.

219. **Mouvoir**, 'to move.'

1. *Infinitive.* **mouvoir** ; *fut.* mouvrai, etc. ; *condl.* mouvrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **mouvant** ; *impf. indic.* mouvais, etc. ; *pres. subj.* meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent.
3. *Past Part.* mû (f. mue, pl. mu(e)s) ; *past indef.* j'ai mû, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **meus**, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent ; *impve.* meus, mouvons, mouvez.

5. *Past Def.* **mus**, mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, murent; *impf. subj.* musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever stressed.

Like **mouvoir**:

*émouvoir, *arouse.* *promouvoir, *promote.*

* Past participle has no circumflex accent.

220. Pleuvoir, 'to rain' (impers.).

1. *Infinitive.* **pleuvoir**; *fut.* il pleuvra; *condl.* il pleuvrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* **pleuvant**; *impf. indic.* il pleuvait; *pres. subj.* il pleuve.
3. *Past Part.* **plu**; *past indef.* il a plu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* il **pleut**; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* il **plut**; *impf. subj.* il plût.

221. Pouvoir, 'to be able,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **pouvoir**; *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **pouvant**; *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent.
3. *Past Part.* **pu**; *past indef.* j'ai pu.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **puis** *or* **peux**, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impve.* ——.
5. *Past Def.* **pus**, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Obs.: The first sing. pres. indic. in negation is usually 'je ne peux pas,' or 'je ne puis'; in questions, only 'puis-je?'; otherwise 'puis' or 'peux.'

222. Savoir, 'to know,' etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **savoir**; *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **sachant**; *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.
3. *Past Part.* **su**; *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **sais** [se], sais, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impve.* sache, sachons, sachez.
5. *Past Def.* **sus**, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

223. Valoir, 'to be worth.'

1. *Infinitive.* **valoir**; *fut.* vaudrai, etc.; *condl.* vaudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **valant**; *impf. indic.* valais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.

3. *Past Part.* **valu**; *past indef.* j'ai valu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaux**, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent; *impve.* vaux, valons, valez.

5. *Past Def.* **valus**, valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent; *impf. subj.* valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent.

Like **valoir**:

équivaloir, *be equivalent.*   ***prévaloir**, *prevail.*   †**chaloir.**
revaloir, *pay back, return like for like.*

* *Pres. subj.* **prévale**, etc.

† Hardly used beyond, 'Il ne me chaut de,' 'I care not for.'

224. Voir, 'to see.'

1. *Infinitive.* **voir**; *fut.* verrai, etc.; *condl.* verrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voyant**; *impf. indic.* voyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.

3. *Past Part.* **vu**; *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vois**, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient; *impve.* vois, voyons, voyez.

5. *Past Def.* **vis**, vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Like **voir**:

entrevoir, *catch sight of.*   ***pourvoir**, *provide.*   †**prévoir**, *foresee.*
revoir, *see again.*   ***dépourvoir**, *strip, leave destitute.*

* *Past def.* **-vus**, etc.; *impf. subj.* **-vusse**, etc.; *fut.* and *condl.* **-voirai(s)**, regular.

† *Fut.* and *condl.* **-voirai(s)**, etc., regular.

225. Vouloir, 'to will,' etc.

1. *Infin.* **vouloir**; *fut.* voudrai, etc.; *condl.* voudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voulant**; *impf. indic.* voulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

3. *Past Part.* **voulu**; *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **veux**, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent; *impve.* veux, voulons, voulez.

5. *Past Def.* **voulus**, voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** whenever it is stressed.

NOTE.—The regular *impve.* **veux, voulons, voulez** is rare; **veuillez**='have the kindness to' generally serves as second plural imperative.

226. Reference List of Irregular Verbs.

NOTE.—Each verb in the list is referred to the section in which its irregularity is explained. For verbs in **-cer, -ger,** see §156; for verbs in **-yer,** §157; for verbs with stem-vowel **e** or **é**, §158; for verbs in **-andre, -endre, -erdre, -ondre, -ordre,** §210.

A.

abattre......... §180
absoudre........ 203
abstenir........ 177
abstraire........ 208
accourir........ 164
accroire........ 191
accroître........ 192
accueillir........ 165
acquérir........ 162
adjoindre....... 190
admettre....... 198
advenir......... 178
aller............ 160
apercevoir....... 213
apparaître....... 188
apparoir........ 188
appartenir...... 177
apprendre...... 202
assaillir......... 165
asseoir.......... 215
astreindre...... 190
atteindre........ 190
attraire......... 208
avenir.......... 178
avoir........... 154

B.

battre.......... 180
bénir........... 163
boire........... 181
bouillir......... 166
braire.......... 208
bruire.......... 182

C.

ceindre......... §190
chaloir......... 223
choir........... 216
circoncire....... 187
circonscrire..... 194
circonvenir...... 178
clore............ 183
combattre...... 180
commettre...... 198
comparaître..... 188
comparoir....... 188
complaire....... 201
comprendre..... 202
compromettre... 198
concevoir....... 213
conclure........ 184
concourir....... 164
conduire........ 185
confire.......... 187
conjoindre...... 190
connaître........ 188
conquérir....... 162
consentir....... 166
construire....... 185
contenir........ 177
contraindre..... 190
contredire...... 193
contrefaire...... 195
contrevenir...... 178
convaincre...... 209
convenir........ 178
coudre.......... 189
courir.......... §164
courre.......... 164
couvrir......... 176
craindre........ 190
croire.......... 191
croître.......... 192
cueillir.......... 165
cuire........... 185

D.

débattre........ 180
décevoir........ 213
déchoir......... 216
déclore.......... 183
déconfire....... 187
déconstruire.... 185
découdre........ 189
découvrir....... 176
décrire......... 194
décroire........ 191
décroître........ 192
dédire.......... 193
déduire......... 185
défaillir....... 167
défaire......... 195
déjoindre....... 190
démentir........ 166
démettre........ 198
départir........ 166
dépeindre....... 190
déplaire........ 201
dépourvoir...... 224
déprendre....... 202
désapprendre.... 202

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

227. **Avoir** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all transitive and of most intransitive verbs (cf. § 155).

228. **Être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 242), and of the following intransitives denoting motion or change of condition (cf. § 155):

aller, *go.*
river, *arrive.*
hoir, *fall.*
écéder, *die.*
échoir, *fall due.*
éclore, *hatch out.*
entrer, *enter, go (come) in.*
mourir, *die.*
naître, *be born.*
venir, *come.*

So also, the following compounds of **venir**:

devenir, *become.*
redevenir, *become again.*
intervenir, *intervene.*
parvenir, *attain.*
provenir, *proceed.*
revenir, *come back.*
survenir, *supervene.*

229. 1. **Avoir** or **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of a number of intransitive verbs, the general distinction being that **avoir**, when so used, denotes action, while **être** denotes state or condition resulting from action:

La pluie a passé par la fenêtre.	The rain came through the window.
La pluie est passée.	The rain is past.
Elle a grandi bien vite.	She grew up very fast.
Elle est grandie.	She is grown up.

2. Reference list of verbs with **avoir** or **être**:

aborder, *land.*
accourir, *run to.*
accroître, *increase.*
apparaître, *appear.*
baisser, *fall, decline.*
cesser, *cease.*
changer, *change.*
croître, *grow.*
déborder, *overflow.*
déchoir, *decay.*
décroître, *decrease.*
dégénérer, *degenerate.*
demeurer, *remain.*
*descendre, *descend.*
disparaître, *disappear.*
échapper, *escape.*
échouer, *be stranded, fail.*
embellir, *grow handsomer.*
émigrer, *emigrate.*
empirer, *grow worse.*
expirer, *expire.*
grandir, *grow up.*
*monter, *go up.*
*partir, *set out.*
passer, *pass.*
réchapper, *escape again.*
*redescendre, *come down again.*
*remonter, *go up again.*
*rentrer, *go in again.*
repasser, *pass again.*
*ressortir, *go out again.*
ressusciter, *revive.*
rester, *remain.*
*retomber, *fall again.*
*retourner, *go back.*
sonner, *strike, toll.*
*sortir, *go out.*
*tomber, *fall.*
vieillir, *grow old.*

* Almost always with **être**, and placed by some grammarians among verbs taking **être** exclusively.

a. Any verb in the list, used transitively, must, of course, take avoir (§227):

Il m'a passé la plume.	He handed me the pen.
Avez-vous rentré votre blé?	Have you hauled in your wheat?
Ils ont descendu le tableau.	They have taken down the picture.

b. The meaning also determines the auxiliary in a few other cases:

Avoir.	Être.
convenir, *suit, become.*	convenir, *agree.*
disconvenir, *not to suit, be discordant.*	disconvenir, *deny.*
repartir, *reply.*	repartir, *go away again.*

Nous sommes convenus du prix.	We are (have) agreed on the price.
Le prix ne m'a pas convenu.	The price did not suit me.

USE OF VERB PHRASES.

230. Auxiliary Function. Several verbs, when followed by an infinitive, have a sort of auxiliary function, and serve to form verb phrases of various values, modal, temporal, etc.:

1. **Vouloir** = 'will,' 'wish to,' 'want to,' 'desire to,' etc.:

Je ne veux pas rester.	I will not remain.
Il voudrait (bien) le savoir.	He would like to know it.
Elle n'a pas voulu m'écouter.	She would not listen to me.
Il aurait voulu le faire.	He would have liked to do so.
Veuillez le faire.	Be so good as to do so.

a. Distinguish from 'will' of simple futurity:

Elle vous écoutera.	She will listen to you.

2. **Devoir** = 'ought,' 'should,' 'must,' 'be to,' 'have to,' 'be obliged to,' 'intend to,' etc., varies in force in different tenses:

Present: je **dois** rester.	I am to (have to, intend to, must) remain.
Imperfect: je **devais** parler.	I was to (had to, etc.) speak.
Future: je **devrai** revenir.	I shall have to (be obliged to) come back.
Conditional: je **devrais** écrire.	I ought to (should) write.
Past Indefinite: **j'ai dû** m'arrêter.	I have had to (been obliged to) stop, must have stopped.

Past Definite: Je **dus** revenir.	I had to come back.
Conditional Anterior: **j'aurais dû** savoir.	I ought to have (should have) known.

3. **Pouvoir** = 'can,' 'be able to,' 'be permitted to,' 'may,' etc.:

Il ne pouvait pas porter le sac.	He could not carry the sack.
Puis-je aller à la ville?	May I go to town?
Ils auraient pu le faire.	They could (might) have done it.
Je pourrais le faire, si je voulais.	I could do it, if I would.
Pourraient-ils en trouver?	Could they find any?
Pourrais-je vous demander?	Might I ask you?

4. **Savoir** = 'know how to', 'can,' etc.:

Elle sait chanter et danser.	She can sing and dance.

a. Distinguish **savoir** in this sense from **pouvoir**:

Elle est enrouée et ne **peut** pas chanter ce soir.	She is hoarse and **cannot** sing this evening.

b. The conditional with **ne** has peculiar idiomatic force:

Je **ne** saurais le croire.	I cannot believe it.

5. **Oser** = 'dare':

Je n'ose pas le lui dire.	I dare not tell him so.

NOTE.—The above five verbs are sometimes called 'modal auxiliaries.'

6. **Faire** = 'make,' 'cause to,' 'cause to be,' 'have,' 'order,' 'order to be,' etc.:

J'ai fait étudier les enfants.	I have made the children study.
Il les fera écouter.	He will make them listen.
Il s'est fait faire un habit.	He had a coat made for himself.
Faites chercher un médecin.	Send for a doctor.

a. A governed substantive follows the infinitive, but a governed conjunctive personal pronoun (not reflexive) goes with **faire**:

Faites venir le domestique.	Have the servant come.
Faites-le venir.	Have him come.

b. If the infinitive with **faire** have a direct object, the personal object of **faire** must be indirect (cf. §293, 2, *a*):

Je fis écrire mon fils.	I had my son write.
Je fis écrire un devoir **à** mon fils.	I made my son write an exercise.
Faites-le-lui écrire.	Make him write it.
Je le **leur** fis voir.	I showed **them** it.

c. Possible ambiguity is sometimes avoided by **par**:

Il fit porter le sac par le guide.	He had the sack carried by the guide.

d. Note the passive force of a transitive infinitive after **faire**:

Je ferai écrire une lettre.	I shall have a letter written.

7. **Laisser** = 'let,' has usually the same constructions as **faire**:

Laissez écrire les enfants.	Let the children write.
Laissez-leur (*or* **-les**) **écrire un devoir.**	Let them write an exercise.

8. The present and imperfect of **aller** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate future, as also in English:

Il va l'acheter.	He is going to (is about to) buy it.
Nous allions nous arrêter.	We were about to stop.
Il allait se noyer.	He was on the point of drowning

9. Similarly the present and imperfect of **venir de** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate past:

Je viens de le voir.	I have just seen him.
Il venait de l'entendre.	He had just heard it.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

231. General Rule. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person:

Les hommes sont mortels.	Men are mortal.
Tout le monde est ici.	Everybody is here.
Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un.	You and I are but one.

232. Simple Subject. Special rules for the agreement of a verb with one subject are:—

1. A collective subject singular, when not followed by **de**, or when followed by **de** + the singular, has a singular verb:

Le peuple français est brave.	The French people are brave.
Le sénat l'a décidé.	The senate has (*or* have) decided it.
La plupart du monde le croit.	Most people believe it.

2. A collective subject singular + **de** + a plural takes a plural verb, unless the sense of the collective be dominant:

Une nuée de sauvages l'attaquèrent.	A cloud of savages attacked him.
Une nuée de traits l'obscurcit.	A cloud of arrows hid him.
Une partie des soldats restent.	A part of the soldiers remain.
Une partie des bourgeois protesta.	A part of the citizens protested.
Cette sorte de poires est chère.	This sort of pears is dear.

a. When so used, adverbs of quantity, *e.g.* **beaucoup, peu,** etc., the nouns **nombre, quantité,** without article, and **la plupart,** are regularly plural in sense; so also, **force**:

Beaucoup de gens pensent ainsi.	Many people think so.
Peu de gens le savent.	Few people know it.
Que d'ennemis m'attaquent !	How many enemies attack me !
Nombre d'Athéniens avaient fui.	A number of Athenians had fled.
La plupart des soldats périrent.	Most of the soldiers perished.
Force sots le tenteront.	Many a fool will try it.

b. **Beaucoup, peu, combien,** used absolutely, are singular or plural according to the sense of the **de** clause implied; **la plupart** when so used is always plural:

Beaucoup (*sc.* de gens) le croient.	Many (*sc.* people) believe it.
Peu (*sc.* de ceci) me suffira.	Little (*sc.* of this) will suffice me.
La plupart votèrent contre.	The majority voted nay.

c. **Plus d'un** is singular, unless reciprocal or repeated, and **moins de deux** is plural:

Plus d'un témoin a déposé.	More than one witness has sworn.
Moins de deux ne valent rien.	Less than two is no use.
Plus d'un fripon se dupent **l'un** l'autre.	More rogues than one cheat each other.
Plus d'un officier, plus d'un général furent tués.	More than one officer, more than one general was killed.

3. **Ce** requires a plural verb only when the predicate is a plural noun, a plural pronoun of the third person, or when **ce** refers to a preceding plural:

Sont-ce vos amis ?—Ce sont eux.	Is it your friends ? It is they.
Ce doivent être les siens.	Those must be his.
Ce sont nos semblables.	They are our fellow-creatures.
Ses désirs, ce sont sa loi.	His desires are his law.

But: C'est moi ; c'est toi ; c'est lui ; c'**est** nous ; c'**est** vous.

a. The third singular is often used for the third plural in this construction, more especially in familiar language or to avoid harsh locutions.

Est-ce les Anglais que je crains?	Is it the English that I fear?
C'est eux qui l'ont fait.	It is they who did it.
C'est des bêtises.	That is stupidity.
Ne fût-ce que quelques lignes.	If it were only a few lines.

b. The verb with **ce** is singular when the predicate is a numeral + a noun of collective force:

C'est dix heures qui sonnent.	It is ten o'clock that is striking.

c. **Si ce n'est** is always singular:

Qui, si ce n'est nos parents?	Who, if it is not our parents?

4. **Il** (impers.) always has a singular verb, whatever be the logical subject:

Il est arrivé bien des choses.	Many things have happened.
Il en reste trois livres.	Three pounds of it remain.

a. **Importer** is construed personally or impersonally:

Qu'importe (importent) les dépens?	What matters the cost?

233. Composite Subject. A verb common to two or more subjects is regularly plural; when the subjects differ in person, the verb agrees with the first person, if one subject is of the first person, otherwise with the second:

Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un.	You and I are but one.
Sa sœur et lui sont là.	His sister and he are there.

a. With subjects of different person, pleonastic **nous, vous,** is generally used:

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu.	You and he have seen it.

b. With **ou** = 'or,' **ni...ni** = 'neither...nor,' the verb is singular if the sense is clearly alternative, *i.e.*, the one subject excluding the other, otherwise generally plural; **l'un ou l'autre** is always singular:

Sa vie ou sa mort en dépend.	His life or death depends on it.
Ni lui ni votre frère n'aura ce poste.	Neither he nor your brother will have that post.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sont bons.	Neither is good.
L'une ou l'autre viendra.	The one or the other will come.
L'un ou l'autre jour me convient.	Either day suits me.

c. If the subjects (generally without **et**) are synonymous, or nearly so, or form a climax, the verb may be singular:

Sa dignité, sa noblesse frappa tout le monde. — His dignity, his nobility struck everybody.
L'heure, le lieu, le bras se choisit aujourd'hui. — The hour, the place, the arm are chosen to-day.
Une excuse, un mot le désarme. — An excuse, a word disarms him.

d. When the subjects are recapitulated by a word in the singular, *e.g.*, **tout, rien,** etc., the verb is singular agreeing with it :

Remords, crainte, périls, **rien** ne m'**a** retenue. — Remorse, fear, dangers, nothing deterred me.

e. With an intervening clause, *e.g.*, **ainsi que, plus que,** etc., the subject is usually only apparently composite :

La vertu, plus que le savoir, élève l'homme. — Virtue, more than knowledge, elevates man.

f. Even with **et** the sense is occasionally singular, or distributive, or alternative, and a singular verb is required :

Le bien et le mal est en ta main. — Good and ill are in thy hand.
L'un et l'autre peut se dire. — Both may be said.
L'été est revenu et le soleil. — Summer has returned and the sun.
Tombe Argos et ses murs. — Let Argos and its walls fall.

234. Relative Subject. The verb agrees with the relative pronoun subject, which is itself of the number and person of the antecedent (see also Relative Pronoun) :

C'est nous qui l'avons fait. — It is we who have done it.
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez ! — (Ye) Gods who hear me !

POSITION OF SUBJECT.

235. General Rule. The subject usually precedes the verb. Exceptions to this rule are noted in the following sections.

236. Interrogative Word Order. Direct interrogation is expressed as follows :—

1. A personal pronoun subject (also **ce** or **on**) follows the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen :

Parlez-**vous** français? — Do you speak French?
Est-ce lui? — Is it he?

a. The letter **-t-** is inserted after a third singular with final vowel before a pronoun with initial vowel:

Parla-**t**-elle? Parle-**t**-on?	Did she speak? Do they speak?

b. A final **e** of the first singular takes acute accent, but with the sound of [ɛ]:

Donn**é**-je? [dɔnɛːʒ].	Do I give?

2. A noun subject precedes the verb, and is repeated after it by a pleonastic pronoun; so also, possessive, demonstrative and indefinite pronouns:

Cet homme parle-t-**il** anglais?	Does that man speak English?
Cela est-**il** vrai?	Is that true?
Les miens ne sont-**ils** pas bons?	Are mine not good?

3. Questions are also asked by interrogative words (adjectives, pronouns, adverbs):

Quel poète a écrit cela?	What poet wrote that?
À quelle heure partira son ami?	At what o'clock will his friend go?
Qui est là? Qu'y a-t-il?	Who is there? What is the matter?
Lequel des deux est parti?	Which of the two has gone?
Combien coûte cela? }	How much does that cost?
Combien cela coûte-t-il? }	

a. The word order of either of the last two examples is commonly permissible for noun subject under this rule.

b. The word order of the last example is obligatory when the verb has a direct object (not reflexive), or a prepositional complement, or when ambiguity might arise; this arrangement is preferable with **pourquoi?**, or when a compound tense is used:

Où le roi tient-il sa cour?	Where does the king hold his court?
De quoi le roi parle-t-il?	Of what is the king speaking?
Quel prix le roi paya-t-il?	What price did the king pay?
Jean qui aime-t-il?	Whom does John love?
Pourquoi mon ami part-il?	Why does my friend go?
Quand ce roi a-t-il été décapité?	When was this king beheaded?

4. By prefixing **est-ce que?** a statement becomes a question without change in its word order:

Est-ce que vous partez?	Are you going away?
Quand est-ce que vous partez?	When are you going away?

a. The use of **est-ce que?** is permissible with all forms of the verb, but is obligatory with a monosyllabic first singular (except **ai-je ?**, **suis-je ?** **dis-je ?**, **dois-je ?**, **fais-je ?**, **puis-je ?**, **sais-je ?**, **vais-je ?**, **vois-je ?**), and is preferable to avoid forms like **donné-je ?** :

Est-ce que je sers, moi ?	Do I serve ?
Est-ce que je parle de lui ?	Do I speak of him ?

5. Interrogation is also expressed by mere inflection of the voice, without change in word order :

Vous partez déjà ?	You are going already ?

237. Rhetorical Inversions. Owing to rhetorical considerations the noun subject not uncommonly follows the verb, or the sentence assumes interrogative form, though not interrogative, as follows :—

1. In interjected remarks explanatory of direct quotation, as in English :

Fais comme tu voudras, dit-il.	Do as you please, said he.
Que veux-tu ? demanda la mère.	What do you wish ? asked the mother.

2. In optative clauses when **que** is omitted, and also after the rare omission of **si**, 'if' :

Vive le roi ! Périsse le tyran !	(Long) live the king ! Perish the tyrant !
Voulait-il de l'argent, son père lui en donnait toujours.	If he wished money, his father always gave him some.
Ne fût-ce que pour cela.	If it were only for that.

3. Very commonly after certain adverbs and adverbial locutions :

Du moins devrait-il attendre.	He should at least wait.
À peine le jour fut-il arrivé.	Hardly had the day arrived.

Such are :

à peine, *hardly.*	*peut-être, *perhaps.*	toutefois, *although.*
aussi, *hence.*	encore, *besides.*	en vain, *in vain.*
aussi bien, *moreover.*	toujours, *however.*	rarement, *rarely.*
au moins, *at least.*	tout au plus, *at most.*	probablement, *probably.*
du moins, *at least.*	d'autant plus, *the more.*	etc.

*Peut-être que does not cause inversion : 'Peut-être qu'il le fera,' 'Perhaps he will do so.'

4. Sometimes in exclamatory sentences:

Avons-nous crié!	Didn't we shout!

5. When a predicate adjective heads the phrase:

Telle fut la fin de Carthage.	Such was the end of Carthage.
Quelque riche que soit cet homme.	However rich that man is.

NOTE.—All the above inversions, except the last given, may take place whatever be the nature of the subject, but the following rules do not usually hold good for personal pronoun subject.

6. Very commonly in a relative clause, especially when a second relative clause qualifies its subject:

Il fera ce que peut faire un homme qui se respecte.	He will do what a man can who respects himself.
Dites-moi ce qu'a fait votre ami.	Tell me what your friend did.
Dis-moi où est ton ami.	Tell me where your friend is.

NOTE.—The relative is unstressed (proclitic), and naturally stands next the verb which governs it.

7. Commonly after **c'est que**, and in the second member of a comparative sentence:

C'est en vous qu'espèrent tous.	It is in you that all hope.
J'en ai plus que n'en a mon ami.	I have more of it than my friend has.

8. Commonly when an adverb, other than those mentioned in (3) above, *e.g.*, **ainsi, bientôt, ici, là**, etc., or an adverbial phrase heads the sentence:

Ainsi va le monde.	So goes the world.
Bientôt viendra le printemps.	Spring will soon come.
À la tête de l'armée fut porté l'étendard sacré.	At the head of the army was carried the sacred standard.

9. Quite exceptionally, when the verb comes first:

Viendra un autre.	(Along) will come another.

NOTE.—No inversion of noun subject usually occurs if the verb has a direct object or a prepositional complement.

238. Indirect Interrogation. It has no special rules of word order apart from those of the clause in which it occurs:

Dis-moi ce qu'il a dit.	Tell me what he said.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

239. Formation. The passive voice of a transitive verb is formed from the auxiliary **être** + the past participle, which agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number:

PRES. INFIN.	Être loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *to be praised.*
PERF. INFIN.	Avoir été loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *to have been praised.*
PRES. PART.	Étant loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *being praised.*
PERF. PART.	Ayant été loué(e) *or* loué(e)s, *having been praised.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE. *I am (I am being) praised, etc.*	PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE. *I have been (I was) praised etc.*
je suis / tu es / il (elle) est } loué(e).	j'ai été / tu as été / il (elle) a été } loué(e).
nous sommes / vous êtes. / ils (elles) sont. } loué(e)s.	nous avons été / vous avez été / ils (elles) ont été } loué(e)s.

etc., etc., throughout.

Obs.: 1. The past participle **été** is always invariable. 2. The past participle after **vous** agrees with the sense: 'Madame, vous serez méprisée de tous,' 'Madam, you will be despised by all.'

240. The Agent. The person by whom the action is done is usually denoted by **par,** when a specific intention or definite volition is implied, and by **de** when the action is habitual, usual, or indefinite:

Elle fut saisie **par** le voleur.	She was seized by the thief.
Le général fut suivi de près **par** l'ennemi.	The general was closely followed by the enemy.
La reine était suivie **de** ses dames.	The queen was followed by her ladies.
Ils sont aimés **de** tous.	They are loved by everybody.

241. Remarks. 1. Only transitive verbs regularly have the passive voice, but the intransitives **obéir, désobéir, pardonner,** may also be made passive:

Vous êtes pardonnés tous.	You are all pardoned.
Elle est toujours obéie.	She is always obeyed.

2. The passive is much less used than in English, especially if the agent be not specified, or if the corresponding French

verb is intransitive, or if an indirect object be present. Substitutes are:

a. A verb with the indefinite pronoun **on**:

On m'a trompé.	I have been deceived.
On me soupçonne.	I am suspected.
On a répondu à ma question.	My question has been answered.
On lui a rendu l'argent.	The money has been given back to him.

b. A reflexive construction:

Ce livre se publie à Paris.	This book is published in Paris.
La guerre se prolongea.	The war was prolonged.
Voilà ce qui se dit.	This is what is being said.

3. A transitive infinitive has passive force after verbs of perceiving (**voir**, etc.), after **faire, laisser,** and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectivally (cf. § 284):

Le ferez-vous vendre?	Will you have it sold?
Je la vis battre.	I saw her beaten.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

THE REFLEXIVE VERB.

242. Compound Tenses. The auxiliary **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs, as follows:—

Pres. Infin.	Se flatter, *to flatter one's self.*
Perf. Infin.	S'**être** flatté(e) *or* flatté(e)s, *to have flattered one's self.*
Pres. Part.	Se flattant, *flattering one's self.*
Perf. Part.	S'**étant** flatté(e) *or* flatté(e)s, *having flattered one's self.*

Indicative.

Present.	Past Indefinite.
I flatter myself, etc.	*I (have) flattered myself, etc.*
je **me** flatte.	je me **suis** flatté(e).
tu **te** flattes.	tu t'**es** flatté(e).
il (elle) **se** flatte.	il (elle) s'**est** flatté(e).
nous **nous** flattons.	nous nous **sommes** flatté(e)s.
vous **vous** flattez.	vous vous **êtes** flatté(e)s.
ils (elles) **se** flattent.	ils (elles) se **sont** flatté(e)s.

etc., etc.

Imperative.

Flatter thyself, etc.	*Do not flatter thyself, etc.*
flatte-toi.	ne te flatte pas.
(qu'il se flatte.)	(qu'il ne se flatte pas.)
flattons-nous.	ne nous flattons pas.
flattez-vous.	ne vous flattez pas.
(qu'ils se flattent.)	(qu'ils ne se flattent pas.)

NOTES.—1. **Se flatter, se flattant,** etc., are the infinitive and participial forms found in dictionaries, but **se** must be replaced by **me, te,** etc., according to the sense.

2. Except in the use of **être** as auxiliary, reflexive verbs have no peculiarities of conjugation on account of being reflexive.

243. Reflexive or Reciprocal. A reflexive verb often has reciprocal force, especially in the plural. Ambiguity is generally avoided by some modifying expression:

Elles **se** flattent.	They flatter themselves. / They flatter each other.
Elles **se** flattent **l'une l'autre.**	They flatter one another.
On **se** dupe **mutuellement.**	They cheat each other.

244. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In compound tenses, the past participle of a reflexive agrees in gender and number with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect:

Elle **s'**est écri**ée**.	She cried out.
Elle **s'**est **dit** à elle-même.	She said to herself.
Ils **se** sont **écrit**.	They wrote to each other.
Elles **se** sont **acheté** des robes.	They bought themselves dresses.

2. Besides the reflexive object, a direct object may precede the verb, and with this object the participle agrees:

Les plumes **qu'**ils se sont achet**ées**.	The pens they bought themselves.

NOTES.—1. The auxiliary **être** is considered as replacing **avoir**, and the above agreements are explained by the general principle (§ 291).

2. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense: 'Vous **vous** êtes trompée, madame,' 'You were mistaken, madam.'

245. Omission of Reflexive Object. 1. It is always omitted with the past participle used as attributive adjective:

Le temps écoulé.	The time past.

2. The infinitives of certain verbs, such as **s'asseoir, se souvenir, se taire,** regularly omit **se** when preceded by **faire :**

Faites asseoir vos amis.	Make your friends sit down.
Je vous en ferai souvenir.	I shall remind you of it.

a. A similar omission of **se** sometimes occurs after **laisser, entendre, voir,** etc.

246. Remarks. The reflexive construction is much commoner in French than in English :—

1. It often translates the English passive, especially when the agent is not specified :

La bourse s'est trouvée.	The purse has been found.
Cela se raconte partout.	That is being told everywhere.

2. Or it is expressed by an English non-reflexive verb, generally intransitive :

S'arrêter ; s'écrier ; se porter.	Stop ; exclaim ; be (of health).
S'asseoir ; se hâter ; se tromper.	Sit down ; hasten ; be mistaken.

3. Or the French reflexive + a preposition has the value of an English transitive :

S'approcher de ; se douter de.	Approach ; suspect.
S'attendre à ; se fier à.	Expect ; trust.
Se passer de ; se souvenir de.	Do without ; recollect.

247. S'en Aller. The conjugation of **s'en aller,** 'to go away,' presents special difficulty :

Present Indicative.	Past Indefinite Indicative.
I go away, etc.	*I have gone (I went) away, etc.*
je m'en vais.	je m'en suis } allé(e).
tu t'en vas.	tu t'en es } allé(e).
il s'en va.	il (elle) s'en est } allé(e).
nous nous en allons.	nous nous en sommes } allé(e)s.
vous vous en allez.	vous vous en êtes } allé(e)s.
ils s'en vont.	ils (elles) s'en sont } allé(e)s.

Imperative.	Imperative Negative.
Go away, etc.	*Do not go away, etc.*
va-t'en.	ne t'en va pas.
(qu'il s'en aille.)	(qu'il ne s'en aille pas.)
allons-nous-en.	ne nous en allons pas.
allez-vous-en.	ne vous en allez pas.
(qu'ils s'en aillent.)	(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas.)

Further examples:

Est-ce que je m'en vais?
Vous en allez-vous?
S'en sont-elles allées?

Ils ne s'en sont pas allés.
Ne nous en sommes-nous pas allé(e)s?

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

248. Conjugation. An impersonal verb, or a verb used as such, is one conjugated, in the third singular only, with the subject **il** = 'it,' 'there,' used indefinitely and absolutely, *e.g.*, **tonner,** 'to thunder':

Indicative.

Pres. Il tonne, *it thunders.*	Past Indf. Il a tonné, *it has thundered.*
Impf. Il tonnait, *it thundered.*	Plupf. Il avait tonné, *it had thundered.*
Past Def. Il tonna, *it thundered.*	Past Ant. Il eut tonné, *it had thundered.*

etc., etc., like the third singular of **donner.**

Note.—Apart from being limited to the third singular, their conjugation does not differ from that of ordinary verbs. Some are regular, others irregular.

249. Use of Impersonals. 1. Verbs denoting natural phenomena and time are impersonal, as in English:

Il tonne; il a plu; il pleuvra.	It thunders; it rained; it will rain.
Il a gelé hier; il dégèle.	It froze yesterday; it is thawing.
Il est une heure; il est tard.	It is one o'clock; it is late.

Such verbs are:

pleuvoir, *rain.*	grêler, *hail.*	geler, *freeze.*
neiger, *snow.*	éclairer, *lighten.*	dégeler, *thaw.*

2. **Faire** = 'make,' is also much used impersonally to describe weather, temperature, etc.:

Quel temps fait-il ?	What kind of weather is it ?
Il fait beau (temps) ce matin.	It is fine (weather) this morning.
Il a fait bien froid hier.	It was very cold yesterday.
Il faisait du vent aussi.	It was windy too.
Est-ce qu'il fera obscur ce soir ?	Will it be dark this evening ?

Obs. : Distinguish these from constructions with a personal subject : 'Le temps **est** beau,' 'The weather is fine' ; 'L'eau **est** froide,' 'The water is cold.'

250. Impersonal *avoir* and *être*. 1. The verb **avoir,** preceded by **y,** used impersonally = 'there is,' 'there are,' 'there was,' 'there were,' etc. :

Il y a. Il y a eu. Y a-t-il ?	There is. There has been. Is there?
Il n'y a pas. Il n'y a pas eu.	There is not. There has not been.
Y a-t-il eu ? N'y a-t-il pas eu ?	Has there been ? Has there not been ?
Y aura-t-il ? Il peut y avoir.	Will there be ? There may be.

2. **Il est** (était, etc.) is sometimes used for **il y a** in this sense :

Il **est** des hommes qui le croient.	There are men who think so.

3. **Il y a** = 'there is,' 'there are,' is distinguished from **voilà** = 'there is,' 'there are.' **Voilà** answers the question 'where is?,' 'where are?,' and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?,' 'where are?,' and makes a general statement.

Il y a des plumes sur la table.	There are pens on the table.
Voilà les plumes sur la table.	There are the pens on the table.

4. **Y avoir** also forms idiomatic expressions of time, reckoned backwards, and of distance :

Ils sont arrivés il y a trois jours.	They came three days ago.
Il y avait trois jours que j'étais là.	I had been there three days.
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à la ville ?	How far is it to the city ?
Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville.	It is ten miles from here to the city.

251. Falloir = 'be necessary,' expresses the various meanings of 'must,' 'be obliged to,' 'have to,' 'need,' as follows :

1. 'Must' + infinitive = **falloir** + **que** and subjunctive :

Il faut que je parte.	I must go.
Il faudra que vous restiez.	You will have to (be obliged to) stay.

2. Or the subject of 'must,' etc., if a personal pronoun, may become indirect object of **falloir** + an infinitive :

Il me faudrait rester.	I should be obliged to remain.
Il leur faut faire cela.	They must do that.
Il lui a fallu parler.	He was forced (obliged) to speak.

3. The infinitive construction without indirect object is used in general or indefinite statement :

Il faut faire son devoir.	One must do one's duty.
Il ne faut pas voler.	We must not steal.

4. **Falloir** + an indirect object and a substantive signifies 'lack,' 'need' :

Il faut une ardoise à Jean.	John needs a slate.
Il leur faudra cent francs.	They will need a hundred francs.

5. **S'en falloir** = 'lack' :

Il s'en faut de beaucoup que l'un vaille l'autre.	The one is not nearly so good as the other.

252. Other Impersonals. 1. Besides **faire** and **avoir**, already noted, many other verbs take a special meaning as impersonals :

De quoi s'agit-il ?	What is the matter ?
Il est souvent arrivé que, etc.	It has often happened that, etc.
Il vaudra mieux ne rien dire.	It will be better to say nothing.
Il y va de ses jours.	His life is at stake.
Il se peut que je me trompe.	It may be that I am mistaken.

Obs. : Compare the literal meanings : **Agir**, *act*, **arriver**, *arrive*, **valoir**, *be worth*, **aller**, *go*, **pouvoir**, *be able*.

2. Many verbs may stand in the third singular with impersonal **il** representing a logical subject, singular or plural, following the verb :

Il viendra un meilleur temps.	There will come a happier time.
Il en reste trois livres.	There remain three pounds of it.
Il est arrivé des messagers.	Messengers have arrived.

253. Omission of *il*. Il is understood in certain phrases, such as:

Reste à savoir.	It remains to be seen.
N'importe.	No matter (it matters not).
Mieux vaut tard que jamais.	Better late than never.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

254. Use of Indicative. The indicative is the mood of direct or indirect assertion, and of direct or indirect interrogation. It stands both in principal and in subordinate clauses, both affirmative and negative:

Dieu créa le monde.	God created the world.
Moïse dit que Dieu créa le monde.	Moses says that God created the world.
Où allez-vous?	Where are you going?
Dites-moi où vous allez.	Tell me where you are going.
Je le ferais, si je pouvais.	I should do so, if I could.

NOTES.—1. It should be noted especially that the indicative is regularly the mood of indirect discourse and of 'if' clauses.

2. When the verb of a subordinate clause is subjunctive, the mood is determined by the context, and not simply by the fact that the clause is subordinate.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

255. Periphrastic Forms. Such forms, so common in English, are not used in French:

Je parle.	I speak (am speaking, do speak).
Il a écrit.	He has written (has been writing).
Il disait.	He was saying (used to say, etc.).

256. Elliptical Forms. Ellipsis of part of a verb form is common in English; in French the form is either fully given or entirely avoided:

J'irai.—Moi, je n'irai pas.	I shall go.—I shall not (go).
Il a promis de venir, mais il n'est pas venu.	He promised to come, but he did not (come).

Il est venu.—Vraiment !	He has come.—Has he ! (Indeed !)
Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas ?	You will come, will you not ?
Il était sorti, n'est-ce pas ?	He had gone out, had he not ?

257. Present Indicative. The present tense is used :—

1. To denote what is happening, including the habitual and the universally true :

Je crois qu'il pleut.	I think it is raining.
Il se lève toujours de bon matin.	He always rises early.
L'homme propose et Dieu dispose.	Man proposes and God disposes.

2. To denote what has happened and still continues, after **il y a ... que, voici (voilà) ... que, depuis, depuis quand ?, depuis ... que :**

Depuis quand **attendez**-vous ?	How long have you been waiting ?
Il y a (*or* voici, voilà) trois jours que j'**attends**, or j'**attends** depuis trois jours.	I have waited (I have been waiting) for three days.

3. Instead of a past tense in animated narrative :

La nuit approche, l'instant arrive, César se présente, etc.	Night draws on, the moment comes, Cæsar appears, etc.

a. This use is much commoner than in English, especially side by side with past tenses.

b. C'**est** ... **que** + a past tense = 'was ... that' :

C'**est** là que je l'ai vu.	It was there that I saw him.

4. Instead of a future in familiar style :

Nous partons demain matin.	We go to-morrow morning.

5. As a virtual future after **si** = 'if' :

Je serai content, si vous venez.	I shall be glad, if you (will) come.

258. Imperfect Indicative. The action or state denoted by the imperfect is in general viewed as being in progress, *i.e.*, as contemporaneous, customary, continued, etc., and it is employed as follows :—

1. To denote what was happening, when something else happened or was happening :

Il était nuit, quand je sortis.	It was night, when I went out.
Il parlait, pendant que je chantais.	He was talking, while I sang.

2. To denote what used to happen:

Il se levait de bon matin.	He used to rise early.
Je parlais souvent de cela.	I often spoke (used to speak, would speak) of that.
Les Romains brûlaient leurs morts.	The Romans were accustomed to burn their dead.

3. To denote what continued to happen:

Son père était négociant et demeurait dans cette rue.	His father was a merchant and lived in this street.

4. To denote what had happened and still continued, after **il y a ... que, voici (voilà) ... que, depuis, depuis quand ?, depuis ... que** (cf. § 257, 2):

Je le disais depuis longtemps.	I had long been saying so.
Voilà un an que je le disais.	I had been saying so for a year.

5. In indirect discourse, after a past tense, instead of the present:

Je croyais qu'il revenait.	I thought he was coming back.
Je demandai où il était.	I asked where he was.
But: 'Où **est**-il ?', demandai-je.	'Where is he ?', I asked.

6. Regularly in an 'if' clause when the 'result' clause is conditional:

S'il **venait,** je serais content.	If he came, I should be glad.

7. Occasionally, instead of the conditional anterior in conditional sentences:

Si je ne l'avais pas arrêté, il **tombait** (=serait tombé) du train.	Had I not stopped him he would have fallen from the train.

8. Sometimes instead of the past definite (§ 260):

Un moment après, le père Alphée se dressait, marchait à grands pas, voilà s'écriait-il, etc.	A moment afterwards, Father Alpheus rose, walked about with great strides, there cried he, etc.

259. Past Indefinite. The past indefinite is used:—

1. To denote what has happened or has been happening, equivalent to an English tense with 'have,' reference to the present being implied:

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.	I have finished my work.
L'avez-vous vu dernièrement ?	Have you seen him lately ?
Je l'ai souvent rencontré.	I have often met him.
J'ai chanté toute la matinée.	I have been singing all morning.

2. In familiar style, spoken or written, to denote a past event, without implied reference to the present, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of a narrative, answering the question 'what happened?' or 'what happened next?' For narrative in the literary style, see §260:

Ils sont arrivés ce soir.	They arrived this evening.
Je l'ai vu il y a dix ans.	I saw him ten years ago.
De quoi est-il mort ?	What did he die of ?
J'ai quitté Rome le dix. Puis je suis allé voir des amis à Lyon, j'ai passé quelques jours à Paris, et je suis revenu à Londres hier.	I left Rome on the tenth. Then I visited some friends at Lyons, I spent some days in Paris, and I came back to London yesterday.

3. Occasionally instead of a future anterior:

Attendez, j'ai bientôt fini.	Wait, I shall have finished soon.

260. Past Definite. The past definite denotes a past event, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of the narrative, answering the question 'what happened?', or 'what happened next?' Its use is confined to literary or "book" French, and formal public address. It is hardly ever used in conversation or in easy correspondence:

Dieu **créa** le monde.	God created the world.
La guerre **dura** sept ans.	The war lasted seven years.
On **força** le palais, les scélérats n'**osèrent** pas résister longtemps et ne **songèrent** qu'à fuir. Astarbé **voulut** se sauver dans la foule, mais un soldat la **reconnut** ; elle **fut** prise.	They broke into the palace, the villains did not dare to resist long, and only thought of fleeing. Astarbé tried to escape in the crowd, but a soldier recognized her ; she was captured.

a. Some verbs have a special force in the past definite:

Avoir; j'**eus**.	To have; I received.
Savoir; je **sus**.	To know; I found out (learned).
Connaître; je **connus**.	To know; I realized.

261. Examples of Narrative. 1. The following examples illustrate the principal uses of the past definite, imperfect, past indefinite, and historical present, in the literary narrative style:

Les Turcs, qui cependant **entouraient** cette maison tout embrasée, **voyaient** avec une admiration mêlée d'épouvante que les Suédois n'en **sortaient** point; mais leur étonnement **fut** encore plus grand lorsqu'ils **virent** ouvrir les portes, et le roi et les siens fondre sur eux en désespérés. Charles et ses principaux officiers **étaient** armés d'épées et de pistolets: chacun **tira** deux coups à la fois à l'instant que la porte s'**ouvrit**; et dans le même clin d'œil, jetant leurs pistolets et s'armant de leurs épées, ils **firent** reculer les Turcs plus de cinquante pas; mais le moment d'après cette petite troupe **fut** entourée: le roi, qui **était** en bottes selon sa coutume, s'**embarrassa** dans ses éperons, et **tomba**; vingt et un janissaires se **jettent** aussitôt sur lui: il **jette** en l'air son épée pour s'épargner la douleur de la rendre; les Turcs l'**emmènent** au quartier du bacha.—*Voltaire.*

Stanislas se **déroba** un jour à dix heures du soir de l'armée suédoise qu'il **commandait** en Poméranie, et **partit** avec le baron Sparre, qui **a été** depuis ambassadeur en Angleterre et en France, et avec un autre colonel: il **prend** le nom d'un Français, nommé Haran, alors major au service de Suède, et qui **est mort** depuis commandant de Dantzick.—*Voltaire.*

2. So nearly identical is the force of the past definite and the past indefinite, as narrative tenses, that they are often used interchangeably, as in the following extract, taken from a newspaper:

Londres, 5 août.—Hier soir, à onze heures et demie, un incendie **a éclaté** dans l'atelier de composition de la *National Press Agency.*

Plusieurs pompes à vapeur **arrivèrent** immédiatement sur le lieu du sinistre, et l'incendie s'**étendit** avec une telle rapidité, que toute la maison **a été** complètement détruite.—*Le Matin.*

262. Pluperfect and Past Anterior. 1. Both denote what had happened, like the English pluperfect:

Lorsque je l'avais (eus) fini.	When I had finished it.

2. The pluperfect is of much commoner occurrence than the past anterior, and can alone be used after **si** = 'if,' or when custom, continuance, etc., is implied (cf. 258):

Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit.	Had I seen it, I should have said so.
J'avais toujours fini avant midi.	I always had finished before noon.

3. The past anterior denotes what had happened immediately before another event. It is rarely used except after conjunctions of time, such as **lorsque, quand, après que, aussitôt que, ne . . . pas plus tôt . . . que,** etc.:

Après qu'il eut dîné, il partit.	After he had dined, he set out.

263. Future. The future is used :—

1. To denote what will happen :

Ils viendront demain.	They will come to-morrow.
Je les verrai bientôt.	I shall see them soon.
Je ne sais pas s'il viendra.	I know not whether he will come.

a. Distinguish English 'will' of futurity from 'will' of volition, and from 'will' of habitual action :

Il ne **restera** pas.	He will not stay.
Il ne **veut** pas **rester.**	He will not stay.
Ce chasseur **reste** souvent dans les bois pendant des mois entiers.	That hunter will often remain whole months in the woods.

b. Observe the following commonly occurring forms :

Ne voulez-vous pas rester ?	Will you not stay ?
Voulez-vous que je reste ?	Shall I stay ?
Je ne resterai pas.	I shall not stay.

2. Regularly in a subordinate clause of implied futurity :

Payez-le quand il viendra.	Pay him when he comes.
Faites comme vous voudrez.	Do as you please.
Tant que je vivrai.	As long as I live.

3. To denote probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. :

La nef appartient au XIIe siècle, mais le chœur sera du XVe.	The nave belongs to the 12th century, but the choir is probably of the 15th.

4. Sometimes with imperative force:

Tu ne tueras point.	Thou shalt not kill.
Vous voudrez bien m'écouter.	Be good enough to hear me.

a. This use is common in official style (edicts, etc.).

264. Future Anterior. The future anterior is used:—

1. To denote what will have happened:

Il aura bientôt fini.	He will soon have donc.

2. To denote implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2), probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. (cf. § 263, 3):

Quand vous serez rentré je sortirai.	When you have come home, I shall go out.
Je me serai trompé.	I must have made a mistake.

265. Conditional. 1. The main use of the conditional is to denote result dependent on condition, *i.e.*, what would happen in case something else were to happen:

Je serais content, s'il venait.	I should be glad, if he came.

a. The condition on which the result would depend is often merely implied, but not formally stated:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse.	To hesitate would be weakness.

b. Distinguish English 'should' of duty, etc., 'would' of volition, and 'would' of past habit, from conditional 'should' and 'would':

Je devrais partir.	I should (ought to) set out.
Il ne voulait pas écouter.	He would not listen.
J'allais souvent le voir.	I would often go to see him.

2. It corresponds to an English past in a subordinate clause of implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2):

Je prendrais ce qui resterait.	I should take what remained.

3. In indirect discourse, it denotes what was once future and is now regarded as past, *i.e.*, the original future of the

assertion or question becomes a conditional when in a clause subordinate to a verb in a past tense:

Je croyais qu'il pleuvrait.	I thought it would rain.
A-t-il dit s'il le ferait?	Did he say whether he would do so?
But: 'Je le ferai,' dit-il.	'I shall do so,' said he.

4. It is used in statement or request expressed with deference or reserve:

Je le croirais au moins.	I should think so at least.
Auriez-vous la bonté d'y aller?	Would you have the kindness to go?
Cela ne serait jamais vrai.	That never could (can) be true.
Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.

5. It sometimes denotes probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc., in exclamations and questions (cf. § 263, 3):

Serait-il vrai qu'il l'a dit?	Can it be true that he said so?
Serait-il possible?	Can (could) it be possible?

6. It sometimes denotes concession after **quand, quand même,** or with **que:**

Quand (même) il me tuerait, etc.	Even if he should kill me, etc.
Vous me le jureriez que je ne vous croirais pas.	Even if you swore it to me, I should not believe you.

7. It is used to give the substance of hearsay information:

À ce qu'on dit, le roi serait malade.	By what they say, the king is ill.

266. Conditional Anterior. Its uses are precisely parallel with those of the conditional (§ 265); it denotes what would have happened, etc., etc.:

Je serais parti, s'il était venu.	I should have gone, had he come.
Je partirais dès que je l'aurais vu.	I should go when I had seen him.
Selon les journaux, la guerre se serait déclarée hier soir.	According to the newspapers, war was declared last evening.

267. Imperative Mood. It is used in general as in English:

Lisez-le. Ne le lisez pas.	Read it. Do not read it.
Allons-nous-en à présent.	Let us go away now.
Veuillez m'écouter.	Be good enough to hear me.

a. The first plural sometimes serves instead of the lacking first singular:

Soyons digne de ma naissance.	Let me be worthy of my birth.
Pensons un moment.	Let me think a moment.

b. The imperatives **va, allons, allez, voyons,** often have special idiomatic force:

Allons donc! Allons, du courage!	Nonsense! Come, courage!
J'en suis content, **allez!**	I am glad of it, I can assure you!
Voyons, que pensez-vous?	Come now, what do you think?

c. An imperative perfect is rare:

Ayez fini votre tâche ce soir.	Have your task done to-night.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

268. General Function. The subjunctive denotes, in general, what is viewed as being desirable or undesirable, uncertain, contingent, or the like, and usually stands in a subordinate clause.

269. Subjunctive in Noun Clause. The subjunctive is used in a clause introduced by **que** and serving as logical subject or as object of a verb:—

1. After expressions of desiring (including willing, wishing, preferring) and avoiding:

Je désire (veux) qu'il parte.	I desire (wish) him to go.
Voulez-vous que je reste?	Do you wish me to (shall I) stay?
Je souhaite qu'il ait du succès.	I wish that he may have success.
Il préfère que vous restiez.	He prefers that you should stay.
Évitez qu'il ne vous voie.	Avoid his seeing you.

Such are:

aimer, *like.*	éviter, *avoid.*	souhaiter, *wish.*
aimer mieux, *prefer.*	préférer, *prefer.*	il me tarde, *I long.*
avoir envie, *be desirous.*	prendre garde, *take care* (lest).	vouloir, *will, wish.*
désirer, *desire.*		etc.

a. **Prendre garde** requires **ne** in the subjunctive clause; so also, **éviter** generally.

Prends garde que cela **ne** se fasse.	Take care lest that happen.

2. After expressions of commanding (including requesting, exhorting), forbidding, consenting :

Vous ordonnez que je m'en aille.	You order me to go.
Je demande que vous me payiez.	I ask that you should pay me.
Dis-leur qu'ils soient prêts.	Tell them to be ready.
Le médecin défend que je sorte.	The doctor forbids me to go out.
Je consens que cela se fasse.	I consent that that be done.

Such are :

admettre, *admit.*	demander, *ask.*	permettre, *permit.*
agréer, *permit.*	empêcher, *hinder.*	prier, *beg, ask.*
avoir soin, *take care.*	exhorter, *exhort.*	souffrir, *suffer.*
conjurer, *implore.*	exiger, *exact.*	supplier, *beg, pray.*
consentir, *consent.*	laisser, *allow.*	trouver naturel, *find natural.*
convenir, *agree.*	s'opposer, *oppose.*	veiller, *take care.*
défendre, *forbid.*	ordonner, *order.*	etc.

So also, **dire**, *tell*, **écrire**, *write*, **entendre**, *mean*, **prétendre**, *intend*, when denoting command.

a. The future or conditional often stands after **arrêter, commander, décider, décréter,** etc., especially when the subject is a word denoting final authority, such as **cour, roi,** etc. :

Le roi décrète qu'il sera pendu.	The king decrees that he shall be hanged.

b. The subjunctive after **empêcher** usually has **ne** :

Empêchez qu'il **ne** sorte.	Prevent his going out.

3. After expressions of judgment or opinion involving approval or disapproval :

J'approuve qu'il revienne.	I approve of his coming back.
Il mérite qu'on le craigne.	He deserves to be feared.
Il vaut mieux que vous restiez.	It is better for you to stay
Il faudra qu'il parte demain.	He will have to go to-morrow.

Such are :

approuver, *approve.*	être indigne, *be unworthy.*	trouver mauvais, *disapprove.*
avoir intérêt, *be interested.*	juger à propos, *think fit.*	trouver juste, *think just.*
blâmer, *blame.*	louer, *praise.*	trouver injuste, *think unjust.*
désapprouver, *disapprove*	mériter, *deserve.*	valoir, *be worthy.*
être d'avis, *be of opinion.*	tenir (à ce que), *insist.*	etc.
être digne, *be worthy.*	trouver bon, *approve.*	

So also, a large number of impersonals of like force :

fitting.
is enough.

il est, ...
+à propos, *proper.*
+bien, *well.*
+bon, *good.*
+convenable, *fitting.*
+essentiel, *essential.*
+à désirer, *to be desired.*
+facile, *easy.*
+important, *important.*
+indispensable, *indispensable.*
+juste, *just.*
+naturel, *natural.*
+nécessaire, *necessary.*
+à souhaiter, *to be wished.*
+(tout) simple, *(quite) simple.*
+temps, *time.*
il faut, *it is necessary, must.*
il importe, *it is important.*
il peut se faire, *it may be.*
il suffit, *it suffices.*
il vaut mieux, *it is better.*
etc., and their opposites.

4. After expressions of emotion or sentiment, such as joy, sorrow, anger, shame, wonder, fear:

Êtes-vous content qu'il soit ici?	Are you glad he is here?
Je regrette qu'il soit parti.	I regret that he has gone.
Il est fâché que vous le blâmiez.	He is angry at your blaming him.
Il a honte que vous le sachiez.	He is ashamed that you know it.
Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas honte.	I wonder he is not ashamed.
J'ai peur qu'il n'ait trop dit.	I fear he has said too much.

Such are:

admirer, *be astonished.*
s'affliger, *grieve.*
avoir honte, *be ashamed.*
avoir crainte, *fear.*
avoir peur, *fear.*
craindre, *fear.*
déplorer, *deplore.*
c'est, *it is* . . . .
+un bonheur, *fortunate.*
+dommage, *a pity.*
+une honte, *a shame.*
+honteux, *a shame.*
+pitié, *a pity.*
il est, *it is* . . . .
+curieux, *strange.*
+étonnant, *astonishing.*
+fâcheux, *annoying.*
+heureux, *fortunate.*
enrager, *be enraged.*
s'étonner, *be astonished.*
être, *be* . . . .
+affligé, *grieved.*
+bien aise, *very glad.*
+charmé, *delighted.*
+content, *glad.*
+désolé, *very sorry.*
+étonné, *astonished.*
+fâché, *sorry, angry.*
+heureux, *happy.*
+indigné, *indignant.*
+joyeux, *glad.*
+mécontent, *displeased.*
+satisfait, *satisfied.*
+surpris, *surprised.*
+triste, *sad.*
se fâcher, *be sorry, angry.*
se plaindre, *complain.*
redouter, *fear.*
regretter, *regret.*
se réjouir, *rejoice.*
se repentir, *repent.*
rougir, *blush.*
soupirer, *sigh.*
trembler, *tremble.*
etc.

a. When it is feared something will happen the subjunctive has **ne**; when it is feared something will not happen the subjunctive has **ne . . . pas**; when the expression of fearing is negative, *or* interrogative, *or* conditional, **ne** is usually omitted; with double negation **ne . . . pas** stands in both:

Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne.	I fear he will come.
Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne pas.	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	I do not fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?	Do you fear he will come?

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne? Do you not fear he wi...
Si je craignais qu'il vînt. If I feared he would come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il ne vienne **pas**. I do not fear he will not come.

b. After expressions of emotion or sentiment (except fear), which admit **de** after them, **de ce que** + indicative may be used:

J'ai honte **de ce qu'il a** échoué. I am ashamed that he failed.

5. After expressions of doubt, denial, despair, ignorance or very slight probability:

Il doute que je sois loyal. He doubts that (whether) I am honest.
Je nie que cela soit vrai. I deny that that is true.
Il est rare que vous ayez tort. You are rarely in the wrong.

Such are:

contester, *dispute.*	+faux, *false.*	de (à) quoi sert-il?, *of what use is it?*
désespérer, *despair.*	+impossible, *impossible.*	il ne sert de (à) rien, *it is of no use.*
disconvenir, *deny.*	+possible, *possible.*	il se peut, *it may be.*
dissimuler, *not confess.*	+rare, *rare.*	il ne se peut pas, *it cannot be.*
se dissimuler, *be hidden.*	il s'en faut, *there is wanting.*	il semble, *it seems.*
douter, *doubt.*	ignorer, *not know.*	etc.
il est, *it is...*	nier, *deny.*	
+douteux, *doubtful.*		

a. **Douter si** (= 'if,' 'whether') requires the indicative:

Il doute si je suis loyal. He doubts if (whether) I am honest.

b. **Il semble** regularly has the subjunctive, since it indicates slight probability as distinguished from **il paraît** = 'it appears,' 'is evident,' and **il me semble** = 'it appears to me' (personal conviction):

Il semble que vous me **craigniez**. It seems that you fear me.
Il me semble (il paraît) que vous me **craignez**. It seems to me (it appears) that you fear me.

c. Verbs of doubt and denial used negatively or interrogatively regularly require **ne** in the subjunctive clause:

Je ne nie pas que je **ne** le sois. I do not deny that I am such.

d. **Ignorer** + negative = 'know well,' and hence takes indicative:

Je n'ignore pas qu'il **a** menti. I know well he has lied.

Note.—**Peut-être que**, *perhaps*, and **sans doute que**, *doubtless*, require the indicative.

6. After expressions of perceiving, thinking, knowing, declaring, resulting, but only when uncertainty or doubt is

implied by negation, interrogation, or condi
the indicative:

Verra-t-on que j'aie pleuré? — Will they see that I have wep
Je ne crois pas que ce soit lui. — I do not think that that is he.
Espérez-vous qu'il réussisse? — Do you hope he will succeed?
Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il vienne. — I am not sure he will come.
Si je prétendais qu'il eût tort. — If I claimed that he was wrong.
But: Je crois que c'**est** lui. — I think it is he.
J'espère qu'il **réussira**. — I hope he will succeed.

Such are:

affirmer, *affirm*.
s'apercevoir, *perceive*.
apprendre, *learn*, *hear*.
assurer, *assure*.
s'attendre, *expect*.
avertir, *warn*.
avouer, *declare*.
conclure, *conclude*.
connaître, *recognize*.
croire, *believe*, *think*.
déclarer, *declare*
deviner, *guess*.
dire, *say*, *tell*.
se douter, *suspect*.
écrire, *write*.
entendre dire, *hear said*.
espérer, *hope*.
être certain, *be certain*.
être persuadé, *be persuaded*.
être sûr, *be sure*.
se figurer, *imagine*.
se flatter, *flatter one's self*.
imaginer, *imagine*.
s'imaginer, *imagine*.
juger, *judge*, *think*.
jurer, *declare*.
oublier, *forget*.
penser, *think*.
persuader, *persuade*.
pressentir, *forebode*.
prétendre, *assert*, *claim*.
prévenir, *forewarn*.
prévoir, *foresee*.
promettre, *promise*.
se rappeler, *recollect*.
reconnaître, *acknowledge*.
remarquer, *remark*.
répéter, *repeat*.
répondre, *answer*.
savoir, *know*.
sentir, *feel*, *notice*.
soutenir, *maintain*.
se souvenir, *recollect*.
supposer, *suppose*.
trouver, *find*, *think*.
voir, *see*.
etc.

So also, a number of impersonals of like force:

il s'ensuit, *it follows*.
il est avéré, *it is stated*.
il est, *it is*...
+certain, *certain*.
+clair, *clear*.
+évident, *evident*.
+démontré, *demonstrated*.
+incontestable, *indisputable*.
+probable, *probable*.
+sûr, *sure*.
+vraisemblable, *probable*.
il résulte, *it follows*.
il me semble, *it seems to me*.

a. Negative question usually implies affirmation; hence the indicative:

Ne trouves-tu pas qu'il est beau? — Don't you think he is handsome?

b. When what the speaker regards as fact follows the negative or conditional clause, or when a person is questioned as to his knowledge of what is regarded as fact, the indicative stands:

Il ne croit pas que je suis ici. — He does not believe I am here.
savait que tu es ici. — If he knew you were here.
ez-vous qu'il est arrivé? — Do you know that he has come?

-+negation has subjunctive; with interrogation + ..dicative:

.emble pas qu'il soit fou.	It does not seem to me he is mad.
..s semble-t-il pas qu'il est fou?	Does it not seem to you he is mad?

d. A preceding dependent clause with this class of verbs always has the subjunctive:

Qu'il **ait** échoué, je le sais.	That he has failed, I know.

NOTE.—For the choice between **que** clause and infinitive see § 283.

270. Subjunctive in Adjectival Clause. The subjunctive is used as follows in clauses introduced by a relative pronoun:—

1. When purpose regarding the antecedent, or unattained result is implied:

Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise à la science.	Show me a way which leads to knowledge.
Je cherche un endroit où je sois en paix.	I seek a place where I may be in peace.

a. The indicative, however, is used to express what is regarded as fact or certain result:

Montrez-moi le chemin qui conduit à la ville.	Show me the road which leads to the town.
J'irai où je serai libre.	I shall go where I shall be free.

2. When the principal clause contains general negation, interrogation implying negative answer, or condition (all of which imply non-existence of the antecedent):

Il n'a pas de raison qui vaille.	He has no reason worth anything.
As-tu un seul ami qui soit fidèle?	Have you one friend who is true?
Si j'ai un ami qui soit fidèle c'est lui.	If I have one friend who is true, it is he.

a. General negation is sometimes merely implied:

Il y a peu de gens qui le sachent.	There are few people who know it.

b. When the negation is not general, or when the interrogation does not imply negative answer, the indicative stands:

Ce n'est pas vous que je crains.	It is not you that I fear.
N'est-ce point un songe que je vois!	Is it not a dream that I see!

c. In a negative relative clause **ne**, not 'ne . . . pas,' is used when the principal clause is negative or implies negation:

En est-il un seul **qui ne tremble?** Is there one who does not tremble?

3. When the antecedent is qualified by a superlative, or by **seul, unique, premier, dernier** (all with superlative force):

C'est le meilleur ami que j'aie. He is the best friend that I have.
C'est le seul ami que j'aie. He is the only friend I have.

a. What is stated unreservedly as fact requires the indicative:

C'est la seule chose qu'il a dite. It is the only thing he said.

4. With concessive force in compound relative and indefinite clauses (= 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc.):

Quoi que vous fassiez. Whatever you do.
Qui qu'on y puisse élire. Whosoever may be elected to it.
Qui que tu sois, parle. Whoever you are, speak!
Quelles que soient vos raisons. Whatever be your reasons.

271. Subjunctive in Adverbial Clause. The subjunctive is used in clauses of adverbial force, as follows:—

1. After conjunctions of time before which or up to which (**avant que, en attendant que, jusqu'à ce que**):

Dis-le-lui, avant qu'il parte. Tell it to him, before he goes.
Asseyez-vous, en attendant qu'il revienne. Sit down until he comes back.
Persévérez jusqu'à ce que vous ayez réussi. Persevere till you have succeeded.

a. **Jusqu'à ce que** may have the indicative, when referring to completed past event:

Il y resta **jusqu'à** ce que je revins. He remained till I came back.

2. After conjunctions of purpose or result (**afin que, pour que, de crainte que, de peur que**):

J'écris ceci afin que (pour que) vous sachiez la vérité. I write this in order that you may know the truth.
Je le tins de crainte qu'il ne tombât. I held him for fear he should fall.

a. So also, **de sorte que, en sorte que, de telle sorte que, de façon que, de manière que, tel ..que, tellement...que,** when denoting purpose, but not result :

Agis de sorte que tu réussisses.	Act in such a way as to succeed.
But : J'ai agi de sorte que j'ai réussi.	I acted so that I succeeded.

3. After conjunctions of condition (**en cas que, au cas que, à moins que...ne, pourvu que, supposé que, en supposant que**) :

Je viendrai au cas que je sois libre demain, ou à moins que je ne sois retenu.	I shall come in case I am free tomorrow, or unless I am detained.

a. After **si** = 'if,' the pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally (§275, *b*).

b. The present subjunctive sometimes expresses condition :

Vienne l'ennemi, il s'enfuit.	If the enemy comes, he flees.

c. **À (la) condition que** takes indicative, conditional, or subjunctive :

Je lui donne l'argent à (la) condition qu'il **partira** (*or* **parte**).	I give him the money on condition that he will go.

NOTE.—**Dans le cas où, au cas où** usually have conditional : 'Au cas où cela **serait** vrai,' 'In case that should be true.'

4. After conjunctions of concession (**quoique, bien que, encore que, nonobstant que, soit que ... soit que** *or* **ou que, pour (si) peu que, si tant est que, malgré que**) :

Bien qu'il soit malade, il sortira.	Although he is ill, he will go out.
Pour peu qu'il fût malade, il se croyait mourant.	If he were ever so little ill, he thought himself dying.

a. The present subjunctive with **que** sometimes has concessive force :

Qu'il perde ou gagne, il partira.	Though he lose or win, he will go.

b. The use of a subjunctive after adverbial **quelque (tout, si, etc.)** + **que** = 'however' depends on the same principle :

Quelque grand que vous soyez.	However great you may be.
Si brave qu'il se croie.	However brave he thinks himself.

c. **Quand (même)** used concessively sometimes takes the pluperfect subjunctive for the conditional anterior (cf. §265, 6) :

Quand (même) il m'eût dit cela.	Even if he had told me that.

5. After conjunctions of negative force (**non que, non pas que, loin que, sans que**):

Il partit sans que je le susse.	He went away without my knowing it.

6. After **que** replacing any conjunction requiring the subjunctive, and also after **que** replacing **si** = 'if':

Venez **que** (= afin que, pour que) je vous voie.	Come, that I may see you.
Si je vais et **que** je le voie.	If I go, and if I see him.

272. Subjunctive in Principal Clause. The subjunctive is sometimes used in principal clauses, as follows :—

1. Either with or without **que** to denote what is desired, etc. :

Ainsi soit-il ! Vive le roi !	So be it ! (Long) live the king !
Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi !	Would to God it were so !
Qu'il parte tout de suite.	Let him go at once.
Je meure, si je mens !	May I die, if I am lying !
Le croie qui voudra !	Let him believe it who will !

a. **Que** followed by the third person present subjunctive regularly serves as an imperative ; so also, sometimes, the first singular :

Qu'il parte.	Let him go.
Que je vous entende.	Let me hear you.

NOTE.—This construction, as also those without **que**, may be explained by ellipsis of some expression of desire, command, etc. (§ 269, 1, 2).

2. The present subjunctive first singular of **savoir** is sometimes used to denote modified assertion :

Je ne sache rien de plus beau.	I know nothing finer.

3. The pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally for conditional anterior in a 'result' clause (cf. § 275, *b*):

S'il eût (*or* avait) su cela, il ne l'eût (*or* aurait) pas dit.	If he had known that, he would not have said it.

273. Tense Sequence. The tense of the subjunctive is usually determined by the tense of the finite verb in the governing clause, as follows :—

1. A present (including present subjunctive and imperative) or a future, in the governing clause, requires the present subjunctive in the governed clause :

Je **doute**	qu'il **vienne**.	I doubt that (whether) he will come.
Quoique je **doute**	qu'il **vienne**.	Though I doubt that he will come.
Doutez	qu'il **vienne**.	Doubt that he will come.
Je **douterai**	qu'il **vienne**.	I shall doubt that he will come.

2. Any other tense than the above (*i.e.*, an imperfect, past definite, conditional, etc.) requires the imperfect subjunctive :

Je **doutais**	qu'il **vînt**.	I doubted that (whether) he would come.
Quoique je **doutasse**	qu'il **vînt**.	Though I doubted that he would come.
Je **doutai**	qu'il **vînt**.	I doubted that he would come.
Je **douterais**	qu'il **vînt**.	I should doubt that he would come.

3. Compound tenses follow the same rules, the auxiliary being reckoned as the verb :

J'**ai** douté (quoique j'**aie** douté, j'**aurai** douté) qu'il **vienne** *or* **soit** venu.	I have doubted (though I have doubted, I shall have doubted) that he will come *or* has come.
J'**avais** douté (j'**eus** douté, quoique j'**eusse** douté, j'**aurais** douté) qu'il **vînt** *or* **fût** venu.	I had doubted (I had doubted, though I had doubted, I should have doubted) that he would come *or* had come.

Obs.: As appears from the above, the subjunctive simple tenses express uncompleted event, and the compound tenses completed event, with reference to the time of the governing verb.

4. The following exceptional cases depend mainly on the sense of the context :

a. The sequence after the past indefinite depends upon its value as a present past or as a past (§259, 1, 2) :

J'ai douté qu'il **vienne** (soit v.).	I have doubted that he will (has) c.
J'ai douté qu'il **vînt** (fût venu).	I doubted that he would (had) come.

b. Exceptionally after verbs of saying, etc., a governing present may take a past subjunctive and *vice versâ :*

Je ne dis pas qu'il fût à blâmer.	I do not say he was to blame.
Il ne croyait pas qu'il y ait un Dieu.	He did not believe there is a God.

c. In a relative clause a past indefinite may stand for a pluperfect:

Il portait cet habit la seule fois que je l'**aie vu**.	He was wearing that coat the only time that I saw him.

d. The conditional of modified assertion (§ 265, 4), being virtually a present, is commonly followed by the present subjunctive:

Je désirerais que vous **veniez**.	I should like you to come.
Il faudrait qu'il s'en **aille**.	He would have to go.

e. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, with the force of an English conditional, may follow any tense:

Il n'y **a** pas de rang qu'elle ne **pût** tenir.	There is no rank she could not hold.
Je **doute** qu'il **jouât** (eût joué), s'il avait (avait eu) de l'argent.	I doubt that he would play (would have played), if he had (had had) money.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

274. Typical Form. A conditional sentence consists regularly of two parts: the condition, introduced by **si** = 'if,' and the result:

Si j'avais le temps, j'irais à B.	If I had time, I should go to B.

a. The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result:

Irez-vous à B, s'il pleut?	Will you go to B, if it rains?
S'il ne fait pas beau, je n'irai pas.	If it is not fine, I shall not go.

b. The condition is often disguised or implied, or the result understood:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse.	To hesitate would be weakness.
Je n'irais pas (**si j'étais** de lui).	I should not go (if I were he).
Ah ! si j'étais à sa place.	Ah, if I were in his place!

275. Mood and Tense. A 'result' clause in the present indicative, imperative, or future, regularly requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative; a 'result' clause in the conditional regularly requires the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative:

S'il **a** le temps, il **y va**.	If he has time, he goes.
S'il **a** le temps, **dites**-lui d'aller.	If he has (have, will have, should have) time, tell him to go.

S'il **a** le temps, il **ira**.	If he has (have, will have, should have) time, he will go.
S'il **avait** le temps, il **irait**.	If he had (had he, were he to have, if he should have, should he have) time, he would go.

Obs.: The condition is regularly expressed by the indicative present or imperfect, whatever be the corresponding English form.

a. The above rules hold good for compound tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb :

S'il l'**a** dit, il le **fera**.	If he has said it, he will do it.
S'il **est** venu, **faites-le-moi savoir**.	If he has come, let me know.
S'il **a** eu le temps, il **sera** venu.	If he has had time, he will have come.
Si j'**avais** eu le temps, je **serais** allé.	If I had had time, I should have gone.
S'il **était** brave, il **aurait** fait cela.	If he were brave, he would have done that.

b. Sometimes, in literary style, the pluperfect subjunctive stands in the 'if' clause, or in the 'result' clause, or in both :

S'il eût (*or* avait) su cela il ne l'eût (*or* aurait) pas dit.	Had he known that, he would not have said so.

c. Occasionally the imperfect indicative stands in the 'if' clause instead of the pluperfect, and in the 'result' clause instead of the conditional anterior :

Si Stanislas demeurait (= **avait demeuré**), il était (= **aurait été**) perdu.	If Stanislas had remained, he would have been lost.

d. Occasionally the condition is expressed by inversion, without **si** :

N'était-ce la crainte de cela.	If it were not for fear of that.
Eût-il été moins riche.	If he had been poorer.

e. A virtual condition (concession) is sometimes expressed by various locutions :

Quiconque le fera.	Whoever (if any one) does it.
Il le dirait, le ferait-il ?	Even if he said it, would he do it ?
Quand même il ne l'aurait pas dit.	Even though he had not said so.
Il le dirait que je ne le croirais pas.	Even if he said it, I should not believe it.

f. The past definite is rare in the "if" clause. The expression **s'il en fut,** however, is noteworthy:

Riche, s'il en fut (jamais), mais corrompu.	Rich, if any one ever was, but corrupt.

g. **Si**='whether' may take the future or conditional:

Dis-moi si tu iras (irais) chez elle.	Tell me whether (if) you will (would) go to her house.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

276. Function. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs, and as a noun it serves as subject, object, etc.:

Vous devriez lui parler.	You ought to speak to him.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
Il lit sans comprendre.	He reads without understanding.

277. Use of Infinitive. The chief difficulty in the use of the infinitive is to determine, (1) when it should stand without any preposition, (2) when it should be preceded by **à,** (3) when it should be preceded by **de.**

278. Infinitive without Preposition. The infinitive without any preposition is used:—

1. As subject, or in apposition:

Mentir est honteux.	To lie (lying) is base.
Trop parler nuit.	Too much talk does harm.
Vivre c'est souffrir.	To live is to suffer.

2. As predicate after a few verbs (see list below):

Vous semblez hésiter.	You seem to hesitate.
Il est censé l'avoir fait.	He is supposed to have done it.

3. As logical subject after a few impersonals (see list below):

Il vaudrait mieux se taire.	It would be better to keep quiet.
Il fait cher vivre à Paris.	Living is dear in Paris.

4. As object or complement after the so-called modal auxiliaries (§230), after most verbs of motion and causation of motion, after verbs of desiring and preferring, after verbs of

perceiving, after verbs of thinking and intending, after verbs of saying and declaring, and after certain verbs of lacking and failing (see list below)

Voulez-vous dîner chez nous ?	Will you dine with us ?
Faites-lui apprendre sa leçon.	Make him learn his lesson.
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	Send for the doctor.
Je désirerais lui parler.	I should like to speak to him.
Je les vois venir.	I see them come (coming).
Quand comptez-vous revenir ?	When do you expect to come back ?
Il prétend avoir raison.	He claims to be in the right.
J'avais beau crier.	It was in vain that I shouted.

5. Sometimes, in elliptical expressions, as an imperative, as a direct or indirect interrogative, or absolutely :

Voir les affiches.	See the posters.
Que faire ? Où me cacher ?	What (am I) to do ? Where hide ?
Je ne sais que faire.	I know not what to do.
Penser qu'il a dit cela !	To think that he said that !

6. Reference list of verbs requiring direct infinitive :

accourir, *hasten.*
affirmer, *affirm.*
aimer (condl.),[3] *should like.*
aimer autant, *like as well.*
aimer mieux, *prefer.*
aller, *go.*
apercevoir, *perceive.*
assurer, *assure.*
avoir beau, *be in vain.*
avouer, *avow.*
compter[1], *intend.*
confesser, *confess.*
courir, *run.*
croire, *think.*
daigner, *deign.*
déclarer, *declare.*
déposer, *testify.*
descendre[3], *come (go) down.*
désirer[1], *desire, wish.*
devoir, *ought, to be, etc.*
dire[4], *say.*
écouter, *listen to.*
entendre, *hear, intend.*
envoyer, *send.*
espérer[1], *hope.*
être, *be.*
être censé, *be supposed.*
faillir[2], *be on the point of.*
faire, *make, cause.*
il fait (impers.), *it is.*
falloir, *be necessary.*
se figurer, *imagine.*
s'imaginer, *fancy.*
juger, *consider.*
jurer[4], *swear, attest by oath.*
justifier, *justify.*
laisser[3], [4], *let, allow.*
mener, *lead, bring.*
mettre, *set, put at.*
monter, *go up.*
nier[1], *deny.*
oser, *dare.*
ouïr, *hear.*
paraître, *appear.*
penser[3], *intend, be near.*
pouvoir, *can, may.*
préférer[1], *prefer.*
prétendre[3], *assert.*
se rappeler[1], *recollect.*
reconnaître, *acknowledge.*
regarder, *look at.*
rentrer, *go in again.*
retourner, *go back.*
revenir, *come back.*
savoir, *know how to, can.*
sembler, *seem.*
sentir, *hear, feel.*
souhaiter[1], *wish.*
soutenir, *maintain.*
supposer, *suppose.*
être supposé, *be supposed*
témoigner, *testify.*
se trouver, *be.*
valoir autant, *be as good.*
valoir mieux, *be better.*
venir[3], [4], *come.*
voir, *see.*
voler, *fly.*
vouloir, *will, wish.*

[1] Sometimes takes **de**.
[2] Sometimes takes **à** or **de**.
[3] See also list of verbs requiring **à** (§ 279, 6).
[4] See also list of verbs requiring **de** (§ 280, 6).

a. **Devoir** = 'owe,' 'be indebted' with indirect object **takes de:**

Je lui dois d'être encore en vie. — I owe to him that I am still alive.

b. **Faire** takes **de** in **ne faire que de:**

Il ne fait que de sortir. — He has just gone out.

c. **Ne pas laisser** = 'not to cease,' etc., takes **de:**

Il ne laisse pas de le dire. — He is always saying so (says so for all that).

279. Infinitive with the Preposition *à*. The infinitive preceded by **à** = 'to,' 'in,' 'at,' 'by,' etc., is used :—

1. As direct object of a few transitives (see list below):

J'aime à chanter.	I like to sing.
Continuez à lire.	Continue to read.
Il m'enseigne à chanter.	He teaches me to sing (singing).
J'ai à étudier demain.	I have to study to-morrow.
Il n'y a pas à se plaindre.	There is nothing to complain of.

2. As a complement, after many verbs, to denote the object to which the action tends (answering the question 'to do what?') or the object in, at, on, about which the action takes place (answering the question 'in doing what?' 'at doing what?' etc.):

Il aspire à devenir riche.	He aspires to become rich
Poussez-les à agir.	Urge them to act.
Je les ai invités à venir.	I have invited them to come.
Aidez-moi à porter cette malle.	Help me to carry this trunk.
Il réussit à me trouver.	He succeeded in finding me.
Je suis à écrire une lettre.	I am (busy) writing a letter.
Il s'amuse à me taquiner.	He amuses himself teasing me.
J'ai gagné à vendre ma maison.	I gained by selling my house.
Il joue à faire le malade.	He plays at being ill.

3. As the complement of certain adjectives (cf. § 280, 2) and nouns denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.:

Ceci est bon à manger.	This is good to eat.
Je suis prêt à vous écouter.	I am ready to hear you.
Quelque chose d'utile à savoir.	Something useful to know.
Cela est facile à faire.	That is easy to do.

La tendance à se croire grand.	The tendency to think one's self great.
Une bonne à tout faire.	A maid of all work.

a. So also, **le premier, le dernier, le seul:**

Il n'est pas le seul à le dire.	He is not the only one to say so.

4. To form adjectival phrases denoting use, fitness, quality etc.:

Une salle à manger.	A dining-room.
Une chose à voir.	A thing worth seeing.
Des contes à dormir debout.	Very tiresome stories.
Un spectacle à faire peur.	A terrible sight.
De manière à réussir.	In such a way as to succeed.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
C'est à en mourir.	It is enough to kill one.

5. To form adverbial phrases:

Elle chante à ravir.	She sings charmingly.
Elle pleurait à faire pitié.	She wept pitifully.
À vrai dire, je le plains.	To tell the truth, I pity him.
Elle est laide à faire peur.	She is frightfully ugly.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with **à**:

s'abaisser, *stoop.*
abandonner (s'), *give up.*
aboutir, *end* (*in*), *tend.*
s'abuser, *be mistaken* (*in*).
s'accorder[2], *agree* (*in*).
être d'accord, *agree* (*in*).
accoutumer (s')[2], *accustom.*
s'acharner, *be bent* (*on*).
admettre, *admit.*
s'adonner, *addict o. s.*
aguerrir (s'), *inure.*
aider, *help.*
aimer[2], [4], *like.*
amener, *lead.*
amuser (s'), *amuse* (*in, by*).
animer (s'), *excite.*
appeler, *call.*
appliquer (s'), *apply.*
apprendre, *learn, teach.*
apprêter (s'), *get ready.*
s'arrêter, *stop.*
aspirer, *aspire.*
assujettir (s'), *subject.*
astreindre, *compel.*
s'astreindre, *bind o. s.*
attacher, *attach.*
s'attacher, *be intent* (*on*).
attendre (s'), *expect.*
autoriser, *authorize.*
s'avilir, *stoop.*
avoir, *have, must.*
avoir (de la) peine, *have difficulty* (*in*).
balancer, *hesitate.*
se borner, *limit o. s.*
chercher, *seek, try.*
commencer[2], *begin.*
se complaire, *take pleasure* (*in*).
concourir, *co-operate* (*in*).
condamner (se), *condemn.*
condescendre, *condescend.*
conduire, *lead.*
consacrer (se), *devote.*
consentir[2], *consent.*
consister, *consist* (*in*).
conspirer, *conspire.*
consumer (se), *consume* (*in*).
continuer[1], *continue.*
contraindre[1], *constrain.*
contribuer, *contribute.*
convier[2], *invite.*
coûter, *cost.*
décider[3], *induce.*
se décider, *resolve.*
défier[3], *challenge, incite.*
demander[1], *ask.*
demeurer, *remain.*
dépenser, *spend* (*in*).
désapprendre, *forget.*

descendre[4], *stoop, abase o. s.*
destiner, *destine.*
déterminer[3], *induce.*
se déterminer, *resolve.*
dévouer (se), *devote.*
différer[2], *delay.*
disposer (se), *dispose.*
divertir (se), *amuse.*
donner, *give.*
dresser, *train.*
s'efforcer[1], *try.*
s'égayer, *divert o. s.* (*by*).
employer (s'), *employ* (*in*).
s'empresser[1], [3], *be eager.*
encourager, *encourage.*
engager (s')[2], *engage, advise.*
enhardir[2], *embolden.*
s'enhardir[2], *venture.*
s'ennuyer[2], [3], *tire o. s.* (*in*).
enseigner, *teach.*
s'entendre, *know well how.*
entraîner, *allure.*
essayer[1], *try.*
s'essayer, *try o. s.* (*in*).
être[3], *to be occupied* (*in, at*).
être à[3], *be one's turn.*
s'étudier, *apply o. s.*
s'évertuer, *exert o. s., try.*
exceller, *excel* (*in*).
exciter (s'), *excite.*
exercer (s'), *exercise* (*in*).
exhorter, *exhort.*
exposer (s'), *expose.*
se fatiguer[3], *tire o. s.* (*in, at*).
finir (neg.)[3], *have done.*
forcer[1], *force.*
gagner, *gain* (*by*).
habituer[2], *accustom.*
s'habituer, *accustom o. s.*
haïr, *hate.*
se hasarder[2], *venture.*
hésiter[2], *hesitate.*
inciter, *incite.*
incliner, *incline.*
induire, *induce.*
instruire, *instruct.*
intéresser (s'), *interest* (*in*).
inviter, *invite.*
jouer, *play* (*at*).
laisser[3], [4], *leave.*
se lasser[3], *tire o. s.* (*in*).
manquer[3], *be remiss* (*in*).
mettre, *put, set.*
se mettre, *set about.*
montrer, *show how.*
obliger[1], [3], *oblige, force.*
s'obliger[2], *bind o. s.*
s'obstiner, *persist* (*in*).
occuper (s')[3], *employ* (*in*).
s'offrir[2], *offer.*
s'opiniâtrer, *persist* (*in*).
parvenir, *succeed* (*in*).
passer, *spend* (*in*).
pencher, *incline.*
penser[4], *think* (*of*).
perdre, *lose* (*in, by*).
persévérer, *persevere* (*in*).
persister, *persist* (*in*).
se plaire, *delight* (*in*).
se plier, *submit.*
porter, *induce.*
pousser, *urge, incite.*
prendre garde[3], *take care.*
prendre plaisir, *delight* (*in*).
se prendre, *begin.*
préparer (se), *prepare.*
prétendre[4], *aspire.*
prier[3], *invite* (*formally*).
procéder, *proceed.*
provoquer, *incite.*
recommencer[1], *begin again.*
réduire, *reduce.*
se réduire, *confine o. s.*
refuser[3], *refuse to give.*
se refuser, *refuse.*
renoncer, *renounce.*
répugner, *be reluctant.*
se résigner, *resign o. s.*
résoudre[3], *induce.*
se résoudre, *resolve.*
rester, *remain.*
réussir, *succeed* (*in*).
servir, *serve.*
songer, *think* (*of*).
souffrir[1], *suffer.*
suffire, *suffice.*
surprendre, *discover.*
tarder, *be long, delay* (*in*).
tendre, *tend.*
tenir, *be anxious.*
travailler, *work.*
trembler[3], *tremble* (*at, on*).
trouver, *find.*
venir[3], [4], *happen.*
viser, *aim.*
vouer (se), *devote.*

[1] Or **de**.

[2] Sometimes takes **de**.

[3] See also list of verbs requiring **de** (§ 280, 6).

[4] See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

a. **Suffire** sometimes takes **pour**:

Cela suffira pour l'amuser.	That will suffice to amuse him.

b. The infinitive after **être à** often has passive force:

Cet ouvrage est à refaire.	That work is to be done again.

c. **Haïr** may take **de** when negative:

Il ne hait pas à (**d'**) être endetté.	He does not dislike being in debt.

280. Infinitive with the Preposition *de*. The infinitive preceded by **de** = 'to,' 'of,' 'from,' 'for,' 'at,' etc., is used :—

1. As logical subject of an impersonal verb (for rare exceptions see § 278, 3) :

Il est facile de faire cela.	It is easy to do that.
Il importe d'arriver à temps.	It is important to arrive in time.
Bien vous sied de vous taire.	It well becomes you to be silent.

a. Similarly as subject in inverted sentences :

C'est une folie (que) d'aller là.	It is madness to go there.

2. As complement of most adjectives and nouns (cf. §279, 3) :

Le désir de partir.	The desire of going.
La nécessité de rester.	The necessity of remaining.
Il n'est pas digne de vivre.	He is not worthy to live.
J'ai envie de pleurer.	I feel like crying.

a. So also, many expressions, like the last example, made from verb + noun, *e.g.*, **avoir besoin** (**honte, peur, raison, soin, tort,** etc.), **faire envie** (**plaisir, semblant,** etc.), **courir risque,** etc., etc.

3. After verbs as object or complement, usually to denote the source or occasion of action (answering 'whence?', 'concerning what?'), or to denote separation or cessation from (answering 'from what?'). See list below :

Je me réjouis de le voir.	I rejoice to see it.
Elle se pique d'être la première.	She prides herself on being first.
Prenez garde de tomber.	Take care not to fall.
Il s'excuse d'y aller.	He excuses himself from going.
Promettez de ne pas le dire.	Promise not to tell it.

4. As historical infinitive (= a past definite) :

Et l'ennemi de s'enfuir.	And the enemy fled.

5. After **que** in the second member of a comparison, unless the sentence be very short :

Il vaudra mieux rester que de partir si tard.	It will be better to stay than to go so late.
But : Mieux vaut savoir qu'avoir.	Better wisdom than wealth.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with **de**:

s'absenter, *absent o.s.* (*from*).
s'absoudre, *absolve o.s.* (*from*).
s'abstenir, *abstain* (*from*).
accorder, *grant.*
avoir accoutumé, *be accustomed.*
accuser (s'), *accuse* (*of*).
achever, *finish.*
admirer, *wonder* (*at*).
affecter, *affect.*
s'affliger, *grieve* (*at, over*).
ambitionner, *aspire.*
s'apercevoir, *perceive.*
s'applaudir, *congratulate o.s.* (*on*).
appréhender, *fear.*
arrêter, *prevent* (*from*), *determine.*
s'attrister, *become sad* (*at*).
avertir, *notify, warn.*
s'aviser, *think* (*of*).
blâmer, *blame* (*for*).
brûler, *long.*
censurer, *censure* (*for*).
cesser, *cease.*
se chagriner, *grieve* (*at, over*).
charger, *charge.*
se charger, *undertake.*
choisir, *choose.*
commander, *command.*
commencer[1], *begin.*
conjurer, *beseech.*
conseiller, *advise.*
consoler, *console* (*for*).
se contenter, *be satisfied.*
continuer[1], *continue.*
contraindre[1], *constrain.*
convaincre, *convict* (*of*).
convenir, *agree.*
craindre, *fear.*
crier, *cry.*
décider[3], *decide, resolve.*
décourager (se), *discourage* (*from*).
dédaigner, *disdain.*
défendre, *forbid.*
se défendre, *forbear, excuse o.s.*
défier[3], *defy.*
se défier, *distrust.*
dégoûter, *disgust* (*with*).
délibérer, *deliberate* (*about*).
demander[1], *ask.*
se dépêcher, *make haste.*
désaccoutumer (se), *disaccustom* (*from*).
désespérer, *despair* (*of*).
déshabituer (se), *disaccustom* (*from*).
déterminer[3], *resolve.*
détester, *detest.*
détourner, *dissuade* (*from*).
dire[4], *bid.*
discontinuer, *cease.*
disconvenir, *deny.*
se disculper, *excuse o.s.* (*for*).
dispenser, *dispense* (*from*).
dissuader, *dissuade* (*from*).
douter, *hesitate.*
se douter, *suspect.*
écrire, *write.*
s'efforcer[1], *try.*
s'effrayer, *be afraid.*
empêcher, *prevent.*
s'empêcher, *abstain* (*from*).
s'empresser[3], *hasten.*
s'empresser[1], *be eager.*
enjoindre, *enjoin.*
s'ennuyer[2, 3], *be tired* (*of*).
s'enorgueillir, *be proud.*
enrager, *be enraged* (*at*).
entreprendre, *undertake.*
épargner, *spare.*
essayer[1], *try.*
s'étonner, *be astonished.*
être à[2, 3], *be duty* (*or office*) (*of*).
éviter, *avoid.*
excuser (s') *excuse* (*from*).
exempter, *exempt* (*from*).
faire bien, *do well.*
se fatiguer[3], *be tired* (*of*).
feindre, *feign.*
féliciter (se), *congratulate* (*on*).
finir[3], *finish.*
se flatter, *flatter o. s.*
forcer[1], *force.*
frémir, *shudder.*
gager, *wager.*
garder (se), *forbear.*
gémir, *groan.*
gêner, *incommode.*
se glorifier, *boast* (*of*).
gronder, *scold* (*for*).
hasarder, *venture.*
se hâter, *hasten.*
imaginer, *imagine.*
s'impatienter, *be impatient.*
imputer, *impute.*
s'indigner, *be indignant.*
s'ingérer, *meddle* (*with*).
inspirer, *inspire.*
interdire, *interdict* (*from*).
jouir, *enjoy.*
juger bon, *think fit.*
jurer[4], *promise* (*on oath*).
ne pas laisser[3, 4], *not to cease.*
se lasser[3] *be weary* (*of*).
louer, *praise* (*for*).
mander, *bid.*
manquer[3], *fail, be on point of.*
méditer, *meditate.*
se mêler, *meddle* (*with*).
menacer, *threaten.*
mériter, *deserve.*
se moquer, *make sport* (*of*).
mourir, *die, long.*
négliger, *neglect.*
notifier, *notify.*
obliger[1], *oblige, force.*
obliger[3], *do favour.*
obtenir, *obtain.*
s'occuper[3], *be intent* (*on*).
offrir, *offer.*
omettre, *omit.*
ordonner, *order.*
oublier[2], *forget.*
pardonner, *forgive.*

parier, *bet.*
parler, *speak.*
se passer, *do without.*
permettre (se), *permit.*
persuader, *persuade.*
se piquer, *pride o. s.* (*on*).
plaindre, *pity.*
se plaindre, *complain* (*of*).
prendre garde[3], *take care not, beware* (*of*).
prendre soin, *take care.*
prescrire, *prescribe.*
presser, *urge.*
se presser, *hasten.*
présumer, *presume.*
prier[3], *beg, pray.*
priver (se), *deprive* (*of*).
projeter, *intend.*
promettre (se), *promise.*
proposer, *propose.*
se proposer, *intend.*
protester, *protest.*
punir, *punish* (*for*).
recommander, *recommend.*
recommencer[1], *begin again.*
refuser[3], *refuse.*
regretter, *regret.*
se réjouir, *rejoice.*
remercier, *thank* (*for*).
se repentir, *repent* (*of*).
reprendre, *reprove* (*for*).
réprimander, *reprimand* (*for*).
reprocher (se), *reproach* (*with*).
résoudre[3], *resolve.*
se ressouvenir, *remember.*
rire (se), *laugh.*
risquer, *risk.*
rougir, *blush.*
sommer, *summon.*
se soucier, *care.*
souffrir[1], *suffer.*
soupçonner, *suspect.*
sourire, *smile.*
se souvenir, *recollect.*
suggérer, *suggest.*
supplier, *beseech.*
tâcher[2], *try.*
tenter[2], *attempt.*
trembler[3], *tremble, fear.*
trouver bon, *think fit.*
se vanter, *boast* (*of*).
venir[3], [4], *have just.*

[1] Or à.

[2] Sometimes à.

[3] See also list of verbs requiring à (§ 279, 6).

[4] See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

281. Distinctions. As appears from the list, the same verb sometimes requires **à, de,** or the direct infinitive. The following are examples of cases in which the sense varies with the construction:—

1. **Aimer:**

J'aimerais bien le connaître.	I should like to know him.
J'aime mieux vous dire tout.	I prefer to tell you all.
Aimez-vous à demeurer ici?	Do you like to live here?

2. **Décider:**

Il m'a décidé **à** entrer.	He induced me to go in.
Nous décidâmes **de** partir.	We decided to set out.

3. **Défier:**

On le défia **à** boire.	They challenged him to drink.
Je vous défie **de** prouver cela.	I defy you to prove that.

4. **Descendre:**

Descends chercher ton chapeau.	Go down and get your hat.
Il a descendu même **à** voler.	He even descended to theft.

5. **Déterminer:**

Je l'ai déterminé **à** rester.	I induced him to stay.
Il avait déterminé **de** le rebâtir.	He had determined to rebuild it.

6. **Dire:**

Il dit l'avoir vu.	He says he saw it.
Je lui ai dit **de** venir.	I told him to come.

7. **S'empresser:**

Il s'empressait **à** lui plaire.	He was eager to please her.
Il s'empressa **de** répondre.	He hastened to reply.

8. **Être:**

Je suis **à** écrire des lettres.	I am (busy) writing letters.
C'est à vous **de** parler.	It is your place to speak.
C'est à vous **à** parler.	It is your turn to speak.

9. **Se fatiguer:**

Il se fatigua **à** jouer au billard.	He fatigued himself playing billiards.
Il est fatigué **de** jouer.	He is tired playing.

10. **Finir:**

Il ne finit pas **à** me le dire.	He was never done telling me so.
J'ai fini **de** travailler.	I have finished working.

11. **Jurer:**

Je jure l'avoir vu.	I swear I saw it.
Je jure **de** le faire.	I swear I will do it.

12. **Laisser:**

Je l'ai laissé dire.	I let him talk.
Je vous laisse **à** penser.	I leave you to think.
Il ne laissa pas **de** parler.	He did not stop talking.

13. **Se lasser:**

Il s'est lassé **à** courir.	He tired himself out (by) running.
Il se lasse **de** courir.	He is tired of running.

14. **Manquer:**

Je manquai **de** tomber.	I was on the point of falling.
Il a manqué **à** faire son devoir.	He has failed to do his duty.

15. **Obliger:**

Je l'ai obligé **à (de)** le faire.	I obliged him to do it.
Je suis obligé **de** partir.	I am obliged to go.
Vous m'obligerez beaucoup **de** le faire.	You will greatly oblige me by doing it.

16. **S'occuper:**

Il s'occupe **à** rien faire.	He is busy doing nothing.
Il s'occupe **de** tout voir.	He is intent on seeing everything.

17. **Penser:**

Que pensez-vous faire?	What do you intend to do?
Je pensai tomber.	I nearly fell.
Je pense **à** répliquer à cela.	I think of replying to that.

18. **Prendre garde:**

Prenez garde **à** le faire.	Take care to do it.
Prenez garde **à** ne pas le faire.	Take care not to do it.
Prenez garde **de** le faire.	Take care not to do it.

19. **Prétendre:**

Il prétend vous connaître.	He asserts that he knows you.
Il prétend **à** devenir savant.	He aspires to become learned.

20. **Prier:**

Il m'a prié **à** dîner.	He invited me to dine.
Je vous prie **de** m'aider.	I pray (ask) you to help me.

21. **Refuser:**

Me refusez-vous **à** manger?	Do you refuse to give me food?
Je refuserai **d'**y aller.	I shall refuse to go.

22. **Résoudre:**

Il m'a résolu **à** l'acheter.	He induced me to buy it.
J'ai résolu **de** l'acheter.	I have determined to buy it.

23. **Trembler:**

Il tremble **à** me voir.	He trembles when he sees me.
Il tremble **de** me rencontrer.	He fears to meet me.

24. **Venir:**

Venez nous voir.	Come to see us.
Si vous venez **à** le voir.	If you happen to see him.
Je viens **de** le voir.	I have just seen him.

282. Infinitive with other Prepositions. The infinitive stands also after **par, pour, sans, après, entre,** and after locutions ending in **de** or **à**, such as **afin de, afin que de, jusqu'à,** etc.:—

1. **Par** = 'by,' usually only after **commencer** and **finir**:

Il finit par m'insulter.	He ended by insulting me (*or* He finally insulted me).

2. **Pour** usually translates 'in order to,' 'for the purpose of'; sometimes also 'for,' 'from,' 'because,' 'though,' etc., and 'to' after **assez, trop,** etc.:

Il faut manger pour vivre.	We must eat (in order) to live.
Il est mort pour avoir trop bu.	He died from over-drinking.
Il fut puni pour avoir ri.	He was punished for laughing.
Pour être pauvre, il n'est pas larron.	Though poor, he is no thief.
Il est trop franc pour se taire.	He is too frank to keep quiet.

a. **Pour** after a verb of motion (§ 278, 4) emphasizes the purpose:

J'irai pour le voir.	I shall go to see him.

3. **Sans** = 'without':

N'allez pas sans manger.	Do not go without eating.

4. **Après** = 'after' requires the perfect infinitive:

Après avoir dîné, je partis.	After having dined, I set out.

283. Infinitive for Subordinate Clause. 1. An infinitive construction usually replaces a **que** clause of which the subject is the same with that of the subject or object (direct or indirect) of the principal clause:

Il croit vous avoir vu.	He thinks that he has seen you.
Dites-leur de s'en aller.	Tell them to be gone.

2. Similarly **afin de, à moins de, après, avant de, de crainte de, de peur de, de façon à, de manière à, pour, sans,** etc. + the infinitive stand for **afin que,** etc. + the subjunctive, but only when the subject of both verbs is the same:

Il partit sans me voir.	He went without seeing me.
But: Il partit sans que je le visse.	He went without me seeing him.

284. Infinitive with Passive Force. A transitive infinitive has passive force after verbs of perceiving (**voir, etc.**),

after **faire, laisser,** and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectively (cf. §241, 3):

J'ai vu bâtir cette maison.	I saw this house being built.
Je me fais faire un habit.	I am having a coat made.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

NOTE.—This construction may be explained by supplying some such ellipsis as the following: 'J'ai vu bâtir une maison (à *or* **par quelqu'un**), 'I have seen somebody building a house.'

285. Infinitive for English *-ing*. The infinitive must be used to translate many such forms (see § 287, 2, 3, 4).

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

286. Functions. The participial form in **-ant** serves as a verbal adjective, as a present participle (without **en**), and as a gerund (with **en**):—

1. As a verbal adjective, it denotes quality or state, and agrees like an adjective:

Elle paraît bien portante.	She seems well.
Les enfants doivent être obéissants.	Children must be obedient.
Les vivants, et les mourants.	The living and the dying.
Des paroles consolantes.	Comforting words.

Obs.: The verbal adjective, attributively, regularly follows the noun, as in the last example.

a. Some verbs have a special form for the verbal adjective:

ADJ.	PART.	ADJ.	PART.
différent, *different.*	différant.	négligent, *careless.*	négligeant.
convaincant, *convincing.*	convainquant.	savant, *learned.*	sachant.
fatigant, *fatiguing.*	fatiguant.	puissant, *powerful.*	pouvant.
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

2. As a present participle, it is used, in general, like the English present participle, to denote simultaneous action, manner, cause, motive, etc., and is invariable:

Pleurant, elle continua le récit.	Weeping, she continued the story.
Je le trouvai riant comme un fou.	I found him laughing like mad.

Elle ne sortit pas, étant malade.	She did not go out, being ill.
Ayant parlé ainsi, il sortit.	Having thus spoken, he went out.
Il n'entrera pas, moi vivant.	He shall not enter, while I live.

NOTES.—1. It is often difficult to determine whether the form in **-ant** is participle (invariable) or adjective (variable). As a participle, the action (generally transitory) is prominent, but as an adjective, quality or else continued action (state) is denoted. It is nearly always a participle when it has a complement or a construction peculiar to the verb, such as object, negative, adverb following: 'Une femme mourante,' 'A dying woman'; 'Des gens mourant de faim,' 'People dying of hunger'; 'Les ennemis se retirèrent, brûlant les villes partout,' 'The enemies retired, burning the towns everywhere'; 'Une femme ne craignant rien,' 'A woman fearing nothing'; 'Des dames parlant doucement,' 'Ladies speaking softly'; 'De soi-disant amis,' 'So-called friends.'

2. In the last example, **soi-disant**, though adjective in force, remains invariable in view of the literal meaning, 'calling themselves.'

3. **Ayant** and **étant** are also always invariable, except in 'les ayants-droit (-cause)'.

3. As a gerund, it denotes either simultaneous action or means by which, and is invariable; **en** = 'while,' 'in,' 'on,' 'when,' 'as,' 'by,' etc., or is untranslated:

En jouant, j'ai perdu ma montre.	While playing, I lost my watch.
En rentrant, j'ai trouvé la lettre.	On returning, I found the letter.
Vous perdrez, en agissant ainsi.	You will lose, if you act thus.
En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.

a. Both participle and gerund denote simultaneous action, but the use of **en**, strengthened sometimes by **tout**, usually emphasizes the continuity of the action:

(En) disant ceci, il prit la lyre.	(While) saying this, he took the harp.
Tout en pleurant, elle continua.	Still weeping, she went on.

b. The gerund usually refers to the subject:

Je l'ai vu en allant à la poste.	I saw him while going to the post.
But: L'appétit vient en mangeant.	One's appetite comes while eating.

c. **En** is sometimes omitted, especially after **aller**:

Généralement parlant.	Generally speaking.
Il s'en va (en) grondant.	Off he goes grumbling.

d. The gerund denotes progressive action in a few expressions formed from **aller**:

Cela alla (en) diminuant.	That kept growing less and less.

287. English Forms in *-ing*. These are variously translated into French; idiomatic differences are:—

1. Periphrastic tense forms are avoided in French:

Il a joué toute la matinée.	He has been playing all morning.

2. English gerunds are translated by an **-ant** form only when the preposition **en** may be used; otherwise by an infinitive, a noun, or a clause:

En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
But: Il parle de partir.	He speaks of going away.
Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.	He was hanged for having stolen.
Elle partit sans dire adieu.	She went without saying good-bye.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
J'aime la chasse (*or* à chasser).	I like hunting.
Je suis étonné qu'il soit venu.	I am surprised at his coming.

3. After verbs of perception (**entendre, sentir, voir,** etc.), the relative or infinitive construction is much commoner than the participle:

Je les vois venir (qui viennent *or* venant).	I see them coming.
Les voilà qui passent!	See them passing!
Il a vu sortir mes frères.	He saw my brothers going out.
Les avez-vous entendus frapper (qui frappaient)?	Did you hear them knocking?
Je la (*or* lui) vis frapper l'enfant.	I saw her striking the child.

4. Compound nouns with a first component in **-ing** are not literally translated:

Une machine à coudre.	A sewing-machine.

5. It is often more elegant to avoid a French form in **-ant**, even when permissible:

Pendant mon voyage.	While travelling.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

288. General Use. The past participle is used, (1) without auxiliary, (2) with **être**, (3) with **avoir** (or **être** used as **avoir**).

289. Without Auxiliary. A past participle without any auxiliary has the force of an adjective (attributive, predica

tive, appositive), and agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the word qualified :

Des fêtes données par le roi.	Festivities given by the king.
Les battus ; les morts.	The beaten ; the dead.
Le passé n'est plus à nous.	The past is no longer ours.
Jean et Marie semblent fatigués.	John and Mary look tired.
Tenez les portes fermées.	Keep the doors closed.
Ils me regardèrent étonnés.	They looked at me astonished.

a. Certain past participles have prepositional force when preceding the substantive, and are invariable, but are variable when following :

Vu les difficultés.	In view of the difficulties.
Excepté eux ; eux exceptés.	Except them ; they excepted.

Such are : **Approuvé, attendu, certifié, collationné, y compris, non compris, entendu, excepté, ouï, payé, passé, supposé, vu,** etc.

b. **Ci-inclus** = 'enclosed' and **ci-joint** = 'herewith,' are invariable when beginning a sentence, or when followed by a noun without article :

Ci-inclus la copie, etc.	Herewith the copy, etc.
Vous recevez ci-joint copie, etc.	You receive herewith a copy, etc.
But : J'envoie ci-jointe une (la) copie, etc.	I send herewith a (the) copy, etc.

290. Past Participle with *être*. A past participle with **être** agrees with the subject, for exceptions see § 244 :

Il sont (ont été) battus.	They are (have been) beaten.
Marie et Louise sont venues.	Mary and Louisa have come.
Ils sont sortis.	They have gone out.
Les dames étant arrivées.	The ladies having come.
Elle parla d'avoir été blessée.	She spoke of having been wounded.

a. Hence the past participle of an impersonal verb with **être** is invariable, agreeing strictly with the grammatical subject **il** :

Il était venu des soldats.	Soldiers had come.

291. Past Participle with *avoir*. 1. A past participle with **avoir** agrees with a preceding direct object ; otherwise it is invariable :

La pièce **que** j'ai écrite, l'avez-vous lue ?	Have you read the play I wrote ?
Quels livres a-t-il apportés ?	What books did he bring ?

But: J'ai écrit la lettre.	I have written the letter.
Elles ont lu et écrit.	They have read and written.
Je lui ai donné la lettre.	I have given her the letter.

2. Similarly, the past participle of a reflexive verb (conjugated with **être** for **avoir**) always agrees with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect:

Ils **se** sont réjouis.	They have rejoiced.
Elles **s'**étaient tromp**ées**.	They were mistaken.
Elle **s'**est bless**ée**	She wounded herself.
Elle **s'**est laiss**ée** tomber.	She has fallen (fell).
But: Ils se sont écrit.	They wrote to each other.
Elle s'est blessé la main.	She wounded her hand.
Ils se sont arrogé ce privilège.	They assumed that privilege.
Ils se sont plu à Paris.	They enjoyed themselves in Paris.

a. Besides the indirect reflexive object, a direct object may be present, with which the following past participle agrees:

Les robes qu'elle s'est achet**ées**.	The dresses she bought herself.

292. Remarks. All cases of the agreement of the past participle depend upon the above general principles; special difficulties are:—

1. The past participle of an impersonal verb is invariable:

La belle journée qu'il a fait!	What a fine day it was!
La disette qu'il y a eu.	The scarcity there was.

2. A noun denoting distance, time, price, weight, etc., with such verbs as **marcher, courir, vivre, coûter, peser, valoir,** etc., is adverbial accusative (not direct object); hence no agreement:

Les dix milles que j'ai marché.	The ten miles I walked.
Les cent francs que cet ouvrage m'a coûté.	The hundred francs that book cost me.

a. Such verbs used transitively, or figuratively with transitive force, follow the general rule:

La malle que j'ai pes**ée**.	The trunk which I weighed.
Les dangers qu'il a couru**s**.	The dangers he incurred.
La peur que cela a coût**ée**.	The fear which that caused.

3. A past participle preceded by an expression of number or quantity, a collective, etc., is variable or invariable according to the sense (cf. § 231-234):

Que de maux il a soufferts !	What ills he endured !
C'est la moitié des meubles qu'on a saisie.	It is the half of the furniture that has been seized.
La moitié des meubles que j'ai vendus.	The half of the furniture which I sold.
Quelle joie, quel bonheur vous lui avez procuré !	What joy, what happiness you have procured him !

a. Partitive **en** is never a direct object; agreement, however, takes place with **combien, plus, moins,** preceding **en,** if the sense be plural:

Combien Dieu en a-t-il exaucés !	How many of them God has heard !
Plus on vous a donné de livres, plus vous en avez lus.	The more books you were given, the more of them you read.

4. When an infinitive (with or without a preposition) follows, the past participle is invariable when the preceding direct object is governed by the infinitive, and variable if governed by the past participle alone:

La lettre que j'ai voulu écrire.	The letter I wished to write.
La lettre que j'ai oublié d'écrire.	The letter I forgot to write.
Il nous a priés d'y aller.	He begged us to go.
On nous a dit de sortir.	They told us to go out.

a. **Entendu, vu, laissé,** agree when the infinitive has active force, but are invariable, if it has passive force (§ 284):

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter.	The lady I heard sing(ing).
Les enfants que j'ai vu battre.	The children I saw beaten.

b. After **dû, pu, voulu, osé,** with auxiliary force, a governing infinitive is either expressed or implied; hence no agreement:

J'ai lu tous les livres que j'ai pu (lire).	I read all the books that I could (read).
But: Les livres que j'ai voulus.	The books I wished.

c. **Fait** + infinitive is invariable:

Les médecins qu'il a fait venir.	The doctors he sent for.

d. The past participle of **avoir à** is variable or invariable:

Les lettres que j'ai eu (eues) à lire.	The letters I had to read.

5. The relative pronoun **que** is sometimes direct object of a verb in a following **que** clause, either fully expressed or implied, and hence the past participle is invariable :

Des choses que j'ai cru qu'il ferait.	Things I thought he would do.
J'ai lu les livres qu'il a voulu (que je lusse).	I read the books which he wished (me to read).

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

293. Transitives. 1. A transitive verb governs a direct object, as in English :

J'ai écrit la lettre (des lettres).	I wrote the letter (letters).

2. A transitive verb can have only one direct object ; other substantives related to it must stand as indirect object or as prepositional complement :

Pardonnez-lui ses péchés.	Pardon him his sins.
Je donne le dé à la fille.	I give the girl the thimble.
Je lui donne le dé avec plaisir.	I give her the thimble with pleasure.
Je conseille à mon fils de partir.	I advise my son to go.

a. By an extension of this principle, the verb **faire** = 'make,' 'cause to,' etc. + an infinitive, requires an indirect personal object, when the infinitive has a direct object :

Je fais lire ce livre **à** mon **fils**.	I make my son read this book.
Je **lui** fais lire ce livre.	I make him read this book.
But : Je fais lire mon **fils**.	I make my son read.
Je **le** fais lire.	I make him read.

b. **Laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr,** may have, and frequently do have, the same construction :

Laissez-**le** (-**lui**) lire le livre.	Let him read the book.
Je l'(**lui**) ai vu jouer ce rôle.	I saw him play that part.
But : Laissez lire l'**enfant**.	Let the child read.

294. Intransitives. An intransitive verb can have no direct object, but may, of course, have an indirect object or a prepositional complement :

Il parle à ce soldat.	He is speaking to that soldier.
Il lui parle de la guerre.	He speaks to him of the war.

a. A very few intransitives govern a direct object anomalously :

Où avez-vous passé l'été?	Where did you pass the summer?
Il va tout droit son chemin.	He goes straight on his way.

NOTE.—Many verbs serve both as transitives and intransitives: 'Il est descendu (intransitive), 'He has gone down'; 'Il a descendu le tableau' (transitive), 'He has taken down the picture.'

295. Predicative Complement. Nouns are used predicatively after certain verbs, as follows :—

1. In nominative relation :

Ils sont Anglais.	They are Englishmen.
Il est médecin.	He is a doctor.
Elle est morte jeune fille.	She died a young girl.

Such verbs are :

demeurer, *remain.*	mourir, *die.*	rester, *remain.*
devenir, *become*	naître, *be born.*	sembler, *seem.*
entrer, *enter.*	paraître, *appear.*	sortir, *go out.*
être, *be.*	passer, *pass.*	etc.
être censé, *be supposed.*		

2. In accusative relation :

On le fit roi.	They made him king.
Je le connais honnête homme.	I know him to be an honest man.

Such verbs are :

appeler, *call.*	estimer, *esteem.*	se montrer, *show one's self.*
couronner, *crown.*	faire, *make.*	nommer, *name.*
croire, *believe.*	se faire, *become.*	proclamer, *proclaim.*
déclarer, *declare.*	instituer, *institute.*	savoir, *know.*
élire, *elect.*	juger, *judge.*	etc.

296. Prepositional Complement. The use of **de** and **à** presents special difficulty; other prepositions have, in general, their usual literal force :—

1. Some verbs with **de** have the force of an English transitive :

Il médit de ses voisins.	He slanders his neighbours.
Il ne jouit de rien.	He enjoys nothing.

Such verbs are

abuser de, *misuse.*
s'apercevoir de, *perceive.*
s'approcher de, *approach.*
avoir besoin de, *need.*
avoir peur de, *fear.*
avoir pitié de, *pity.*
convenir de, *admit.*
se défier de, *mistrust.*
se démettre de, *resign.*
disconvenir de, *deny.*
douter de, *suspect, doubt.*
se douter de, *suspect.*
gémir de, *bemoan.*
jouir de, *enjoy.*
manquer de, *lack.*
médire de, *slander.*
se méfier de, *mistrust.*
partir de, *leave.*
se passer de, *do without.*
se servir de, *use.*
se souvenir de, *recollect.*
se tromper de, *mistake.*
user de, *employ, use.*
etc.

2. Similarly, some verbs with **à** have the force of an English transitive:

Il obéit à son père.	He obeys his father.
Je lui ai résisté.	I have resisted him.

Such verbs are:

aller à, *fit, suit.*
arriver à, *reach.*
attenter à, *attempt (the life).*
compatir à, *pity.*
convenir à, *suit.*
déplaire à, *displease.*
désobéir à, *disobey.*
se fier à, *trust.*
importer à, *concern.*
nuire à, *harm.*
obéir à, *obey.*
obvier à, *obviate.*
ordonner à, *order.*
pardonner à, *pardon.*
parvenir à, *attain.*
permettre à, *permit.*
persuader à, *persuade.*
plaire à, *please.*
promettre à, *promise.*
remédier à, *remedy.*
renoncer à, *renounce.*
répondre à, *answer.*
résister à, *resist.*
ressembler à, *resemble.*
succéder à, *succeed.*
survivre à, *survive.*
etc.

3. In some instances, on the contrary, a French transitive has the force of an English verb + a preposition.

Payez-lui les livres.	Pay him **for** the books.
Je regarde cet arbre-là.	I am looking **at** that tree.

Such verbs are:

accepter, *accept of.*
admettre, *admit of.*
approuver, *approve of.*
attendre, *wait for.*
chercher, *look for.*
demander, *ask for.*
désirer, *wish for.*
écouter, *listen to.*
envoyer chercher, *send for.*
espérer, *hope for.*
payer, *pay for.*
regarder, *look at.*
rencontrer, *meet with.*
souhaiter, *wish for.*
etc.

4. **De** and **à** frequently have, as compared with English, a special idiomatic force with certain verbs:

Cela dépend **de** vous.	That depends on you.
Pensez **à** votre devoir.	Think of your duty.

Such verbs are:

s'affliger de, *grieve at.*
approcher (s') de, *draw near to.*
blâmer de, *blame for.*
complimenter de, *compliment on.*
consoler de, *console for.*
déjeuner de, *breakfast on.*
dépendre de, *depend on.*

se désoler de, *grieve over.*
dîner de, *dine on.*
féliciter de, *congratulate on.*
gémir de, *lament over.*
louer de, *praise for.*
se mêler de, *meddle with.*
se nourrir de, *live on.*
profiter de, *profit by.*
punir de, *punish for.*
récompenser de, *reward for.*
se réjouir de, *rejoice at.*
remercier de, *thank for.*
rire de, *laugh at.*
triompher de, *triumph over.*
vivre de, *live on.*
etc.

---

acheter qqch. à qqu., *buy something from* (or *for*) *some one.*
arracher qqch. à qqu., *snatch from.*
cacher qqch. à qqu., *hide from.*
conférer qqch. à qqu., *confer on.*
demander qqch. à qqu., *ask for* (*of*).
dérober qqch. à qqu., *steal from.*
emprunter qqch. à qqu., *borrow from.*
infliger qqch. à qqu., *inflict on.*
inspirer qqch. à qqu., *inspire with.*
mêler qqch. à qqch., *mingle with.*
ôter qqch. à qqu., *take away for.*
pardonner qqch. à qqu., *pardon for.*
payer qqch. à qqu., *pay for.*
penser à qqch. *or* à qqu., *think of.*
prendre, qqch. à qqu., *take from.*
pourvoir à qqch., *provide for.*
procurer qqch. à qqu., *procure for.*
prodiguer qqch. à qqu., *lavish on.*
reprocher qqch. à qqu., *reproach with.*
souhaiter qqch. à qqu., *wish.*
voler qqch. à qqu., *steal from.*

5. Many verbs have a double construction with varying meaning:

Ils jouent **aux** cartes.	They are playing cards.
Elle joue **du** piano.	She is playing the piano.

Such verbs are:

abuser qqu., *deceive.*
" de qqch., *misuse.*
assister qqu., *help.*
" à qqch., *be present at, witness.*
concourir à qqch., *contribute to.*
" pour qqch., *compete for.*
convenir à qqu., *suit.*
" de qqch., *agree about.*
croire, qqu., *or* qqch., *believe.*
" à, en, *believe in.*
demander qqu. *or* qqch., *ask after.*
" qqch. à qqu., *ask for* (*from, of*).
hériter de qqu., *be heir of.*
" de qqch., *inherit.*
jouer qqu., *deceive.*
" d'un instrument, *play on an instrument.*
" à un jeu, *play* (*at*) *a game.*
manquer qqu. *or* qqch., *miss.*
" de, *lack.*
" à, *fail in.*
penser à, *think of* (*about*).
penser de, *have opinion of.*
prétendre qqch., *assert.*
" à, *aspire to.*
servir, *serve* (tr. and intr.).
" de, *serve as.*
" à, *be useful for.*
se servir de, *make use of.*
suppléer qqu., *take the place of*
" à qqch., *complete.*
toucher qqu. *or* qqch., *touch.*
" de l'argent, *draw money.*
" à, *meddle with, be near to.*
" d'un instrument, *play an instrument* (keyed).
user qqch., *wear out.*
" de, *make use of.*
en user de, *deal, act.*
veiller qqu., *watch over, nurse.*
" à qqch., *attend to, watch over.*
" sur qqu., *watch over.*
etc.

297. Position. Objects and prepositional complements regularly follow the verb, the direct object (if any) being first; but if of unequal length, the longer usually last. For position of personal pronouns, see the Pronoun.

298. Composite Complement. The various parts of a complement must be of the same grammatical value, *i.e.*, all nouns, all verbs, etc.:

Il apprend à lire et à chanter.	He learns to read and sing.
Il apprend la lecture et le chant.	He learns reading and singing.

299. Manifold Verb. Two or more verbs can govern the same complement only if alike in government:

Il aime et respecte son **oncle.**	He loves and respects his uncle.
Il aime son **oncle** et **lui** obéit.	He loves and obeys his uncle.

THE NOUN.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

300. General Rule. Nouns in French are either masculine or feminine. As an aid to memory, general rules for determining gender are given in the following sections.

301. Gender by Derivation. 1. Nouns derived from Latin masculines are regularly masculine:

Mur (L. *murum*); livre (L. *librum*); ordre (L. *ordinem*); poète (L. *poeta*).	Wall; book; order; poet.

a. Exceptions are not uncommon; Latin masculine abstracts in **-or** (accusative **-orem**) have become feminine, except masculine **honneur, déshonneur, labeur, amour:**

candeur, f. (L. *candorem*), *candour.*	erreur, f. (L. *errorem*), *error.*
*couleur, f. (L. *colorem*), *colour.*	fureur, f. (L. *furorem*), *fury.*
douleur, f. (L. *dolorem*), *pain.*	etc.

* Masculine in such phrases as 'couleur de feu,' 'couleur de rose,' etc., *e.g.*, 'ce ruban est d'un beau couleur de rose.'

2. Nouns derived from Latin feminines are regularly feminine:

Justice (L. *justitiam*); charité (L. *caritatem*); main (L. *manum*); foi (L. *fidem*).	Justice; charity; hand; faith.

3. Nouns derived from Latin neuters are regularly masculine:

Corps (L. *corpus*); fer (L. *ferrum*); or (L. *aurum*); pré (L. *pratum*); siècle (L. *sæculum*); verbe (L. *verbum*).	Body; iron; gold; meadow; century; verb.

a. More than a hundred neuter plurals in **-a** have become feminine singular in French, just as if derived from nouns in **-a** of the Latin first declension:

arme (L. *arma*), *arm.*	feuille (L. *folia*), *leaf.*	lèvre (L. *labra*), *lip.*
date (L. *data*), *date.*	graine (L. *grana*), *seed.*	œuvre (L. *opera*), *work.*
dette (L. *debita*), *debt.*	huile (L. *olea*), *oil.*	pomme (L. *poma*), *apple.*
étude (L. *studia*), *study.*	joie (L. *gaudia*), *joy.*	etc.

302. Gender by Endings. 1. Masculine are most nouns ending as follows:—

(1) In a vowel sound (not **-e** mute):

Un opéra (côté, chapeau, cheveu).	An opera (side, hat, hair).
Un parti (zéro, caillou, tissu).	A party (zero, pebble, tissue).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

guérilla, *guerilla.*	moitié, *half.*	bru, *daughter-in-law.*
gutta-percha, *gutta-percha.*	fourmi, *ant.*	glu, *bird-lime.*
polka, *polka.*	merci, *mercy.*	tribu, *tribe.*
razzia, *raid.*	foi, *faith.*	vertu, *virtue.*
tombola, *charity-lottery.*	loi, *law.*	eau, *water.*
véranda, *verandah.*	paroi, *wall.*	peau, *skin.*
cité, *city.*	virago, *virago.*	etc.

Further, abstracts in **-té, -tié**:

amitié, *friendship.*	liberté, *liberty.*	santé, *health.*
charité, *charity.*	pitié, *pity.*	etc.

(2) In a consonant:

Le sac (pied, joug, sol, nez, temps).	The sack (foot, yoke, soil, nose, time).

a. Feminine exceptions are :

clef, *key.*	chair, *flesh.*	vis, *screw.*	croix, *cross.*
nef, *ship, nave.*	cour, *court.*	dent, *tooth.*	faux, *scythe.*
soif, *thirst.*	cuiller, *spoon.*	dot, *dower.*	noix, *walnut.*
faim, *hunger.*	mer, *sea.*	forêt, *forest.*	paix, *peace.*
façon, *fashion.*	tour, *tower.*	gent, *tribe.*	perdrix, *partridge.*
fin, *end.*	brebis, *sheep.*	mort, *death.*	poix, *pitch.*
leçon, *lesson.*	fois, *time.*	nuit, *night.*	toux, *cough.*
main, *hand.*	oasis, *oasis.*	part, *part, share.*	voix, *voice.*
rançon, *ransom.*	souris, *mouse.*	chaux, *lime.*	etc.

Further, nouns in **-son, -ion** and most abstracts in **-eur** (cf. § 301, *a*) :

chanson, *song.*	nation, *nation.*	faveur, *favour.*
maison, *house.*	occasion, *occasion.*	fureur, *fury.*
raison, *reason.*	possession, *possession.*	peur, *fear.*
trahison, *treason.*	couleur, *colour.*	etc.

(3) In **-acle, -age, -asme, -ège, -ème, -isme, -tère :**

Le spectacle (voyage, sarcasme, collège, diadème, magnétisme, mystère).	The spectacle (journey, sarcasm, college, diadem, magnetism, mystery).

a. The following feminines in **-age** should be noted :

cage, *cage.*	nage, *swimming.*	plage, *beach.*
image, *image.*	page, *page* (of a book).	rage, *rage.*

2. Feminine are most nouns ending as follows :—

(1) In **-e** preceded by a vowel or double consonant :

Une année (vie, vue, raie, soie, roue, pluie, famille, flamme, couronne, tristesse, botte).	A year (life, sight, streak, silk, wheel, rain, family, flame, crown, sadness, boot).

(2) In **-ace, -ade, -ance, -ence, -ense, -ière, -oire, -ude, -ure :**

La préface (salade, constance, présence, défense, lumière, histoire, habitude, culture).	The preface (salad, constancy, presence, defence, light, history, habit, culture).

303. Gender by Meaning. 1. Names of male beings are usually masculine, and names of female beings feminine :

Un homme ; une femme.	A man ; a woman.
Un bœuf ; une vache.	An ox ; a cow.

a. Most nouns denoting professions, *e.g.*, **docteur**, *doctor*, **écrivain**, *writer*, **imprimeur**, *printer*, etc., and a few nouns lacking a feminine form, *e.g.*, **ange**, *angel*, **témoin**, *witness*, etc., remain masculine when applied to females:

Cette dame est un auteur distingué.	That lady is a celebrated authoress.
Marie est un ange.	Mary is an angel.

b. Some names of lower animals are masculine only, *e.g.*, **éléphant**, *elephant*, **hibou**, *owl;* others are feminine only, *e.g.*, **fourmi**, *ant*, **souris**, *mouse;* ambiguity may be avoided by adding **mâle** or **femelle**:

Un éléphant mâle (femelle).	A he- (she-) elephant.

c. Some nouns are feminine only, whether applied to males or females:

caution, *surety.*	personne, *person.*	vedette, *scout.*
connaissance, *acquaintance.*	pratique, *customer.*	victime, *victim.*
dupe, *dupe.*	recrue, *recruit.*	vigie, *look-out man.*
ganache, *blockhead.*	sentinelle, *sentinel.*	etc.

2. The following are masculine:—

(1) Names of cardinal points and winds:

Le nord ; le sud ; le zéphyr.	The north ; the south ; the zephyr.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

bise, *north wind.*	mousson, *monsoon.*	tramontane, *north wind.*
brise, *breeze.*		

(2) Names of seasons, months, days of the week:

Le printemps ; octobre ; lundi.	Spring ; October ; Monday.

(3) Names of countries not ending in **-e**:

Le Canada ; le Dauphiné ; le Chili.	Canada ; Dauphiny ; Chili.

(4) Most names of mountains not ending in **-es**, and most names of rivers:

Le Hartz ; le Jura.	The Hartz mountains ; Mount Jura.
Les Apennins.	The Apennines.
Le Volga ; le Rhône ; le Rhin.	The Volga ; the Rhone ; the Rhine.

But fem.: Les Alpes (Pyrénées, Vosges, etc.).

a. The rivers of France in **-e** are nearly all feminine:

La Seine, la Loire, etc.	The Seine, the Loire, etc.

(5) Names of trees and shrubs :

Le chêne ; le bouleau ; le pommier. The oak ; the birch ; the apple-tree.

a. Feminine exceptions are :

aubépine, *hawthorn.* épine, *thorn.* vigne, *vine.*
bourdaine, *buckthorn.* hièble, *dwarf-elder.* viorne, *wild clematis.*
bruyère, *heath.* ronce, *bramble.* etc.

(6) Names of weights and measures of the metrical system :

Un mètre (gramme, litre, etc.). A metre (gramme, litre, etc.).

(7) Names of metals and chemicals :

Le fer (or, cuivre, argent, sulphate). Iron (gold, copper, silver, sulphate).

a. Feminine exceptions are :

fonte, *cast-iron.* tôle, *sheet-iron.*

(8) Words and phrases not nouns when used as nouns :

Le beau ; le blanc ; le français. The beautiful ; white ; French.
Un a ; un mais ; un ouï-dire. An 'a' ; a 'but' ; a rumour.
Le derrière de la tête. The back of the head.

a. Adjectives referring to concrete objects have the gender of the noun understood :

Une belle (*sc.* dame, femme, etc.). A beauty.
Une capitale (*sc.* ville, lettre). A capital.

b. The names of the letters of the alphabet, as given in § 4, are all masculine, except **f, h, l, m, n, r, s** :

Un a ; un bé ; une effe. An 'a' ; a 'b' ; an 'f.'

3. The following are feminine :—

(1) Names of countries in **-e** :

La France (Asie, Normandie). France (Asia, Normandy).

a. Masculine exceptions are :

le Bengale, *Bengal.* le Mexique, *Mexico.* le Pélopon(n)èse, *Peloponnesus,*
le Hanovre, *Hanover.* le Maine, *Maine* (in Fr.). etc.

(2) Most names of cities and towns, especially in **-e, -es** :

Rome ; Athènes ; Tyr ; Ilion. Rome ; Athens ; Tyre ; Ilium.

a. Masculine exceptions are :

le Caire, *Cairo.* Londres, *London.* Paris, *Paris.*
le Havre, *Havre.* Versailles, *Versailles.* etc.

Notes.—1. Any name of a town or city is masculine as a collective : 'Tout Rome le sait,' 'All Rome knows it.' 2. In case of doubt as to the gender, the name may always be preceded by **la ville de** = 'the town (city) of.'

(3) Names of holidays, **fête de** being understood:

La Saint-Martin; la mi-juin.	Martinmas; mid-June.

a. Observe:

Noël, m. (la Noël, la fête de Noël).	Christmas.

(4) Names of arts, sciences, trades:

La peinture (chimie, librairie).	Painting (chemistry, book-trade).

a. Principal exception:

le dessin, *drawing.*

304. Nouns of Double Gender. 1. Some nouns denoting persons, mostly in **-e**, and adjectives in **-e**, when so used, are either masculine or feminine:

Un (une) artiste; un (une) élève.	An artist; a pupil.
Un (une) malade; un (une) rebelle.	A patient; a rebel.

Such nouns are:

aide, *assistant.*	*enfant, *child.*	propriétaire, *owner.*
camarade, *comrade.*	esclave, *slave.*	pupille, *ward.*
compatriote, *compatriot.*	locataire, *tenant.*	etc.

*Always masculine in the plural.

2. The meaning of some nouns varies with the gender:

Un critique; **une** critique.	A critic; a criticism.
Le mode; **la** mode.	The mode, mood (gram.); the fashion.

Such nouns are:

	Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.
aide,	*assistant,*	*assistant, help.*	page,	*page,*	*page* (of a book).
aune,	*alder,*	*ell.*	pendule,	*pendulum,*	*clock.*
crêpe,	*crape,*	*pancake.*	poêle,	*stove, pall,*	*frying-pan.*
critique,	*critic,*	*criticism.*	politique,	*politician,*	*politics.*
garde,	*guard* (mil.), *keeper,*	*keeper, body of troops, watch, hilt.*	poste,	*position,*	*post-office.*
			somme,	*sleep, nap,*	*sum.*
guide,	*guide,*	*rein.*	souris,	*smile,*	*mouse.*
livre,	*book,*	*pound.*	statuaire,	*sculptor,*	*sculpture.*
manche,	*handle,*	*sleeve.*	tour,	*turn, trick,*	*tower.*
mémoire,	*memorandum,*	*memory.*	trompette,	*trumpeter,*	*trumpet.*
merci,	*thanks,*	*mercy, pity.*	vapeur,	*steamer,*	*steam.*
mode,	*mode, mood,*	*fashion.*	vase,	*vase,*	*slime, mud.*
moule,	*mould,*	*mussel.*	voile,	*veil,*	*sail.*
mousse,	*cabin-boy,*	*moss.*	etc.		
office,	*service,*	*larder.*			

3. The following nouns are either masculine or feminine, with identical or closely related meaning :—

a. **Après-midi** = 'afternoon' and **automne** = 'autumn' are usually masculine, sometimes feminine.

b. **Amour** (m.) = 'love,' 'loved object,' 'passion,' 'amour'; **amour** (f. s. poet.) = 'passion,' 'amour'; **amours** (f. pl.) = 'passion,' 'amours.'

c. **Délice** = 'delight' and **orgue** = 'organ' (music) are masculine in singular and feminine in plural.

d. **Hymne** (m.) = 'hymn,' 'song of praise'; **hymne** (f.) = '(church) hymn.'

e. **Couple** (m.) = 'couple,' 'pair' (joined by affection, sentiment, etc.); **couple** (f.) = 'couple,' 'two' (two like objects taken together):

Un couple d'amants.	A pair of lovers.
Une couple d'œufs.	Two (a couple of) eggs.
Note: Une **paire** de gants, etc.	A pair of gloves, etc.

f. **Pâque** *or* **pâques** (m. s.) = 'Easter'; **pâques fleuries** (f. pl.) = 'Palm Sunday' (so also in other phrases); **pâque** (f.) = 'passover.'

g. **Orge** (f.) = 'barley' is masculine in **orge mondé (perlé)** = 'pot- (pearl-) barley.'

h. **Foudre** (f.) = 'thunderbolt' is sometimes masculine in poetry or elevated prose; **foudre** (m.) in **le foudre de Jupiter** = 'Jove's thunderbolt' and in figurative expressions, *e.g.*, **un grand foudre de guerre** = 'a great warrior.'

i. **Œuvre** (f.) = 'work,' 'works,' is sometimes masculine in elevated style; **œuvre** (m. s.) = 'works' (collectively of an engraver or musician); **le grand œuvre** = 'the philosopher's stone'; **le gros œuvre** = 'heavy stone-work'; **de l'œuvre** (m.) = 'silver-lead.'

j. **Gens** (pl. m. or f.) = 'people,' 'persons,' etc. Attributive adjectives are feminine when preceding, and masculine when following **gens,** but predicatives, before or after, are masculine. 'All' is translated by **toutes** only when attributive and separated from **gens** by an adjective variable for the feminine; otherwise by **tous:**

De bonnes gens.	Good people.
Les vieilles gens sont malheureux.	Old people are unhappy.

Les petites gens et les grands.	The small people and the great.
Merci, bonnes gens, merci.	Thanks, good people, thanks.
Ces gens sont heureux.	Those people are happy.
Toutes les vieilles gens.	All the old people.
Tous les gens.	All the people.
But : Tous les habiles gens.	All the clever people.
Tous ces gens-ci.	All these people.
Tous sont de bonnes gens.	All are good people.
Les gens sont tous ici.	The people are all here.

NOTES.—1. A pronoun to which **gens** is antecedent is masculine : 'Les gens **qui** sont **venus**,' 'The people who have come.' 2. **Gens** in expressions like **gens de robe** = 'lawyers' and in **jeunes gens** = 'young men' is always masculine.

305. Gender of Compound Nouns. 1. Compound nouns made up of a verb + a governed noun are regularly masculine :

Un cure-dents ; un porte-plume.	A toothpick ; a pen-holder.
Un tire-bouchon ; un portefeuille.	A corkscrew ; a portfolio.

a. Occasionally they are feminine :

Une perce-neige.	A snowdrop.

2. The gender of other compounds is regularly that of the noun, when only one noun is present, or of the principal noun, in case there are two :

Une eau-forte.	An etching.
Une mappe-monde.	A map of the world.
La fête-dieu.	Corpus Christi day.

306. Formation of the Feminine. Most nouns denoting living beings distinguish the masculine and feminine as follows :—

1. Some by a different word :

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
bœuf, *ox.*	vache.	mari, *husband.*	femme.
bouc, *he-goat.*	chèvre.	oncle, *uncle.*	tante.
coq, *cock.*	poule.	parrain, *god-father.*	marraine.
frère, *brother.*	sœur.	porc, *pig.*	truie.
homme, *man.*	femme.	etc.	etc.

a. The feminine form is often obviously cognate:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
ambassadeur, *ambassador.*	ambassadrice.	gouverneur, *tutor.*	gouvernante.
canard, *drake.*	cane.	loup, *wolf.*	louve.
*chanteur, *singer.*	cantatrice.	mulet, *mule.*	mule.
cochon, *hog.*	coche.	*procureur, *proxy.*	procuratrice.
compagnon, *companion.*	compagne.	serviteur, *servant.*	servante.
dindon, *turkey-cock.*	dinde.	vieillard, *old man.*	vieille.
empereur, *emperor.*	impératrice.	etc.	etc.

*Also in -euse, see § 337, 2, (2), *a.*

2. Some by adding **-esse** to the last consonant:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
abbé, *abbot.*	abbesse.	ogre, *ogre.*	ogresse.
âne, *ass.*	ânesse.	pair, *peer.*	pairesse.
chanoine, *canon.*	chanoinesse.	pauvre, *pauper.*	pauvresse.
comte, *count.*	comtesse.	prêtre, *priest.*	prêtresse.
diable, *devil.*	diablesse.	prince, *prince.*	princesse.
drôle, *rogue.*	drôlesse.	suisse, *Swiss.*	suissesse.
druide, *druid.*	druidesse.	tigre, *tiger.*	tigresse.
hôte, *host.*	hôtesse.	traître, *traitor.*	traîtresse.
maître, *master.*	maîtresse.	etc.	etc.

a. So also the following, but with changes in the stem:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
dieu, *god.*	déesse.	*chasseur, *huntsman.*	chasseresse.
doge, *doge.*	dogaresse.	défendeur, *defendant.*	défenderesse.
duc, *duke.*	duchesse.	*demandeur, *plaintiff.*	demanderesse.
larron, *thief.*	larronnesse.	enchanteur, *enchanter.*	enchanteresse.
nègre, *negro.*	négresse.	pécheur, *sinner.*	pécheresse.
prophète, *prophet.*	prophétesse.	*vendeur, *seller* (law).	venderesse.
bailleur, *lessor.*	bailleresse.	vengeur, *avenger.*	vengeresse.

*Also in -euse, see § 337, 2, (2), *a.*

3. A few nouns take **-ine**:

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
tsar, *czar.*	tsarine.	Philippe, *Philip.*	Philippine.
héros, *hero.*	héroïne.	etc.	etc.

4. Most other nouns follow the analogy of adjectives of like termination, and will be noted under the Adjective.

NUMBER OF NOUNS.

307. General Rule. The plural of a noun is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Roi(s); reine(s); jardin(s).	King(s); queen(s); garden(s).

308. Principal Exceptions. The following are the principal exceptions to the above rule:—

1. Nouns in **-s, -x, -z** remain unchanged in the plural; so also invariable words when used as nouns:

Le bras; la voix; le nez.	The arm; the voice; the nose.
Les bras; les voix; les nez.	The arms; the voices; the noses.
Les **oui** et les **non**; les **on dit**.	The ayes and noes; the rumours.
Plusieurs **peu** font un beaucoup.	Many littles make a 'muckle.'

2. Nouns in **-au, -eu**, and seven in **-ou**, take **-x**:

Noyau(**x**); château(**x**); jeu(**x**), vœu(**x**).	Kernel(s); castle(s); game(s); vow(s).

The seven nouns in **-ou** are:

bijou(**x**), *jewel.*	genou(**x**), *knee.*	joujou(**x**), *toy.*
caillou(**x**), *pebble.*	hibou(**x**), *owl.*	pou(**x**), *louse.*
chou(**x**), *cabbage.*		

But: Clou(s), *nail*, sou(s), *half-penny*, etc.

3. Most nouns in **-al** change **-al** to **-au**, and add **-x** as above:

Gén**é**ral; cheval; journal.	General; horse; newspaper.
Gén**é**r**aux**; chev**aux**; journ**aux**.	Generals; horses; newspapers.

a. But the following, and a few rarer ones in **-al**, are regular:

aval(s), *endorsement.*	cal(s), *callosity.*	chacal(s), *jackal.*
bal(s), *ball (for dancing).*	carnaval(s), *carnival.*	régal(s), *treat.*

4. The following in **-ail** have the plural in **-aux**:

bail (-aux), *lease.*	**travail (-aux)**, *work.*	**vitrail (-aux)**, *stained glass window.*
corail (-aux), *coral.*	**vantail (-aux)**, *folding-door.*	
soupirail (-aux), *air-hole.*	**ventail (-aux)**, *ventail.*	

But: détail(s), *detail;* éventail(s), *fan*, etc., are regular.

NOTE.—**Bestiaux** (pl.)., *cattle*, is often given as the plural of **bétail**, *cattle;* it is from an obsolete form **bestiail**, parallel to **bétail**.

5. **Gent** = 'race,' 'tribe,' has the plural **gens** = 'people,' etc.

NOTE.—A similar omission of **t** in the plural of nouns in **-ant**, **-ent**, now archaic, is maintained in the *Revue des deux Mondes*, *e.g.*, '*enfans*' for '*enfants*.'

309. Double Plurals. The following have two plural forms, mostly with varying meaning:

aïeul (aïeux), *ancestor*.
" (aïeuls), *grandfather*.
ail (aulx), *garlic*.
" (ails), "
ciel (cieux), *sky, heaven, climate*.
" (ciels), *bed-tester, sky (in painting), roof (of a quarry)*.
œil (yeux), *eye*.
" (œils-) in compounds, *e.g.* œils-de-bœuf, *oval windows*.
pal (paux), *pale, stake*.
" (pals), " "
travail (travaux), *work*.
" (travails), *report (of a minister, etc.), brake (for horse-shoeing)*.

Obs.: The **-x** plural regularly has the literal meaning of the word.

310. Foreign Nouns. Nouns of foreign origin take **-s** usually only when fully naturalized, but usage varies greatly (see dictionary):

a. Partial list of variable foreign nouns:

accessit(**s**), *honourable mention*.
album(**s**), *album*.
alibi(**s**), *alibi*.
bifteck(**s**), *beefsteak*.
bill(**s**), *bill*.
duo(**s**), *duo*.
jury(**s**), *jury*.
opéra(**s**), *opera*.
pensum(**s**), *task*.
toast(**s**), *toast*.
tramway(**s**), *street-railway*.
vivat(**s**), *hurrah*.
etc.

b. Partial list of invariable foreign nouns:

amen.	item.	interim.	post-scriptum.	vade mecum.
déficit.	in-folio.	magnificat.	requiem.	veto.
facsimile.	in-octavo.	nota bene.	Te Deum.	etc.

c. A few Italian nouns retain their plural in **i**:

dilletant**e**(**-i**), *dilletante*.
librett**o**(**-i**), *libretto*.
sopran**o**(**-i**), *soprano*.
lazzaron**e**(**-i**), *beggar*.
quintett**o**(**-i**), *quintette*.
etc.

311. Compound Nouns. The only components which take a plural sign are nouns and adjectives. The following are special rules:—

1. Compounds without hyphen are treated as one word, and follow the general rules:

Portemanteau(**x**); grand'mère(**s**). Valise(**s**); grandmother(**s**).

a. Exceptions are:

bon(**s**)homme(**s**), *goodman, etc.*
gentil(**s**)homme(**s**), *nobleman*.
monsieur (**mes**sieurs), Mr., sir, etc.
madame (**mes**dames), *madam, Mrs.*
mademoiselle (**mes**demoiselles), *Miss.*
monseigneur (**mes**seigneurs), *my lord.*

2. When placed in juxtaposition and connected by a hyphen, nouns and adjectives are variable:

Chef(s)-lieu(x); chou(x)-fleur(s); grand(s)-père(s). — County-town(s); cauliflower(s); grandfather(s).

a. **Demi-** is invariable in compounds.

Des **demi**-heures. — Half-hours.

b. Further exceptions are:

blanc-seing(s), *signature in blank.*
chevau-léger(s), *light-horseman.*
terre-plein(s), *platform.*
etc.

3. Of two nouns joined by preposition and hyphens, the first only is variable:

Arc(s)-en-ciel; chef(s)-d'œuvre. — Rainbow; masterpiece.

a. The preposition **de** is sometimes understood:

bain(s)-marie, *water-bath.*
hôtel(s)-dieu, *hospital.*
timbre(s)-poste, *postage-stamp.*
etc.

b. The following are invariable, since the idea conveyed by their plural does not properly belong to the first component simply:

coq-à-l'âne, *cock-and-bull story.*
pied-à-terre, *temporary lodging.*
pot-au-feu, *beef and soup.*
tête-à-tête, *private interview.*

4. A noun with preceding invariable component is usually variable:

Anglo-Saxon(s); avant-garde(s); tire-bouchon(s); vice-roi(s); bouche-trou(s); — Anglo-Saxon; vanguard; corkscrew; viceroy; stop-gap.

a. But the final noun remains invariable when the plural idea does not properly belong to it:

abat-jour, *lamp-shade.*
coupe-gorge, *cut-throat place.*
crève-cœur, *heart-break.*
contre-poison, *antidote.*
gagne-pain, *means of living.*
perce-neige, *snow-drop.*
prie-dieu, *praying-stool.*
boute-en-train, *jolly fellow.*
réveille-matin, *alarm-clock.*
serre-tête, *head-band.*
etc.

b. On the other hand, a final noun of clearly plural sense retains **-s** in the singular:

un (des) casse-noisette**s**, *nut-cracker.*
un (des) cure-dent**s**, *tooth-pick.*
un (des) porte-clef**s**, *turnkey.*
etc.

5. Invariable words, such as verb, adverb, preposition, etc., are invariable in compounds:

Des on dit; des passe-partout. — Rumours; master-keys.

a. **Garde-** is usually variable in compounds denoting persons, and invariable in those denoting things:

Des gardes-malades.	Sick-nurses.
But: Des garde-robes.	Wardrobes.

312. Plural of Proper Nouns. 1. Names of persons or families are usually invariable in the plural:

Les deux Racine.	The two Racines.
Les Corneille et les Racine de la scène.	The Corneilles and Racines of the stage (*i.e.*, Corneille, Racine, and others like them).
Les Duval sont arrivés.	(The) Duvals have come.

a. A few Latin names, originally plural in form, and certain well-known historical names of families and dynasties, take **-s**:

Les Bourbon**s**.	Les Gracque**s**.	Les Pharaon**s**.	Les Tudor**s**.
Les César**s**.	Les Guise**s**.	Les Scipion**s**.	etc.
Les Condé**s**.	Les Horace**s**.	Les Stuart**s**.	

b. Names of persons used as common nouns to denote 'persons like' or 'works by' those named are often variable, but usage is not fixed:

Les Corneilles sont rares.	Corneilles are rare.
J'ai vu deux Raphaëls.	I saw two Raphaels.

But: Les Hamlet; les La Fontaine; les Goethe; les Washington, etc.

2. Names of places take **-s** when the idea is plural:

Les Indes; les Vosges.	The Indies; the Vosges.
Les deux Romes.	The two Romes (*i.e.*, the old and new).

CASE RELATION AND AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

313. Case Relations. The noun in French does not vary in form to denote case; it is used as follows:—

1. With verbs, as subject, object, predicate:

Le père aime son fils.	The father loves his son.
Jean est devenu soldat.	John has become a soldier.

2. In appositions, and with adjectival force:

Henri IV, roi de France.	Henry IV., King of France.
Un roi enfant.	A child king.

3. After prepositions:

J'ai parlé à son père.	I have spoken to his father.

4. Absolutely, generally with adverbial force:

Le dîner fini, il partit.	The dinner ended, he set out.
Il était là, le chapeau à la main.	He was there, (with) his hat in his hand.
Je suis venu samedi.	I came on Saturday.
Il est resté trois heures.	He stayed three hours.
J'ai marché dix milles.	I walked ten miles.
Nous l'avons acheté dix francs.	We bought it for ten francs.

5. Vocatively:

Bonjour, mes amis.	Good morning, my friends.

314. Agreement. A predicate noun, or a noun used adjectivally, usually agrees like an adjective with the word referred to, see agreement of the Adjective:

Ils (elles) sont Allemand(e)s.	They are Germans.
La reine mère.	The queen mother.

THE ARTICLE.

315. The Indefinite Article.

Masc.	Fem.
un, a (an).	une, a (an).

316. The Definite Article.

Sing.	Plur.
Masc. le (l') } the. Fem. la (l') }	Masc. or Fem. les, the.

Obs.: For the forms in parenthesis, see §19, 1.

317. Contractions. The prepositions **de** and **à + le** and **les,** are always contracted as follows:

de + le = **du.**	à + le = **au.**
de + les = **des.**	à + les = **aux.**

NOTES.—1. No contraction takes place with **la, l'.** 2. Formerly **en+les** was contracted to **ès**, a form still used in academical titles, *e.g.*, 'Bachelier ès lettres,' 'Bachelor of Arts.'

318. Agreement and Repetition. The article agrees in gender and number with its noun, and is regularly repeated (as also **de, à**) before each noun or adjective denoting a distinctive object:

Une maison et un jardin.	A house and garden.
Le flux et le reflux.	High and low tide.
Au bon et au mauvais côté.	On the good and bad side.
Les bons et les mauvais.	The good and the bad.
Des hommes ou des femmes.	Men or women.
But: Le bon et pieux prêtre.	The kind and pious priest.
Le delta ou basse Égypte.	The Delta or Lower Egypt.

a. The definite article is not repeated when a single adjective precedes nouns joined by **et**:

Les principales villes et provinces de la France.	The principal towns and provinces of France.

b. Singular adjectives in apposition to a plural noun omit the article:

Les langues française et anglaise. The French and English languages.
Or: La langue française et la langue anglaise.
La langue française et l'anglaise.

c. A few expressions of collective force, like the following, are permissible, but are either not obligatory or are confined to set expressions:

Les père et mère.	The parents.
Les lundi et mardi.	(On) Mondays and Tuesdays.
Les trois et quatre avril.	The third and fourth of April.
Les officiers et soldats.	The officers and soldiers.
École des ponts et chaussées.	School of bridges and roads.

d. For the repetition of **le, la, les** with the superlative, see Comparison of Adjectives.

USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS.

319. Use in General. French and English agree to a considerable extent in the use of the article; differences are noted below.

320. The Indefinite Article. 1. Its use corresponds in general with that of English 'a,' 'an'; its plural is the partitive **des** (§323):

Un homme; une femme; **des** gens.	A man; a woman; people.

2. Contrary to English usage, the indefinite article also commonly stands before an abstract noun used partitively with an adjective or an adjectival adjunct:

Il montra un soin extrême.	He showed extreme care.
Il a une patience à toute épreuve.	He has patience equal to anything.
Elle jouit d'une bonne santé.	She enjoys good health.
C'est une triste nouvelle.	It is sad news.

a. The adjective or complementary clause depending on such a noun may be understood:

Voilà une patience!	There is patience for you!
J'étais d'une humeur...	I was in a temper...
Un garçon d'une raison...	A young fellow of (splendid) intellect!

NOTE.—For several cases in which the English indefinite article is replaced by the French definite article, or *vice versâ*, or is omitted, see below.

321. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense, *i.e.*, 'in general,' 'all,' 'every,' etc., being implied with it, regularly has the definite article in French, though not usually in English:

La vie est courte.	Life is short.
Le fer et le cuivre sont utiles.	Iron and copper are useful.
J'étudie la musique.	I am studying music.
Les Français aiment la gloire.	The French love glory.
Le cheval est l'ami de l'homme.	The horse is the friend of man.
Le noir vous sied bien.	Black becomes you.
J'aime les pommes et les poires.	I like apples and pears.
Le beau et l'utile.	The beautiful and the useful.
Le boire et le manger.	Eating and drinking.

a. So also, names of languages, except after **en**; but not, however, after **parler**:

Sait-il le français?	Does he know French?
Il parle bien (le) français.	He speaks French well.
But: Dites cela en français.	Say that in French.
Parlez-vous français?	Do you speak French?

322. The Partitive Noun. A noun implying 'an undetermined quantity or number of' is said to be used partitively or in a partitive sense.

323. Partitive with Article. The partitive sense, expressed in English by the noun simply, or else the noun preceded by 'some' or 'any,' is regularly expressed in French by the noun preceded by **de** + the definite article:

Du pain trempé dans du vin.	(Some) bread dipped in wine.
A-t-il des amis?	Has he (any) friends?
Des enfants poussaient des cris désespérés.	Some children were uttering terrible cries.
Il est des gens qui le croient.	There are people who believe it.
C'est du Carlyle pur.	That is pure Carlyleism.

NOTE.—This use of **de**+the definite article, or even of **de** alone (see next section), is often called the 'partitive article'; it is entirely identical in form with **de**+the article in other senses, *e.g.*, 'Je vends **du** blé,' 'I sell wheat'; 'Quel est le prix **du** blé?,' 'What is the price of the wheat?'

324. Omission of Article. The partitive sense is expressed by **de** alone + the noun as follows:—

1. When an adjective precedes the noun; so also, when a noun is understood after an adjective:

Avez-vous **de** bon papier?	Have you any good paper?
Donnez-moi **de** ces plumes-là.	Give me some of those pens.
J'ai **de** vos livres.	I have some of your books.
De bon vin et **de** mauvais (*sc.* vin).	Good wine and bad.
De gros livres et **de** petits (*sc.* livres).	Big books and little ones.
But: **Des** soldats français.	French soldiers.
J'ai **du** pain blanc.	I have white bread.

a. The article is not omitted when the noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Du bon papier qu'il a acheté.	Some of the good paper he bought.

z de **livres.**	Enough books (*or* books enoug
milliers d'étoiles.	Thousands of stars.
e de gens assemblés !	What a number of people assembl

a. Analogous to the above are expressions like the following :

Trois jours de marche.	Three days' march.
Cent soldats de tués.	A hundred soldiers killed.
Quelque chose (rien) de bon.	Something (nothing) good.

b. **Bien** = 'beaucoup' regularly has **de** + the definite article :

ien **de** l'argent ; bien **du** monde.	Much money ; many people.
'en **des** gens le croient.	Many people think so.
t : Bien **d'**autres.	Many others.

Note.—**Bien** in other senses does not take **de** : 'J'ai bien faim,' 'I am very hungry.'

c. **La plupart** = 'most,' 'the greater part,' etc., has **de** + the definite rticle :

a plupart **des** hommes.	Most men.
a plupart **du** temps.	Most of the time.

d. Expressions of quantity or number with a distinctive adjunct **de** + the definite article ; so also, **beaucoup**, **peu**, etc., absolutely :

ne livre **du** thé de ce marchand.	A pound of this tradesman's tea.
eaucoup **des** Juifs de ce pays.	Many of the Jews of that country.

2. After a verb requiring **de** before its complement, and in rases, adjectival or adverbial, formed from **de** + a noun :

de pain (not 'de du pain').	He lives on bread.
nquait d'argent.	He lacked money.
it couvert de plaies.	He was covered with wounds.
robe de soie.	A silk dress.
nme de génie.	A man of genius.
urse pleine d'or.	A purse full of gold.

.—1. In both cases (§ 325, 1, 2) the disappearance of the partitive **de** is caused oincidence with a governing **de**. 2. The negative construction (§ 324, 2) is really el, the particles **pas**, **point**, etc., being etymologically nouns.

26. **General and Partitive Sense.** The general sense a noun (§321) is to be carefully distinguished from the itive sense (§322) :

iseaux ont des ailes.	Birds have wings.
ommes sont des animaux.	Men are animals.

.The article is not omitted when adjective and noun are indiv: ense, *i.e.*, when forming a real or a virtual compound:

s grands-pères ; des petits-fils.	Grandfathers ; grandchildren.
s petits pois ; du bon sens.	Green peas ; common sense.
es jeunes gens ; de la bonne foi.	Young men ; honesty.

c. Familiarly, the article is often used contrary to the rule:

Du bon vin ; **du** vrai bonheur.	Good wine ; true happiness.

2. After a general negation, implying non-existence of the object in question:

Il n'a pas de montre.	He has no (not any) watch.
.. n'ai point de livres.	I have no (not any) books.
Sans avoir d'argent.	Without having (any) money.
Il ne fit pas de remarques.	He made no remarks.
Pas d'argent et pas d'amis.	No money and no friends.

3. But the article is not omitted, the negation being no longer general:

a. When the noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Je n'ai plus **du** vin de cette année.	I have no more of this year's wi
Je n'ai pas **de l'**argent pour le gaspiller.	I have no money to waste (=I ha money, but not to waste).

b. In contrasts:

Pas **du** lait, mais **du** thé.	Not milk, but tea.

c. In negative interrogation implying affirmative answer:

N'avez-vous pas **des** amis, **de la** santé, **de l'**influence ?	Have you not friends, healtl fluence ?

325. Omission of the Partitive Sign. The pa sense is expressed by the noun simply, when the prep **de** forms an essential part of the governing expres thus:—

1. In expressions of quantity or number:

Une livre de thé (noix).	A pound of tea (nuts).
Un morceau de papier.	A piece of paper.
Une foule de gens.	A crowd of people.
Peu de temps ; beaucoup d'amis.	Little time ; many friends.

327. Article with Titles. A title of dignity or profession, preceding a proper name, regularly takes the definite article, except in direct address:

La reine Victoria est aimée.	Queen Victoria is beloved.
Le docteur Ribot est arrivé.	Doctor Ribot has come.
Qu'est-ce que le père Daru dit?	What does Father Daru say?
But: Bonjour, docteur Ribot.	Good morning, Doctor Ribot.

a. So also, when such title is preceded by a title of courtesy (**monsieur, madame,** etc.), whether in speaking to or in speaking of the person:

Bonjour, monsieur le docteur.	Good morning, doctor.
Monsieur le président l'a dit.	The president said so.

b. A preceding attributive adjective may have the force of a title:

La petite Claire; le gros Robert.	Little Clara; big Robert.

328. Article for Possessive. The definite article is commonly used with the force of a possessive adjective, when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il a perdu la vie.	He has lost his life.
Il avait le chapeau sur la tête.	He had his hat on his head.

a. The use of an indirect pronoun object + the definite article often avoids ambiguity:

Le courage **lui** manqua.	His courage failed **(him)**.
Il lui a arraché les yeux.	He tore out his eyes.
Il s'est fait mal à la tête.	He hurt his head.

b. Possessive force appears also in **avoir mal (froid, chaud,** etc.) + the definite article followed by a noun denoting part of the person; similarly, in phrases of personal description made up of **avoir** + the definite article + a noun + an adjective:

J'ai mal à la tête.	I have a headache (my head aches).
Il a mal aux yeux.	He has sore eyes (his eyes, etc.).
Il a froid aux pieds.	He has cold feet (his feet, etc.).
Il a la tête grosse (*or* une grosse tête).	He has a large head.
Il a les bras longs (*or* de longs bras).	He has long arms.
Le chêne a l'écorce rude.	The oak has (a) rough bark.

329. Article Distributively. 1. The definite article with distributive force replaces English 'a' of weight, measure, number, when indicating price:

Deux francs **la** livre (le mètre).	Two francs a pound (a metre).
Des œufs (à) dix sous **la** douzaine.	Eggs at ten cents a dozen.
Des poires (à) un sou **la** pièce.	Pears at a cent apiece.

a. Otherwise **par** is generally used with price:

Cinq francs par jour.	Five francs a (per) day.
Cent francs par tête.	A hundred francs a (per) head.
Trois francs par leçon.	Three francs a (per) lesson.

2. The definite article is also used distributively with names of days:

Il vient **le** dimanche.	He comes (on) Sundays.
Le bateau part tous les lundis.	The boat goes every Monday.

330. Omission of the Article. The article, whether definite, indefinite, or partitive, is frequently omitted. This takes place:—

1. In a large number of expressions made up of a verb + a noun:

J'ai sommeil; il a honte.	I am sleepy; he is ashamed.
Je vous demande pardon.	I beg your pardon.

Further examples are:

avoir besoin, *need.*
avoir faim, *be hungry.*
avoir bonne mine, *look well.*
avoir peur, *be afraid.*
avoir tort, *be (in the) wrong.*
courir risque, *run the risk.*
demander conseil, *ask advice.*
donner avis, *notify.*
donner ordre, *give orders.*
faire attention, *pay attention.*
faire cadeau, *make a present.*
faire faillite, *fail (in business).*
faire place, *make room.*
prendre congé, *take leave.*
prendre garde, *take care.*
rendre visite, *pay a visit.*
trouver moyen, *find means.*
etc., etc.

2. In many adjectival and adverbial phrases made up of a preposition + a noun:

D'après nature; devant témoins.	After nature; before witnesses.
Sans cause; à travers champs.	Without cause; across the fields.

Further examples are :

à bord, *on board.*	chien de berger, *shepherd's dog.*	par chemin de fer, *by railway.*
à cheval, *on horseback.*	homme de cœur, *man of feeling.*	par exemple, *for example.*
à dessein, *intentionally.*	homme de génie, *man of genius.*	par expérience, *by experience.*
à genoux, *on one's knees.*	en bateau, *in a boat.*	par terre, *by land.*
à pied, *on foot.*	en été, *in summer.*	sans crainte, *without fear.*
pot à fleurs, *flower-pot.*	en voiture, *in a carriage.*	sans raison, *without reason.*
moulin à vent, *wind-mill.*	par an, *by the year.*	sous condition, *on condition.*
après dîner, *after dinner.*		sous presse, *in the press.*
avec intérêt, *with interest.*		sur papier, *on paper.*
avec plaisir, *with pleasure.*		etc., etc.
sortir de table, *leave the table.*		

3. Before a predicate noun which qualifies in a general way the personal subject, or object, of certain verbs (cf. § 295):

Ils sont Russes.	They are Russians.
Elle est modiste.	She is a milliner.
Nous sommes médecins.	We are doctors.
Il paraît honnête homme.	He seems an honest man.
Son frère se fit soldat.	His brother became a soldier.
On l'a ordonné prêtre.	He was ordained a priest.
Soyons amis.	Let us be friends.

NOTE.—Nouns so used are commonly those of nationality, profession, title, etc., and their function is adjectival. Whenever a predicate noun denotes an individual or a species, it must have the article : 'La rose est **une** fleur,' 'The rose is a flower'; 'Les rois sont **des** hommes,' 'Kings are men.'

a. The article is not omitted when the predicate noun has a distinctive adjunct :

Son frère est **un** artiste de mérite.	His brother is an artist of merit.
Ils sont devenus **des** généraux distingués.	They became distinguished generals.

b. Observe the predicative force of a noun after **traiter + de**, **qualifier + de**:

Il m'a traité de sot.	He called me a fool.
Je qualifie cela de fraude.	I call that fraud.

c. After **c'est, ce sont**, the noun is logical subject, not predicate, and hence the article or some other determinating word must be used with it :

C'est **une** Allemande.	She is (a) German.
Ce sont **les (mes)** gants.	Those are the (my) gloves.

4. Before such an appositive noun as serves merely the purpose of a parenthetical explanation:

L'Avare, comédie de Molière.	L'Avare, a comedy by Molière.
Pâris, fils de Priam, ravit Hélène, femme de Ménélas.	Paris, the (a) son of Priam, carried off Helena, (the) wife of Menelaus.

a. Thus is explained the omission of the article in numerical titles:

Jacques premier (deux).	James the First (the Second).

b. An apposition which distinguishes, contrasts, compares, regularly has the article, as in English:

Pierre le Grand.	Peter the Great.
Racine le fils et non Racine le père.	Racine the son and not Racine the father.
Montréal la plus grande ville du Canada.	Montreal the largest city in Canada.
M. Cook, un ami de mon père.	Mr. Cook, a friend of my father.

c. Colloquially, the article is often omitted in contrasts:

Dumas père et Dumas fils.	Dumas the elder and Dumas the younger.

Note.—Pseudo-apposition (really ellipsis of **de** or of a **de** clause) is found in many cases like 'L'église (*sc.* de) Saint-Pierre,' 'St. Peter's Church'; 'des meubles (*sc.* du temps de) Louis XV,' 'Louis XV. furniture'; 'La rue (*sc.* de) Mirabeau,' Mirabeau Street.'

5. In condensed sentences, such as titles of books, enumerations, addresses, advertisements, proverbs, antithetical expressions, etc., and usually after **ni . . . ni, sans . . . ni, soit . . . soit, tant . . . que, jamais**:

Causes de la perte de Rome.	Causes of the fall of Rome.
Portrait de Napoléon III.	(A) portrait of Napoleon III.
Soldats, officiers, citoyens, tous accoururent.	Soldiers, officers, citizens, all hastened up.
Beauté, talent, esprit, tout s'use à la longue.	Beauty, talent, wit, everything wears out in the long run.
Il loge rue Richelieu.	He lives in Richelieu street.
Maison à vendre.	(A) house for sale.
Chapeaux pour hommes.	Men's hats.
Corps et âme; nuit et jour.	Body and soul; night and day.
Soit peur, soit prudence, il évita le combat.	Whether from fear or prudence, he avoided the combat.

Il n'a ni père ni mère.	He has neither father nor mother.
Sans amis ni argent.	Without friends or money.
Tant hommes que femmes.	As well men as women.
Jamais père n'a tant aimé.	Never did a father love so much.

331. Unclassified Examples. The following examples show idiomatic distinctions in the use of the article which cannot conveniently be brought under general rules:

Vous êtes **le** bienvenu.	You are welcome.
Demander (faire) **l'**aumône.	Ask (give) alms.
Avoir **le** temps.	To have time.
Aller à **l'**école (**l'**église).	To go to school (church).
Commander **le** respect.	Command respect.
Le feu s'est déclaré.	Fire broke out.
Faire **la** guerre.	Make war.
Jeter (lever) **l'**ancre.	Cast (weigh) anchor.
Garder **le** silence.	Keep silence.
Mettre **le** feu à.	To set fire to.
Sur (vers) **les** trois heures.	Towards three o'clock.
Au revoir !	Good-bye !
L'année dernière (prochaine).	Last (next) year.
La semaine (**l'**année) passée.	Last week (year).
Le vendredi saint.	Good Friday.
Le mercredi **des** cendres.	Ash Wednesday.
Le printemps, **l'**été, etc.	Spring, summer, etc.
Au printemps, en été, etc.	In spring, in summer, etc.
La (*sc.* fête de) Saint-Michel.	Michaelmas.
La (*sc.* fête de) mi-juin.	Mid-June.
La moitié de **l'**année.	(The) half (of) the year.
Les deux tiers du temps.	Two-thirds of the time.
Tous (**les**) deux ; tous (**les**) trois.	Both ; all three.
Tous **les** mois.	Every month.
Le ministre de **la** guerre.	The minister of war.
Le meilleur **des** amis.	The best of friends.
Il cria **à l'**assassin.	He cried murder.
Je l'ai dit **au** hasard.	I said it at random.
Prendre **le** deuil de quelqu'un.	Go into mourning for somebody.
Sentir **la** fumée.	Smell of smoke.
Je vous souhaite **la** bonne année.	I wish you a happy new year.
Il n'a pas **le** sou.	He is wretchedly poor.

Il est plus grand que vous de **la** tête.	He is taller than you by a head.
Un homme à **la** barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.
La belle question !	What a (fine) question !
À **la** (*sc.* mode) française.	In the French style.
S'en aller à l'anglaise.	To take French leave.
À **la** (*sc.* mode de) Henri IV.	In the style of Henry IV.
Cent (mille) ans.	**A** hundred (*a* thousand) years.
Les amis, où allez-vous ?	(My) friends, where are you going ?

THE ARTICLE WITH PROPER NOUNS.

332. Names of Persons. 1. Names of persons usually take no article, as in English :

Corneille ; George Fox.	Corneille ; George Fox.

a. The definite article is a constituent part of some surnames :

Les romans de **Le**sage.	The novels of Lesage.
Les fables de **La** Fontaine.	The fables of La Fontaine.

2. The definite article is used according to Italian analogy in the French form of a few famous Italian surnames; so also, in a very few names which are not Italian :

Le Corrège ; le poème du Tasse.	Correggio ; the poem of Tasso.
Le Poussin ; le Camoëns.	Poussin ; Camoens.

3. The article is used when the name has a distinctive adjunct, when it is plural, or when used as a common noun :

Le Christ.	Christ (= the 'Anointed').
Le Satan de Milton ; le grand Condé.	Milton's Satan ; the Great Condé.
Les Corneille et les Racine.	A Corneille, a Racine (= Corneille, Racine and others like them).
C'est un Alexandre.	He is an Alexander.
C'est du Cicéron tout pur.	It is pure Ciceronian.
J'ai lu le Télémaque.	I have read Télémaque.

4. Familiarly, often in a depreciatory sense, the definite article is not uncommon, especially with names of females :

Sans attendre la Barbette.	Without waiting for Barbara.
La Duval me l'a dit.	Duval told me so.

333. Names of Countries. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large islands, regularly take the definite article, always so when standing as subject or object of a verb:

L'Asie est un grand continent.	Asia is a large continent.
Nous aimons **le** Canada.	We love Canada.
La Normandie ; **l'**Angleterre.	Normandy ; England.

a. A few countries named after cities have no article :

Naples ; Parme ; Bade.	Naples ; Parma ; Baden.

NOTE.—Considerable variety prevails regarding the use of the article with names of islands: some require the article, whilst it is omitted with others, *e.g.*, 'La Corse,' Corsica, 'La Sicile,' Sicily, 'Cuba,' Cuba, 'Terre-Neuve,' Newfoundland. **L'île de**, preceding the name, and **l'île** in apposition, are common forms, *e.g.*, '**L'île de** Cuba,' Cuba, '**L'île** Saint-Dominique,' St. Domingo, '**Les îles** Bahama,' The Bahama Islands.

2. Before names of continents, European countries singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe, **en** denotes 'where,' 'where to,' and the article is omitted ; so also, after **de** denoting 'point of departure from' and after **de** in most adjectival phrases :

Il est en (va en) Europe.	He is in (is going to) Europe.
Il voyage en France (Portugal).	He travels in France (Portugal).
Il vient d'Espagne (Danemark).	He comes from Spain (Denmark).
Le roi de Portugal (Espagne).	The King of Portugal (Spain).
Le fer de Suède ; les vins de France.	Swedish iron ; French wines.

a. Exceptions are very rare, *e.g.*, '**au** Maine,' 'Le duc **du** Maine,' etc.

NOTE.—In an adjectival phrase, **de** denoting titular distinction, origin, description, or mere apposition usually omits the article, *e.g.*, 'le pays **de** France,' 'Le Royaume Uni de Grande-Bretagne et d'Irlande.'

3. But the definite article is not omitted, in answer to 'where?' 'where to?', or after **de** as above, when the name is plural, or has a distinctive adjunct, or denotes a masculine country outside of Europe :

Il est aux Indes.	He is in India.
Il va aux États-Unis.	He goes to the United States.
Aux Pays-Bas.	In (to) the Netherlands.
L'impératrice des Indes.	The Empress of India.
Venir des Indes (de l'Inde).	To come from India.
Dans la France méridionale.	In Southern France.

Dans l'Amérique du Nord.	In North America.
La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.	The Queen of Great Britain.
Il revient de l'Afrique australe.	He returns from South Africa.
Au Canada (Japon).	In (to) Canada (Japan).
Le Dominion du Canada. / La Puissance du Canada.	The Dominion of Canada.
Chassé de la Chine.	Expelled from China.
Le consul du Pérou.	The consul of Peru.
Le fer du Canada.	Canadian iron.

Obs.: When the definite article is used, 'where,' 'where to,' = **à** (general) or **dans** (specific).

a. In a few names like 'Asie Mineure,' 'basse Bretagne,' the adjective is no longer felt to be distinctive:

En Asie mineure.	In Asia Minor.

4. Omission of the article in the predicate, in enumerations, titles, etc., sometimes occurs (cf. §330, 5):

La Gaule est devenue France.	Gaul became France.
Espagne, Italie, Belgique, tout eût pris feu.	Spain, Italy, Belgium, all would have caught fire.

334. Names of Cities. Names of cities and towns usually have no article, unless used with a distinctive adjunct:

Londres, Paris, Québec.	London, Paris, Quebec.
À Toronto (Montréal).	To *or* in Toronto (Montreal).
But: **La** Rome de ce siècle.	(The) Rome of this century.
La Nouvelle-Orléans.	New Orleans.

a. The definite article is an essential part of several names of cities:

Le Caire; **le** Havre; **la** Havane.	Cairo; Havre; Havana.

335. Names of Mountains and Rivers. Names of mountains always, and names of rivers regularly, have the definite article:

Les Alpes; le Nil; le mont Blanc.	The Alps; the Nile; Mt. Blanc.

a. For rivers, the usage after **en, de,** is parallel with that described in § 333, 2:

De l'eau de Seine.	Seine water.
Un abordage **a eu lieu en** Seine.	A collision occurred on the Seine.

THE ADJECTIVE.

THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

336. General Rule. The feminine of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged:

M.	F.	M.	F.
grand,	grande, *tall.*	facile,	facile, *easy.*
joli,	jolie, *pretty.*	jeune,	jeune, *young.*
rusé,	rusée, *cunning.*	sincère,	sincère, *sincere.*
blessé,	blessée, *wounded.*	célèbre,	célèbre, *celebrated.*
mort,	morte, *dead.*	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination (but see § 306, 2):

M.	F.	M.	F.
marquis, *marquis,*	marquise.	artiste, *artist,*	artiste.
ami, *friend,*	amie.	camarade, *comrade,*	camarade.
cousin, *cousin,*	cousine.	concierge, *porter,*	concierge.
lapin, *rabbit,*	lapine.	malade, *patient,*	malade.

b. Adjectives in **-gu** are regular, but require the diæresis to indicate that **u** is sounded, *e.g.*, **aigu**, *sharp*, **aiguë**.

c. The circumflex in **dû** (f. due) distinguishes it from **du** = 'of the,' and disappears in the fem. (§ 214); observe also **mû** (f. mue, § 219).

d. Besides adjectives in **-e**, a very few others are invariable for the feminine, *e.g.*, **capot**, in **être capot** = 'have come to grief,' **grognon**, *grumbling*, **rococo**, *rococo*, **sterling**, *sterling*, and rarer ones.

Note.—Here also properly belongs **grand** in **grand'mère**, etc. In O. F. **grand** was masculine or feminine, but grammarians at a later date gave it the apostrophe to denote the supposed elision of **e**.

337. Special Rules. 1. Irregularities consist chiefly of changes in the stem on adding the feminine sign **-e**; thus, when **-e** is added:—

(1) Final **f** = **v**, **x** = **s**, **c** = **ch** in some, and **qu** in others, **g** = **gu**:

M.	F.	M.	F.
actif, *active,*	active.	*blanc, *white,*	blanche.
bref, *brief,*	brève.	†public, *public,*	publique.
heureux, *happy,*	heureuse.	long, *long,*	longue.

*So also: Franc, *frank*, franche; sec, *dry*, sèche.

†So also: Ammoniac (-que), *ammoniac;* caduc (-que), *decrepit;* franc (-que) *Frankish;* turc (-que), *Turkish.*

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
veuf, *widower*,	veuve.	époux, *spouse*,	épouse.	turc, *Turk*,	turque.

NOTE.—Here also belongs bailli, *bailiff* (O. F. baillif), baillive.

b. The adjectives doux, douce, *sweet*, faux, fausse, *false*, roux, rousse, *red* (of hair, etc.), retain the [s] sound in the feminine, denoted by c and ss respectively; grec, *Greek*, has feminine grecque; préfix *prefixed*, is regular.

(2) Final **-el, -eil, -ien, -on,** and usually -s, -t, double the final consonant:

M.	F.	M.	F.
cruel, *cruel*,	cruelle.	épais, *thick*,	épaisse.
pareil, *like*,	pareille.	exprès, *express*,	expresse.
ancien, *old*,	ancienne.	profès, *professed*,	professe.
bon, *good*,	bonne.	muet, *dumb*,	muette.
bas, *low*,	basse.	sot, *foolish*,	sotte.
gros, *big*,	grosse.	etc.	etc.

But: ras, rase, *flat*; gris, grise, *grey*; mat, mate, *dead, dull*; prêt, prête, *ready*; dévot, dévote, *devout*; bigot, bigote, *bigoted*; cagot, cagote, *hypocritical*; idiot, idiote, *idiotic*, and a few rarer ones.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306:

M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
mortel, *mortal*,	mortelle.	lion, *lion*,	lionne.	poulet, *chicken*,	poulette.
chien, *dog*,	chienne.	chat, *cat*,	chatte.	linot, *linnet*,	linotte.

b. A very few adjectives and nouns of other endings follow this analogy:

M.	F.	M.	F.
paysan, *peasant*,	paysanne.	gentil, *nice*,	gentille.
rouan, *roan*,	rouanne.	nul, *null*,	nulle.

NOTE.—The doubling of the final consonant in -el, -ien, -et serves to denote the required [ɛ] sound (§12, 1); a few adjectives in -et denote this [ɛ] sound by the grave accent without doubling, cf. (4) below.

(3) The following have two masculine forms, one of which doubles l for the feminine, like the above:

M.	F.	M.	F.
beau *or* bel, *fine*,	belle.	mou *or* mol, *soft*,	molle.
fou *or* fol, *mad*,	folle.	nouveau *or* nouvel, *new*,	nouvelle
jumeau *or* (O.F. jumel) *twin*,	jumelle.	vieux *or* vieil, *old*,	vieille.

Obs.: The -l form is regularly used only before a vowel or h mute; vieux before vowel is permissible, *e.g.*, 'un vieux ami' (better: 'un vieil ami').

a. Analogous are a few nouns:

M.	F.	M.	F.
chameau, *camel*,	chamelle.	jouvenceau, *young fellow*,	jouvencelle, etc.

(4) Before final **-r** and **-et** of a few adjectives **e** becomes **è** (cf. §12, 1); so also in **bref**, brève, **sec**, sèche:

M.	F.	M.	F.
cher, *dear*,	chère.	complet, *complete*,	complète.
léger, *light*,	légère.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns in **-er**:

M.	F.	M.	F.
berger, *shepherd*,	bergère.	étranger, *stranger*,	étrangère, etc.

b. The complete list of adjectives in **-et** with fem. in **-ète** is:

(in)complet, *(in)complete*.	(in)discret, *(in)discreet*.	replet, *over-stout*.
concret, *concrete*.	inquiet, *uneasy*.	secret, *secret*.

Note.—The grave accent denotes the required [ɛ] sound (§12, 1).

(5) The following feminine stems show etymological elements which have disappeared in the masculine:

M.	F.	M.	F.
coi (L. *quietus*), *quiet*,	coite.	frais (L L. *frescus*), *cool*,	fraîche.
bénin (L. *benignus*), *benign*,	bénigne.	tiers (L. *tertius*), *third*,	tierce.
favori (It. *favorito*), *favourite*,	favorite.		

2. Adjectives in **-eur** form their feminine as follows:—

(1) **Majeur, mineur, meilleur** and those in **-érieur** are regular:

M.	F.	M.	F.
majeur, *major*,	majeure.	extérieur, *exterior*,	extérieure.
meilleur, *better*,	meilleure.	supérieur, *superior*,	supérieure.
mineur, *minor*,	mineure.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
mineur, *minor*,	mineure.	prieur, *prior*,	prieure.	inférieur, *inferior*,	inférieure.

(2) Those in **-eur** with a cognate present participle in **-ant** change **-r** to **-s** and add **-e**:

M.	F.	M.	F.
causeur, *talkative*,	causeuse.	rêveur, *dreamy*,	rêveuse.
flatteur, *flattering*,	flatteuse.	trompeur, *deceitful*,	trompeuse.
menteur, *lying*,	menteuse.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see also § 306, 1, *a*, 2, *a* :

M.	F.	F.	M.
danseur, *dancer*,	danseuse.	buveur, *drinker*,	buveuse.
chanteur, *singer*,	chanteuse.	vendeur, *seller*,	vendeuse.
flatteur, *flatterer*,	flatteuse.	etc.	etc.

(3) Those in **-teur,** with no cognate present participle in **-ant,** have the feminine in **-trice :**

M.	F.	M.	F.
créa**teur**, *creative*,	créa**trice**.	accusa**teur**, *accusing*,	accusa**trice**.
direc**teur**, *directive*,	direc**trice**.	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306, 1, *a*, 2, *a* :

M,	F.	M.	F.
accusa**teur**, *accuser*,	accusa**trice**.	créa**teur**, *creator*,	créa**trice**.
ac**teur**, *actor*,	ac**trice**.	etc.	etc.

THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

338. General Rule. Most masculine adjectives and all feminines form their plural by adding **s** to the singular (cf. § 307) :

grand(s),	grande(s).	jeune(s),	jeune(s).	bas,	basse(s).
joli(s),	jolie(s).	aigu(s),	aiguë(s).	doux,	douce(s).
rusé(s),	rusée(s).	complet(s),	complète(s).	etc.	etc.

339. Special Rules. The following rules are parallel with those for the irregular plural of nouns (cf. § 308) :

1. Masculine adjectives in **-s, -x** (none in **-z**) remain unchanged :

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
bas,	bas.	gris,	gris.	faux,	faux.
épais,	épais.	soumis,	soumis.	vieux,	vieux.
frais,	frais.	doux,	doux.	heureux,	heureux.
etc.		etc.		etc.	

2. Masculine adjectives in **-eau,** and one in **-eu** take **x :**

S.	P.	S.	P.
beau,	beaux.	jumeau,	jumeaux.
nouveau,	nouveaux.	hébreu,	hébreux.

But : bleu, bleus ; feu, feus.

3. Masculine adjectives in **-al** regularly have the plural in **-aux**:

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
amical,	amicaux.	général,	généraux.	moral,	moraux.
brutal,	brutaux.	légal,	légaux.	principal,	principaux.
capital,	capitaux.	libéral,	libéraux.	rural,	ruraux.
cardinal,	cardinaux.	local,	locaux.	spécial,	spéciaux.
égal,	égaux.	loyal,	loyaux.	trivial,	triviaux.
fiscal,	fiscaux.	martial,	martiaux.	etc.	etc.

a. **Fatal** makes 'fatals;' Littré gives also **final(s)**.

b. According to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* the following have no masculine plural:

*automnal.	frugal.	*jovial.	naval.	†pascal.
*colossal.	glacial.	natal.	*partial.	

* Littré gives a plural in **-aux**.

† Littré admits a plural in **-aux**, and quotes authority for a plural in **-s**.

NOTES.—1. There are upwards of a hundred and fifty adjectives in **-al**. The *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* is silent regarding the masculine plural of some sixty of these, to nearly fifty of which, however, Littré gives a plural in **-aux**. The following have not been pronounced upon by either authority: Brumal, déloyal, diagonal, instrumental, labial, médicinal, mental, monacal, paradoxal, quadragésimal, total, virginal.

2. Regular plurals in **-als** were formerly much commoner, and usage is still unsettled for some words. When the plural is wanting or doubtful it is often avoided, *e.g.*, 'Un repas frugal; des repas **simples**.' Plurals commonly so avoided are: Fatal, final, frugal, glacial, initial, matinal, natal, naval, théâtral.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

340. General Rule. An adjective, whether attributive or predicative, regularly agrees in gender and number with its substantive:

Les saisons froid**es** sont sain**es**.	Cold seasons are healthful.
Elles sont content**es**.	They are pleased.
Ils se disaient malade**s**.	They said they were ill.
Je les crois sincère**s**.	I believe them sincere.

a. When the substantive has a **de** clause, the agreement is parallel with that explained for subject and verb (cf. §232, 2).

b. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense:

Madame, vous êtes bien bonne.	Madam, you are very kind.

341. Manifold Substantive. 1. One adjective qualifying two or more substantives is made plural, and agrees in gender with both, if of the same gender; if of different gender, the adjective is masculine.

De la viande et des pommes de terre froides.	Cold meat and potatoes.
Sa sœur et lui sont contents.	His sister and he are pleased.

a. When substantives are joined by **ou**, **ni**...**ni**, or are synonymous, or form a climax, etc., the principles stated for agreement of subject and verb apply (cf. § 233).

b. When nouns differ in gender, the masculine one is usually placed nearest the adjective, especially when the feminine form is distinct from the masculine.

La mer et le ciel bleus.	The blue sea and sky.

2. When the noun is followed by a preposition + a noun, the agreement is, of course, according to the meaning:

Une table de bois **dur.**	A table of hard wood.
Une table de bois **carrée.**	A square wooden table.

342. Manifold Adjective. When two or more adjectives, denoting different objects singular, refer to one noun, the noun is made plural, and the adjectives follow it in the singular, or the noun is made singular, and the article repeated with each adjective.

Les nations grecque et romaine.	The Greek and Roman nations.
La nation grecque et la romaine.	The Greek nation and the Roman.

Or: La nation grecque et la nation romaine.

a. The agreement for a preceding ordinal is parallel to this:

Les sixième et septième rangs.	The sixth and seventh ranks.
Le sixième rang et le septième.	The sixth rank and the seventh.
Le sixième et le septième rang.	The sixth and the seventh rank.

343. Special Cases. 1. Adjectives used as adverbs are regularly invariable:

Cette rose sent doux.	That rose smells sweet.
Les livres coûtent cher ici.	Books cost dear here.

a. **Possible**, replacing a clause, and **fort**, in **se faire fort** = 'to pledge one's self,' are considered as adverbs :

J'ai fait le moins de fautes possible.	I have made as few mistakes as possible.
Elle se fait fort de le payer.	She pledges herself to pay it.

2. Compound adjectives, with or without hyphen, are treated as follows :

(1) Both components are variable when co-ordinate, except first components in **-o** :

Des sourd(**e**)**s**-muet(**te**)**s**.	Deaf-mutes.
Des oranges aigre**s**-douce**s**.	Sourish oranges.
But : Les lettres gréco-romaine**s**.	Græco-Roman literature.

(2) A subordinate component is usually invariable, being regarded as adverbial, but the principle is not fully carried out :

Des mots grec**s**-moderne.	Modern Greek words.
Des enfants court-vêtu**s**.	Short-coated children.
Une dame haut placé**e**.	A lady of high rank.
Des enfants nouveau-né**s**.	New-born infants.

a. But the subordinated component is variable in **frais cueilli** = 'freshly gathered,' in **ivre mort** = 'dead drunk,' in **grand ouvert** = 'wide open,' and in **premier, dernier, nouveau** + a past participle (except **nouveau-né,** see above) :

Des fleurs fraî**ches** cueilli**es**.	Freshly gathered flowers.
La porte est grand**e** ouvert**e**.	The door is wide open.
Les nouveau**x** marié**s**.	The bridegroom and bride.

3. Nouns serving as adjectives of colour are regularly invariable :

Des robes lilas (citron).	Purple (lemon-coloured) dresses.

a. **Rose, cramoisi, pourpre,** are exceptions, and vary :

Des robes rose**s** (cramoisi**es**).	Pink (crimson) dresses.

b. Modified adjectives of colour are also usually invariable, the modifier being also invariable by rule, 2 (2), above :

Des cheveux blond ardent.	Reddish blond hair.

NOTE.—These constructions are explained by supplying the ellipsis: 'Des robes (couleur de) lilas'; 'Des cheveux (couleur de) blond ardent.'

4. A few adjectives are variable or invariable according to position or context :

a. **Demi** = 'half,' **nu** = 'naked,' **plein** = 'full of,' are invariable before and variable after the noun ; so also, **excepté** and others (§289, *a*, *b*) ; **franc de port** = 'post-paid' (also 'franco,' adverb) is invariable before, and usually variable after :

Une demi-heure ; une heure et demie.	Half an hour ; an hour and a half.
Il a de l'or plein ses poches.	He has his pockets full of gold.
Il est nu-tête ; il a les bras nus.	He is bareheaded ; his arms are bare.
Il a les yeux pleins de larmes.	His eyes are full of tears.
Recevoir franc de port une lettre.	To receive a letter post-paid.
Des lettres franches de port.	Post-paid letters.

Obs. : **demi**, **nu**, when preceding, form a compound with hyphen.

b. **Feu** = 'late,' 'deceased,' is invariable when preceding the definite article, or determinative, and variable after it :

Feu la reine (la feue reine).	The late queen.

c. After **avoir l'air** = 'have an air (appearance)' the adjective agrees with **air** ; but it agrees with the subject of the verb when the expression means 'seem,' 'appear' :

Cette dame a l'air hautain.	That lady has a haughty air.
Elle a l'air malheureuse.	She seems unhappy.
Cette soupe a l'air bonne.	This soup seems good.

5. A very few adjectives are always invariable :

Nous avons été capot.	We had come to grief.
Vingt livres sterling.	Twenty pounds sterling.

344. Nouns as Adjectives. By a sort of apposition, nouns are frequently used as adjectives ; when so used, they usually agree like adjectives :

Une maîtresse cheminée.	A main chimney.
Des philosophes poètes.	Poet philosophers.
But : La race nègre, etc.	

a. **Témoin** = 'witness,' at the head of a phrase, is adverbial and invariable :

J'ai bien combattu, témoin les blessures que j'ai reçues.	I have fought well, witness the wounds I received.

b. For nouns as adjectives of colour, see § 343, 3.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

345. The Comparative. It is regularly denoted by placing **plus** = 'more,' **moins** = 'less,' for inequality, and **aussi** = 'as,' for equality, before each adjective compared; 'than' or 'as' = **que**:

Il est plus grand que Jean.	He is taller than John.
Il est moins grand que Jean.	He is less tall than (not so tall as) John.
Il est aussi grand que Jean.	He is as tall as John.
Il est plus diligent et plus attentif que Jean.	He is more diligent and (more) attentive than John.
Il est plus faible que malade.	He is more weak than ill.

a. **Aussi**, used negatively, may be replaced by **si**:

Il n'est pas aussi(**si**) grand que J.	He is not so tall as John.

b. When **aussi** or **si** is omitted, **comme** (*not* **que**) is used:

Un roi riche comme Crésus.	A king as rich as Crœsus.

c. After **plus**, **moins**, affirmatively, 'than' = **que** . . **ne** when coming before a finite verb:

Il est plus grand **qu'il ne** (le) paraît.	He is taller than he seems.

d. 'More and more (*or* -er and -er)' = **de plus en plus**; 'less and less (*or* -er and -er)' = **de moins en moins**; 'the more . . the more' = **plus . . .(et) plus**; 'the less . . . the less' = **moins . . .(et) moins**; 'the more . . .' = **d'autant plus . . .**:

L'air devint de plus en plus froid.	The air became colder and colder.
Il devint de moins en moins actif.	He became less and less active.
Plus il devient riche (et) moins il est généreux.	The richer he becomes the less generous is he.
Il en sera d'autant plus riche.	He will be the richer for it.

346. Irregular Comparison. The adjectives **bon, mauvais, petit,** have a special comparative form:

Pos.	Comp.	Pos.	Comp.
bon, *good*,	meilleur.	*or* bon,	plus bon (rare).
mauvais, *bad*,	pire.	*or* mauvais,	plus mauvais.
petit, *small*,	moindre.	*or* petit,	plus petit.

a. **Bon** is hardly ever compared regularly:

À bon marché, à meilleur marché. Cheap, cheaper.
Cela sent bon (meilleur). That smells good (better).
But: Ce n'est ni **plus bon** ni **plus mauvais.**

NOTES.—1. In expressions like 'Ce vin est plus ou moins bon,' **bon** is not really comparative. 2. Some grammarians admit **plus bon** = 'more good-natured.'

b. **Pire** is, in general, stronger than **plus mauvais**, and may serve also as a comparative to **méchant** = 'bad,' 'evil,' 'wicked':

Cet homme est méchant (pire). That man is bad (worse).

c. In general, **moindre** = 'less,' 'lesser,' 'less (in importance)' and **plus petit** = 'smaller,' 'less (in size)':

Votre douleur en sera moindre. Your sorrow will hence be less.
Une plus petite pomme. A smaller apple.

347. The Superlative Relative. 1. It is denoted by placing the definite article (variable) or a possessive adjective (variable) before the comparative of inequality:

Elle est la moins aimable. She is the least amiable.
Mes meilleurs amis. My best friends.
La moindre difficulté. The slightest difficulty.

a. When the superlative follows the noun, the definite article is not omitted:

C'est l'enfant **le** plus diligent et **le** plus attentif de tous. He is the most diligent and attentive boy of all.
Mes amis **les** plus fidèles. My most faithful friends.

2. After a superlative, 'in' = **de** (not **à, dans,** etc.); 'among' = **entre** or **d'entre**:

L'homme le plus riche **de** la ville. The richest man in the city.
Le meilleur écrivain **du** Canada. The best writer in Canada.
Le plus brave **(d')entre** les Grecs. The bravest among the Greeks.

348. The Superlative Absolute. It is expressed by **le** (invariable) + **plus** or **moins** before the adjective, or else by an adverb, such as **très, bien, fort, extrêmement,** etc., or some other modifying expression:

Elle est le plus heureuse (moins heureuse) quand elle est seule. She is happiest (least happy) when she is alone.

Vous êtes très aimable.	You are very (most) kind.
C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau.	It is most beautiful.
Un brave des braves.	One of the bravest.
Un homme des plus dignes.	A most worthy man.
Une dame on ne peut plus digne.	A most worthy woman.
Des tribus sauvages au possible.	Most savage tribes.

a. Occasionally it is denoted in familiar style by repetition of the adjective, or by **-issime** :

Cet homme est rusé, rusé.	That man is very, very cunning.
Il est richissime.	He is very wealthy.

349. Remarks. 1. Comparative and superlative are undistinguishable in constructions requiring in English a definite article before the comparative :

Le plus fort de mes deux frères.	The stronger of my two brothers.

2. **De** denotes 'by how much' after a comparative or superlative :

Plus âgé **de** trois ans.	Older by three years.
Il est de beaucoup le plus grand.	He is the tallest by far.
But : Il est beaucoup plus grand.	He is much taller.

3. Observe the following :

Les basses classes.	The lower classes.
J'ai fait mon possible.	I did my utmost.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

350. Predicative Adjectives. They are placed, in general, as in English :

Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Elle parut fatiguée.	She seemed tired.
Brave, savant, vertueux, il se fit aimer de tous.	Brave, learned, virtuous, he made himself beloved by all.

a. Observe the position after **assez**, after **plus . . . plus, moins . . . moins**, and in exclamations with **combien !**, **comme !**, **que !**, **tant !**, as compared with the order of words in English :

Il est assez sot pour le croire.	He is silly enough to believe it.
Plus il devint riche moins il fut généreux.	The richer he became the less generous was he.
Que vous êtes aimable !	How kind you are !

351. Attributive Adjectives. When used literally, to define, distinguish, specify, emphasize, etc., they usually follow; but when used figuratively, or as a merely ornamental epithet, or denoting a quality viewed as essential to the object, or when forming, as it were, one idea with the noun, they usually precede:

Une rue étroite ; une étroite amitié.	A narrow street ; an intimate friendship.
Un roi savant ; le savant auteur.	A learned king ; the learned author.
Le fameux Pitt ; un rusé coquin.	The famous Pitt ; a cunning rogue.

a. The following, of very common use, generally precede :

beau.	grand.	joli.	meilleur.	pire.	vilain.
bon.	gros.	long.	moindre.	sot.	
court.	jeune.	mauvais.	petit.	vieux.	

352. Special Rules for Attributives. 1. Certain adjectives serve regularly to define, distinguish, etc., and hence regularly follow; such are :—

(1) Adjectives of physical quality :

Une table carrée ; une pierre dure ; de l'eau froide (chaude) ; de l'encre noire ; une sauce piquante.	A square table ; a hard stone ; cold (hot) water ; black ink ; a piquant sauce.

a. By the general rule (§351) they sometimes precede :

De noirs chagrins ; une verte vieillesse ; le bleu ciel d'Italie.	Dark sorrows ; a green old age ; the blue sky of Italy.

(2) Adjectives of nationality, religion, profession, title, and those from proper names :

La loi anglaise ; un prêtre catholique ; une splendeur royale ; le latin cicéronien.	The English law ; a Catholic priest ; royal splendour ; Ciceronian Latin.

(3) Participles used as adjectives :

Une étoile filante ; un homme instruit ; une porte ouverte.	A shooting star ; an educated man ; an open door.

a. By the general rule (§351) they sometimes precede:

Une éclatante victoire.	A signal victory.

b. Past participial forms which have become real adjectives, *e.g.*, **prétendu, absolu, parfait, dissolu, feint, rusé,** etc., very often precede (**prétendu** nearly always):

Une feinte modestie.	Feigned modesty.
Le prétendu comte.	The would-be count.

2. Adjectives sometimes follow the noun on account of their adjuncts or their function; thus:—

(1) When modified by an adverb, other than **aussi, si, très, bien, fort, plus, moins, assez**:

Un discours extrêmement long.	An extremely long speech.
But: Un très long discours.	A very long speech.

(2) When modified by an adverbial phrase, or in comparisons:

Une contrée riche en vins.	A district rich in wines.
Un guerrier brave comme un lion.	A warrior as brave as a lion.

(3) Nouns used appositively as adjectives:

Une puissance amie.	A friendly power.

3. Two or more adjectives, with one noun, follow, in general, the rules stated, but, if joined by a conjunction, they all follow, in case one is such as must follow:

Une jolie petite fille.	A pretty little girl.
Une belle maison blanche.	A beautiful white house.
Un objet blanc et étincelant.	A white and dazzling object.
Une dame belle et savante.	A beautiful and learned lady.

a. The more specific of two or more adjectives which follow comes last, contrary to English usage:

Des écrivains français habiles.	Clever French writers.

4. A considerable number of adjectives differ more or less widely in meaning, according as they precede or follow:

Mon cher enfant; une robe chère.	My dear child; a costly dress.
Une franche coquette; une femme franche.	A thorough coquette; a plain-spoken woman.

Such adjectives are :

ancien.	dernier.	fort.	jeune.	parfait.	sage.
bon.	différent.	furieux.	maigre.	pauvre.	seul.
brave.	digne.	galant.	malhonnête.	petit.	simple.
certain.	divers.	grand.	mauvais.	plaisant.	triste.
cher.	fameux.	gros.	méchant.	premier.	véritable.
commun.	faux.	haut.	mort.	propre.	vrai, etc.
cruel.	fier.	honnête.	nouveau.	pur.	

NOTE.—Distinctions of this kind depend, in the main, upon the general principles laid down above, but they are too numerous and too subtle to be given in detail here Observation, and the use of a good dictionary will, in time, make the learner familiar with the most important of them.

353. **Determinatives.** Such adjectives, including numerals, possessives, demonstratives, indefinites, precede :

Trois plumes ; mes plumes.	Three pens ; my pens.
Ces plumes-ci ; d'autres plumes.	These pens ; other pens.

PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

354. An adjective is often followed by a complement connected with it by a preposition, such as **à, de, en, envers,** etc. The preposition to be used is determined by the meaning of the adjective, as explained in the following sections.

355. **Adjective + *à*.** The preposition **à** = 'to,' 'at,' 'for,' etc., is required after most adjectives denoting tendency, fitness, and their opposites, comparison, etc.

Cet homme est adonné **à** la boisson.	That man is addicted to drink.
Il est favorable **à** mes projets.	He is favorable to my projects.
Il est bien habile **aux** affaires.	He is very clever in business.
Un homme supérieur **à** tous.	A man superior to all.
Ce n'est bon **à** rien.	That is good for nothing.

Such adjectives are :

accoutumé, *accustomed* (*to*).	cher, *dear* (*to*).	hardi, *bold* (*in*).
adroit, *clever* (*at*).	convenable, *suitable* (*to*).	impropre, *unfit* (*for*).
agréable, *pleasant* (*to*).	égal, *equal* (*to*).	inférieur, *inferior* (*to*).
antérieur, *anterior* (*to*).	exact, *exact* (*in*).	infidèle, *unfaithful* (*to*).
ardent, *ardent* (*in*).	fidèle, *faithful* (*in*).	inutile, *useless* (*to*).
bon, *good*, *fit* (*for*).	fort, *clever* (*at*).	lent, *slow* (*in*).

nuisible, *hurtful* (*to*).	prêt, *ready* (*to*).	semblable, *similar* (*to*).
opposé, *opposed* (*to*).	prompt, *prompt* (*in*).	utile, *useful* (*to*).
pareil, *similar* (*to*).	propice, *propitious* (*to*).	etc.
porté, *inclined* (*to*).	propre, *fit* (*for*).	

a. **Bon pour** = 'good for,' 'beneficial to,' 'kind to.'

356. Adjective + *de*. The preposition **de** = 'of,' 'from,' 'with,' etc., is required after most adjectives denoting source or origin (hence also, feeling, sentiment, abundance), separation (hence also, absence, distance, want, etc.), and after most past participles to denote the agent (cf. §240):

Êtes-vous natif **de** Paris?	Are you a native of Paris?
Ils sont contents **de** mon succès.	They are pleased at my success.
Elle est pleine **de** vanité.	She is full of vanity.
Je suis libre **de** douleur.	I am free from pain.
Il est inconnu **de** tous.	He is unknown to all.

Such adjectives are:

absent, *absent* (*from*).	éloigné, *distant* (*from*).	lourd, *heavy* (*with*).
affligé, *grieved* (*at*).	enchanté, *delighted* (*with*).	malheureux, *unhappy* (*at*).
aise, *glad* (*of*).	ennuyé, *weary* (*of*).	offensé, *offended* (*at*).
alarmé, *alarmed* (*at*).	étonné, *astonished* (*at*).	pauvre, *poor* (*in*).
ambitieux, *ambitious* (*of*).	exempt, *free* (*from*).	plein, *full* (*of*)
avide, *greedy* (*of*).	fâché, *sorry* (*for*).	ravi, *delighted* (*with*).
béni, *blessed* (*by*).	fier, *proud* (*of*).	satisfait, *satisfied* (*with*).
capable, *capable* (*of*).	glorieux, *proud* (*of*).	soucieux, *anxious* (*about*).
charmé, *delighted* (*with*).	hérissé, *bristling* (*with*).	souillé, *soiled* (*with*).
chéri, *beloved* (*by*).	heureux, *glad* (*of*).	sûr, *sure* (*of*).
confus, *confused* (*at*).	honteux, *ashamed* (*of*).	surpris, *surprised* (*at*).
contrarié, *vexed* (*with*).	ignorant, *ignorant* (*of*).	triste, *sad* (*at*).
dénué, *destitute* (*of*).	indigne, *unworthy* (*of*).	vain, *vain* (*of*).
dépourvu, *devoid* (*of*).	inquiet, *uneasy* (*about*).	vexé, *vexed* (*at*).
désireux, *desirous* (*of*).	ivre, *intoxicated* (*with*).	victorieux, *victorious* (*over*)
différent, *different* (*from*).	jaloux, *jealous* (*of*).	vide, *empty* (*of*).
digne, *worthy* (*of*).	libre, *free* (*from*).	etc.

a. **Fâché contre** = 'angry at *or* with (a person).'

357. Adjective + *en*. **En** is required after a few adjectives denoting abundance, skill, etc.:

Le Canada est fertile **en** blé.	Canada is fertile in wheat.
Il est expert **en** chirurgie.	He is expert in surgery.

Such adjectives are:

abondant, *abounding* (*in*).	fort, *strong* (*in*), *learned* (*in*).	riche, *rich* (*in*).
fécond, *fruitful* (*in*).	ignorant, *ignorant* (*in*).	savant, *learned* (*in*)

a. **fort** and **ignorant** sometimes have **sur** :

Il est fort **sur** l'histoire.	He is well versed (good) in history.
Ignorant **sur** ces matières-là.	Ignorant about those matters.

358. Adjective + *envers*. Envers is used after most adjectives denoting disposition or feeling towards :

Il est libéral **envers** tous.	He is liberal towards all.

Such adjectives are :

affable, *affable.*	honnête, *polite.*	poli, *polite.*
bon, *kind.*	indulgent, *indulgent.*	prodigue, *lavish.*
charitable, *charitable.*	ingrat, *ungrateful.*	reconnaissant, *grateful.*
civil, *civil.*	insolent, *insolent.*	respectueux, *respectful.*
cruel, *cruel.*	juste, *just.*	responsable, *responsible.*
dur, *hard, harsh.*	méchant, *malicious.*	rigoureux, *stern.*
généreux, *generous.*	miséricordieux, *merciful.*	sévère, *severe, stern.*
grossier, *rude.*	officieux, *obliging.*	etc.

a. **Bon, dur,** very frequently take **pour** ; **indulgent** may take **pour** or **à** ; **civil, sévère,** may take **à l'égard de** :

Il est bon (dur) pour moi.	He is kind (harsh) to me.
Indulgent pour (à) ses enfants.	Indulgent to his children.
Civil (sévère) à l'égard de ses domestiques.	Civil (harsh) to his servants.

THE PRONOUN.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

359. Personal Pronouns.

1. Conjunctive forms :

		1st Per.	2nd Per.	3rd Per. (m.).	3rd Per. (f.).	3rd Ref.(m.f.).
(Sing.)	N.	**je**, I.	**tu**, thou.	**il**, he, it.	**elle**, she, it.	
	D.	**me**, (to) me.	**te**, (to) thee.	**lui**, (to) him.	**lui**, (to) her.	**se**, (to)-self.
	A.	**me**, me.	**te**, thee.	**le**, him, it.	**la**, her, it.	**se**, -self
(Plur.)	N.	**nous**, we.	**vous**, you.	**ils**, they.	**elles**, they.	
	D.	**nous**, (to) us.	**vous**, (to) you.	**leur**, (to) them.	**leur**, (to) them.	**se**, (to)-selves.
	A.	**nous**, us.	**vous**, you.	**les**, them.	**les**, them.	**se**, -selves.

2. Disjunctive forms:

	1st Per.	2nd Per.	3rd Per. (m.).	3rd Per. (f.).	3rd Ref. (m.f.).
(Sing.) N. A. P.	**moi**, I, me.	**toi**, thou, thee.	**lui**, he, him.	**elle**, she, her.	**soi**, one's self, etc.
(Plur.) N. A. P.	**nous**, we, us.	**vous**, you.	**eux**, they, them.	**elles**, they, them.	

[N. = nominative; D. = dative; A. = accusative; P. = object of a preposition.]

Note.—A more scientific terminology would be 'unstressed' and 'stressed' instead of 'conjunctive' and 'disjunctive,' as indicating the real distinction between the two sets of forms, *e.g.*, '**Je** (unstressed) parle'; 'Qui parle ?—**Moi**' (stressed). As a matter of fact, the unstressed forms usually stand in immediate connection with the verb (as subject or object), hence the term 'conjunctive,' while the stressed forms are usually employed otherwise, hence the term 'disjunctive.' The distinction of 'unstressed' and 'stressed' is common to most other kinds of pronouns as well.

360. Pronominal Adverbs.

y = to (at, on, in, into, etc.) it *or* them; there, thither.

en = of (from, etc.) it *or* them; some, any, some of it, some of them; thence, from there.

Note.—**Y** and **en** were originally adverbs (**y** from L. *ibi* = 'there,' and **en** from L. *inde* = 'thence'), but they are now usually pronominal in function, and are used precisely like the conjunctive forms.

361. Agreement. The personal pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person:

Nous les avons frappé(e)s.	We have struck them.
Elle lit la lettre; elle la lit.	She reads the letter; she reads it.

a. The first person plural for the first person singular is used by sovereigns and authorities, and by writers, as in English:

Nous (le roi) avons ordonné et ordonnons ce qui suit.	We (the king) have ordained and ordain as follows.
Comme nous avons dit déjà.	As we have said already.

b. **Vous** = 'you' (singular or plural) has a plural verb; its other agreements, as also those of **nous** above, are according to the sense:

Nous (la reine) sommes contente.	We (the queen) are satisfied.
Madame, vous êtes bien bonne.	Madam, you are very kind.

c. For imperative first plural instead of first singular, see §267, *a*.

d. **Il** and **le** are used as invariable neutral forms, when the antecedent is one to which gender cannot be ascribed:

Y en a-t-il?—Je **le** crois.	Is there any (of it)? I think so.

362. Case Relations of Conjunctives. 1. The nominative forms stand as subject and the accusative forms as direct object to a verb; their use is obvious:

Il nous a vus.	He saw us.

a. The conjunctive is optional when there are two accusatives:

Je (les) blâme **lui** et **elle.**	I blame him and her.

2. The dative forms denote the person or thing for whose 'advantage' or 'disadvantage' the action is done, denoted by **à** = 'to,' 'for,' 'from,' with nouns:

Je **leur** prêterai les livres.	I shall lend them the books.
On **lui** a volé son argent.	His money has been stolen from him.

But **à** + a disjunctive form is used in the following cases:

(1) When two datives are joined by a conjunction, or when in emphasis a second dative is implied:

J'en ai parlé à lui et à elle.	I spoke of it to him and to her.
Je donne le livre à elle (pas à lui).	I give the book to her (not to him).

(2) When the conjunctive direct object is any other pronoun than **le, la, les**:

Je vous présente à elle.	I introduce you to her.
Il se présenta à moi.	He introduced himself to me.

But: Je le (la, les) leur présente, etc.

(3) After verbs of motion and some others, to denote the 'object towards which the action tends,' the relation, though expressed by **à**, not being really dative:

Je courus à lui.	I ran to him.
Cette maison est à moi.	That house belongs to me.
Il pense (songe, rêve) à eux.	He thinks (muses, dreams) of them.

Such verbs are:

accoutumer, *accustom.*
aller, *go.*
appeler, *call.*
en appeler, *appeal.*
aspirer, *aspire.*
attirer, *attract.*
avoir affaire, *have to do.*
avoir recours, *have recourse.*
comparer, *compare.*
courir, *run.*
être (à), *belong (to).*
faire attention, *pay attention.*
habituer, *accustom.*
marcher, *march.*
penser, *think.*
prendre garde, *pay heed.*
prendre intérêt, *take interest.*
prétendre, *aspire.*
recourir, *have recourse.*
renoncer, *renounce.*
revenir, *come back.*
rêver, *dream.*
songer, *muse.*
venir, *come.*

a. Certain verbs of this class, when not literal, take the conjunctive dative:

Il lui vint une idée.	There occurred to him an idea.
Vous nous reviendrez.	You will come to see us again.

NOTE.—The ethical dative, denoting the person 'interested in' or 'affected by' an action, rare in English, is common in French: 'Goutêz-**moi** ce vin-là,' 'Just taste that wine'; 'Ne **me** faites plus cela,' 'Don't do that again (I tell you).

363. Impersonal *il.* For invariable **il** as the subject of an impersonal verb, see §§248-253.

364. Predicative *le, la, les.* As predicate the accusative third person is either variable or invariable:—

1. **Le** agrees when referring to a determinate noun or to an adjective used as such:

Êtes-vous sa mère?—Je **la** suis.	Are you his mother?—I am.
Êtes-vous la mariée?—Je **la** suis.	Are you the bride?—I am.
Sont-ce là vos livres?—Ce **les** sont.	Are those your books?—They are.

2. **Le,** invariable, is used when referring to an adjective, or to a noun as adjective:

Êtes-vous fatiguée?—Je **le** suis.	Are you tired?—I am.
Êtes-vous mère?—Je **le** suis.	Are you a mother?—I am.
Sont-ils Anglais?—Ils **le** sont.	Are they English?—They are.

365. Pleonastic *le.* The neutral form **le** (§361, *d*) is often pleonastic, as compared with English usage:

Êtes-vous mère?—Je **le** suis.	Are you a mother?—I am.
Qu'ils soient venus, je **le** sais.	That they have come, I know.
Fais du bien, quand tu **le** peux.	Do good, when you can.
Ce qu'il voulait, il **le** veut encore.	What he wished, he still wishes.

Je suis prête, s'il **le** faut.	I am ready, if need be.
J'irai si vous **le** désirez.	I shall go, if you wish (it).
Ils sont comme je (**le**) désirerais.	They are as I should like.
Il est plus âgé que je ne (**le**) suis.	He is older than I am.

Obs.: This **le** is optional in comparative clauses.

a. **Le** is also used in a number of fixed expressions:

Il ne **le** cède à personne.	He yields to nobody.
Nous l'avons emporté.	We have carried the day.
Il l'a échappé belle.	He had a narrow escape.

b. **Le** may sometimes be translated by 'one' or 'so':

Il est soldat; je **le** suis aussi.	He is a soldier; I am one too.
Sois brave, et je **le** serai aussi.	Be brave, and I shall be so too.

366. Reflexives. 1. A special conjunctive reflexive form, **se** for dative or accusative of either gender or number, is required in the third person only; for the first and second person the ordinary forms are used (cf. §242):

Il (elle) **se** loue.	He (she) praises him (her) -self.
Ils (elles) **se** le sont dit.	They said so to each other.

But: Je **me** loue; tu **te** loues; nous **nous** louons; vous **vous** louez.

2. The disjunctive **soi** is hardly used beyond the third singular in an indefinite or general sense:

Chacun travaille pour soi.	Every one works for himself.
On doit parler rarement de soi.	One should rarely speak of one's self.
De soi le vice est odieux.	In itself vice is hateful.

But: Elle est contente d'**elle-même**; ils ne songent qu'à **eux-mêmes**, etc.

a. The use of **soi** is rarer for the feminine than for the masculine:

Un bienfait porte sa récompense avec **soi** (**lui**).	A good deed brings its reward with it.
La guerre entraîne après **elle** (**soi**) des maux sans nombre.	War brings after it countless evils.

NOTE.—**Soi** is no longer used of persons denoted by a general noun, *e.g.*, 'L'avare ne vit que pour **lui-même**' (not 'pour soi'), nor is it used, as formerly, of persons to avoid ambiguity, *e.g.*, 'Quoique son frère soit dans la misère, il ne pense qu'à **lui-même** (not 'à soi').

367. Uses of *en*. 1. **En** is in function an equivalent of **de** + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and less commonly of persons:

Je parle des plumes ; j'en parle.	I speak of the pens ; I speak of them.
Donnez-les-moi ; j'en ai besoin.	Give me them ; I need them.
Il est mon ami ; j'en réponds.	He is my friend ; I answer for him.
Il aime ses fils, et il en est aimé.	He loves his sons, and is loved by them.
Vous voilà ; j'en suis content.	There you are ; I am glad of it.
Vient-il de Toronto?—Il en vient.	Does he come from T.? He does.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite :

Voyons ! où en étions-nous ?	Let me see, where were we ?
Ils en sont venus aux mains.	They came to blows.
Il m'en veut.	He has a grudge against me.
Tant s'en faut.	Far from it.
C'en est fait de lui.	It is all up with him.
À vous en croire.	If one is to believe you.
Quoi qu'il en soit.	However it may be.
Je n'en peux plus.	I am done out.
Il y en a qui le croient.	There are some who think so.

2. Through a somewhat special application of the general principle, it is further used :—

(1) In a partitive sense :

Voici du papier ; en voulez-vous ? —Merci, j'en ai.	Here is some paper ; do you wish any of it ?—Thank you, I have some.
Avez-vous une plume ?—J'en ai une (j'en ai plusieurs).	Have you a pen ?—I have one (I have several).
Il me faut en acheter d'autres.	I must buy others.

(2) **En** = 'thereof' + the definite article replaces a possessive adjective referring to a possessor in the preceding sentence, but only when the thing possessed is a direct object, a subject of **être**, or a predicate noun :

J'aime ce pays ; j'en admire les institutions.	I like this country ; I admire its institutions.
Blâmez les péchés de ces gens, mais n'en blâmez pas les malheurs.	Blame the sins of those people, but do not blame their misfortunes.
Cette affaire est délicate ; le succès en est douteux.	That affair is delicate ; its success is doubtful.
Ceci est la gloire du pays ; cela en est la honte.	This is the country's glory ; that is its disgrace.

But : 'Cette maison a **ses** défauts' (the possessor not being in the pre-

vious sentence); 'J'aime ces vers; **leur** harmonie me ravit' (the thing possessed being subject of another verb than être); 'J'admire ce pays; il est fameux pour **ses** bonnes lois' (the thing possessed being governed by a preposition).

368. Use of *y*. Y is in function equivalent to **à** (**en**, **dans**, etc.) + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and rarely of persons:

Je pense à mes péchés; j'y pense.	I think of my sins; I think of them.
Il est en Europe; il y est, et moi j'y vais aussi.	He is in Europe; he is there, and I am going there too.
Il se connaît en ces choses, mais moi je ne m'y connais pas.	He is an expert in those things, but I am not.
Il aspire à cela; il y aspire.	He aspires to that; he aspires to it.
Vous fiez-vous à lui?—Je m'y fie.	Do you trust him?—I trust him.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

Il **y** va de votre vie.	Your life is at stake.
J'**y** suis! Qu'**y** a-t-il?	I have it! What is the matter?
Il s'**y** prend adroitement.	He goes about it cleverly.
Est-ce que Monsieur B. **y** est?	Is Mr. B. at home?
Y pensez-vous?	You don't mean it?

369. Position of Conjunctive Objects. 1. They stand immediately before their governing verb, except the imperative affirmative:

Je leur en parlerai.	I shall speak to them of it.
Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.	I sent him there to tell them it.
Il lui faut parler; il faut lui parler.	He must speak; one must speak to him.

Obs.: Remember that the auxiliary is the verb in compound tenses.

a. With negative infinitive, the object may stand between **ne** and **pas** (**point**, **rien**, etc.); similarly adverb + infinitive:

Je suis étonné de ne point **le** voir (*or* ne **le** point voir).	I am astonished not to see him.
Pour **les** bien considérer.	To consider them well.

b. The objects of an infinitive governed by **faire**, **laisser** (cf. §230, 6, 7) or a verb of perceiving (**entendre**, **voir**, etc.), accompany the finite verb:

Je le lui ferai dire.	I shall make him say it.
Il se le voit refuser.	He sees himself refused it.
Faites-vous-la raconter.	Have it related to you.

c. A similar arrangement is permissible with **aller, venir, envoyer,** etc. + an infinitive :

J'enverrai le chercher *or* Je l'enverrai chercher.	I shall send for him.
Envoyez-**le** chercher.	Send for it.

NOTE.—In the older language, objects of an infinitive often stood before the so-called modal auxiliaries, *e.g.*, 'Je **vous** dois dire,' but usage hardly permits this now, except for **en, y,** *e.g.*, 'Ce qu'on **en** doit attendre.'

2. Conjunctive objects stand immediately after an imperative affirmative :

Regardez-les ; écoutez-nous.	Look at them ; listen to us.
Donnez-le-lui ; allons-nous-en.	Give it to him ; let us go away.
But : Ne les regardez pas.	Do not look at them.
Ne nous écoutez point.	Do not listen to us.
Ne le lui donnez pas.	Do not give it to him.

a. The rule does not apply to the subjunctive as impve. (§272, 1, *a*) :

Qu'il les écoute.	Let him listen to them.

NOTES.—1. Formerly, but rarely now, an imperative affirmative when joined to another by **et (ou, mais)** might have an object before it: 'Achetez-les et **les** payez,' etc.

2. **Voici** and **voilà,** which are imperatives by derivation, are always preceded by their conjunctive object : '**Les** voici ; **en** voilà, etc.'

370. Relative Position of Objects. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs are arranged with reference to each other, as follows :—

1. When coming before the verb :

me	before	**le**	before	**lui**	before	**y**	before **en.**
te		**la**		**leur**			
se		**les**					
nous							
vous							

Il **me les** donne.	He gives them to me.
Il **les lui** donne.	He gives them to him.
Il **nous en** donne.	He gives us some of it.
Je **leur en** parlerai.	I shall speak to them of it.
Ne **leur en** parlez pas.	Do not speak of it to them.
Je **l'y** ai envoyé pour **le leur** dire.	I sent him there to tell them **it.**

a. When there are two direct or two indirect objects, they become disjunctive and follow the verb:

J'ai vu **lui** et **elle**.	I have seen him and her.
J'en ai parlé **à lui** et **à elle**.	I spoke of it to him and to her.

2. When coming after the verb:

le (la les)	before **moi** (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur).
me (te, lui, nous, vous, leur)	before **y** (en).
y	before **en**.

Donnez-**les-moi**.	Give them to me.
Donnez-**leur-en**.	Give them some of it.
Donnez-**m'en**; va-**t'en**.	Give me some; begone.
Conduisez-**nous-y**.	Take us there.
Allez-**vous-en**.	Go away.

a. After an imperative, the indirect objects **nous**, **vous**, may precede the direct **le**, **la**, **les** in familiar language:

Conservez-**vous-le**.	Keep it for yourselves.
Tenez-**vous-le** pour dit.	Consider it as final.

3. Reference table showing possible combinations of two pronouns:

(Before the Verb.)				(After the Verb.)		
me le	te le	se le	le lui	-le -moi	-le -toi	-le -lui
me la	te la	se la	la lui	-la -moi	-la -toi	-la -lui
me les	te les	se les	les lui	-les-moi	-les-toi	-les-lui
nous le	vous le	se le	le leur	-le -nous	-le -vous	-le -leur
nous la	vous la	se la	la leur	-la -nous	-la -vous	-la -leur
nous les	vous les	se les	les leur	-les-nous	-les-vous	-les-leur
m'en	t'en	s'en	lui en	-m'en	-t'en	-lui-en
m'en	t'en	s'en	l'en	-m'en	-t'en	-l'en
nous en	vous en	s'en	leur en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-leur-en
nous en	vous en	s'en	les en	-nous-en	-vous-en	-les-en
m'y	t'y	s'y	[lui y]	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	[-lui-y]
m'y	t'y	s'y	l'y	[-m'y]	[-t'y]	-l'y
nous y	vous y	s'y	leur y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-leur-y
nous y	vous y	s'y	les y	-nous-y	-vous-y	-les -y
	y en				y-en	

Obs.: 1. The disjunctive forms **moi, toi** are used instead of **me, te** after the verb, except before **en**.

2. After the verb, the forms are joined to it and to each other by hyphens, apostrophe instead of hyphen being used according to §19.

3. Combinations of three forms are rare, *e.g.*, 'Il **nous y en** a donné'; they are usually avoided, *e.g.*, 'Donnes-**y-en à moi**' for 'Donne-m'y-en.'

4. The forms in [ ] are almost always avoided, either by transposition or by some other form of expression, *e.g.*, 'Mènes*-**y-moi**' or 'Mène-**moi là**' for 'Mène-m'*y*,' etc.

* See §159, 4.

371. Omission of Object. The object of the second of two verbs in a compound tense joined by **et** or **ou** may be omitted along with the auxiliary and the subject:

Il l'a pris et tué.	He caught and killed it.
Or: Il l'a pris et l'a tué.	He caught it and killed it.
Il l'a pris et il l'a tué.	He has caught it and he has killed it.
But: Il l'a pris, l'a tué.	He has caught it, has killed it.
Il le prend, et le tue.	He catches it, and kills it.

NOTE.—The verbs must be alike in government, must have the same auxiliary, must both be affirmative or negative, otherwise no omission is allowed.

372. Disjunctives. When, for any reason, the pronoun is stressed (§7), the disjunctive form is usually employed (see §359, note); thus, the disjunctives are used :—

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là ?—Moi (eux, elle).	Who is there ?—I (they, she).
Qui as-tu vu ?—Lui (eux).	Whom did you see ?—Him (them).
Toi absent, que ferai-je ?	You absent, what shall I do ?

a. So also, in comparisons, and analogously, after **ne .. que**:

Je suis plus grand que toi.	I am taller than you.
Faites comme eux.	Do as they do.
Je n'ai vu que lui.	I have seen him only.

2. In appositions, often emphatic:

Moi, je l'ai vu (moi-même).	(Why) I saw it myself.
Toi qui l'as vu, tu me crois.	You who saw it (you) believe me.
Lui aussi (il) le sait.	He too knows it.
Cela vous est facile à vous.	That is easy for you.

a. With **lui** so used, and sometimes also with **eux**, the conjunctive subject may be omitted :

Lui seul (il) ne le voulait pas.	He alone did not wish it.
Lui travaillait ; eux jouaient.	He worked ; they played.

NOTE.—**Je soussigné** = 'I the undersigned' is a relic of the earlier language.

3. As logical subject after **ce + être** :

C'est moi (toi, vous) ; ce sont eux, etc.	It is I (thou, you) ; it is they.

4. With an infinitive :

Moi t'oublier ! jamais.	I forget thee ! Never.
Et eux de s'enfuir.	And they made off.

5. When the subject or object is composite, see also §362, 1, *a* and 2, (1) :

Son frère et lui sont venus.	His brother and he have come.

a. A composite subject or object is usually summed up by a pleonastic appositive conjunctive, especially when the components are unlike in person :

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu.	You and he saw it.
Je vous envoie, toi et ton frère.	I send you and your brother.

6. After a preposition :

Je parle de toi et d'eux.	I speak of you and of them.
Ils sont chez eux.	They are at home.
Il se moque de nous.	He makes sport of us.

a. Observe the peculiar use of a preposition + a disjunctive pronoun as a sort of emphatic appositive of possession.

J'ai une maison à moi.	I have a house of my own.
Mon idée à moi, c'est, etc.	My (own) idea is, etc.

NOTE.—A disjunctive for things after a preposition is usually avoided, either by means of **en**, **y**, or else by an adverb, such as **dedans**, **dehors**, **dessus**, **devant**, **derrière**, etc. : 'Je ne vois rien **là dedans** (in it)' ; 'Voyez sur la table, cherchez **dessus** (on it) et **dessous** (under it).'

7. For **moi** and **toi** after imperative, see §370, 3, *obs.* 1.

373. **Pronouns in Address.** In addressing one person **vous** is, in general, the pronoun of formality and respect,

whilst **tu** denotes familiarity, affection, solemnity, etc., as follows :—

1. **Tu** = 'you,' of one person, is generally used between members of the same family (husband and wife, parents and children, brothers and sisters), between very intimate friends, between children, by grown persons to children and sometimes to servants, by everybody to animals and inanimate objects :

Où es-tu, mon cher père ?	Where are you, my dear father ?
Est-ce toi, mon enfant ?	Is that you, my child ?
Pauvre chien, tu as faim.	Poor dog, you are hungry.

2. **Tu** = 'thou' is used in poetry and elevated prose, and by Protestants in addressing God, Roman Catholics using vous :

Nous te (vous) louons, ô Dieu !	We praise thee, O God !

3. **Vous**, with the above limitations, is used, both in the singular and plural, as in English.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

374. Possessives.

1. Adjectival Forms :

	Sing.	Plur.
m.	mon	mes, my.
f.	ma (mon)	
m.	ton	tes, thy, your.
f.	ta (ton)	
m.	son	ses, his, her, its, one's.
f.	sa (son)	
m. f.	notre	nos, our.
m. f.	votre	vos, your.
m. f.	leur	leurs, theirs.

2. Pronominal Forms :

	Sing.	Plur.	
m.	le mien	les miens	mine.
f.	la mienne	les miennes	
m.	le tien	les tiens	thine, yours.
f.	la tienne	les tiennes	
m.	le sien	les siens	his, hers, its, one's own.
f.	la sienne	les siennes	
m.	le nôtre	les nôtres, ours.	
f.	la nôtre		
m.	le vôtre	les vôtres, yours.	
f.	la vôtre		
m.	le leur	les leurs, theirs.	
f.	la leur		

Obs.: 1. The forms in parenthesis, **mon, ton, son,** are used instead of **ma, ta, sa,** before a vowel or **h** mute: '**Mon** amie,' 'my friend (f.)'; '**ton** histoire (f.),' 'your story'; '**son** aimable tante,' 'his amiable aunt.' 2. Since **son** (**sa ses**)='his,' 'her,' 'its,' 'one's,' the context determines which sense is intended.

Obs.: 1. The feminine, except for **leur**, is formed as for adjectives of like ending. 2. **De, à+le, les,** contract as usual; thus, **du** mien (=**de+le** mien), **aux** miennes (=**à+les** miennes), etc. 3. Note the accent mark in nôtre, vôtre, absent in notre, votre. 4. Since **le sien** (**la sienne**, etc.) ='his,' 'hers,' 'its,' 'one's,' the context determines which sense is intended.

NOTE.—The regular feminine forms, **ma, ta, sa,** were at one time used before a vowel sound; a trace of this usage survives in **ma mie** (for **m'amie**), **m'amour.**

375. Agreement. The possessives agree in gender and number with the noun denoting the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

Elle a son crayon et les miens.	She has her pencil and mine.
Il a sa plume et les vôtres.	He has his pen and yours.

a. The possessive adjective must be repeated precisely like the definite article (cf. §318):

Mes parents et mes amis.	My relatives and friends.

b. When the possessor is indefinite, **son** (**sa**, etc.) and **le sien** (**la sienne**, etc.), are used:

On doit tenir sa parole.	One must keep one's word.
Se charger des affaires d'autrui et négliger les siennes.	To undertake the business of others and neglect one's own.

376. Use of Adjectival Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are:—

1. The possessive adjective is commonly replaced by the definite article (cf. §328) when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il m'a déchiré le visage.	He has scratched my face.
But: Il a déchiré son habit.	He has torn his coat.

a. If the sense is specific, emphatic, or distinctive, the possessive is used:

Mon bras me fait mal.	My arm pains me.
Voilà ma migraine encore!	There is my sick-headache again!

Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.	I saw it with my own eyes.
Elle lui a donné sa main.	She has given him her hand (*sc.* in marriage).

2. **En** + the definite article serves in certain cases as a substitute for **son, leur,** see §367, 2, (2):

a. This construction is more usual for things than for persons; for things personified, for names of places, or to avoid ambiguity, **son, leur** are not uncommon:

La nécessité parle; il faut suivre **sa** loi.	Necessity speaks; we must follow her law.
Vous rappelez-vous cette ville? **Ses** promenades sont très belles.	Do you remember that city? Its promenades are very fine.
La source de toutes les passions est la sensibilité, l'imagination détermine **leur** pente.	Sensation is the source of all the passions, imagination determines their tendency.

3. The emphatic 'own' is denoted by **propre** or by an apposition with **à**:

Je l'ai écrit de ma propre main.	I wrote it with my own hand.
C'est mon opinion à moi.	That is my own opinion.
Cf. also: J'ai un cheval à moi.	I have a horse of my own.
C'est à moi à jouer.	It is my turn to play.

a. Along with **son** the **à** construction often avoids ambiguity:

Son père **à lui.**	**His** (*i.e.*, not 'her') father.

4. **Mon (ma)** is commonly used, in direct address, before the name of a relative (not before **papa, maman**) or the title of a superior officer:

Bonjour **mon** père (**mon** colonel).	Good morning father (colonel).
But: Est-ce toi papa (maman)?	Is that you papa (mamma)?

Note.—This usage explains the origin of **monsieur** (=**mon**+**sieur**), **madame** (=**ma**+**dame**), etc.

5. In speaking to a person of his or her relatives, **votre (vos)** is often preceded by **monsieur**, etc., for politeness:

Madame votre mère y est-elle?	Is your mother in?

6. When there is plurality of possessor, the object possessed usually remains singular, if it is singular as regards the individual possessor :

Les hommes songent moins à leur **âme** qu'à leur **corps**.	Men think less of their **souls** than of their **bodies**.
Ils ont perdu la **vie**.	They lost their **lives**.

a. Sometimes the sense demands a plural :

Leurs **têtes** se ressemblent.	Their heads are alike.

377. **Use of Pronominal Forms.** They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are the following :—

1. 'Mine,' etc., after **être** is regularly expressed by **à + moi,** etc., when denoting ownership simply, while **le mien,** etc., denotes a distinction of ownership :

Cette montre est **à moi**. Cette montre est **la mienne**.	That watch is mine.

2. The pronominal form sometimes stands without article in the predicate after certain verbs :

Ces opinions sont vôtres.	Those opinions are yours.
Elle deviendra mienne.	She shall become mine.
Je les ai fait miens.	I made them mine.

Such verbs are :

être. **devenir.** **dire.** **faire.** **regarder comme, etc.**

3. The idiom 'a friend of mine,' etc., is not literally translated :

Un de mes amis.	A friend of mine.
Un médecin de mes amis.	One of my friends, (who is) a doctor. A doctor, a friend of mine.
Un ami à moi.	A friend of mine.
Mon ami que voici.	This friend of mine
Cf.: Un tour de sa façon.	One of his tricks.

a. The use of **mien** (**tien, sien**) attributively in this sense is familiar :

Un mien parent.	A relative of mine.
Une sienne cousine.	A cousin of his.

4. Emphatic 'own' is rendered by **propre**, or is, more usually, untranslated:

Son avis et le mien (propre).	His opinion and my own.

5. When used absolutely, *i.e.*, without antecedent, the singular denotes 'property,' 'what is mine,' etc., and the plural 'relatives,' 'friends,' 'allies,' etc.:

Je ne demande que le mien.	I ask only for what is mine.
Les nôtres se sont bien battus.	Our soldiers (etc.) fought well.

a. Familiarly, the feminine means 'pranks,' etc.:

Il fait encore des siennes.	He is at his pranks again.

NOTE.—Other absolute uses are not permissible, *e.g.*, 'Votre lettre (not 'la vôtre') de la semaine dernière.'

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

378. Demonstratives.

1. Adjectival forms:

	Sing.		Plur.
m.	**ce (cet)**	this, that.	**ces.**
f.	**cette**		
m.	**ce (cet) . . . -ci**	this.	**ces . . . -ci.**
f.	**cette . . . -ci**		
m.	**ce (cet) . . -là**	that.	**ces . . -là.**
f.	**cette . . -là**		

Obs.: The form **cet** is used before a vowel or **h** mute: **Cet arbre**; **cet homme**; **cet autre dé**; but: **ce chêne**; **ce hêtre.**

2. Pronominal forms:

	Sing.		Plur.
m.	**celui**	that (one), etc.	**ceux**
f.	**celle**		**celles**
m.	**celui-ci**	this (one), etc.	**ceux-ci**
f.	**celle-ci**		**celles-ci**
m.	**celui-là**	that (one), etc.	**ceux-là**
f.	**celle-là**		**celles-là**

(Invar.)
ce, this(these), that(those) he(she, it, they).
ceci, this.
cela, that.

Obs.: The **e** of **ce** is elided before a vowel or **h** mute (§19); **c'** becomes **ç'** before **a** (§5, 4): 'ç'a été.'

379. Agreement. The adjectival form agrees in gender and number with the noun before which it stands; the pronominal form agrees in gender and number with the noun instead of which it stands:

Cette plume et celle de Jean.	This pen and that of John.
J'aime ces livres-ci, mais je n'aime pas ceux-là.	I like these books, but I do not like those.

a. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated like the definite article (cf. § 318).

380. Use of Adjectival *ce*. **Ce (cette,** etc.) = 'this' or 'that'; to distinguish 'this' from 'that' **-ci** and **-là** are respectively added to the noun:

Lis **ce** livre-**ci**; lis **ce** livre-**là**.	Read this book; read that book.
J'aime **ces** tableaux-**là**.	I like those pictures.

a. **Ce (cette,** etc.), referring to what has already been mentioned, sometimes has the force of 'that':

Le télégraphe, cette grande découverte de notre siècle.	The telegraph, that great discovery of our century.

b. The definite article replaces the demonstrative adjective in a few idioms:

Ne parlez pas de **la** sorte.	Do not speak in that way.
J'irai à l'instant.	I shall go this (very) moment.

381. Celui. The pronoun **celui (celle,** etc.) = 'that,' 'that one,' 'the one,' 'he,' is regularly used only along with a relative clause or a **de** clause:

Ceux qui rient pleureront.	Those who laugh will weep.
Celle dont je parle est venue.	She of whom I speak has come.
Le devoir d'aimer Dieu et celui d'aimer son prochain.	The duty of loving God and that of loving one's neighbour.
Cette robe et celle que j'ai vue.	This dress and the one I saw.
Mes plumes et celles de mon frère.	My pens and my brother's.

Obs.: Note the use of **celui**=English possessive noun substantively.

a. The relative sentence is sometimes elliptically expressed by the past participle:

Les découvertes énumérées sont celles faites par Edison.	The discoveries enumerated are those made by Edison.

b. **Celui-là** replaces **celui** when the predicate comes before the relative:

Celui-là est riche qui est toujours content.	He (that man) is rich who is always happy.

382. Celui-ci, celui-là. The pronouns **celui-ci (celle-ci,** etc.) = 'this,' 'this one,' 'he,' 'the latter' and **celui-là (celle-**

là, etc.) = 'that,' 'that one,' 'the former,' are used to contrast the nearer with the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez celle-ci, et renvoyez celle-là.	Here are the two chains; keep this (one), and send back that (one).
Veut-il ceux-ci ou ceux-là ?	Does he wish these or those?
Cicéron et Virgile étaient Romains; celui-ci était poète, et celui-là orateur.	Cicero and Virgil were Romans; the former was an orator, and the latter a poet.

Obs.: The idiom in the last example is literally 'the latter..., the former.'

a. 'This' or 'that' for emphasis, not contrast, is **celui-là**:

C'est une bonne loi (que) celle-là.	This (that) is a good law.

383. ***Ce* as Representative Subject.** **Ce** = 'this,' 'that,' 'these,' 'those,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they,' according to the context, is used with **être**, or with **devoir, pouvoir, savoir** + **être**, as representative subject, when the logical subject is:—

1. A proper noun, or a determinate noun, including adjectives as such:

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
Ce sera un beau spectacle.	That (it) will be a fine sight.
Ce sont nos plumes.	These (those) are our pens.
Était-**ce** le meilleur ?	Was it the best?
Ce sont des Allemands.	They (those) are Germans.
C'est mon ami(e).	He (she) is my friend.
Ce peut être Jean.	That may be John.

a. Before **être** + an indeterminate noun **il (ils, elles)** is the regular construction:

Il est temps de s'en aller.	It is time to go.
Ils sont amis (Allemands).	They are friends (Germans).
Elle est couturière.	She is a seamstress.

NOTE.—For a few expressions like **c'est dommage**, etc., in which **c'est** stands with an indeterminate noun, see 384, 1, note 3.

b. **Il est** is always used to indicate hours of the day:

Il est midi (trois heures).	It is noon (three o'clock).
But: Quelle heure est-**ce** qui vient de sonner ?—**C'est** cinq heures.	What hour has just struck?—It is five.

c. Observe the use of **ce** in the following date idioms:

C'est aujourd'hui lundi.	To-day is Monday.
Ce sera demain le quatre.	To-morrow will be the fourth.

2. A pronoun:

Qui est-**ce**?—**Ce** sont **eux**.	Who is it?—It is they.
Ce sont les leurs.	Those are theirs.
C'est ceci; **c**'est cela.	It is this; it is that.
C'étaient les mêmes.	They (those) were the same.
Ce doivent être les miens.	Those must be mine.

3. An infinitive, or an infinitive with **de**:

Ce serait tout perdre.	That would be losing everything.
Voir **c**'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
Ce que je crains **c**'est de l'offenser.	What I fear is to offend him.

4. A noun sentence:

Est-**ce** que vous ne le ferez pas?	Will you not do it?
Où est-**ce** qu'il est?	Where is it that he is?
Ce n'est pas qu'il ait peur.	It is not that he is afraid.

a. The noun sentence may be understood:

Vous partirez, n'est-**ce** pas? (= n'est-**ce** pas que vous partirez?)	You will go, will you not?

5. An adverb of quantity:

Combien est-**ce**? **Ç**'a été trop.	How much is it? It was too much.

Note.—For agreement of the verb, see §232, 3.

384. *Ce* as Real Subject. **Ce** stands as real subject of **être**, or of **devoir, pouvoir, savoir + être,** when the complement of **être** is:—

1. An adjective, an adjective + **à** + an infinitive, an infinitive preceded by **à**, an adverb (in all cases without further syntactical connection, see *a*, below):

C'est facile (vrai, bien).	That (it) is easy (true, well).
Ce doit être (ne saurait être) vrai.	That must be (cannot be) true.
Il est parti, **c**'est clair.	He is gone, that is clear.
C'est clair, il est parti.	It is clear, he is gone.
C'est à désirer.	That (it) is to be desired.

Où sera-**ce**?	Where will it (that) be?
C'était bien mal à vous.	That was very wrong of you.

a. When followed by **de** + an infinitive or by a **que** clause, the regular construction for the above is impersonal **il** (not 'ce'); so also the parenthetical **il est vrai** and **n'est-il pas vrai**? (= **n'est-ce pas**?), though without syntactical connection:

Il est facile de dire cela.	It is easy to say that.
Il est triste de vous voir ainsi.	It is sad to see you thus.
Il est clair que j'ai raison.	It is clear that I am right.
Il est à désirer que la guerre finisse bientôt.	It is to be desired that the war will soon end.
On rit, **il** est vrai, mais attendez.	They laugh, to be sure, but wait.
Il est bien mal à vous de parler ainsi.	It is very wrong of you to speak so.

NOTE.—1. Colloquially, **c'est** is pretty freely used instead of **il est** before **de** + infinitive or a **que** clause: 'C'est facile **de** faire cela'; 'C'est clair **que** j'ai raison,' etc.

2. This use of **ce** is permissible in the literary style only in expressions of emotion, *e.g.*, **C'est heureux (malheureux, beau, triste, étonnant,** etc.), **c'est à présumer (craindre, regretter,** etc.): 'C'est triste **de** vous voir'; 'C'est à craindre **qu**'il ne soit noyé.'

3. The **ce** construction is obligatory after a few noun phrases of like value, *e.g.*, **C'est dommage (pitié, plaisir, justice),** etc., 'C'est pitié **de** l'entendre.'

2. A prepositional clause, or a conjunction:

C'est pour vous.	It (that) is for you.
C'est pourquoi je suis venu.	That is why I came.
C'est comme vous (le) dites.	It is as you say.

385. *Ce* + a Relative. As antecedent **ce** + a relative denotes **'that which,' 'what,' 'which,'** etc.:

Ce qui m'amuse.	What (that which) amuses me.
Ce que je dis est vrai.	What I say is true.
Ce dont nous parlions.	What we were speaking of.
Ce à quoi je pense.	What I am thinking of.
Il est âgé, ce qui est dommage.	He is old, which is a pity.

a. **Ce,** so used, either immediately precedes the relative, or is, for emphasis, divided from it by **être** + a predicate substantive:

Ce qu'il veut est la gloire.	What he desires is glory.
C'est la gloire qu'il veut.	It is glory that he desires.

NOTE.—This type of construction is widely used to render a predicate substantive emphatic, *e.g.*, 'C'est ton frère **qui** le dit'; 'C'est à vous **que** (= 'à qui') je parle'; '**C'est mourir que de** vivre ainsi'; 'C'est une belle ville **que** Paris' (cf. 397, 2, n. 1).

386. Other uses of *ce*. Apart from its use with **être** or with a relative, **ce** is found in a few phrases only, mostly archaic, familiar or jocular:

Ce devint un usage.	This (that) became a custom.
Tu crains, **ce** lui dit-il.	You fear, said he to him.
Sur **ce**, je vous quitte.	And now, I leave you.
De **ce** non content.	Not satisfied with this.

a. The parenthetical **ce semble** may be used only when unconnected (cf. §384, 1, *a*), otherwise **il semble**:

C'est lui, **ce** me semble, au moins.	It's he, it seems to me, at least.
But: **Il** me semble **que** c'est lui.	

387. Pleonastic *ce*. As compared with English, **ce** is often pleonastic; thus, it is used with **être** + a logical subject:—

1. Regularly, after **celui qui** and **ce qui**:

Celle qui l'a dit **c'**est vous.	The one who said so is you.
Ce que je crains **ce** sont mes prétendus amis.	What I fear is my would-be friends.
Ce à quoi je pense **c'**est sa santé.	What I think of is his health.

2. Regularly, between infinitives when not negative:

Penser, **c'**est vivre.	To think is to live.
But: Végéter (**ce**) n'est pas vivre.	To vegetate is not to live.

3. Regularly, in inversion with **que**:

C'est une belle ville que Paris.	Paris is a beautiful city. It is a fine city, ('is') Paris.

4. Optionally, in other inversions for emphasis:

La guerre (**ce**) serait la ruine.	War would be ruin.

NOTE.—When the complement of **être** is an adjective or participle, pleonastic **ce** may not be used: 'Ce qui est utile n'est pas toujours juste.'

388. *Ceci* and *cela*. **Ceci** = 'this,' the nearer, and **cela** = 'that,' the more remote, are used to denote something indicated, but not yet named:

Gardez ceci et donnez-moi cela.	Keep this and give me that.

Obs.: If the object has been already named, or if the name is fully implied by the context, **celui-ci** (**-là**) must be used.

a. **Ceci** also refers to what is about to be said, and **cela** to what has been said:

Réfléchissez bien à ceci.	Think well on this.
Je ne dis pas davantage, cela suffit.	I say no more, that is enough.

b. **Ceci** (*not* 'cela') may have a predicate noun:

Ceci est un secret. Or: C'est **ici** un secret (rarer).	This is a secret.
But: C'est **là** un secret. **Cela** c'est un secret.	That is a secret.

Note.—**Cela** is not so divided before **même**, **seul**, and its division in negations is optional: '**Cela** seul (même) en est la cause': 'Cela n'est pas (*or* ce n'est pas là) une faute.'

c. **Cela** (*not* 'ceci') = 'this' before a **de** clause:

Paris a **cela** d'avantageux.	Paris has this advantage.

d. **Cela** may be replaced by **là** after **de** and **par**:

De **là** vient que, etc.	From that it comes that, etc.
Il faut commencer par **là**.	We must begin with that.

e. **Cela** is often contracted to **ça** colloquially:

Ça ne fait rien.	That doesn't matter.

f. **Ça** is sometimes used familiarly or contemptuously of persons instead of a personal pronoun:

Regardez comme **ça** mange.	Look how they (etc.) eat.
Ça veut faire à sa tête.	You (etc.) wish to do as you please.

Note.—Distinguish **ça** from **çà** (adverb) and **çà** ! (interjection).

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

389. Interrogatives.

1. Adjectival forms:

	Sing.	Plur.	
m.	**quel?**	**quels?**	which?, what? etc.
f.	**quelle?**	**quelles?**	

2. Pronominal forms:

	Sing.	Plur.	
m.	**lequel?**	**lesquels?**	which?, which or what one(s)?
f.	**laquelle?**	**lesquelles?**	

(Invar.)
- **qui?**, who?, whom?
- **que?**, what?
- **quoi?**, what?

Obs.: 1. For the feminine and plural of **quel**, cf. §§337, 1, (2), and 338.

2. **Lequel**=**le**+**quel**, both parts being inflected (§§316, 389, 1); **de**, **à** contract with **le**, **les** (**duquel**, **auquel**, etc., cf. §317).

3. **Que**=**qu'** before a vowel or **h** mute (§19).

390. Agreement. The adjectival forms agree like ordinary adjectives; the variable pronominal forms agree in gender, not necessarily in number, with the nouns for which they stand; **qui?** assumes the number of the noun or pronoun referred to:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Laquelle des dames est venue?	Which of the ladies has come?
Qui sonne? Qui sont-elles?	Who rings? Who are they?

391. Quel?, Lequel?. The adjective **quel?** = 'which?', 'what?', and the pronoun **lequel?** = 'which (one)?', 'what (one)?', refer either to persons or things, and stand both in direct and indirect questions:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Dites-moi quel livre il a.	Tell me which (what) book he has.
Desquels avez-vous besoin?	Which (ones) do you need?
Dites-moi lesquels vous avez.	Tell me which (ones) you have.
Quelle dame est arrivée?	Which (what) lady has come?
Je ne sais pas laquelle.	I do not know which (one).
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Quel homme est-ce là?	What (what kind of) man is that?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?	To which of the men does he speak?

a. **Quel!** in exclamations sometimes = 'what a!', 'what!':

Quel héros! Quels héros!	What a hero! What heroes!
Quelle belle scène!	What a beautiful scene!

b. **Quel?** as predicative adjective often replaces **qui?** = 'who?':

Quels sont ces gens-là?	Who are those people? (*or* what kind of people are those?)
Sais-tu quelle est cette dame?	Do you know who that lady is?

NOTE.—A pleonastic **de** is commonly used before alternatives after **quel?**, **lequel?** and other interrogatives, probably caused by case attraction with **des deux**, often present in such expressions: 'Quel (des deux) est le plus habile, **de** cet homme-ci ou **de** celui-là?'; 'Laquelle est la plus illustre, **d'**Athènes ou **de** Rome?'

392. Qui?. 1. The pronoun **qui?** = 'who?', 'whom?', is regularly used of persons only, and stands in both direct and indirect questions:

Qui frappe ? Qui est là ?	Who is knocking ? Who is there ?
De qui (à qui) parle-t-il ?	Of whom (to whom) is he speaking ?
Qui avez-vous vu ?	Whom did you see ?
Qui êtes-vous ?	Who are you ?
Dites-moi qui est venu.	Tell me who has come ?

a. **Qui ?** is sometimes used, though rarely and not necessarily, as subject to a transitive verb in the sense of 'what ?':

Qui vous amène de si bonne heure ?	What brings you so early ?

b. **Qui ?**, predicatively, is often replaced, especially when feminine or plural, by **quel ?**:

Quelle est cette dame ?	Who is that lady ? (What l. is that?).
Quels sont-ils ?	Who are they ?

2. 'Whose ?', denoting ownership simply = **à qui ?**; otherwise generally **de qui ?**, sometimes **quel ?**, but never 'dont':

À qui est cette maison-là ?	Whose house is that ?
De qui êtes-vous fils ?	Whose son are you ?
Quelle maison a été brûlée ?	Whose (what) house was burnt ?

NOTE.—Compare with this the idiom **c'est à qui**: 'C'était à qui finirait le premier,' 'It was a strife as to who would finish first.'

393. Que ?, Quoi ?. The form **que ?** = 'what ?' is conjunctive, while **quoi ?** = 'what ?' is disjunctive; their uses in detail are :—

1. **Que ?** stands regularly as direct object or as predicate, and in direct question only :

Que vous a-t-il dit ?	What did he say to you ?
Que cherchez-vous ?	What are you looking for ?
Que sont-ils devenus ?	What has become of them ?

a. **Que ?**, alternatively with **quoi ?**, may stand with an infinitive in indirect question :

Je ne sais que (quoi) dire.	I know not what to say.

b. **Que ?** and **que !** sometimes have adverbial force :

Que ne m'avez-vous dit cela ?	Why did you not tell me that ?
Que vous êtes heureux !	How happy you are !
Que d'argent perdu !	What a quantity of money lost !

2. 'What?' as subject of a verb is regularly **qu'est-ce qui?**:

Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit?	What is making that noise?

a. The form **que?** may stand as subject to a few intransitive verbs, mostly such as may also be impersonal, but never as subject to a transitive verb:

Que sert de pleurer?	What is the use of crying?
Que vous en semble?	What do you think of **it**?
Qu'est-ce?	What is it?

3. **Quoi?** is used absolutely, *i.e.*, with ellipsis of the verb, and after a preposition:

Il y a du nouveau.—Quoi?	There is news.—What?
Quoi de plus beau que cela?	What finer than that?
Quoi! vous l'admirez!	What! You admire him!
À quoi pensez-vous?	What are you thinking **of**?
En quoi puis-je vous servir?	In what can I help you?

a. In cases of special emphasis **quoi?** may be direct object:

Je reçois quoi?—Des lettres.	I receive what?—Letters.

b. With an infinitive, **que?**, or more emphatically, **quoi?** is used:

Que (quoi) faire?	What is one to do?
Je ne sais que (quoi) répondre.	I know not what to answer.

394. **Interrogative Locutions.** The use of interrogative phrases formed with **est-ce**, etc., instead of the simple forms is very frequent (cf. §§392-3):

Qui est-ce qui chante?	for	Qui chante?
Qui est-ce que vous demandez?	"	Qui demandez-vous?
À qui est-ce que vous parliez?	"	À qui parliez-vous?
Qu'est-ce que cela prouve?	"	Que prouve cela?
Qu'est-ce que c'est?	"	Qu'est-ce?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?	"	Qu'est-ce que cela?
De quoi est-ce qu'il parle?	"	De quoi parle-t-il?
Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit?	What is making that noise?	

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

395. Relative Pronouns.

qui, who, which, that; whom (after a preposition).
que, whom, which, that.
dont, whose, of whom, of which, etc.
où, in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.

lequel, m. s.	**lesquels**, m. pl.	who, whom, which, that
laquelle, f. s.	**lesquelles**, f. pl.	

quoi, what, which.

Obs.: For **qu'**, see §19.

396. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number and person of its antecedent:

Moi qui étais (vous qui étiez) là.	I who was (you who were) there.
Les lettres que j'ai apportées.	The letters which I have brought.
Moi qui suis son ami(e).	I who am his friend (m. *or* f.).
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !	(Ye) gods who hear me !
C'est nous qui l'avons dit.	It is we who have said it.
Je suis celui qui l'ai dit.	I am the one who has said it.

a. When the antecedent is a predicate noun, or an adjective as such, the relative may agree in person either with this noun or with the subject of the sentence:

Nous sommes deux moines qui voyageons (voyagent).	We are two monks who are travelling.
Je suis le seul qui l'aie (ait) dit.	I am the only one who has said it.

b. The relative after **un** + a plural is either singular or plural, usually according to the sense:

C'est un de mes (des) procès qui m'a (m'ont) ruiné.	It is one of my (of the) law-suits which has (have) ruined me.

397. Qui, Que. Both **qui** and **que** refer to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things; their uses in detail are:—

1. **Qui** = 'who,' 'which,' 'that,' serves as subject; **qui** = 'whom,' of persons only, or things personified, may also be used after a preposition:

La dame qui a chanté.	The lady who (that) has sung.
Les amis qui sont arrivés.	The friends who (that) have come.
La vache qui beugle.	The cow which (that) lows.
Les livres qui ont été perdus.	The books which have been lost.
Les oiseaux qui volent.	The birds which (that) fly.
Ce qui m'amuse.	What (that which) amuses me.
Rien qui soit beau.	Nothing that is beautiful.
La tante chez qui je demeure.	The aunt with whom I live.
Les amis à (de) qui je parlais.	The friends to (of) whom I spoke.
Rochers à qui je me plains.	Rocks to whom I complain.

a. **Qui**, without antecedent, sometimes = **celui qui** (**ceux qui**, etc.), or, when repeated, = **les uns . . . les autres**:

Aimez qui vous aime.	Love him (the one) who loves you.
Jouera qui voudra.	Let those who will play.
Pour qui connaît.	For any one who knows.
Qui d'un côté, qui de l'autre.	Some on one side, some on the other.

b. Similarly, in a few phrases, mostly exclamatory or parenthetical, **qui** = **ce qui**:

Voilà qui est étrange!	That is strange!
Qui pis est (*or* ce qui est pis).	What is worse.

2. **Que** = 'whom,' 'which,' 'that,' serves regularly as direct object:

Les ami(e)s que j'aime.	The friends whom (that) I love.
Le livre (cheval) que j'ai.	The book (horse) which I have.
Les plumes que j'ai achetées.	The pens which I have bought.
Ce que vous dites.	That which you say.
Rien de ce que vous dites.	Nothing that you say.

a. **Que** stands also as predicate nominative (cf. §295, 1), and as logical subject of an impersonal verb:

Malheureuse que je suis!	Unhappy woman that I am!
Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue?	What has become of her?
À l'heure qu'il est.	At the present hour.
L'homme qu'il vous faut.	The man that you need.
Prenez ce qu'il vous faut.	Take what you need.

NOTES.—1. The **que** of emphatic inversions (§385, *a*, n.) is best explained as predicative **que**: 'C'est une belle ville **que** Paris' = 'C'est une belle ville **que** Paris (est)' or 'C'est une belle ville (ce) **que** (c'est) Paris'; 'Erreur **que** tout cela' = '(C'est) erreur **que** tout cela (est)' or '(C'est) erreur (ce) **que** (c'est) tout cela.'

2. The form **que** is often a relative adverb, not to be confounded in function with the relative proper: 'Dans le temps **que** cela arrivait'; 'C'est à vous **que** je parle' (or 'C'est vous à qui je parle').

398. Dont. The form **dont** = 'whose,' 'of whom,' 'of which,' etc., has the value of **de** + a relative; it refers to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things:

L'homme dont le fils est mort.	The man whose son is dead.
Les gens dont je parle.	The people of whom I speak.
Les plumes dont je me sers.	The pens which I make use of.
La gloire dont il est avide.	The fame for which he is eager.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.

a. A noun after **dont** = 'whose' does not omit the article as in English, and must follow its governing verb (cf. §400, 2):

Le monsieur dont j'ai trouvé la bourse.	The gentleman whose purse I found.

b. As compared with **d'où** (cf. §399, *a*), **dont** has figurative force in expressions referring to extraction, lineage, etc.:

La maison dont il sort.	The family from which he comes.

c. **Dont** was originally an adverb (L. *de* + *unde*), and is often best construed as such:

Le pays dont il est venu.	The country whence he came.

399. Où. The adverb **où** = 'where' is also used as a relative with the value of **dans** (**à**, **sur**, **vers**, etc.) + a relative; if preceded by a preposition, **où** = 'which,' 'where':

La maison où je loge.	The house in which I lodge.
Le siècle où nous vivons.	The age in which we live.
Le but où il tend.	The end towards which he tends.
Les villes par où je suis venu.	The cities through which I came.
L'endroit d'où il vient.	The place from which he comes.
D'où venez-vous?	Where do you come from?

a. **D'où** = 'from which,' 'whence,' is usually literal in force:

La maison d'où il sort.	The house out of which he comes.

400. Lequel. The form **lequel** = 'who,' 'whom,' 'which,' 'that,' refers to persons or things, and varies in form to agree with its antecedent; it is chiefly used where **qui, que,** etc., may not be employed:—

1. **Lequel,** being inflected, stands where **qui, que,** from want of inflection, would be ambiguous, or it serves, owing to its stress, to denote the more remote of two possible antecedents:

La sœur de mon ami laquelle vient d'arriver.	The sister of my friend who has just come.
Le fils du rédacteur lequel je viens de voir.	The son of the editor whom (*i.e.*, 'the son') I have just seen.

a. **Lequel** may not be used of persons after **en,** and it must be used of persons after **parmi, entre:**

Un homme en qui je crois.	A man in whom I believe.
Les amis parmi (entre) lesquels.	The friends among whom.

2. When depending on a noun governed by a preposition, 'whose' must be turned by **duquel,** etc., which must follow the noun (cf. §398, *a*):

La dame au fils de laquelle (*or* de qui) je donne des leçons.	The lady to whose son I give lessons.

NOTE.—**Lequel** is used exceptionally as an adjective: 'J'espère partir demain, **auquel** cas, etc.'; 'Je viens de toucher mille francs, de **laquelle** somme je payerai mes dettes.'

401. Quoi. 1. The form **quoi** = 'what,' 'which,' is used without definite antecedent, and stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà de quoi je parlais.	That is what I was speaking of.
Sur quoi il est parti.	Whereupon he went away.
C'est à quoi je pensais.	That is what I was thinking of.
Il m'a payé, ce à quoi je ne m'attendais guère.	He paid me, which I hardly expected.

a. De quoi + an infinitive, expressed or implied, denotes the means or cause of the action of the infinitive:

Il a de quoi vivre.	He has enough to live on.
Il a de quoi (*sc.* vivre, etc.).	He has means (is well off).
Donnez-moi de quoi écrire.	Give me something to write with.
Il n'y a pas de quoi.	There is no occasion (don't mention it, etc.).

b. Quoi stands without a preposition in a few expressions:

Quoi faisant.	(By) doing which.
Un je ne sais quoi de cruel.	A certain indefinable cruelty.

2. 'What' = 'that which' is expressed by ce + a relative (cf. §385):

Je vois ce qui se passe.	I see what is going on.
Je sais ce que je sais.	I know what I know.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.
Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.
Il est sourd, ce qui est bien dommage.	He is deaf, which is a great pity.

402. Remarks. 1. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le tableau que j'ai vu là.	The picture (which) I saw there.
Le livre dont je parle est à moi.	The book (which) I speak of is mine.

2. Relative and antecedent should stand as near together as possible:

Il y a de ce livre une édition qui se vend, etc.	There is an edition of that book which is sold, etc.

Not: Une édition de ce livre qui, etc.

3. A preposition never ends the relative sentence, as sometimes in English:

Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.

4. For English forms in -ing = relative clause, see §337, 3.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

403. Indefinites.

1. Adjectival forms:

1. **certain**, a certain; pl. **certain**.
2. **chaque**, each, every.
3. **différent(e)s**, pl., various, etc.
4. **divers**, m. pl. / **diverses**, f. pl. } various, etc.
5. **maint**, many a.
6. **quelque**, some; pl., some (few).

Obs.: Except for **divers**, the feminine and plural are formed like those of ordinary adjectives.

2. Pronominal forms:

1. **autrui**, others, other people, etc.
2. **chacun**, m. / **chacune**, f. } each (one), every (one).
3. **on** (**l'on**), one, people, etc.
4. **personne...ne**, nobody, etc.
5. **quelqu'un**, m. s. / **quelqu'une**, f. s. } somebody, etc.
   quelques-uns, m. pl. / **quelques-unes**, f. pl. } some (people), etc.
6. **quelque chose**, something.
7. **rien...ne**, nothing.

Obs.: 1. **On** often becomes **l'on** after a vowel sound to avoid hiatus, especially after **et**, **ou**, **où**, **que**, **lorsque**, etc., **qui**, **quoi**, **pourquoi**, **si**, **ainsi**, **aussi**, but not usually when a closely following word has initial **l**; **qu'on** almost always becomes **que l'on** when a closely following word has initial [k] sound.

2. For **quelqu'un(e)**, see §19.

3. Note the hyphen of the plural of **quelqu'un**.

3. Forms serving either as adjective or as pronoun:

1. **aucun...ne**, no; nobody, etc.
2. **autre**, other.
3. **même**, same, etc.
4. **nul...ne**, m. / **nulle...ne**, f. } no; nobody, etc.
5. **pas un...ne**, no; nobody, etc.
6. **plusieurs**, m. *or* f. pl., several.
7. **tel**, m. / **telle**, f. } such, etc.
8. **tout**, m. **tous**, m. pl. / **toute**, f. **toutes**, f. pl. } all, every, etc.
9. **un**, a; one, etc.

Obs.: The feminine and plural are like those of adjectives of like ending, except the feminine of **nul** and the plural of **tout**.

404. Use of Adjectival Forms. 1. **Certain** = '(a) certain,' pl. 'certain,' 'some,' precedes its noun; the use of **un** in the singular, and of partitive **de** in the plural, is optional:

(Un) certain roi de France.	A certain French king.
(De) certaines gens.	Certain (some) people.

a. **Certains** is exceptionally used as a pronoun:

Certains prétendent, etc.	Some assert, etc.

NOTE.—**Certain,** placed after the noun, is an ordinary adjective = 'sure,' 'trustworthy, 'positive,' etc. (cf. §352, 4).

2. **Chaque** = 'each,' 'every,' is distributive and singular only:

Chaque homme (femme).	Each *or* every man (woman).

a. Distinguish **chaque** = 'every,' 'each,' which individualizes from **tout** = 'every,' 'all,' which generalizes:

Chaque homme a des passions.	Every (each) man has passions.
Tout homme a une passion dominante.	Every man has (all men have) a ruling passion.
Chaque année; tous les ans.	Each year; every year.

3. **Différents, Divers** = 'various,' 'several,' 'sundry,' 'divers,' are indefinite adjectives only when plural and standing before nouns:

Différentes choses m'ont retenu.	Various things detained me.
On a essayé divers moyens.	Several methods have been tried.

NOTE.—With the sense of 'different,' 'diverse,' they are used as ordinary adjectives.

4. **Maint,** whether singular or plural, = 'many a'; it is often repeated:

Maint(s) danger(s).	Many a danger.
Mainte(s) fois.	Many a time.
En mainte et mainte occasion.	On many an occasion.

5. **Quelque** = 'some'; when used of quantity or number, **quelque** = 'some, but not much or many,' 'a little,' 'a few,' and is of more limited force than the partitive some (§322):

Quelques amis sont pires que des ennemis.	Some friends are worse than enemies.
J'ai eu quelque difficulté.	I have had some (a little) difficulty.
Il a quelques amis ici.	He has some (a few) friends here.
Voici les quelques francs **qui** nous restent.	Here are the few francs we have left.

a. **Quelque** has adverbial force, and is invariable, before numerals (not nouns of number) = 'about,' 'some':

À quelque dix milles d'ici.	About (some) ten miles from here.
But: Quelques centaines de pas.	A few hundred paces.
À cent et quelques pas.	At a little more than 100 paces.

b. Similarly before adjectives or adverbs = 'however' (cf. §271, 4, *b*):

Quelque riches qu'ils soient.	However rich they may be.
Quelque bien que vous parliez.	However well you may speak.

NOTE.—'However' + adjective is also expressed by **tout**...**que** (usually with the indicative), **si**...(**que**) (with the subjunctive), **pour**...**que** (with the subjunctive), *e.g.*, '**Toutes** bonnes **qu**'elles sont,' 'However good they are'; '**Si** bonnes **qu**'elles soient,' 'However good they are'; '**Si** bonnes vos raisons soient-elles,' 'However good your reasons are'; '**Pour** bonnes **qu**'elles soient,' 'However good they are.'

c. For the use of **quelque(s)**...**que** = 'whatever,' see §407.

405. Use of Pronominal Forms. 1. **Autrui** = 'others' 'other people,' 'our neighbour (in general),' is rarely used except after a preposition:

Il ne faut pas convoiter les biens d'autrui.	We must not covet the goods of others.
La rigueur envers autrui.	Severity towards others.

NOTE.—'Others' is more usually **les autres, d'autres** (§ 406, 2, *b*); regularly so, as subject or direct object.

2. **Chacun** = 'each,' 'each one,' 'every one' is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **chaque** (§404, 2):

Chacun d'eux a refusé.	Each (every) one of them refused.
Donnez à chacun(e) sa part.	Give to each his (her) share.
Des poires à deux sous chacune.	Pears at two cents each.

a. The possessive form to **chacun** is regularly **son**:

Mettez-les chacun(e) à sa place.	Put them each in his (her, its) place.

b. **Chacun** in apposition to **nous, vous,** takes, as its possessive, **notre, votre**:

Parlez chacun(e) à votre tour.	Speak each in your turn.

c. **Chacun,** in apposition to **ils, elles,** takes the possessive **leur** before the direct object; otherwise **son** *or* **leur**:

Elles récitent chacune leur verset (chacune à son *or* leur tour).	They each recite their verse (each in turn).

d. The reflexive to **chacun** = 'every one' is **se (soi)**:

Chacun pour soi.	Every one for himself.

3. **On** = 'one,' 'some one,' 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' etc., is used as subject of a verb in the third singular, without specifying any person in particular:

On dit que la reine est malade.	They (people) say the queen is ill.
A-t-on allumé mon feu?	Has anyone lighted my fire?
On ne peut pas mêler l'huile avec l'eau.	One (we, you) cannot mix oil with water.

a. The **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

On a attrapé le larron.	The thief has been caught.
On croit que la guerre est finie.	It is thought the war is over.
On vous demande.	You are wanted.

b. **On** may not be replaced by a personal pronoun subject:

On est triste quand on est sans argent.	A man is sad when he is without money.

c. Since **on** is subject only, the corresponding direct and indirect object, when required, are borrowed from **vous**:

Lorsqu'on presse trop un poisson il vous échappe.	When you squeeze a fish too much it escapes you.

d. The reflexive to **on** is **se (soi)**, and the corresponding possessive is **son**, whatever be the English equivalent:

On se demande.	People ask themselves.
On perdrait son temps.	You would lose your time.

e. Although **on** is invariable, a feminine or plural noun or adjective may relate to it, when the sense is clearly feminine or plural:

On est plus jolie à présent.	She is prettier now.
On est si proches voisins.	We are such near neighbours.

f. **On** may replace a personal pronoun, often with depreciatory force:

On y pensera.	I (we) shall see about it.
On se croit bien fin.	You (he, etc.) think yourself very cunning.

4. **Personne** and **rien** along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = 'nobody,' 'no one,' 'not anybody,' etc., and 'nothing,' 'not anything,' respectively:

Personne n'est venu.	Nobody (no one) has come.
Je n'ai parlé à personne.	I have spoken to nobody (not spoken to anybody).
Ne dites rien.	Say nothing (do not say anything).
Personne ici !—Personne.	No one here !—No one.
Qu'a-t-il dit ?—Rien.	What did he say ?—Nothing.

a. If the context contains or implies negation, **personne**, **rien**, assume affirmative force (= **quelqu'un, quelque chose**):

Il n'a rien dit à personne.	He said nothing to any one.
Personne n'a jamais rien dit.	Nobody has ever said anything.
Je vous défends de rien dire.	I forbid you to say anything.
Je crains de parler à personne.	I fear to speak to anybody.
Impossible de rien faire !	Impossible to do anything !
Il cessa de rien donner.	He ceased giving anything.
Où trouverai-je rien de pareil ?	Where shall I find anything like it?
Sans parler à personne.	Without speaking to anybody.

b. The above rule does not apply to pleonastic **ne**, nor to double negations:

Je crains qu'il ne fasse mal à quelqu'un.	I fear he will hurt somebody.
Ne revenez pas sans voir quelqu'un.	Do not come back without seeing somebody.

Note.—The pronoun **personne** is masculine (sometimes sylleptically feminine like **on**, 3, *e*, above); the noun **personne** is always feminine (cf. §303, 1, *c*).

5. **Quelqu'un(e)** = 'somebody,' 'some one,' 'any one,' etc., with its plural **quelques-un(e)s** = 'some,' 'some people,' 'any,' 'a few,' etc., is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **quelque** (§404, 5):

Il y a quelqu'un là.	There is somebody there.
Y a-t-il quelqu'un là ?	Is there any one there ?
A-t-il quelques-unes des fleurs ?	Has he some (any) of the flowers ?
Il en reste quelques-unes.	A few of them remain.
Quelqu'une des dames viendra.	Some one of the ladies will come.
Quelques-uns le croient.	Some (people) believe it.

6. **Quelque chose** = 'something,' 'anything,' and is masculine, though formed from the feminine noun **chose**:

Quelque chose est promis.	Something is promised.
A-t-il dit quelque chose?	Did he say anything?
A-t-il quelque chose de bon?	Has he anything good?

406. Adjectival or Pronominal Forms. 1. **Aucun, nul, pas un,** along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = 'no,' 'not any,' 'not one,' as adjective, and 'none,' 'nobody,' 'no one,' 'not one,' as pronoun:

Aucun / Nul / Pas un } écrivain ne le dit.	No writer says so.
Aucun ne le croit.	No one believes it.
Je n'en ai vu aucun(e).	I saw none of them.
Pas un de ses amis ne reste.	Not one of his friends remains.
A-t-il de l'espoir?—Aucun.	Has he any hope?—None.

a. **Aucun,** but not 'nul' or 'pas un,' becomes affirmative (= **quelque** or **quelqu'un**) when the context is negative (cf. §405, 4, *a*):

Sans aucune cause.	Without any cause.
Rien pour aucun de nous.	Nothing for any of us.
Gardez-vous de faire aucune faute.	Take care not to make any mistake.

b. The plural adjective **aucun(e)s** may be used, especially before nouns with no singular, or before such as are preferably plural; **(d')aucuns** = **quelques-uns** is sometimes found in naïf or jocular style:

Il ne me rend aucuns soins.	He gives me no care.
(D')aucuns le croiraient.	Some would believe it.

2. **Autre** = 'other,' is usually preceded in the singular by **un** or **l'**:

Une autre fois; d'autres livres.	Another time; other books.
En avez-vous un(e) autre?	Have you another?
Un autre dit le contraire.	Another says the contrary.
Les autres m'aideront.	The others will help me.
Entre autres choses.	Among other things.

a. Distinguish **un autre** = 'another (a different)' from **encore un** = 'another (an additional)':

Donnez-moi une autre plume / " " encore une " }	Give me another pen.

b. 'Others,' 'other people,' = **les autres** *or* **d'autres,** sometimes **autrui** (cf. §405, 1):

Il se méfie toujours des autres.	He always suspects others.
D'autres pensent autrement.	Others think otherwise.
Bien d'autres.	Many others.

Obs.: The **d'** of **d'autres** is a partitive sign (cf. §325, 1, *b*).

c. **Autres** is often added familiarly to **nous, vous:**

Nous autres peintres.	We painters.
Vous autres Français parlez très vite.	You Frenchmen speak very fast.

d. Observe the following expressions with **autre:**

Autre part; de part et d'autre.	Elsewhere; reciprocally.
C'est un (tout) autre homme.	He is a very different man.
Parler de choses et d'autres.	To speak of this and that.
L'autre jour.	The other day.
Autre est promettre, autre est donner.	It is one thing to promise, and another to give.
Tout autre que lui.	Any one but him.
De temps à autre.	From time to time.
À d'autres (familiar).	Tell that to the marines (familiar).

e. For **l'un...l'autre, les uns...les autres,** see §406, 7, (2).

3. **Même** varies in meaning and form according to its position and function:—

(1) Preceding its noun or as a pronoun, **même** = 'same,' and nearly always has the article:

La (les) même(s) chose(s).	The same thing(s).
Les miens sont les mêmes.	Mine are the same.
Donnez-moi des mêmes.	Give me some of the same.
Une même affaire.	One and the same business.
Des plantes de la même espèce.	Plants of the same species.

(2) Following the noun or pronoun qualified, **même** = 'self,' 'very,' 'even,' and agrees, but has no article:

Dieu est la bonté même.	God is goodness itself.
Moi-même; elles-mêmes.	I myself; they themselves.
Cela même; celui-là même.	That itself; that man himself.
Les enfants mêmes.	The very (even the) children.

a. **Même** is also used as an adverb (invariable):

Il nous a même insultés.	He even insulted us.
Quand même il le dirait.	Even if he should say so.

b. **Même** forms a number of highly idiomatic locutions:

Cela revient au même.	That amounts to the same thing.
Êtes-vous à même de faire cela?	Are you in a position to do that?
J'irai tout de même.	I shall go nevertheless.

4. **Plusieurs** = 'several'; it is sometimes used in the sense of **beaucoup** = 'many':

Plusieurs hommes (femmes).	Several men (women).
Apporte plusieurs des plumes.	Bring several of the pens.
J'en ai plusieurs.	I have several of them.
Plusieurs l'ont cru.	Many (people) believed it.

5. **Tel,** as adjective, = 'such,' 'like'; **un tel** = 'such a'; **tel,** as pronoun, = 'many a one,' 'he,' 'some,' etc.:

Ne crois pas une telle histoire.	Do not believe such a story.
Tels sont mes malheurs.	Such are my misfortunes.
Il n'y a pas de tels animaux.	There are no such animals.
À telles et telles conditions.	On such and such conditions.
Telle qu'une tigresse.	Like (as) a tigress.
Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera (proverb).	Some (many a one, he) who laugh(s) on Friday will weep on Sunday.

a. Examples of more idiomatic uses are:

Tel père, tel fils.	Like father, like son.
Tel rit, tel pleure.	One laughs, another weeps.
Monsieur un tel (Mme une telle).	Mr. So-and-so (Mrs. So-and-so).
De la musique telle quelle.	Music such as it is.
Votre argent tel quel.	Your money intact.

Note.—'Such,' as adverb, is **si** or **tellement** (not 'tel'): '**Une si** belle étoile'; '**Un** homme **tellement** cruel.'

6. **Tout** (singular) = 'all,' 'every,' 'any,' 'whole,' etc.; **tous** (plural) = 'all':

Toute ma vie; tous les hommes.	All my (my whole) life; all (the) men.
Tout homme; toute créature.	Every (any) man; every creature.
Tous (toutes) sont venu(e)s.	All have come.

C'est tout ; de tous côtés.	That is all ; on all sides.
Tout m'effraie.	Everything frightens me.

a. **Tout** is often adverb = 'quite,' 'wholly,' 'very,' 'very much,' etc., and agrees like an adjective, when immediately preceding a feminine adjective with initial consonant or **h** aspirate, but is elsewhere invariable :

Elles étaient toutes pâles et tout agitées.	They were quite pale and very much excited.

But : Ils étaient **tout** pâles et **tout** agités, etc.

NOTE.—So also, in the compound **tout-puissant**, *e.g.*, 'Elle est **toute**-puissante.'

b. Observe the following idiomatic expressions :

Tout le monde (cf. le monde entier).	Everybody (cf. the whole world).
Tous les mois ; pas du tout.	Every month ; not at all.
Tous les deux jours.	Every other (alternate) day.
Tous (les*) deux *or* les deux.	Both.
Tout à l'heure.	Presently (*or* a little ago).
Tout beau ; tout doux.	Gently (slowly) ; softly.
(Pour) tout de bon.	Seriously.

***Tous deux (trois,** etc.)—without 'les'—usually denotes 'simultaneousness' (= 'both together,' etc.) ; **les** is obligatory above ten, and usual from five to ten.

c. For the distinction between **tout** and **chaque** see §404, 2, *a* ; for **tout**...que = 'however,' see §404, 5, *b*, note.

7. **Un** is used either alone or as correlative to **autre** :—

(1) **Un,** as adjective, = 'a,' 'an,' (cf. §320), 'one,' 'a certain' ; **un,** as pronoun, = 'one' :

La maison est d'un côté.	The house is on one side.
Un monsieur A. l'a dit.	A (certain) Mr. A. said so.
Une des dames l'a dit.	One of the ladies said so.
Voici un crayon.—J'en ai un.	Here is a pencil.—I have one.
Les uns sont de cet avis, les autres n'en sont pas.	Some are of this opinion, (the) others are not.

a. **Un** as a pronoun is often preceded by l', especially with a **de** clause :

L'un des consuls est arrivé.	One of the consuls has come.

(2) **L'un l'autre,** so also the feminine and plural, are combined into various correlative phrases, as follows :

l'un l'autre = 'each other,' 'one another'; pl. ditto.
l'un et l'autre = 'both'; pl., 'both,' 'all.'
l'un ou l'autre = 'either'; pl., ditto.
ni l'un ni l'autre (. . . **ne**) = 'neither'; pl., 'neither,' 'none.'

Elles se flattent l'une l'autre.	They flatter each other.
Ils parlent les uns des autres.	They speak of one another.
Les uns pour les autres.	For one another.
L'une et l'autre occasion.	Both occasions.
Les uns et les autres parlent.	Both (all of them) speak.
Dites ceci aux uns et aux autres.	Say this to both (all).
Je prends l'un(e) ou l'autre.	I take either.
Parle à l'une ou à l'autre.	Speak to either.
Ni les un(e)s ni les autres ne sont pour vous.	Neither (none of them) are for you.
Ni pour l'un(e) ni pour l'autre.	For neither.

407. Indefinite Relatives.

1. Adjectival:	2. Pronominal:
Quelconque, any (whatever, at all).	**Quiconque**, whoever.
Quel que (+subj. of **être**), whatever.	**Qui que** . . . (+subj. of **être**), whoever.
Quelque . . . **que** (+subj.), whatever.	**Quoi que** . . . (+subj.), whatever.

a. **Quelconque** takes **-s** for the plural, and always follows its noun; **quiconque** is invariable; the other forms are made up from **quel, quelque, qui, quoi,** + **que**:

Un (deux) point(s) quelconque(s).	Any (two) point(s) whatever.
Des raisons quelconques.	Any reasons whatever (at all).
Quiconque parle sera puni(e).	Whoever speaks will be punished.
Quels que soient (puissent être) vos desseins.	Whatever be (may be) your designs.
Quelle que fût la loi.	Whatever the law was.
Quelques efforts qu'il fasse.	Whatever efforts he makes.
Qui que tu sois (puisses être).	Whoever you be (may be).
Quoi que vous fassiez.	Whatever you do.

Obs.: For the use of the subjunctive, see § 270, 4:

b. **Qui que** and **quoi que** are also used with **ce** before **soit**:

Qui que ce soit qui le dise.	Whosoever says it.
Quoi que ce soit qu'il dise.	Whatsoever he says.

THE ADVERB.

408. Simple Adverbs. The following list contains the commoner simple adverbs :

ailleurs, *elsewhere.*
ainsi, *thus, so.*
alors, *then.*
après, *afterwards.*
assez, *enough, rather.*
aujourd'hui, *to-day.*
auparavant, *before.*
aussi, *also, too, as.*
aussitôt, *directly.*
autant, *as much.*
autrefois, *formerly.*
beaucoup, *much.*
bien, *well, very, much.*
bientôt, *soon.*
cependant, *however.*
certes, *indeed.*
combien(?), *how much(?).*
comme, *as, like.*
comment(?), *how(?).*
davantage, *more.*
dedans, *inside.*
dehors, *outside.*
déjà, *already.*
demain, *to-morrow.*
derrière, *behind.*
désormais, *henceforth.*
dessous, *under.*
dessus, *above.*
devant, *before.*
dorénavant, *henceforth.*
encore, *still.*
enfin, *at last.*
ensemble, *together.*
ensuite, *then.*
environ, *about.*
exprès, *on purpose.*
fort, *very.*
hier, *yesterday.*
ici, *here.*
jadis, *formerly.*
jamais, *ever, never.*
là, *there.*
loin, *far (off), a long way.*
longtemps, *(a) long (while).*
lors, *then.*
maintenant, *now.*
mal, *badly.*
même, *even.*
mieux, *better.*
moins, *less.*
ne..., *not.*
néanmoins, *nevertheless.*
non, *no.*
où (?), *where (?).*
oui, *yes.*
parfois, *sometimes.*
partout, *everywhere.*
pas, *not.*
peu, *little.*
pis, *worse.*
plus, *more.*
plutôt, *rather.*
point, *not.*
pourquoi (?), *why (?).*
pourtant, *however.*
près, *near (by).*
presque, *almost.*
proche, *near (by).*
puis, *then, thereupon.*
quand (?), *when (?).*
que !, *how (!)*
quelquefois, *sometimes.*
si, *so ; yes.*
souvent, *often.*
surtout, *especially.*
tant, *so much.*
tantôt, *soon, recently.*
tard, *late.*
tôt, *soon.*
toujours, *always, still.*
tout, *quite, entirely.*
toutefois, *however.*
très, *very.*
trop, *too (much).*
vite, *quickly.*
volontiers, *willingly.*

409. Adverbs from Adjectives. Most adjectives become adverbs by the addition of **-ment** to the feminine singular :

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
pur,	purement, *purely.*	doux,	doucement, *sweetly.*
strict,	strictement, *strictly.*	fou,	follement, *madly.*
actif,	activement, *actively.*	facile,	facilement, *easily.*
sec,	sèchement, *dryly.*	autre,	autrement, *otherwise.*

a. Adjectives ending in a vowel, other than **-e**, drop the **-e** of the feminine on adding **-ment**:

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
poli(e),	poliment, *politely.*	décidé(e),	décidément, *decidedly.*
absolu(e)	absolument, *absolutely.*	etc.	etc.

Note.—The omitted **e** is denoted by a circumflex accent in **assidûment, continûment, crûment, (in)dûment, gaîment** (better 'gaiement'), **nûment.**

b. The following adjectives in **-e** change **e** to **é** on adding **-ment**:

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
aveugle,	aveuglément.	immense,	immensément.
commode,	commodément.	incommode,	incommodément.
conforme,	conformément.	opiniâtre,	opiniâtrément.
énorme,	énormément.	uniforme,	uniformément.

c. The following adjectives change the added **-e** of the feminine to **é**:

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
commun(e),	communément.	obscur(e),	obscurément.
confus(e),	confusément.	opportun(e),	opportunément.
diffus(e),	diffusément.	précis(e),	précisément.
expresse(e),	expressément.	profond(e),	profondément.
importun(e),	importunément.	profus(e),	profusément.

d. Adjectives in **-ant, -ent** (except **lent, présent, véhément**) assimilate **-nt** to **m** and add **-ment** to the masculine form:

Adj.	Adv.	Adj.	Adv.
constant,	constamment, *constantly.*	prudent,	prudemment, *prudently.*
élégant,	élégamment, *elegantly.*	etc.	etc.

But: Lentement, *slowly;* présentement, *presently;* véhémentement, *vehemently.*

e. **Gentil** gives **gentiment**, *nicely;* the adverb to **bref** is **brièvement** (from a parallel form), *briefly;* the adverb to **impuni** is **impunément** (probably from L. *impune*, cf. *b*, above), *with impunity.*

f. The adverbs corresponding to **bon**, *good*, and **mauvais**, *bad*, are **bien**, *well*, and **mal**, *badly.* From **bon** comes regularly **bonnement** = 'simply.'

410. Adjectives as Adverbs. Adjectival forms are not uncommonly used as adverbs, and, as such, are regularly invariable :—

1. A number of adjectives serve as adverbs in certain fixed expressions :

Cette sottise lui coûte **cher.**	That folly is costing him dear.
Elles parlent **bas (haut).**	They speak low (loud).

Such expressions are :

coûter bon, *cost dear.*	arrêter court, *stop short.*	coûter gros, *cost dear.*
sentir " *smell good.*	filer doux, '*sing small.*'	viser haut, *aim high.*
tenir " *stand firm.*	aller droit, *go straight.*	chanter juste, *sing in tune.*
acheter cher, *buy dear.*	viser " *aim* "	frapper " *strike straight.*
coûter " *cost* "	chanter faux, *sing out of tune.*	sentir mauvais, *smell bad.*
vendre " *sell* "		écrire serré, *write small.*
voir clair, *see clearly.*	frapper ferme, *strike hard.*	(à) vrai dire, *speak truly.*
prouver clair, *prove clearly.*	parler " *speak firmly.*	etc. etc.

2. An adjective sometimes modifies another adjective :

Des dames **haut** placées.	Ladies of high rank.
Un **véritable** grand homme.	A truly great man.

3. Besides the above, a few adjectival forms serve also as adverbs :

Je l'ai dit exprès.	I said it purposely.
Soudain nous vîmes l'ennemi.	Suddenly we saw the enemy.

Such forms are :

bref, *in short.*	même, *even.*	tout beau, *not so fast.*
exprès, *purposely.*	proche, *near (by).*	tout doux, *gently.*
fort, *very, hard, loud, etc.*	soudain, *suddenly.*	†vite, *quickly.*
juste, *exactly, etc.*	*tout, *quite, very, etc.*	

* For the inflection of **tout** as adverb, see §406, 6, *a*.

† The adverb **vitement** = 'quickly,' is familiar.

411. Adverbial Locutions. Phrases with adverbial function are numerous :

Je viendrai tout à l'heure.	I shall come presently.
Venez de bonne heure.	Come early.

Further examples are :

à bon marché, *cheap.*
à côté, *near, near by.*
à droite, *to the right.*
à jamais, *forever.*
à la fois, *at once.*
à l'avenir, *in future.*
à peine, *hardly.*
à peu près, *nearly.*
au juste, *exactly.*
au moins, *at least.*
çà et là, *here and there.*
d'abord, *at first.*
d'ailleurs, *besides.*
dès lors, *since.*
d'ordinaire, *usually.*
d'où, *whence.*
d'où ?, *whence ?*
du moins, *at least.*
en avant, *forward.*
en bas, *below, down stairs.*
en effet, *in fact.*
en haut, *above, up stairs.*
là-bas, *yonder.*
là-dessus, *thereupon.*
plus tôt, *sooner.*
sans doute, *doubtless.*
tant mieux, *so much the better.*
tôt ou tard, *sooner or later.*
tour à tour, *in turn.*
tout à coup, *suddenly.*
tout de suite, *at once.*
tout d'un coup, *all at once.*
etc., etc.

412. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs are regularly compared like adjectives (cf. § 345) by the use of **plus, moins, aussi**; **que** = 'than,' 'as':

Plus, moins facilement **que** Jean.	More, less easily than John.
Aussi facilement **que** Jean.	As easily as John.

a. Further examples, illustrating §345, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, as applied to adverbs :

Il ne marche pas aussi (si) vite.	He does not walk as (so) fast.
Vite comme un éclair.	As quick as lightning.
Il marche plus vite que je ne pensais.	He walks faster than I thought.
De plus en plus vite.	Faster and faster.
Plus je le connais (et) moins je l'estime.	The more I know him the less I esteem him.

b. 'More than,' 'less than,' as adverbs of quantity = **plus de, moins de,** respectively; they must be carefully distinguished from **plus (moins) que** = 'more (less) than' in an elliptical sentence :

J'ai plus (moins) de dix francs.	I have more (less) than ten francs.
En moins d'une demi-heure.	In less than half an hour.
But : Un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux (ne mangent).	An elephant eats more than six horses (eat).

2. The following are irregularly compared :

bien, well.	**mieux,** better.	**beaucoup,** much.	**plus,** more.
mal, badly, ill.	**pis,** worse. / **plus mal,** worse.	**peu,** little.	**moins,** less.

a. **Beaucoup** = 'much (many)' *or* 'very much (many),' and is never modified by another adverb, except **pas**.

3. The superlative is formed by placing **le**, which is invariable, before the comparative of inequality :

Le plus souvent (moins souvent).	(The) most frequently (least f.).
Elle parle **le** plus (mieux, moins).	She speaks (the) most (best, least).

413. Position. 1. An adverb regularly stands immediately after its verb, rarely between the subject and the verb :

Charles porte souvent ma canne.	Charles often carries my cane.
On devrait lire lentement.	One should read slowly.
Se levant tard, se couchant tôt.	Rising late, going to bed early.
Ils l'ont bien reçu.	They have received him well.

Obs.: Hence the adverb regularly comes between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

a. The adverbs **aujourd'hui, hier, demain, autrefois, tôt, tard, ici, là, ailleurs, partout,** never come between the auxiliary and the participle :

Il est parti hier.	He went away yesterday.
Je l'ai cherché partout.	I looked for it everywhere.

b. Long adverbs in **-ment** not uncommonly stand after the past participle :

Il a parlé éloquemment.	He has spoken eloquently.

c. Most adverbs of quantity, such as **peu, beaucoup, trop,** etc., and a few short adverbs like **bien, mal, mieux,** etc., as also adverbs of negation, regularly precede the infinitive :

Tu ne devrais pas trop lire.	You should not read too much.
Il ne saurait mieux faire.	He cannot do better.
Il parle de ne pas y aller.	He speaks of not going.

d. Interrogative adverbs head the phrase, as in English ; other adverbs are not uncommonly placed first for emphasis (cf. § 237, 3) :

Quand allez-vous revenir ?	When are you going to come back ?
Aujourd'hui je vais me reposer.	To-day I am going to rest.
Malheureusement tout est perdu.	Unfortunately all is lost.

2. Adverbs usually precede the nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases modified by them :

Assez de livres, et assez chers.	Books enough, and dear enough.
Bien mal à propos.	Very unseasonably.

a. For **combien !, comme !, que !, tant !,** and **plus...plus, moins... moins** with adjectives or adverbs, cf. §350, *a.*

3. Adverbial phrases follow the same rules as adverbs, except that only the shorter ones may usually come between the auxiliary and the verb:

Nous étions à peine partis.	Hardly had we gone.

NEGATION.

414. Negation without Verb. Non = 'no,' 'not,' apart from a verb; it is often emphasized by **pas, point :**

L'avez-vous dit ?—Non.	Did you say it ?—No.
Vous viendrez ?—Non pas (point).	You will come ?—Certainly not.
Non, non, je n'irai pas.	No, no, I shall not go.
Non content de dire cela.	Not satisfied with saying that.
Riche ou non, il ne l'aura pas.	Rich or not, he shall not have it.
A-t-il, oui ou non, du talent ?	Has he talent, yes or no ?
Des idées non moins vastes.	Ideas not less vast.
Une maison non meublée.	A house not furnished.
Non seulement...mais encore.	Not only...but also.

a. For the use of **que non**, see §420, 1, *a.*

415. Negation with Verb. 1. Along with a verb, a negation consists regularly of two parts, **ne (n'**, see §19) together with some other word or words; the principal correlative expressions of this kind are:

ne...pas, *not.*	ne...aucunement } *not at*	ne...rien, *nothing.*
ne...point, *not.*	ne...nullement } *all.*	ne...ni(...ni) *neither...*
ne...guère, *hardly.*	ne...aucun }	*nor.*
ne...jamais, *never.*	ne...nul } *no, none.*	
ne...plus, *no more.*	ne...pas un }	
ne...que, *only.*	ne...personne, *nobody.*	

NOTES.—1. **Point** is usually more emphatic than **pas**, and is less common in ordinary language.

2. Negation is often denoted by **pas**, without **ne**, in familiar language: 'Ai-je **pas** dit cela ? (=**N'**ai-je **pas** dit cela ?).'

2. Other forms of less frequent use are:

a. **Ne...quelconque**='no...whatsoever (at all),' **ne...qui que ce soit**='nobody whatsoever (at all),' **ne...quoi que ce soit**='nothing whatsoever (at all).'

Je n'ai dit quoi que ce soit.	I said nothing at all.

b. **Ne...brin** (lit. 'blade'), or **mie** (lit. 'crumb'), or **goutte** (lit. 'drop'), or **mot** (lit. 'word')=**ne...rien**, in certain phrases:

Il n'y en a brin.	There is none of it.
Je n'y entends goutte.	I understand nothing of it.

c. **Ne...âme vivante,** or **homme qui vive,** or **âme qui vive,** etc. = **ne...personne:**

Il n'y avait âme vivante dans la maison.	There was not a living soul in the house.

d. **Ne...de**+an expression of time, *e.g.*, **la (ma) vie, de huit jours,** etc.:

Je ne l'oublierai de ma vie.	I shall not forget it while I live.

416. Position. **Ne** always precedes the verb, and its conjunctive objects, if any; **pas, point** and other adverbs immediately follow the verb, and its conjunctive pronouns, if any; indefinites have their usual place.

Je ne le leur ai pas (point) dit.	I did not tell them it.
Je n'en ai guère.	I have hardly any of it.
Ne les a-t-il jamais vus?	Did he never see them?
Je n'y resterai plus.	I shall stay there no longer.
Il ne le veut nullement.	He does not wish it at all.
Il ne prend aucun soin.	He takes no care.
Personne ne peut le dire.	Nobody can say (it).
Il n'a mal quelconque.	He has no pain at all.
Je ne l'ai dit à qui que ce soit.	I have told it to nobody at all.

a. **Pas, point,** usually, and **plus,** often, precede the simple infinitive, and its conjunctive objects; they may precede or follow **avoir, être,** either when alone or in a compound infinitive:

Il parle de ne pas vous voir.	He speaks of not seeing you.
Être ou ne pas être.	To be or not to be.
J'étais fâché de ne vous avoir pas vu (*or* de ne pas vous avoir vu, *or* de ne vous pas avoir vu).	I was sorry not to have seen you.

b. **Rien** as object is treated as an adverb; it may also precede an infinitive like an adverb:

Il promet de ne rien dire.	He promises to say nothing.

c. The **que** of **ne...que** must immediately precede the word which it modifies:

Je n'en ai vu **que** trois.	I saw only three of them.

d. To denote 'neither...nor,' **ni** is placed before each co-ordinate, if not a finite verb, and **ne** stands before the finite verb; when finite verbs are co-ordinated, **ne** stands before each of them, while **ni** also must stand with the last, but may not stand with the first, and is optional with others:

Qui le sait?—Ni lui ni moi.	Who knows it?—Neither he nor I.
Il n'a ni parents ni amis.	He has neither relatives nor friends.
Je ne l'ai ni vu ni entendu.	I neither saw nor heard it.
Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.	He can neither read nor write.
Je ne veux ni qu'il lise ni qu'il écrive.	I neither wish him to read nor to write.
Il ne le blâme ni ne le loue.	He neither blames nor praises it.
Je ne pouvais, (ni) ne devais, ni ne voulais céder.	I neither could, nor should, nor would yield.

417. Ellipsis of the Verb. If the verb be omitted, but understood, **ne** is also omitted, and the correlative itself denotes negation:

Est-il venu?—Pas encore (=Il n'est pas encore venu).	Has he come?—Not yet (=He has not yet come).
Qui est là?—Personne.	Who is there?—Nobody.
Plus de larmes; plus de soucis.	No more tears; no more cares.

a. **Pas**, when so used, may not stand alone:

Non (pas); pas encore; pas lui; pas du tout; pas ce soir, etc.	No; not yet; not he (him); not at all; not this evening, etc.

418. *Ne* alone as Negative. Negation with verbs is expressed by **ne** alone in certain cases, as follows:—

1. After **que = pourquoi?**, and usually after **que, qui** in rhetorical question or exclamation:

Que ne le disiez-vous plus tôt?	Why did you not say so sooner?
Que ne ferais-je pour lui?	What would I not do for him?
Qui ne voit cela?	Who does not see that?

2. After condition expressed by inversion:

N'eût été la pluie.	Had it not been for the rain.

a. Sometimes also in conditions regularly expressed with **si**:

Si je ne me trompe.	If I am not mistaken.
Qui, si ce n'est vous?	Who, if not you?

3. In dependent sentences after negation, either fully expressed or implied:

Je n'ai pas (j'ai peu) d'amis qui ne soient les vôtres.	I have no (I have few) friends who are not yours.
Il n'y a rien qu'il ne sache.	There is nothing he does not know.
Non que je ne le craigne.	Not that I do not fear him.
Impossible qu'il ne vienne!	Impossible that he will not come!
Ai-je un ami qui ne soit fidèle?—Non.	Have I one friend who is not faithful?—No.

a. More obscure cases of implied negation are **prendre garde que** = 'take care that not,' etc., and such expressions as **il tient** = 'it depends on,' used interrogatively:

Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.	Take care he does not fall.
Gardez qu'il ne sorte.	Take care he does not go out.
À quoi tient-il qu'on ne fasse cela?	What is the cause of that not being done?

4. Sometimes with **savoir, bouger,** and with **pouvoir, oser, cesser** + an infinitive, expressed or implied:

Je ne sais (pas).	I do not know.
Ne bougez (pas) de là.	Do not stir from there.
Je ne puis (pas) répondre.	I cannot answer.
Il n'oserait (pas) le dire.	He would not dare to say so.
Elle ne cesse (pas) de pleurer.	She does not cease weeping.

a. Always **ne** alone in **je ne saurais** and **je ne sais quoi**:

Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.
Ne sauriez-vous m'aider?	Can you not help me?
Un je ne sais quoi de terrible.	Something indefinably terrible.

5. In a few set expressions, such as :

N'importe ; n'avoir garde.	It does not matter ; not to care.
Ne vous en déplaise.	By your leave.
N'avoir que faire de.	To have no use (whatever) for.
Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort (proverb).	Still waters run deep.

419. Pleonastic *ne*. In a **que** clause **ne** is often pleonastic, as compared with English; thus, **ne** stands :—

1. After **empêcher** = 'prevent,' **éviter** = 'avoid,' **à moins que** = 'unless,' or **que** so used :

Empêchez qu'il ne sorte.	**Prevent him from going out.**
J'évite qu'on **ne** me voie.	**I avoid** being seen.
À moins que je **ne** sois retenu.	Unless **I** be detained.

a. This **ne** is often omitted after **empêcher** and **éviter,** after **empêcher** mostly when negative or interrogative.

b. **Ne** may also stand after **avant que :**

Avant qu'il (ne) parte.	Before he goes away.

2. After expressions of fearing, such as **craindre, redouter,** etc., **avoir peur,** etc., when not negative, or when negation is not implied by interrogation expecting negative answer, or by condition :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.	I fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il **ne** vienne ?	Do you fear he will come ?

But : Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne. Sans craindre qu'il vienne. Craignez-vous qu'il vienne ?—Non. Si je craignais qu'il vînt.

a. What it is, or is not, feared will not happen has the full negation **ne . . . pas** in the que clause :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas.	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il ne vienne pas.	I do not fear he will not come.

b. Interrogation or condition and negation neutralize each other, and **ne** stands :

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne ?	Do you not fear he will come ?
Si je ne craignais qu'il ne vînt.	If I did not fear he would come.
Quand même je ne craindrais pas qu'il ne vînt.	Even though I did not fear he would come.

3. With a finite verb in the second member of a comparison of inequality, when the first member is not negative, or does not imply negation as above:

Il est plus riche qu'il **ne** l'était.	He is richer than he was.
Est-il plus riche qu'il **ne** l'était?	Is he richer than he was?
Il gagne moins qu'il **n**'espérait.	He earns less than he hoped.

But: Il n'est pas plus riche qu'il l'était; est-il plus riche qu'il l'était?—Non.

a. A negative interrogation implies affirmation, and **ne** stands:

N'est-il pas plus riche qu'il **ne** l'était?	Is he not richer than he was?

NOTE.—**Autre, autrement, plutôt, plus tôt,** similarly take **ne**: 'Il est tout autre que je **ne** pensais.'

4. Usually after expressions of doubt, denial, such as **douter, nier, disconvenir,** etc., often **désespérer,** when negative, or when negation is implied as above:

Je ne doute pas qu'il **ne** vienne.	I do not doubt that he will come.
Doutez-vous qu'il **ne** vienne?—Non.	Do you doubt whether he will come?—No.

But: Je doute qu'il vienne; doutez-vous qu'il vienne? (—question for information).

5. After **il s'en faut** negatively, interrogatively, or with **peu, guère,** etc.:

Il ne s'en fallut pas (de) beaucoup qu'il **ne** fût tué.	He came very near being killed.
Combien s'en faut-il que la somme n'y soit?	How much is lacking of the sum total?
Peu s'en est fallu que je **ne** vinsse.	I came very near coming.

6. With compound tenses after **il y a, voilà, depuis:**

Il y a (voilà) trois jours que je **ne** l'ai vu.	It is three days since I saw him (I have not seen him for, etc.).
Il avait grandi depuis que je **ne** l'avais vu.	He had grown since I saw him.
Depuis que je **ne** vous ai vu.	Since I saw you.

a. In a simple tense (§§ 257, 2, 258, 4) negatively, **ne...pas, etc.** must be used:

Voilà un an qu'il ne buvait plus.	He had drunk no more for a year.

USE OF CERTAIN ADVERBS.

420. Distinctions. The following are especially liable to be confounded in use:—

1. **Oui, Si.** 'Yes' in affirmation or assent is **oui**; 'yes' is usually si in contradiction, in correction, in dissent:

L'avez-vous dit?—Oui, monsieur.	Did you say it?—Yes, sir.
Venez.—Oui, oui, j'irai.	Come.—Yes, yes, I shall go.
Il ne s'en va pas.—Si, monsieur, il s'en va.	He is not going.—Yes, (sir), he is (going).
Il ne s'en va pas?—Mais si.	He is not going?—Yes, certainly.
Je n'irai pas.—Si, si venez.	I shall not go.—Yes, yes, come.

NOTE.—The use of **si**, as also of the intensive **si fait**, etc., though very common, is classed as familiar by the *Académie;* it is often avoided by **pardon**, etc., or other expressions: 'Il ne va pas.—**Pardon**, monsieur (il va).'

a. **Oui, si,** and **non,** are often preceded by **que,** really with ellipsis of a whole **que** clause, and are then variously translated by 'yes,' 'so,' 'no,' 'not,' etc., or by a clause:

Je dis que oui (non).	I say yes (no).
Je crois que oui (non).	I think so (not).
Vous ne l'avez pas?—Oh! que si.	You haven't it?—Oh yes!
Le fera-t-il?—Je crois que oui.	Will he do it?—I think he will.
Je dis que non.	I say it is not so.
Peut-être que non.	Perhaps not.

2. **Autant, Tant.** '**As much (many)**' = **autant**; 'so much (many)' = **tant**:

Je gagne autant que vous.	I earn as much as you.
Il but tant qu'il en mourut.	He drank so much that he died from it.
J'ai tant d'amis; j'en ai autant que vous.	I have so many friends; I have as many as you.

3. **Plus, Davantage. Plus** is used in all senses of 'more,' 'most' (see below); **davantage** (strengthened sometimes by **bien** = 'much,' **encore** = 'still') = 'more,' is regularly used only absolutely, and usually stands at the end of its clause:

N'en parle pas davantage. / N'en parle plus.	Say no more about it.
Ne restez pas davantage. / Ne restez plus.	Do not remain any longer.

Cela me plaît encore davantage (plus).	That pleases me still more.
Je suis riche ; il l'est bien davantage (plus).	I am rich ; he is much more so.

But only : J'en ai plus que lui ; il est plus habile ; plus de dix francs ; c'est ce qui le flatte le plus, etc.

NOTE.—**Davantage** is occasionally followed by **que** in archaic style.

4. **Ne...que, Seulement.** **Seulement** must be used, (1) when no verb is present, (2) when 'only' refers to the subject, (3) or to the verb, (4) or to a **que** clause, and (5) it may be used to strengthen a **ne...que** ; otherwise 'only' = **ne...que** or **seulement** :

Seulement les braves.	Only the brave.
Seulement mon frère le sait.	Only my brother knows it.
Écoutez seulement.	Only listen.
Il dit seulement qu'il irait.	He only said he would go.
Il n'a seulement qu'à venir.	He has only to come.

But : Nous ne serons que trois (*or* trois seulement) ; je ne veux que voir son père (*or* je veux seulement voir son père), etc.

a. 'Only,' referring to the subject, may be turned also by **il n'y a que, ce n'est que** ; 'only,' referring to the verb, may be turned by the help of **faire** :

Il n'y a que les morts qui ne reviennent pas.	The dead only do not come back.
Elle ne fait que pleurer.	She does nothing but weep.

THE NUMERAL.

421. Cardinal Numerals.

1.	un, une	[œ̃, yn].	8.	huit	[ɥit].
2.	deux	[dø].	9.	neuf	[nœf].
3.	trois	[trwɑ].	10.	dix	[dis].
4.	quatre	[katr].	11.	onze	[ɔ̃:z].
5.	cinq	[sɛ̃:k].	12.	douze	[du:z].
6.	six	[sis].	13.	treize	[trɛ:z].
7.	sept	[sɛt].	14.	quatorze	[katorz].

15.	quinze	[kɛ̃ːz].	70.	soixante-dix	[swasɑ̃ːt dis].
16.	seize	[sɛːz].	71.	soixante et onze	[swasɑ̃ːt e ɔ̃ːz].
17.	dix-sept	[dis sɛt].	80.	quatre-vingts	[katr vɛ̃].
18.	dix-huit	[diz ɥit].	81.	quatre-vingt-un	[katr vɛ̃ œ̃].
19.	dix-neuf	[diz nœf].	90.	quatre-vingt-dix	[katr vɛ̃ dis].
20.	vingt	[vɛ̃].	91.	quatre-vingt-onze	[katr vɛ̃ ɔ̃ːz].
21.	vingt et un	[vɛ̃t e œ̃].	100.	cent	[sɑ̃].
22.	vingt-deux	[vɛ̃nd dø].	101.	cent un	[sɑ̃ œ̃].
30.	trente	[trɑ̃ːt].	200.	deux cents	[dø sɑ̃].
31.	trente et un	[trɑ̃ːt e œ̃].	201.	deux cent un	[dø sɑ̃ œ̃].
40.	quarante	[karɑ̃ːt].	1000.	mille	[mil].
50.	cinquante	[sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt].	1001.	mille un	[mil œ̃].
60.	soixante	[swasɑ̃ːt].	2000.	deux mille	[dø mil].

Nouns of Number: 1,000,000 = **un million** [œ̃ miljɔ̃]; 2,000,000 = **deux millions** [dø miljɔ̃]; 1,000,000,000 = **un milliard** [œ̃ miljáːr].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, is optional in 70, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

Notes on Pronunciation: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: 'Cinq livres' [sɛ̃ liːvr], but 'le cinq mai' [lə sɛ̃ːk mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit, onze**: Le huit [lə ɥit]; les huit livres [le ɥi liːvr]; le onze [lə ɔ̃ːz]; les onze francs [le ɔ̃ːz frɑ̃]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, becomes **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un, deux cent un,** etc.

a. **Un** (f. **une**) is the only cardinal which varies for gender:

Une (deux, trois, etc.) plume(s).	One (two, three, etc.) pen(s).
Vingt et **une** vaches.	Twenty-one cows.

b. Cardinals are invariable for number, except that **-s** is added to **quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent,** but only when immediately preceding a noun, or an adjective + a noun, or when they themselves serve as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingts francs.	Eighty francs.
Trois cents (bonnes) plumes.	Three hundred (good) pens.
Deux cents millions.	Two hundred millions.
Trois cents de pommes.	Three hundred apples.
Les cinq cents.	The five hundreds.

But: Trois **cent** un francs; les **cent** hommes engagés; **quatre-vingt-une** plumes; deux cent mille; trois **mille** milles, etc.

N.B.—They are not nouns of number in dates (*c.* below) or when used as ordinals (§ 427): 'L'an quatre **cent**'; 'page deux **cent**'; 'page quatre-**vingt**.'

c. The form **mil** (not 'mille') is used in dates of the Christian era from 1001 to 1999:

En mil huit cent quatre-vingt-onze.	In eighteen hundred and ninety-one.
(En) l'an mil six.	(In) the year 1006.

But: L'an mille (sometimes mil); l'an deux mille trois cent; l'an mille cent du monde, etc.

d. From 1100 onward dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

Onze cent(s); treize cent(s).	Eleven hundred; thirteen hundred.
Quinze cent cinquante.	Fifteen hundred and fifty.

e. 'A (*or* one) hundred' = **cent**; 'a (*or* one) thousand' = **mille**:

Mille soldats.	A (one) thousand soldiers.

Note.—**Septante** = 70, **octante** = 80, **nonante** = 90, **six-vingt(s)** = 120, and **quinze-vingt(s)** = 300, are now obsolete in the literary language.

422. Ordinal Numerals. The ordinal numerals denote order or place in a series relatively to the first; they are formed, from 'third' up, by adding **-ième** to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal, **cinq** adding **u,** and **f** of **neuf** becoming **v** before **-ième**:

1st	premier	[prəmje].	7th	septième	[sɛtjɛm].
2nd	second	[səgɔ̃].	8th	huitième	[ɥitjɛm].
2nd	deuxième	[døzjɛm].	9th	neuvième	[nœvjɛm].
3rd	troisième	[trwazjɛm].	10th	dixième	[dizjɛm].
4th	quatrième	[katriɛm].	11th	onzième	[ɔ̃zjɛm].
5th	cinquième	[sɛ̃kjɛm].	21st	vingt et unième	[vɛ̃t e ynjɛm].
6th	sixième	[sizjɛm].	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛ̃nd døzjɛm].

Notes.—1. Besides the ordinary forms, **tiers** (f. **tierce**) = 'third,' **quart(e)** = 'fourth,' are used in a few expressions and in fractions: 'Le **tiers** état,' 'The commoners'; 'En maison **tierce**,' 'In the house of a third party'; 'Une fièvre **quarte**,' 'A quartan ague.'

2. **Quint** = 'fifth' is used only in 'Charles-**Quint**,' Charles V. (the Emperor)'; 'Sixte-**Quint**,' 'Sixtus V. (the Pope).'

a. Ordinals are like ordinary adjectives in inflection and agreement, and regularly precede the noun:

La (les) première(s) maison(s).	The first house(s).
Nous sommes arrivés les premiers.	We arrived first.

b. **Deuxième** instead of **second** is more usually employed in a series of more than two, and always in compounds:

Le second volume.	The second volume (of two).
Le deuxième volume.	The second volume (of three, etc.).
La cent deuxième fois.	The hundred and second time.

423. Collectives. The following nouns are used with collective force:

un(e) couple, *a couple* (*two*).	une cinquantaine, *about fifty.*
une paire, *a pair.*	une soixantaine, *about sixty.*
une huitaine, *about eight.*	une centaine, *about a hundred.*
une dixaine, *about ten.*	un cent, *a hundred.*
une douzaine, *a dozen.*	un millier, (*about*) *a thousand.*
une quinzaine, *about fifteen.*	un million, *a million.*
une vingtaine, *about twenty.*	un milliard, } *a billion.*
une trentaine, *about thirty.*	un billion, } *a billion.*
une quarantaine, *about forty.*	etc.

a. They take **-s** in the plural, and have the construction of ordinary nouns:

Il y a une centaine d'élèves.	There are about 100 pupils.
Il y en a deux cents.	There are two hundred of them.
Des milliers de gens.	Thousands of people.
Deux millions de francs.	Two million(s of) francs.

424. Fractions. The numerator is regularly denoted by a cardinal and the denominator by an ordinal; 'half' = **moitié**, f., as a noun, and **demi** as an adjective or a noun:

$\frac{1}{2}$ { un demi. / une moitié.	$\frac{1}{4}$ un quart.	$\frac{3}{16}$ trois seizièmes.
	$\frac{3}{4}$ trois quarts.	$\frac{7}{100}$ sept centièmes.
$\frac{2}{2}$ deux demis.	$\frac{1}{5}$ un cinquième.	$\frac{10}{101}$ dix cent unièmes.
$\frac{1}{3}$ un tiers.	$\frac{1}{7}$ un septième.	$\frac{11}{1000}$ onze millièmes.
$\frac{2}{3}$ deux tiers.	$\frac{1}{11}$ un onzième.	etc.

a. **Demi,** before its noun, is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere; as a noun, **demi** is hardly used, except in arithmetical calculations:

Une demi-heure ; une heure et demie.	Half an hour ; an hour and a half.
Quatre demis = deux.	Four halves = two.
La moitié de la somme.	Half the sum.

b. The definite article is required before fractions followed by **de** + a noun when the noun is determined by the definite article, a possessive, or a demonstrative, and similarly for pronominal substitutes for such constructions:

La moitié du temps.	Half the time.
Les trois quarts de ces (ses) biens.	Three-fourths of those (his) goods.
J'en prends les cinq sixièmes.	I take five-sixths of them.

425. **Multiplicatives.** The following are used as adjectives, or absolutely as nouns:

double, *double.*	septuple, *sevenfold.*
triple, *triple.*	octuple, *eightfold.*
quadruple, *quadruple.*	nonuple, *ninefold.*
quintuple, *fivefold.*	décuple, *tenfold.*
sextuple, *sixfold.*	centuple, *hundredfold.*

As nouns, **le double,** the double, etc.:

La triple alliance.	The triple alliance.
Payer le double.	To pay twice as much.

a. **Double** is sometimes adverb:

Il voit double.	He sees double.

2. 'Once,' 'twice,' 'three times,' etc. = **une fois, deux fois, trois fois,** etc.:

Dix fois dix font cent.	Ten times ten make a hundred.
Deux fois autant.	Twice as much.

426. **Numeral Adverbs.** They are formed from the ordinals by **-ment,** according to rule (cf. §409):

premièrement, *first, firstly.*	troisièmement, *thirdly.*
secondement / deuxièmement } *secondly.*	etc. etc.

a. Substitutes for them, of very frequent use, are: **d'abord** = 'at first,' **puis** = 'then,' 'after that,' **ensuite** = 'then,' 'next,' **en premier lieu** = 'in the first place,' **en second lieu,** etc. = 'in the second place,' etc. ; or the Latin adverb forms **primo, secundo, tertio,** etc., abbreviated to **1°, 2°, 3°,** etc., are used.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF NUMERALS.

427. Cardinals and Ordinals. 1. **Premier** = 'first' is the only ordinal used to denote the day of the month or the numerical title of a ruler; otherwise, cardinals are employed:

Le premier (deux, dix) mai.	The first (second, tenth) of May.
Le onze de ce mois.	The eleventh of this month.
Napoléon (Grégoire) premier.	Napoleon (Gregory) the First.
Henri (Catherine) deux.	Henry (Catherine) the Second.

2. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	What day of the month is this?
Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	" " " "
Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	" " " "
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	**On** the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came **on** Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (future).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

3. Other numerical titles, book, chapter, scene, page, etc., are expressed as in English, ordinals being used before nouns, and either cardinals or ordinals after nouns:

Tome troisième (trois).	Volume third (three).
La dixième scène du second acte.	The tenth scene of the second act.

a. The first of two ordinals joined by **et** or **ou** is not uncommonly replaced by a cardinal:

La quatre ou cinquième page.	The fourth **or** fifth page.

b. Cardinals must precede ordinals:

Les deux premières scènes.	The first two scenes.

428. Dimension. The various methods of indicating dimension may be seen from the following:

(1) Une table longue de dix pieds.	A table ten feet long.
(2) Une table de 10 p. de longueur	" " " " "
(3) Une table de 10 p. de long.	" " " " "
(4) Une table d'une longueur de 10 p.	" " " " "

(5) La table est longue de 10 p.	The table is ten fect long.
(6) La table a 10 p. de longueur.	" " " " " "
(7) La table a 10 p. de long.	" " " " " "
(8) La table a une longueur de 10 p.	" " " " " "

Obs.: 1. Dimension after an adjective is denoted by **de**, cf. (1), (5).

2. Substitutes for the adjectival construction of (1) are seen in (2), (3), (4).

3. The verb 'to be' is **être**, as in (5), or **avoir**, as in (6), (7), (8).

4. **Haut, large, long** (but not 'épais,' 'profond') may be used as nouns, instead of **hauteur, largeur, longueur**, cf. (3), (7).

a. 'By,' of relative dimension = **sur**; 'by,' after a comparative = **de**:

Cette table a dix pieds de longueur sur trois de largeur.	This table is ten feet long by three wide.
Plus (moins) grand de deux pouces.	Taller (shorter) by two inches.

429. Time of Day. The method of indicating the time of day may be seen from the following :—

Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est une (deux) heure(s).	It is one (two) o'clock.
Il est trois heures et demie.	It is half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures trois quarts.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Six heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to six.
Cinq heures cinquante-cinq.	Five fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit (et) un quart.	It is a quarter past twelve (night).
À huit heures du soir.	At eight o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what o'clock?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	Towards (at about) three o'clock.

Obs.: 1. 'It is (was, etc.)' = **il est (était, etc.)**.

2. **Heure(s)** is never omitted.

3. **Et** is essential only at the half hour.

4. **Demi(e)** agrees with **heure** (f.) or with **midi** (m.), **minuit** (m.).

5. **Minutes** is often omitted.

6. 'A quarter to,' 'minutes to' is **moins** before the following hour.

7. Twelve o'clock is never **douze heures**.

430. **Age.** Idiomatic expressions denoting age are:

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Je suis âgé de vingt ans.	" " " " "
Une fille âgée de six ans.	A girl six years old (of age).
Plus âgé de deux ans.	Older by two years.

Obs.: 1. The construction with avoir is the more common.

2. An(s) may not be omitted in specifying age.

3. 'By'=de, after a comparison.

THE PREPOSITION.

431. **Simple Prepositions.** The following list contains the commoner simple prepositions:

à, *to, at, in, on, etc.*
après, *after, next to.*
avant, *before.*
avec, *with.*
chez, *with, at—'s.*
contre, *against.*
dans, *in(to).*
de, *of, from, with, etc.*
depuis, *since, from.*
derrière, *behind.*
dès, *from, since.*
devant, *before.*
durant, *during.*
en, *in, to.*
entre, *between, among.*
envers, *towards.*
hormis, *except.*
jusque, *till, until.*
malgré, *in spite of.*
moyennant, *by means of.*
nonobstant, *notwithstanding.*
outre, *besides.*
par, *by, through.*
parmi, *among.*
pendant, *during.*
pour, *for.*
sans, *without.*
sauf, *save, except.*
selon, *according to.*
sous, *under.*
suivant, *according to.*
sur, *on, upon.*
vers, *towards.*
voici, *here is (are).*
voilà, *there is (are).*

432. **Prepositional Locutions.** Phrases with prepositional function, mostly ending in de or à, are numerous:

À côté de l'église.	Beside the church.
Jusqu'à la semaine prochaine.	Until next week.
À travers la forêt.	Through the forest.

21

Such locutions are:

à cause de, *on account of.*
à côté de, *by the side of.*
à force de, *by dint of.*
à l'égard de, *with regard to.*
à l'exception de, *except.*
à l'insu de, *unknown to.*
à travers, *across, through.*
au delà de, *beyond.*
au-dessous de, *under.*
au-dessus de, *above.*
au lieu de, *instead of.*
autour de, *around.*
au moyen de, *by means of.*
auprès de, *near by.*
au travers de, *across, through.*
d'après, *according to.*
en deçà de, *on this side (of).*
en dépit de, *in spite of.*
faute de, *for want of.*
jusqu'à, *as far as, until.*
par delà, *beyond.*
par-dessous, *under.*
par-dessus, *over.*
près de, *near.*
quant à, *as for.*
vis-à-vis de, *opposite.*
etc., etc.

433. **Position.** Prepositions regularly precede the governed word, as in English:

Je parle de Jean (de lui).	I speak of John (of him).

a. Conjunctive personal pronouns governed by **voici, voilà,** precede:

Me voici; les voilà.	Here I am; there they are.
En voici quelques-uns.	Here are some of them.

b. **Durant** is sometimes placed after its noun:

Durant sa vie (*or* sa vie durant).	During his life.

434. **Repetition.** The prepositions **à, de, en,** are regularly repeated before each governed substantive; the repetition of other prepositions is regular in contrasts, but is elsewhere optional, as in English:

Il aime à lire et à écrire.	He likes to read and write.
Le père de Jean et de Marie.	The father of John and Mary.
En France ou en Italie.	In France or Italy.
Sur terre et sur mer.	By land and sea.
Par la persuasion ou par la force.	By persuasion or force.

But: Pour lui et (pour) son frère, etc.

IDIOMATIC DISTINCTIONS.

435. Prepositions vary greatly as to idiomatic force in different languages. In the following sections are given some of the various French equivalents of the commoner English prepositions.

436. About.

1. In the sense of 'around' = **autour de :**

Regardez autour de vous.	Look about you.
Autour de la place.	About the square.

2. In the sense of 'concerning,' 'of' = **de, à :**

De quoi parlez-vous ?	What are you talking about ?
À quoi pensez-vous ?	What are you thinking about ?

3. In the sense of 'with,' 'about (the person)' = **sur :**

Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous ?	Have you any money about you ?

4. Denoting approximation = **environ, près de, à peu près, vers :**

Environ (près de, à peu près) deux mille francs ; vers (sur les) dix heures ; vers 1830.	About two thousand francs ; about ten o'clock ; about 1830.

437. After.

1. Denoting time, rank, order, position = **après :**

Après dîner ; le premier après le roi ; on met l'adjectif après le nom ; courez après lui.	After dinner ; the first after the king ; the adjective is placed after the noun ; run after him.

2. In the sense of 'at the end of' = **au bout de :**

Au bout de trois siècles.	After three centuries.

3. Unclassified :

De jour en jour ; dessiné d'après Raphaël ; le lendemain de son retour ; il tient de sa mère.	Day after day ; drawn after Raphael ; the day after his return ; he takes after his mother.

438. Among.

1. In the sense of 'in the midst of,' 'surrounded by' = **parmi**, sometimes **entre :**

Une brebis parmi les loups.	A sheep among wolves.
Il fut trouvé entre les morts.	He was found among the dead.

2. 'Among (distributively or reciprocally)' = **entre :**

Il le partagea entre ses amis.	He divided it among his friends.
Ils parlaient entre eux.	They spoke among themselves.

3. Unclassified :

C'était ainsi chez les Grecs.	It was so among the Greeks.

439. At.

1. Denoting place, time, = **à**, sometimes **en**:

À l'école; à Douvres; à table; à cinq heures; à l'âge de; en tête de; en (au) même temps; à la fin (enfin).	At school; at Dover; at table; at five o'clock; at the age of; at the head of; at the same time; at last.

2. In the sense of 'at the house, etc., of,' 'at—'s' = **chez**:

J'ai été chez vous; il est chez Monsieur Ribot.	I was at your house; he is at Mr. Ribot's.

3. Unclassified:

À mes dépens; à tout prix; d'abord; sous la main; entrer par la fenêtre; en haut (bas); au moins; sur mer; en guerre.	At my expense; at any price; at first; at hand; come (go) in at the window; at the top (bottom); at least; at sea; at war.

440. Before.

1. Denoting place, in the sense of 'in front of,' 'in the presence of' = **devant**:

Mettez cela devant le feu; le jardin est devant la maison; il prêcha devant le roi.	Put that before the fire; the garden is before the house; he preached before the king.

2. Denoting time, order = **avant**:

Avant midi; je l'ai vu avant vous; mettez l'article avant le nom.	Before noon; I saw it before you; put the article before the noun.

3. Unclassified:

Sous mes yeux; la veille de la bataille; comparaître par-devant le juge.	Before my eyes; the day before the battle; to appear before the judge.

441. By.

1. Denoting the agent after the passive = **par, de** (cf. §240):

Elle fut saisie par le voleur; ils sont aimés de tous.	She was seized by the robber; they are loved by all.

2. Denoting means, way, etc. = **par** (usually):

Par la poste; par chemin de fer; par ce moyen; par un ami.	By post; by railway; by this means; by a friend.

3. Denoting measure = **de**; relative dimension = **sur**:

Plus grand de la tête; plus âgé de dix ans (de beaucoup); plus lourd d'une livre; moindre de la moitié; dix pieds sur six. — Taller by a head; older by ten years (by far); heavier by a pound; less by half; ten feet by six.

4. Unclassified:

De jour (nuit); à l'année; goutte à goutte; il est midi à ma montre; connaître de vue; de vive voix; un tailleur de son état; vendre au poids; fait à la main. — By day (night); by the year; drop by drop; it is noon by my watch; to know by sight; by word of mouth; a tailor by trade; to sell by weight; made by hand.

442. For.

1. In the sense of '**for** the sake of,' 'instead of,' '(in exchange) for' = **pour**:

Mourir pour la patrie; je le fais pour vous; donnez-moi ceci pour cela. — To die for one's country; I do it for you; give me this for that.

2. Denoting destination:

Je pars pour la France; une lettre pour vous. — I leave for France; a letter for you.

3. Denoting a period of time (future) = **pour**:

Je resterai (pour) huit jours; j'en ai pour dix ans. — I shall stay (for) a week; I have enough of it for ten years.

Note.—'For' of time not future is variously rendered: 'J'étais huit jours absent *or* J'étais absent **pendant** huit jours,' 'I was absent **for** a week'; 'Il y a (voici, voilà) deux heures que je lis *or* Je lis depuis deux heures,' I have been reading **for** two hours.'

4. Unclassified:

Mot à mot *or* mot pour mot; un remède contre (pour); trembler de crainte; par exemple; quant à moi; vendre dix francs *or* laisser (donner) pour dix francs; remercier (punir) de; changer pour (contre); c'est à vous de dire; malgré tout cela. — Word for word; a remedy for; to tremble for fear; for example; as for me; to sell for ten francs *or* to give for ten francs; to thank (punish) for; to change for; it is for you to say; for all that.

443. From.

1. Usually = **de**:

Il vient de Paris; de trois à quatre heures; je l'ai appris de lui.	He comes from Paris; from three to four o'clock; I heard it from him.

2. In the sense of 'because of,' 'out of,' 'through' = **par**:

Cela arriva par négligence; par expérience (amitié).	That happened from carelessness; from experience (friendship).

3. In the sense of 'dating from' = **dès, depuis, à partir de**:

Dès (depuis, à partir de) ce jour; à partir de 1820.	From that day; from 1820 (on).

4. Unclassified:

D'aujourd'hui en huit; dessiné d'après nature; boire dans un verre; ôtez cela à l'enfant.	A week from to-day; drawn from nature; to drink from a glass; take that from the child.

444. In, into.

1. Denoting place or time specifically, *i.e.*, in the sense of 'within,' 'inside of,' 'in(to) the interior of' = **dans** (cf. §333, 3):

Dans ce paquet (champ); dans la maison; dans l'Afrique australe; dans toute la ville; dans la même année.	In this parcel (field); in(to) the house; in South Africa; in the whole city; in the same year.

NOTE.—The governed noun usually has the definite article.

2. Denoting place or time generally = **en, à** (cf. §333, 2, 3):

En Afrique; à la maison; aux champs; au Canada; à Berlin; à la campagne (ville); en hiver; au printemps; en paix.	In Africa; in the house (at home); in the fields; in Canada; in Berlin; in the country (city); in winter; in spring; in peace.

NOTE.—The governed word after **en** has but rarely the definite article (mostly in fixed expressions before initial vowel sound): 'En l'air'; 'En l'honneur de,' etc.

3. In the sense of 'at the end of (time)' = **dans**; 'in the course of (time)' = **en**:

Le train part dans une heure; on peut aller à L. en une heure.	The train leaves in an hour; one can go to L. in an hour.

4. Denoting place, after a superlative = **de**:

La plus grande ville du monde.	The largest city in the world.

5. Unclassified:

Par la pluie; le matin; de nos jours; par le passé; à l'avenir; d'avance; entre les mains de; à mon avis; sous le règne de; sous presse; de cette manière; un sur dix.	In the rain; in the morning; in our day(s); in the past; in the future; in advance; in the hands of; in my opinion; in the reign of; in press; in this way; one in ten.

445. Of.

1. Usually = **de**:

Le toit de la maison; la ville de Paris; un homme d'influence; une livre de thé; digne d'honneur; il parle d'aller à Paris.	The roof of the house; the city of Paris; a man of influence; a pound of tea; worthy of honour; he speaks of going to Paris.

2. Denoting material = **en**:

Un pont en bois (fer); les pièces de dix francs sont en or.	A bridge of wood (iron); ten franc pieces are of gold.

3. Unclassified:

C'est aimable à vous; sur 100 personnes 50 sont échappées; docteur en médecine; un de mes amis; majeur.	It is kind of you; of 100 persons 50 escaped; doctor of medicine; one of my friends; of age.

446. On, upon.

1. Usually = **sur**:

Le livre est (je mets le livre) sur la table.	The book is (I put the book) on the table.

2. Is omitted in dates before specified days:

Le dix mai; je viendrai mardi; il arriva le lendemain.	On the tenth of May; I shall come on Tuesday; he arrived on the morrow.

3. **Unclassified:**

Par une belle journée d'été; mettre au feu; pendre contre le mur; dans la rue; dans l'île; dans l'escalier; en (dans un) voyage; en visite (congé); en chemin (route); d'un côté; tomber par terre; à genoux; dans cette occasion; à cheval (pied); à droite (gauche); à son arrivée; au contraire; pour affaires.	On a fine summer day; to put on the fire; to hang on the wall; on the street; on the island; on the stairs; on a journey; on a visit (a holiday); on the way (the road); on one side; to fall on the ground; on one's knees; on that occasion; on horseback (foot); on the right (the left); on his arrival; on the contrary; on business.

447. Out of.

1. Unclassified:

Boire dans un verre; copier dans un livre; regarder par la fenêtre; un sur dix.	To drink out of a glass; to copy out of a book; to look out of the window; one out of ten.

448. Over.

1. In the sense of 'above' = au-dessus de:

Au-dessus de la porte étaient écrits ces mots; les nombres au-dessus de mille.	Over the door were written these words; the numbers over one thousand.

2. Denoting motion above = sur, par, par-dessus:

Passez la main sur ce drap; par monts et par vaux; il sauta par-dessus la haie.	Pass your hand over this cloth; over hill and dale; he leaped over the hedge.

3. Unclassified:

Au delà de la rivière; l'emporter sur (triompher de); se réjouir de; veiller sur.	Over the river; to triumph over; to rejoice over; to watch over.

449. Through.

1. Denoting motion across = à travers (au travers de), par:

Je passai à travers (au travers de) la forêt; passer par Berlin.	I passed through the forest; to pass through Berlin.

2. In the sense of 'because of,' 'owing to,' = **par**:

Par négligence.	Through carelessness.

450. Till, until.

1. Unclassified:

Jusqu'à demain; pas avant l'année prochaine; jusqu'ici; du matin au soir.	Till to-morrow; not till next year; till now; from morning till night.

451. To.

1. Denoting the indirect object = **à** (cf. §362, 2):

Je l'ai donné à un ami.	I gave it to a friend.

2. Denoting motion to = **à, en** (cf. §333, 2, 3); in the sense of 'to the house, etc., of,' 'to ——'s' = **chez**:

Il va à Paris (à l'école; au Japon; à un bal; en France; en Portugal; chez eux; chez mon ami).	He goes to Paris (to school; to Japan; to a ball; to France; to Portugal; to their house, etc.; to my friend's).

3. In the sense of 'towards' = **vers** (physical tendency), **envers** (moral tendency):

Levez les yeux vers le ciel; il est juste envers tous.	Raise your eyes to heaven; he is just to all.

4. In the sense of 'as far as' = **jusqu'à**:

Venez jusqu'au bout de la rue.	Come to the end of the street.

5. Unclassified:

Le voyage (train) de Montréal; écrire sous dictée; dans ce but.	The journey (train) to Montreal; to write to dictation; to this end.

452. Towards.

See §451, 3.

453. Under, underneath.

1. Usually = **sous**:

Sous la table; sous la loi; sous peine de mort.	Under the table; under the law; under pain of death.

2. Denoting lower than, less than = **au-dessous de**:

Au-dessous du coude; vendre une chose au-dessous de sa valeur.	Under the elbow; to sell a thing under its value.

3. Unclassified:

Fouler aux pieds; à cette condition; dans les circonstances; dans la nécessité de; mineur.	To tread under foot; under this condition; under the circumstances; under the necessity of; under age.

454. With.

1. In the sense of 'along with,' 'in company with' = **avec**:

Dînez avec moi à l'hôtel; un officier avec des soldats.	Dine with me at the hotel; an officer with some soldiers.

2. In the sense of 'at the house, etc., of' = **chez**:

Il demeure chez nous.	He lives with us.

3. Denoting instrument, manner = **avec** (usually):

Frapper avec un marteau; écrire avec une plume; avec courage (force).	To strike with a hammer; to write with a pen; with courage (force).

4. Denoting a characteristic = **à**:

Un homme à la barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.

5. 'With' of accessory circumstance is usually turned by an absolute construction:

Il parla les yeux baissés.	He spoke with downcast eyes.

6. In the sense of 'from,' 'on account of,' and after many verbs and adjectives = **de**:

Elle pleura de colère; couvrir de; content de.	She wept with anger; to cover with; satisfied with.

7. Unclassified:

À l'exception de; à haute voix; à bras ouverts; de bon appétit; à l'œil nu; de tout mon cœur.	With the exception of; with a loud voice; with open arms; with a good appetite; with the naked eye; with all my heart.

THE CONJUNCTION.

455. Conjunctions. The following table contains most of the conjunctions and conjunctive locutions in use:—

†à (la) condition que[3], *on condition that.*
*afin que[2], *in order that, so that.*
ainsi, *therefore, hence.*
ainsi que, *as well as, as.*
alors que, *when.*
à mesure que, *as, just as.*
*à moins que...ne[3], *unless.*
après que, *after.*
à proportion que, *in proportion as.*
attendu que, *considering that.*
†au cas où[3], *in case (that).*
*au cas que[3], *in case (that).*
aussi, *hence, therefore.*
aussitôt que, *as soon as.*
*avant que[1], *before.*
*bien que[4], *though, although.*
car, *for.*
*ce n'est pas que[5], *not that.*
cependant, *however, yet.*
comme, *as.*
†dans le cas où[3], *in case (that).*
*de crainte que...ne[2], *for fear that.*
†de façon que[2], *so that.*
†de manière que[2], *so that.*
de même que, *as well as.*
*de peur que...ne[2], *for fear that.*
depuis que, *since.*
†de (telle) sorte que[2], *so that.*
dès que, *as soon as, when, since.*
donc, *now, then, therefore.*
*en attendant que[1], *until.*
*en cas que[3], *in case (that).*
encore, *yet, still.*
*encore que[4], *though, although.*
†en sorte que[2], *so that.*
*en supposant que[3], *supposing that.*
et, *and.*
et...et, *both...and.*
excepté que, *except that.*
†jusqu'à ce que[1], *until.*
*loin que[5], *far from.*
lorsque, *when.*
mais, *but.*
*malgré que[4], *though, although.*
néanmoins, *nevertheless.*
ni, *nor.*
ni...ni...(...ne), *neither...nor.*
*nonobstant que[4], *notwithstanding that.*
*non (pas) que[5], *not that.*
non seulement...mais encore, *not only...but also.*
or, *now.*
ou, *or.*
ou...ou, *either...or.*
outre que, *besides that.*
parce que, *because.*
partant, *therefore, hence.*
pendant que, *while, whilst.*
*pour peu que[4], *if ever so little.*
*pour que[2], *in order that.*
pourtant, *yet, however.*
*pourvu que[3], *provided that.*
puisque, *since.*
quand, *when.*
†quand même[4], *though, even if.*
†que[6], *that, than, as.*
*quoique[4], *though, although.*

*sans que[5], *without.*
selon que, *according as.*
†si[3], *if* (§271, 3, *a*).
†si bien que[2], *so that.*
†si peu que[4], *however little.*
sinon, *if not, or else.*
sitôt que, *as soon as.*
soit...soit, *whether...or.*
soit...ou, *whether...or.*
*soit que...soit que[4], *whether...or.*
*soit que...ou que[4], *whether...or.*
suivant que, *according as.*
*supposé que[3], *suppose that.*
tandis que, *whilst, whereas.*
tant...que, *both...and.*
tant que, *as long as.*
†tellement...que[2], *so ..that.*
toutefois, *yet, nevertheless.*
une fois que, *as soon as.*
vu que, *seeing that.*

* Followed by the subjunctive.

† Followed by the indicative or subjunctive.

N.B.—Conjunctions without * or † in the table are followed by the indicative.

1 See §271, 1 (time before which or up to which).

2 See §271, 2 (purpose or result).

3 See §271, 3 (condition).

4 See §271, 4 (concession).

5 See §271, 5 (negation).

6 See §269, §271, 6, and §458.

USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

456. Et. 1. When repeated, **et** usually denotes 'both... and'; otherwise it stands with the last only of two or more clauses:

Je connais et le père et le fils.	I know both the father and son.
Les femmes pleuraient, criaient et gesticulaient.	The women wept (and) screamed and gesticulated.

2. 'And' after a verb of motion is usually untranslated:

Allez leur parler.	Go and speak to them.

457. Ni. 1. A finite verb with **ni** or **ni...ni** must be preceded by **ne**:

Il **n'**a **ni** or **ni** argent.	He has neither gold nor silver.
Il **ne** mange **ni ne** boit.	He neither eats nor drinks.

a. For the position of **ni...ni...ne**, see §416, *d*.

2. In sentences of negative force, 'and,' 'or,' are rendered by **ni**:

Honneurs ni richesses ne font le bonheur.	Honours and wealth do not constitute happiness.

3. Observe the following equivalents of 'neither,' 'not either,' 'nor either,' 'nor,' when not correlative:

Je ne le ferai pas.—Ni moi non plus.	I shall not do it.—Nor I either (*or* Neither shall I).
Il ne le fera pas non plus.	He will not do it either.
Il ne l'a pas fait, et il ne le fera pas.	He has not done it, nor will he (do it).

458. Que. 1. **Que** = 'that' is followed by the indicative or subjunctive according to the context:

Je dis que vous avez raison.	I say that you are right.
Je suis fâché que vous ayez raison.	I am sorry that you are right.

2. **Que** often replaces another conjunction; when so used, it takes the same construction as the conjunction for which it stands, except that **que** instead of **si** = 'if' always requires the subjunctive:

Quand vous aurez fini, et que vous aurez le temps.	When you have finished, and (when you) have time.
Venez que (= 'afin que,' 'pour que') je vous voie.	Come that I may see you.
Si vous venez demain, et que vous ayez le temps.	If you come to-morrow, and (if you) have time.

3. **Que** may not be omitted before a finite verb, as 'that' often is in English:

Je crois qu'il viendra et qu'il restera.	I think (that) he will come and (that he will) stay.

459. Distinctions. The following conjunctions are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. **Quand, Lorsque.** They are equivalents in the sense of 'when,' but **quand** (*not* 'lorsque') serves also as an interrogative adverb in direct or indirect questions:

Quand est-il arrivé?	When did he come?
Dis-moi quand il est arrivé.	Tell me when he came.
Quand (*or* lorsque) je l'ai vu.	When I saw him.
Nous partirons lorsque (*or* quand) la lettre arrivera.	We shall leave when the letter comes.

2. **Pendant que, Tandis que.** Pendant que = 'while,' 'whilst,' 'during the time that'; tandis que = 'while,' 'whilst,' 'during the time that,' and also, 'whilst,' 'on the contrary,' 'whereas':

Lisez le journal pendant que j'écris ce billet.	Read the newspaper while I write this note.
Tandis que vous êtes ici.	Whilst you are here.
Le père travaille, tandis que le fils ne fait rien.	The father works, while the son does nothing.

3. **Depuis que, Puisque.** Depuis que denotes time; puisque denotes cause assigned:

Je suis bien seul depuis que mon frère est parti.	I am very lonely since my brother went away.
Il me faut rester, puisqu'il n'y a pas de train ce soir.	I must remain, since there is no train this evening.

THE INTERJECTION.

460. Interjections. The commoner interjections and expressions used as such are:—

1. Joy, admiration, approval:

ah!, *ah!*
ha, ha! *or* hi, hi! (*to denote laughter*).
bon!, *good!*
bien!, *good!*
à merveille!, *capital!*
à la bonne heure!, *well done!, that's right!*
bis!, *encore!*
bravo! *or* bravissimo!, *well done!, bravo!*
hourra! *or* vivat!, *hurrah!*

2. Disgust, disapproval, indifference:

fi!, *fie!*
fi donc!, *for shame!*
fie de!, *fie on!*
foin de!, *a plague upon!*
pouah!, *disgusting!, faugh!*
oh!, *oh!*

bah ! *or* ah ! bah !, *nonsense !, pooh-pooh !*
baste !, *enough !, pooh !, nonsense !*
par exemple !, *dear me !*
zest !, *pshaw !*

3. Grief, fear, pain :

ah !, *ah !*
oh !, *oh !*
hélas !, *alas !*
aïe !, *oh !, oh dear !*
miséricorde !, *mercy !*
ouf ! (*to express suffocation, or relief and exhaustion*).

4. Surprise :

ah !, *ah !*
oh !, *oh !*
eh !, *ah !*
ha !, *ha !*
comment !, *what !*
quoi !, *what !*
vraiment !, *indeed !*
tiens !, *indeed !*
par exemple !, *you don't say so !*
miséricorde !, *mercy !*

5. Encouragement :

allons !, *come !*
courage !, *cheer up !*
voyons !, *come now !*
çà !, *or* or çà !, *or* sus !, *or* or sus !, *now then !*
en avant !, *forward !*
ferme !, *steady !*
preste !, *quick !*

6. Warning :

gare !, *look out !, take care !*
holà !, *stop !, stop !*

7. Calling :

hé !, *or* ohé !, *or* holà !, *ho !, hoy ! halloo !*
hem !, *ahem !*
st !, *hi there !*
qui vive !, *who goes there !*

8. Calling for aid :

à moi !, *or* au secours !, *help !*
à l'assassin *or* au meurtre !, *murder !*
au voleur !, *stop thief !*
au feu !, *fire !*

9. Silencing, stopping :

chut ! *or* st !, *hush !*
silence !, *silence !*
motus !, *not a word !*
tout doux *or* tout beau !, *gently ! not so fast !*
halte-là !, *stop there !*

Note.—Akin to interjections are imitations of sounds : Cric crac !, *breaking ;* drelin, drelin ! *or* drelin, din, din !, *ringing ;* pan pan !, *bang ;* pif paf !, *gunshots ;* boum !, *cannonading ;* rataplan !, *drum ;* dare dare !, *quick movement ;* cahin-caha, *jogging along ;* clopin-clopant, *hobbling ;* tic tac, *ticking*, etc.

ABBREVIATIONS.

461. French Abbreviations. The following are the commoner abbreviations used in French :

c.-à.-d. = c'est-à-dire, *that is.*

Cie *or* C^{e} = compagnie, *company.*

etc. = et cætera.

fr. *or* f. = francs, *francs.*

h. = heure, *hour.*

in-f^{o} = in-folio, *folio.*

J.-C. = Jésus-Christ, *Jesus Christ.*

M. = Monsieur, *Mr.*

MM. = Messieurs, *Messrs.*

M.R. *or* M.R. . . = Monsieur R. *or* Monsieur R Trois-Étoiles, *Mr. R.* or *Mr. R—.*

M^{d} = marchand, *merchant.*

M^{e} (pl. M^{es}) = maître, *is used with names of lawyers instead of* monsieur.

Mgr. (pl. NNSS.) = monseigneur, *my lord.*

Mlle (pl. Mlles) = Mademoiselle, *Miss.*

Mme (pl. M^{es}) = Madame, *Mrs.*

M^{n} = maison, *house, firm.*

ms. (pl. mss.) = manuscrit, *manuscript.*

N.-D. = Notre-Dame, *Our Lady.*

N.S. = Notre-Seigneur, *Our Lord.*

n^{o} = numéro, *number.*

R.S.V.P. = Répondez s'il vous plaît, *an answer is requested.*

S. A. R. = Son Altesse Royale, *His Royal Highness.*

s.-ent. = sous-entendu, *understood.*

S. Exc. = Son Excellence, *His Excellency.*

S. M. (pl. LL. MM.) = Sa Majesté, *His (Her) Majesty.*

S.S. = Sa Sainteté, *His Holiness.*

s. v. p. = s'il vous plaît, *if you please.*

V^{e} = veuve, *widow.*

Ier (in titles) = premier, *the First.*

II (in titles) = deux, *the Second.*

Le XVe siècle, etc. = le quinzième siècle, *the 15th century.*

1er (fem. 1ere) = premier, *first.*

2e = deuxième, *second.*

1° = primo, *firstly.*

7bre = septembre, *September.* Etc.

EXERCISES.

[The references at the head of the exercises are to the sections in the Grammar on which they are based.]

EXERCISE I, a. (§§ 156-161.)

1. What are you eating? 2. We are eating apples. 3. It was necessary that they should eat. 4. Who is calling? 5. We are calling. 6. The general leads his army. 7. We shall lead the horses. 8. Who is throwing stones? 9. It will freeze. 10. He is buying a coat. 11. We never yield. 12. They will never yield. 13. The servant is peeling apples. 14. When will he pay? 15. They never pay. 16. The servant is cleaning the kitchen. 17. We shall clean our gun. 18. The little girl wipes the dishes. 19. The farmer sows the seed. 20. It is freezing. 21. We are going to school. 22. We went home. 23. They used to go to market on Saturdays. 24. He will send it. 25. The servant is bringing the horses. 26. I send him there. 27. I shall go to school. 28. Let them go to the city. 29. It was necessary that you should go there. 30. They will buy a box. 31. Let us bring the children. 32. Bring the children. 33. Let him not throw stones. 34. We have led the horses to the stable. 35. Let us trace a line. 36. We are advancing. 37. They were eating. 38. We ate. 39. They will eat. 40. Let us advance. 41. Let us never yield. 42. Let us call the children. 43. Let us not go there. 44. The queen has been reigning a long time. 45. The children were throwing stones. 46. He led the horse to the stable. 47. He paid the money. 48. The servant wiped the dishes. 49. The child traced a line.

EXERCISE II, a. (§§ 162-166.)

1. He is running. 2. Shall we run? 3. Run fast, my little boy. 4. He is acquiring a fortune. 5. It was necessary that we should run. 6. They will conquer that city. 7. The

general has acquired glory. 8. He gives him consecrated bread. 9. They acquire knowledge. 10. We shall acquire property. 11. There is holy water. 12. Let us not run. 13. Let them acquire it. 14. We are gathering apples. 15. It was necessary that they should gather flowers. 16. He welcomed me. 17. We shall gather them. 18. Let us not start with (*de*) fear. 19. He assails his enemy. 20. He will assail his enemy. 21. He is sleeping. 22. Let us not sleep. 23. He must sleep. 24. We shall soon sleep. 25. They fall asleep. 26. He is leaving for France. 27. He left yesterday. 28. If he were asleep, I should call him. 29. He will go out. 30. Let him not go out. 31. The water boils. 32. The water was boiling. 33. When he speaks, he lies. 34. He makes use of it. 35. He will feel it. 36. If he were here, we should not sleep. 37. The water will soon boil. 38. He has run. 39. It was necessary that we should sleep. 40. I have not slept. 41. He never lies. 42. The horses would run, if they were not tired. 43. They ran. 44. We acquired it. 45. The horses run over the field. 46. He does not consent to it. 47. He will never consent to it. 48. Let him not make use of it. 49. We were running. 50. We fell asleep.

EXERCISE III, a. (§§ 167-179.)

1. He failed on (*en*) that occasion. 2. It is a prosperous country. 3. He flees. 4. Let us not flee. 5. They fled. 6. He will not flee. 7. It was necessary that I should flee. 8. Here lies a hero. 9. Here lie the remains of the great Napoleon. 10. I hate evil. 11. Men hate their enemies. 12. Let us not hate our enemies. 13. He hates his father. 14. Let him not hate his father. 15. Was it necessary that he should hate his father? 16. She dies. 17. They will die. 18. Let us not die. 19. It was necessary that he should die. 20. He died. 21. She will die. 22. Let him not die. 23. If they died, we should be sorry for it. 24. That tree is dying away. 25. Open the door. 26. We have opened the box. 27. He offers me his book. 28. She used to suffer a great deal. 29. If we had any, we should offer you some. 30. Columbus discovered America. 31. We held it. 32. Let him not hold it. 33. I hold it. 34. Let us hold it. 35. We

are coming. 36. We shall come. 37. We should come, if you would come. 38. If I should come, I should find it. 39. They are coming back. 40. It is necessary that he come. 41. It was necessary that he should come. 42. Hold it. 43. He has held it. 44. The purse contains money. 45. If he comes, we shall be glad (of it). 46. They will come back. 47. He is ill clad. 48. He clothes himself well. 49. He will clothe his child. 50. It is necessary that he clothe his child.

EXERCISE IV, a. (§§ 180-188.)

1. We beat the horse. 2. He fells the tree. 3. It is necessary that he fight the enemy. 4. We drink water. 5. They drink milk. 6. They were drinking wine. 7. We shall drink water. 8. Let him drink milk. 9. He has drunk the wine. 10. It was necessary that we should drink wine. 11. We shall not drink wine. 12. The wind rustles in the trees. 13. He encloses his garden. 14. He will close the bargain. 15. Those flowers will soon open. 16. He is concluding his argument. 17. Let us conclude the bargain. 18. The bread is baking well. 19. If he were there, he would conclude the affair. 20. It was necessary that he should conclude the bargain. 21. He drives the cows to the field. 22. They destroyed their books. 23. They will construct houses. 24. Let us translate this phrase. 25. It was necessary that we should translate that book. 26. He led his horse to the stable. 27. We were translating our exercise. 28. We constructed a house. 29. Let him translate his lesson. 30. I have translated a book. 31. I translated a book. 32. She was preserving plums. 33. We are preserving cherries. 34. That suffices. 35. That will be sufficient. 36. Let that suffice. 37. Five francs a day are sufficient for him. 38. I know that gentleman. 39. It is necessary that we should know him. 40. Let him appear. 41. The cows eat the grass. 42. It was necessary that we should know him. 43. It was necessary that he should appear. 44. He will not disappear. 45. We used to know him. 46. When he appears, we shall conclude the affair. 47. Let him recognize him. 48. You know him, do you not? 49. You will know him. 50. He reappeared.

EXERCISE V, a. (§§ 189-193.)

1. The little girl is sewing. 2. We were sewing. 3. They will sew. 4. She sewed. 5. They had sewed. 6. Let us sew. 7. Let her not sew. 8. Let us not fear. 9. They fear. 10. Let him not be afraid. 11. We shall not fear. 12. Men fear death. 13. They pity us. 14. He was painting a picture. 15. Put out the fire. 16. Let him put out the lamp. 17. It was necessary that we should rejoin our friends. 18. The general girds on his sword. 19. I feared the rain. 20. I believe you. 21. We shall not believe it. 22. Let us believe it. 23. I used to believe it. 24. It is necessary that he should believe it. 25. He did not believe it. 26. It was necessary that he should believe it. 27. We did not believe it. 28. Do not believe it. 29. The flowers are growing. 30. The tree grows. 31. That tree will grow fast. 32. We grew. 33. It was necessary that we should grow. 34. The trees were growing fast. 35. Let it grow. 36. He has believed. 37. The tree has grown. 38. Do not say so (*le*). 39. We say so. 40. We should not say so, if we did not believe it. 41. Is it necessary that he should say so? 42. They used to say so. 43. Let him not say so. 44. Was it necessary that we should say so? 45. Do not say so again. 46. Do not slander. 47. They do not say so. 48. Cain was cursed by (*de*) God. 49. We do not curse our enemies. 50. If I should say so, would you believe me?

EXERCISE VI, a. (§§ 194-200.)

1. I was writing when he came. 2. Let us write our exercise. 3. We wrote a letter. 4. Write your lesson. 5. Let him write. 6. We shall write our letter. 7. It was necessary that you should write. 8. He has described his travels. 9. They are writing. 10. Would you write, if I should write? 11. Do what I say. 12. He did not do it. 13. He has not done his work. 14. Let us do our work. 15. Let him do what I said. 16. It was necessary that you should do so. 17. I shall do so when you come. 18. If you do so, we shall do so. 19. If you should say so, we should do it. 20. I was doing my work when he came. 21. It is necessary that we do that. 22. If I do this, will you do that? 23. I was

reading, when he came. 24. He will never read that book. 25. Read that letter. 26. They are reading their book. 27. Did you not read the newspaper? 28. If I should read this book, would you read that one? 29. Is he reading the newspaper? 30. It was necessary that I should read the letter. 31. Let him not read that book. 32. Did they not read this book? 33. I placed the book on the table. 34. Do not commit that crime. 35. It is necessary that he put on his coat. 36. We shall put on our clothes. 37. They have placed their books on the table. 38. We shall not permit it. 39. Does he permit it? 40. It was necessary that he should not permit it. 41. What would you say, if we should permit it. 42. The miller grinds the wheat. 43. We are grinding wheat. 44. We ground the wheat. 45. Let him grind the wheat. 46. The prophet said that a child would be born. 47. We are born weak. 48. We were born [on] the same day. 49. Let a young nation arise! 50. Was it necessary that hatred should arise between them?

EXERCISE VII, a. (§§201-211.)

1. That does not please him (*lui*). 2. You please me. 3. Come when it pleases you. 4. Do so if you please. 5. May it please you. 6. Take your places. 7. He takes his hat from (*sur*) the table. 8. If I should take it, what would you do? 9. Let him take his book. 10. It was necessary that he should take the medicine. 11. We took our places. 12. Have you learnt your lesson? 13. He will not undertake that. 14. Fire resolves wood into (*en*) smoke. 15. We have resolved to (*de*) do it. 16. He solved the difficulty. 17. He will solve the difficulty. 18. Let us not laugh at (*de*) him. 19. Why is he laughing? 20. If I should laugh, what would you say? 21. Was it necessary that he should laugh? 22. We laugh at them. 23. Water springs from the earth. 24. Follow me. 25. The dog follows his master. 26. Let him follow us. 27. It is necessary that we should follow you. 28. We followed him. 29. If I should follow him, it would please him. 30. We shall never follow him. 31. Is he not milking the cow? 32. If I should do that, he would not milk the cows. 33. When we were in the country, we used to milk the cows. 34. Let him milk the cow.

35. That distracts him from his work. 36. The general conquers his enemies. 37. We conquer our passions. 38. If you were to conquer your passions, you would be happy. 39. Our army will conquer. 40. We have conquered our enemies. 41. Let him conquer his passions. 42. He is not selling his house. 43. He will never sell it. 44. Horses live on (*de*) hay. 45. He lives only for himself. 46. Let us live in (*en*) peace. 47. He will live yet [a] long time. 48. Louis XIV. lived in the 17th century. 49. Long live the King. 50. Hurrah for liberty!

EXERCISE VIII, a. (§§ 212-222.)

1. We receive our friends. 2. He has received the letter. 3. Let us not receive the money. 4. If they should receive us, we should be glad. 5. We owe him (*lui*) money. 6. We shall owe him something. 7. If they receive it, we shall tell (it to) you. 8. Let him not receive it. 9. We received the money. 10. Sit down. 11. He sits down. 12. They will sit down. 13. Let us sit down. 14. It was necessary that we should sit down. 15. If we should sit down, would you tell (*raconter*) us a story? 16. Let them not sit down. 17. That does not become him (*lui*). 18. That will not become us. 19. We sit down. 20. The payment falls due. 21. His influence has declined. 22. It will be necessary to do it. 23. It is necessary to be there. 24. Passion moves men. 25. Steam and water drive (*mouvoir*) machines. 26. His story moved (*émouvoir*) the audience. 27. Such a story must move men. 28. We shall go out, if it does not rain. 29. It was raining when we came. 30. It will rain. 31. I did not think it would rain. 32. It has rained. 33. I shall come, if I can. 34. I shall come when I can. 35. They cannot go away. 36. I would do so, if I could. 37. I wish that he may not be able to do so. 38. I could do that, if I were rich. 39. You may do so, if you desire. 40. Could (condl.) you not give me some? 41. We know our lesson. 42. Do you know how to do that? 43. That child cannot write; he is too young. 44. I cannot write; I have a sore finger. 45. Do you know that gentleman? 46. I used to know how to swim. 47. Your father must not know that. 48. We knew it. 49. We shall know it to-morrow.

EXERCISE IX, a. (§§223-225.)

1. That horse is worth one hundred dollars. 2. Virtue is worth more (*mieux*) than riches. 3. Those houses are worth more (*plus*) than these. 4. That was worth more last year. 5. That will be worth more next year. 6. If that were worth more, I should take it. 7. He has nothing (which is) of value (subj.). 8. We shall not see him again. 9. Do you see him? 10. I saw him. 11. We saw him. 12. If we should see him, we should tell (it to) him. 13. When we see him, we shall speak to him about it. 14. We must see our parents. 15. It was necessary that we should see our children. 16. I have seen him. 17. If we wished to do it, we could do it. 18. You may come when you wish. 19. He will wish to do that when he can. 20. Be so good as to sit down. 21. If you will sell your house, I shall buy it. 22. Will you be so kind as to give me some? 23. We do not wish to do that. 24. Should you like to see him? 25. I should like to see him, if I could. 26. I could do this, if I wished. 27. If it rains, we cannot go out. 28. If they were willing, they could do it. 29. If they are not willing to tell (it to) you, you will not know how to do it.

EXERCISE X, a. (§§227-229.)

Qu'est devenu son frère?	What has become of his brother?
Je sais ce qu'il est devenu.	I know what has become of him.
Elle est née.	She was born.
Elle est morte.	She died.
Elle est montée.	She has gone up (*or* up stairs).

NOTE.—In this exercise, verbs having the asterisk in the list §229, 2, are to be conjugated with **être** when intransitive.

1. Your mother has come, has she not? 2. No, she has not yet come; she will come to-morrow. 3. Our friends have gone to church; let us go (there) too. 4. The old gentleman who lived in that house died last night. 5. (The) Queen Victoria was born on the twenty-fourth of May. 6. My little sister was born on the tenth of March. 7. How old is your father? 8. He is seventy; he was born before the death of Napoleon. 9. What has become of your brother? 10. He

has gone to (*partir pour*) France. 11. When did he go? 12. He went yesterday morning. 13. Is your father out? 14. No, sir, he is in. 15. When did your father return? 16. He has not yet returned; he will return next week. 17. The servant has brought down the trunk. 18. Where is your sister? 19. She has gone down for breakfast. 20. Where are the children? 21. They have gone up stairs. 22. Why did they not come down when I was there? 23. What is the matter, my child? 24. It was slippery, and I fell. 25. My father has gone into the house. 26. Although he was born rich, he is now poor. 27. He died poor, although he was once rich. 28. I have not seen him to-day; what has become of him? 29. I don't know what has become of him. 30. Have you taken up the gentleman's trunks? 31. Not yet, but I shall take them up immediately. 32. At what o'clock did your sister go out this morning? 33. She went out at half-past nine. 34. Where is my sister? 35. She has gone up stairs; she has gone to get her books.

EXERCISE XI, a. (§230.)

Si vous vouliez bien me le dire.	If you would kindly tell me.
Faites-les entrer.	Show them in.

1. We do not wish to leave this country; we should like to remain here, but if we cannot, we shall go away. 2. You ought to go home (my) children; it is late. 3. We cannot go home; it is dark, and our father told us to (*de*) wait for him. 4. We cannot go away before six o'clock; we are to wait here till our friends come. 5. We could have written the letter, if we had known that you desired it. 6. That beggar could have had work, if he had wanted it, but he was too lazy; he would not work, and now he must beg. 7. Those children cannot read yet; they are too young. 8. If they had been able to read, they would not have believed all that was said to them. 9. You ought to let them go away, for their father told them that they were to leave before (the) night. 10. You might have seen them, if you had been willing to come with me. 11. Our teacher told us that we were to write this exercise. 12. We are to have a house built next year. 13. Their teacher made them write their exercise. 14. We should have

a house built, if we were rich enough. 15. We said to the innkeeper, will you be so kind as to have our horses saddled? We are going to start. 16. Opium makes [us] sleep. 17. It is very warm; if this great heat continues, it will kill the crops.

EXERCISE XII, a. (§230.)

1. Those children make a great deal of noise; they talk too much; make them be silent. 2. That girl could write, if she wished (it). 3. If you would kindly tell me where the doctor lives, I should send for him. 4. Do you know Daudet's *La Belle-Nivernaise?* 5. Oh, yes, it is a charming book; I liked it so well that I had my pupils read it. 6. That is a beautiful picture. 7. Yes, I have just been showing it to your mother and sister. 8. When did you see my father? 9. I had just been speaking with him, when you came. 10. What are you going to do to-morrow? 11. To-morrow we are going to see the *Invalides* and the *Arc de Triomphe,* and the day after to-morrow we are to see *Notre-Dame* and the *Louvre* (m.). 12. We ought to have visited the *Louvre* when you were with us; you could have shown us the fine pictures. 13. May I go with you when you visit the *Louvre* next time? I should like to have explained to me some of the beauties of the finest pictures. 14. That gentleman must have been in Paris, for he speaks French like a Parisian. 15. Why did you not make those ladies sit down when they were here? 16. They said they would not stay, because you were out. 17. There are ladies at the door. 18. Very well, show them in. 19. Your son ought to write his exercises. 20. Very well, make him write them. 21. If I had made him study his lessons when he was at school, he would have become a better man.

EXERCISE XIII, a. (§§231-234.)

1. The French people are brave and gay; they (*il*) have their (*ses*) defects, but also their good qualities. 2. Few people believe that the earth is not round. 3. Most people believe that the earth will be destroyed. 4. The greater part of his friends abandoned him. 5. Many think that our friends will not succeed. 6. A great number of men were killed.

7. The Swiss people are brave, they (*il*) will always be free. 8. More than one house was burnt. 9. Is it your friends who live in the house on the hill? 10. Yes, it is they; they have lived there for two years. 11. You and he were there, were you not? 12. Yes, he and I were there, and your brother too. 13. Will you and your brother come and see us, when you are in London? 14. We shall be very happy to (*de*) visit you. 15. Do you see those two children? Both were born [on] the same day. 16. You or I shall speak. 17. There happen many misfortunes here below. 18. There arose a great quarrel between them. 19. Who went for the doctor? 20. It was (pres.) I who went for him. 21. Do you see those two gentlemen? Both have had houses built this year. 22. Religion, truth, honour, all was abandoned. 23. Many think that you will never be able to build your house. 24. The majority are not always right. 25. If there happened such misfortunes to me, I should leave the country. 26. Were it only a few lines, I should like you to write to me. 27. If you and I were young, fine things would be done (reflex. impers.). 28. Who can have done that, if not our friends? 29. Neither he nor his brother can go away; both must stay.

EXERCISE XIV, a. (§§ 235-238.)

1. Is that book yours or your brother's? 2. How much did these books cost? 3. I do not know how much they cost. 4. Does that merchant provide you cheap with what you need? 5. What is the matter with that boy this morning? 6. I do not know what is the matter with him. 7. Do I say, or can I say, the half of what he has done? 8. Whatever men may do, they cannot escape death. 9. What books did your father buy when he was in the city? 10. Your father told me what your brother had done. 11. Your brother told me what he had done. 12. Will you tell me where those men were when you saw them? 13. I cannot tell you where they were. 14. We have more books than that gentleman has. 15. We have more books than you have. 16. Virtue is a beautiful thing, hence we love it. 17. My father is here; perhaps he will come to see you. 18. However good men may be, they are sometimes poor. 19. Such are my reasons

for doing so. 20. You have told me that my friend has gone; I did not know (impf.) it, but perhaps you are right. 21. I wish you were here, were it only to encourage us. 22. That man does not respect himself, hence he cannot be good. 23. Come and see us, said he, as soon as you can (fut.). 24. If I do this, thought he, I shall be punished, hence I shall not do it. 25. When was your little brother born? 26. I do not know where that man died. 27. To whom did your friend give his gold watch? 28. I do not know; perhaps he gave it to his sister. 29. I cannot do (*de*) such things; am I not [an] Englishman? 30. Do I not tell you that I shall be there, and that I shall see you?

EXERCISE XV, a. (§§ 239-241.)

On lui obéit. / Il est obéi.	He is obeyed.
On me l'a pardonné.	I have been pardoned (for) it.

1. America was discovered by Christopher Columbus. 2. The first steamboat was built by Fulton. 3. We have been deceived by that scoundrel. 4. We have been deceived. 5. That gentleman has been mistaken in that affair. 6. Where is that said? 7. Oh, that is said everywhere. 8. Who committed that crime? 9. It was our neighbour's brother. 10. Will he not be punished? 11. No, he has been pardoned for it. 12. I have often seen it done. 13. I have been told that you had it done. 14. Is that not done everywhere? 15. Oh, no, that is never done amongst respectable people. 16. How unfortunate he is! He is a good fellow, but he is deceived and suspected everywhere. 17. How little it is! It can hardly be seen. 18. That man is not a good teacher; he is not obeyed by his pupils. 19. There is a house to be sold. 20. There is an exercise to be done. 21. That beggar was given bread and milk. 22. We were made read our lesson. 23. That is a man to be feared. 24. They were told that you were not here. 25. Why were we not told that our friends had gone away?

EXERCISE XVI, a. (§§ 242-247.)

*Elle s'est rappelé ce que j'ai dit. *Elle s'est souvenue de ce que j'ai dit.	She remembered what I said.
Je me le rappelle. Je m'en souviens.	I remember it.
Je me le rappelle. Je me souviens de lui.	I remember him.
Ils se souviennent de moi.	They remember me.
Je m'en sers.	I use it (I make use of it).
Il s'en passe.	He does without it.
Elle s'est fait mal à la main.	She (has) hurt her hand.
Elle s'est cassé le bras.	She has broken her arm.
Elle s'est tue.	She became silent.

*In *se rappeler*, *se* is indirect, in *se souvenir*, *se* is direct.

1. They have not yet gone away; they will remain here till to-morrow. 2. When you are in front of Mr. Jackson's, be good enough to stop. 3. How have you been this long time? 4. I have been very well. 5. How has your mother been, since she has been living in Toronto? 6. How unfortunate I am, she exclaimed, my friends remember me no longer. 7. When the door opens, we can go in. 8. Where is my book? I cannot do without it. 9. Why do you not make use of that pen? 10. It is not a good pen; I cannot use it. 11. There are some ladies in the parlour; very well, have them sit down, and ask them to wait a little. 12. Why are you crying, my little girl? 13. I have fallen and hurt myself. 14. Where did you hurt yourself? 15. I hurt my hand. 16. Why did those ladies not sit down? 17. They would not sit down, because they could not stay. 18. If you wish to use this ink and paper, I shall give you some. 19. It was very slippery this morning, and my mother in going down the street, fell and broke her arm. 20. If you cannot do without this book, I shall lend it to you. 21. I can do without it now, but I shall need it next week. 22. Do you remember what was told you last evening? 23. No, I do not remember it. 24. Did that little girl hurt herself badly, when she fell? 25. Yes, she hurt herself very badly; she broke her arm. 26. Have those young ladies written letters to each other? 27. They have written many; they have been writing to each

other for two years. 28. I am not well this morning; I hurt my head. 29. Are you using your pen now? 30. No, I am not using it; you may have it, if you need it. 31. Do you remember the gentleman who lived in that large house on the hill? 32. Yes, I remember him very well. 33. One cannot do without money; it is useful everywhere. 34. I remembered what he had said, as soon as I saw him. 35. Be silent, (my) children, you are speaking too loud. 36. As soon as I came, he became silent.

EXERCISE XVII, a. (§§242-247, *continued.*)

Comment vous appelez-vous?	What are you called? / What is your name?
Je m'appelle Jean.	I am called John (my name is John).
Se promener à pied (à cheval).	To take a walk (a ride).
Se promener en voiture (en bateau).	To take a drive (a row *or* sail).
Elle s'est couchée à dix heures.	She went to bed at ten.
Elle s'est levée à six heures.	She rose at six.
Attendez-moi.	Wait for me.
Elle ne s'y est pas attendue.	She did not expect it.
Le prêtre les a mariés.	The priest (has) married them.
Elle s'est mariée à (*or* avec) mon cousin.	She (has) married my cousin.
Elle s'est mariée hier.	She was married yesterday.
Il est allé se promener en bateau.	He has gone for a row (*or* sail).
Allons nous promener.	Let us go for a walk.
Elle s'est endormie.	She fell asleep.
Se connaît-il en tableaux?	Is he a good judge of pictures?
Il s'y connaît assez bien.	He is a pretty good judge of them.
Vous ennuyez-vous ici?	Are you tired of being here?

1. What is that little boy's name? 2. His name is Henry. 3. What are you going to do to-day? 4. We are going to go for a drive. 5. We are not going for a drive; we prefer to go for a walk. 6. Let us go to bed now, and then we shall get up early. 7. Is your brother out? 8. Yes, he has gone for a drive. 9. While we were out for a drive, we met your brother on horseback. 10. While they were out for a ride, they met us on foot. 11. Let us go for a walk in that beautiful forest. 12. Has he gone for a ride or a walk? 13. He

has gone for a sail. 14. The children went to bed at eight o'clock, and they will get up at six. 15. We shall wait for him here; he has gone for a walk. 16. That does not surprise me; I was expecting it. 17. I was not expecting to see him there. 18. Mr. Jackson has married his eldest daughter to a very rich man. 19. Who married them? 20. It was the priest who lives in the little village. 21. My cousin was married yesterday. 22. To whom was she married? 23. She was married to the gentleman who lived here last year. 24. When are you going to get married? 25. I shall never get married. 26. What is the name of the gentleman who married your cousin? 27. If the children had not gone early to bed last night, they would not be able to rise early this morning. 28. That surprises my mother; she was not expecting it. 29. We went to bed, and (we) fell asleep immediately. 30. Are you not a pretty good judge of books? 31. Yes, I am a pretty good judge of them. 32. Is your mother not tired of being here? 33. I think so; I shall ask her to go for a walk with us. 34. Do you ever get tired of being in the country? 35. No, I never tire of being there; I love the fields and trees.

EXERCISE XVIII, a. (§§ 248-253.)

Il fait obscur. / Il fait noir.	It is dark.
Il se fait tard.	It is getting late.
Il fait jour.	It is day (daylight).
Il fait du soleil.	The sun is shining.
Il fait du brouillard.	It is foggy.
Il fait bon.	It is comfortable (pleasant).
Il tombe de la neige.	It is snowing.
Il fait doux.	It is mild.

1. If the weather is fine, we shall go for a row this afternoon. 2. It was raining this morning, but now the sun is shining. 3. It is not comfortable here; let us go out for a walk. 4. It is getting late; let us go home. 5. It was raining last evening, then it froze, and now it is slippery. 6. It is not comfortable in those countries where it is very (*faire beaucoup de*) foggy. 7. It is too windy; we shall not go for a

row. 8. It is getting late; the children will have to go to bed. 9. What time is it? 10. I do not know, but it is already daylight. 11. Is it? Well then, we shall have to get up immediately. 12. It had been snowing for two days, and we couldn't go for a drive. 13. It has been raining since yesterday morning, and it will be better to remain here. 14. My sister is very ill; her life is at stake. 15. We cannot go away; it is raining. 16. No matter; I do not fear the rain. 17. How did you enjoy yourself yesterday? 18. We did not enjoy ourselves at all; it was raining all day. 19. If it is very dark this evening, we shall not go to see our friends. 20. Yes, it will be better to stay at home; we can easily amuse ourselves. 21. How long have you been in this city? 22. I came here three years ago. 23. What sort of weather will it be to-morrow? 24. I do not know; I am not a good judge of such things. 25. It has been raining for two days; we are tired of being here. 26. In winter it is generally mild in Italy, but it is often cold in Canada. 27. Those two men are disputing; what is the matter? 28. It is about (*s'agir de*) the price of a horse which one sold to the other. 29. It was very warm yesterday, but it rained in the night, and now it is very comfortable. 30. I think (that) it will rain, but it may be that I am mistaken. 31. We need another house; this one is too small. 32. Their number is far from being complete. 33. Letters have come which tell us that there has been a great storm in the United States. 34. How far is it from Toronto to Montreal? 35. By the railroad it is three hundred and thirty-three miles.

EXERCISE XIX, a. (§§ 254-267.)

C'est à peine s'il sort à présent.	He hardly ever goes out now.
À peine le soleil fut-il (était-il) levé, qu'on aperçut l'ennemi.	Hardly was the sun up, when the enemy was seen.
Il fait bon marcher.	The walking is good. It is good walking.

1. When that man is working, he will often stop to (*pour*) speak with his companions. 2. How long have you been reading? 3. I have been reading for an hour. 4. It was at your house that we met those gentlemen. 5. We shall be glad, if you are there. 6. We shall be glad when you are

there. 7. We often used to go for a walk when we lived at your house, but here it is not good walking, so we hardly ever go out now. 8. When we were young, our mother would often tell us fairy stories which interested us very much. 9. We remember them yet, and we hope (that) we shall never forget them. 10. I had been there ten days when he came. 11. He had been reading an hour before his sister rose. 12. He asked me where I came from, and where I was going. 13. I answered him that I came from Montreal, and (that I) was going to Boston. 14. He wrote me a letter saying that he wished to see me. 15. He said in his letter that he had been ill, but that he was better now. 16. When he lived with us, we would often go out for a walk before breakfast. 17. The eldest of the miller's sons received the mill, but the youngest received only the cat. 18. As soon as he learned that I was to go out for a walk, he wished to go also. 19. If he had seen it, he would have told me (it). 20. When I had finished my lessons, I would always go out for a walk. 21. When he had finished his dinner to-day, he went out. 22. Hardly had he finished his work when his friend came. 23. We do not know whether our friends will come. 24. Our father did not know whether he would come. 25. Why is that work not done? 26. I told my brother to (*de*) do it, but he will not do it. 27. Will you buy my horse? 28. No, I shall not buy him; I do not need him. 29. Good morning, gentlemen, will you walk in? 30. No thank you, we shall not go in. 31. As long as we live, we shall not forget your kindness. 32. As soon as he comes, I shall tell him. 33. We shall do as we please. 34. You may start when you will. 35. He may come when he likes.

EXERCISE XX, a. (§§ 254-267, *continued.*)

1. We shall soon have finished our work. 2. When you have finished your lesson, you may go out for a walk. 3. Everybody should learn the ten commandments. 4. They tell us: Thou shalt not (*point*) have any other gods. 5. Thou shalt not take the name of thy God in vain. 6. Thou shalt not steal (*dérober*). 7. That poor child is very weak; it can hardly walk; it must have been ill. 8. My brother told me that you were not well. 9. You must have made a mistake, for I am very well; I never was better in (*de*) my life. 10.

We should be sorry, if you should do so. 11. You should be virtuous, if you wish to be happy. 12. I told him (that) he ought to obey his teacher, but he would not listen to me. 13. Men should love their enemies, but generally they do not. 14. The little boy must have broken that stick; I saw him there. 15. I often used to go to see him when he lived in our city. 16. He says (that) it will rain. 17. He said (that) it would rain. 18. Can it be possible that my father's watch is stolen (use: *on*)? 19. I could do that, if I wished. 20. I could do that when I was young. 21. Could you tell me where *le Boulevard des Italiens* is? 22. I could not tell you (it); I have not been long in Paris. 23. Can it be true that he has done that? 24. One would say that you are [a] Parisian, you speak French so well. 25. Even if that were true, I should not go. 26. Even if it should not rain, I shall not go for a drive. 27. According to the newspapers, a great quantity of money was stolen (use: *on*). 28. By what he says, his neighbours are poor. 29. When I was in Europe, I saw a horse as big as an elephant. 30. Nonsense! You are joking. 31. Come! Come! (my) children, you are making too much noise. 32. Let us go away. 33. Go away. 34. I did not think he would know it. 35. If you will not do it, we shall not do it.

EXERCISE XXI, a. (§§ 254-267, *continued.*)

The two kings *met* (each other) on the 13th of July in a vast plain between Warsaw (*Varsovie*) and Cracow (*Cracovie*). Augustus *had* nearly twenty-four thousand men; Charles *had* only ten thousand. At the first volley, the Duke of Holstein, who *commanded* the Swedish cavalry, *received* a cannon-shot in the back. The king *asked* if he *was* dead: he *was told* (use: *on*) that he was (*que oui*): he *made* no reply; (some) tears *fell* from his eyes; he (*se*) *hid* his (*le*) face [for] a moment with his (*les*) hands; then he *rushed* into the midst of the enemy at the head of his guards.

The king of Poland *did* all that one *should* expect from a prince who *was fighting* for his crown; he himself *brought back* his troops three times to the charge; but he *fought* with his Saxons only; the Poles, who *formed* his right wing, *fled* at the beginning of the battle. Charles *won* a complete victory.

He *did* not *stay* on the field of battle, but (*et*) *marched* direct to Cracow, pursuing the king of Poland, who *kept fleeing* before him.

EXERCISE XXII, a. (§§ 268-273.*)

Je tiens à ce que vous appreniez le latin.	I am (most) anxious that you shall learn Latin.
Nous n'aimerions pas qu'on se moquât de nous.	We should not like to be made sport of.
Il me tarde que cela soit fait.	I am longing for that to be done.
Je voudrais bien que vous le fassiez.	I wish you would do it. I should like you to do it.

1. Our teacher said that he wished us to write our exercise. 2. If you wish to go to the city, you may (*pouvoir*) go (there), but if you wish us to go (there), we tell you plainly that we cannot. 3. I wish you to do your work before (the) breakfast. 4. Our friends wish us to stay with them this week. 5. My father is most anxious that I should learn French, but I don't like it. 6. Would you prefer that I should go to church this morning? 7. We should not like our friends to be made sport of. 8. You say that you are going to buy a house from that man; take care lest he deceive you. 9. I am longing for my house to be finished. 10. I am anxious that he should come to see us when he visits Toronto. 11. My teacher told me that I should write my exercise. 12. My father told me that he had seen you. 13. The law forbids that to be done. 14. These children must stay in; their parents have forbidden them to go out. 15. I shall give orders not to admit them (use: *on*). 16. I did not ask that I should be answered (use: *on*) before the others. 17. I shall avoid her speaking to me about it. 18. The doctor ordered that he should be given no wine. 19. We do not ask that you should pay the money. 20. The rain hinders people (*on*) from going out to-day. 21. I wish you to know that he is my friend. 22. You approve of my coming back, do you not? 23. Yes, I wish you would go away. 24. It is better for the children to go to school. 25. What shall I say to that man? He has insulted me. 26. That makes no difference, he is not worthy of being answered (use: *on*). 27. The doctor gave orders that my father should go out for a drive every day. 28. He has torn his book; he deserves

* See note on limited use of impf. subj., p. 108.

to be punished (use: *on*). 29. I should like you to go for a walk with me. 30. Weakness often hinders good intentions from being fulfilled. 31. I long for his return. 32. There is no more bread; I should like you to go and get some. 33. That man is most anxious that his children should go to school, but he is too poor to (*pour*) buy them books. 34. Take care that the dog does not bite you; he is very cross. 35. That young man is not very amiable; we should not like him to treat us as he has treated his father.

EXERCISE XXIII, a. (§§ 268-273, *continued.*)

1. It is fitting that children should obey their parents. 2. It is good that men should sometimes undergo misfortunes. 3. It may be that he has returned, but I have not seen him. 4. It is natural that we should hate our enemies. 5. It is getting late; it is time that we should go home. 6. He had to learn French, for he lived in France. 7. We are very glad that you have come. 8. We are very sorry that you did not come. 9. I am surprised that he said so, because he told me that he would not say so. 10. It is a pity that we cannot always be happy. 11. It is a shame for those young men to be so ignorant. 12. It is sad that a man like him should be so poor. 13. I fear he will commit some crime. 14. I am glad you are so well. 15. I am afraid my father is not well enough to (*pour*) go with us. 16. I wonder he did not come last night. 17. I know why he did not come; he was afraid it would rain. 18. He was not afraid it would rain; he was afraid a certain person would be there whom he did not wish to see. 19. I do not fear he will not go. 20. Are you not afraid he will be able to prevent your intentions from being fulfilled? 21. I doubt whether he will be able to come. 22. I do not deny that I am glad of your ill-fortune. 23. Do you doubt that he is an honest man? 24. Not at all; I know that he is an honest man; I have known him for twenty years. 25. I do not doubt that you will be able to fulfil all your intentions. 26. It seems he has not received [any] of my letters. 27. It cannot be that you are ignorant of his intentions. 28. How is your father? 29. He is very well; he is rarely ill. 30. It seems to me it will be dangerous if we do not follow his advice. 31. That child is afraid you will

hurt him. 32. I am glad you did not hurt yourself when you fell. 33. We regret very much that we did not see you when you were in Paris. 34. Are you not afraid that you will tire of being in the country? 35. I am not afraid that I shall tire of being in the country.

EXERCISE XXIV, a. (§§ 268-273, *continued.*)

1. Our neighbour is an honest man; I hope he will succeed. 2. I do not think he will succeed; he has not much ability. 3. We thought he would come to-day. 4. You told me that you did not think he would go away, did you not? 5. Do you think we must believe what he says? 6. It is probable that we shall go away to-morrow. 7. It is not certain that our friends will come to-morrow. 8. Is it probable that you will go away to-day? 9. We are sure that we saw them yesterday. 10. Are you not sure that you saw them yesterday? 11. Do you think your father will go to France this summer? 12. It is probable he will go there. 13. It is certain that all men will die. 14. Is it certain that our friends will be there this evening? 15. Is it not certain that your neighbour will buy your house? 16. Does he imagine we shall do that merely to (*pour*) please him? 17. We are not sure that will please him. 18. Do you think you will go for a walk this evening? 19. Yes, I think I shall go out with my brother. 20. Give me the book which contains that beautiful story of which you were speaking. 21. Give me a book which contains some beautiful stories. 22. I should like to buy a house which would suit me better than this one. 23. I am looking for a grammar in which I can find better exercises. 24. I have a grammar which has better exercises. 25. Send me some clothes which I can wear in the house. 26. Has he a single friend who is true to him? 27. He has not a single friend who is true to him. 28. There is nobody here who can speak French. 29. I have nothing which is of value. 30. There are no houses here which are as large as those in the city. 31. There are few people here who have learned French. 32. It is the finest thing one can see. 33. That is the largest ship I have ever seen. 34. Whatever you do, you will not be able to persuade me that you are right. 35. Whoever you are, you will have to obey the law, as long as you are in this country.

EXERCISE XXV, a. (§§268-273, *continued.*)

Que veut-il dire?	What does he mean?
On se fie à lui.	Men trust him. He is trusted.
Faites-moi savoir.	Send me word (let me know).
Je ne reçois plus de ses nouvelles.	I never hear from him now.
Il est très occupé.	He is very busy.
Il s'occupe de cela.	He takes an interest in that.

1. I have told him nothing which could influence him. 2. I know no book which pleases me better. 3. I want a house which will suit me better. 4. Mr. Jackson is the richest man I know. 5. However good men may be, they do not escape misfortune. 6. Let us go out for a walk before your father returns. 7. We rose this morning before the sun rose. 8. Will you not stay here until the weather is warm? 9. Oh, no; we must leave before it begins to be warm. 10. We are going to work until we go to bed. 11. You must always act so that men may respect you. 12. Tell the truth always, so that men may trust you. 13. He insulted me so that I put him out doors. 14. That gentleman made a speech, but he spoke in such a way that one could not understand him. 15. I did not trust him, for fear that he might deceive me. 16. He passed our house before we had finished our breakfast. 17. I explained it to him, for fear he might not know what you meant. 18. I cannot trust you, unless you explain to me what you mean. 19. In case you cannot come, will you be kind enough to send me word. 20. We shall send you our carriage, in case you need it. 21. In case what he says is true, we shall send you word. 22. Although the children have gone to bed, they have not yet gone to sleep. 23. Although you may not like that man, you must confess that he is an honest man. 24. Although we used to be good friends, I never hear from him now. 25. Not that he has forgotten me, but he is so much occupied with his business. 26. Far from his saying that he hates you, I assure you that he will say he loves you. 27. He gave her the money without my knowing it. 28. Even if he had told me that he liked me, I should not have believed it. 29. Though Canada be less interesting than England, Canadians love it better. 30. I cannot go out, without my dog following me. 31. If we are

there and see him, we shall tell him what you say. 32. Although he is far away, I hear from him occasionally. 33. Not that we take no interest in your enterprise, but we are so busy with our own work that we can't think of anything else. 34. We are at the wrong door; would you be kind enough to tell us where we are, so that we can find where our friends live? 35. We shall rise early to-morrow morning, so as to be at the station before our friends start.

EXERCISE XXVI, a. (§§268-273, *continued.*)

1. Would to God he were here! 2. Let him be silent, if he cannot explain what he wishes. 3. The Frenchmen shout "Hurrah for France!" 4. He doubted whether there is a God. 5. I should like you to write me a letter when you are absent. 6. If his father should say so, he would have to do it. 7. I was most anxious that he should succeed in his enterprise. 8. We were not willing that you should go away without our seeing you. 9. His father gave orders that he should be taken to school. 10. The doctor forbade that the patient should go for a walk. 11. I was longing for that to be done. 12. He would not permit it to be done. 13. The rain hindered us all day from going out. 14. It was necessary that we should go away before the others came. 15. It was better that we should be here without their knowing it. 16. I was afraid that he had said too much. 17. I doubted whether he would be able to pay that price. 18. I was very sorry that we had not been able to go for a walk together; I am sure we should have enjoyed ourselves. 19. Our friends were glad that you had visited them before they left for France. 20. He told me he would go away, unless he succeeded better. 21. We did not say you should write the letter; you may do as you wish. 22. Did you fear he would go away without coming to see you? 23. My father thought you would come, but my mother thought you would not come. 24. It was impossible that he should not be mistaken; he trusts those who are not worthy of confidence. 25. We are not sure they would come. 26. We waited until they came. 27. We have taken care that they should not see us. 28. No man has ever lived who could equal him in prudence. 29. He was the noblest man I have ever known. 30. I left Russia when I was a boy; I sought a

country where I might be free. 31. Did he ever have a friend who was faithful to him? 32. Show me a house which will suit me better than this one. 33. I have never seen anything which suited me better. 34. Why did your father come? 35. He came in case I should be ill. 36. Although he was very ill, he would not go home.

EXERCISE XXVII, a. (§§ 274-275.)

Je lui ai dit son fait.	I (have) told him what I thought of him.
Nous nous plaisons à la ville.	We like it (like to be) in the city.
Il se plaît à la campagne.	He likes it (likes to be) in the country.
Qu'il fasse beau, ou qu'il pleuve. S'il fait beau, ou qu'il pleuve.	Whether it is fine, or whether it rains.
Quand même ce serait vrai.	Even if it were true. Even were it true.
Il s'en plaint.	He complains of it.

1. If it does not rain, will you go for a walk to-morrow morning? 2. No, even if it should not rain, I must go down town to-morrow morning on business. 3. If it were to rain to-day, we should not go down town. 4. If I had known that you were in town, I should have gone to see you. 5. Had it not been so warm to-day, I should have gone away. 6. If the Germans had not taken Alsatia, the French would not hate them so much to-day. 7. If I come here next year, I shall bring my brother with me. 8. If I were you, I should tell him what I think of him. 9. If I am present when he arrives, I shall tell him what I told you. 10. If it is cold in winter, we go to Florida; if it is mild, we remain in Canada. 11. If my father likes it in the country, he will stay there till (the) autumn. 12. If I should like it in the city, I shall stay there always. 13. I can never trust that boy; if he should tell me anything, I should not believe him. 14. Whether it rains or is fine, we shall come. 15. He is a good (*brave*) man, if there ever was one. 16. If that man were as rich as Crœsus, he would not be satisfied. 17. See what that man has done to me! He is a scoundrel, if there ever was one. 18. If I should go to sleep before you come, be good enough to wake me. 19. Will you not go down town with me? 20. I cannot go, I am not well; if I were better, I should go willingly.

21. If he had risen at six o'clock, he would not have missed the train. 22. Yes, he would (*si! si!*). He would have been late, even if he had risen at half-past five, for the train left at a quarter past five. 23. I have been told that your friend has insulted you; is it true? 24. No, but even if it were true, I should pardon (it to) him. 25. Did our friend tell you last evening whether he was coming to-morrow? 26. Yes, he told me that he would come. 27. That man told me that he had a thousand dollars. 28. Were he to swear it, I should not believe it. 29. If you meet him, and he should ask you where I am, do not tell (it to) him. 30. Whether he comes, or not, (that) makes no difference to me. 31. If I were he, I should tell that scoundrel what I thought of him. 32. If we liked it in the country, we should stay there. 33. If he had insulted me like that, I should have kicked him out. 34. Even were you to hate me, I should not complain (of it). 35. I should have liked it in the country, if it had not rained without ceasing.

EXERCISE XXVIII, a. (§§276-285.)

Je vais faire { une promenade. / un tour de promenade. }	I am going for a walk.
Je voudrais le faire.	I should like to do it.
Je voudrais qu'il le fasse (fît).	{ I should like him to do it. / I wish him to do it.
Il fait beau marcher (se promener).	{ The walking is good. / It is good walking.
Vous avez beau dire (parler).	{ It is vain (useless) for you to speak. / You may say what you like.
J'ai cru voir passer quelqu'un.	I thought I saw some one go by.
Je les ai écoutés chanter.	I listened to them sing(ing).
Il a pensé mourir.	He was near dying.
Je pense (songe) à le faire.	I am thinking about doing it.
Il ne fait que de venir (arriver).	He has just come.
Il veut faire à sa tête.	He will have his own way.
J'aimerais autant m'en aller.	I would as soon go.
Faites-le monter.	Send (show) him up (stairs).

1. Let us go for a walk this morning; the walking is good, and it is cool. 2. Living is always dear in Paris. 3. Are the children coming? 4. Yes, I saw them coming when I

was on the hill. 5. I should like to speak to the doctor when he comes. 6. I should like you to speak to my father when you see him. 7. When do you expect to be there? 8. I expect to be there in a fortnight. 9. He might say what he liked, nobody would believe him. 10. It was useless for us to speak, nobody would listen to us. 11. I like better to live in the country than in the city. 12. My friends have left me, and I know not what to do. 13. I think it is going to be warm to-day. 14. My father thought he heard some one go by, but I think he was mistaken. 15. My father was very ill last year; he was near dying. 16. His little boy fell into the water, and was near being drowned. 17. I was thinking about going to see you. 18. I hope I shall see you when you come. 19. I hope he will come to see me when he is here. 20. Did you see my sister at the ball? 21. I thought I saw her, but I am not sure (of it). 22. I am thinking about writing him a letter, but I do not like writing letters, and so I delay (it) from week to week. 23. I should like better to go than to stay. 24. It would be better to go than to stay. 25. Come and see us whenever you wish. 26. My master has just come; after he has dined I shall tell him that you are here. 27. I hope I shall be able to go for a walk with you to-morrow. 28. I hope you will not go away before I have seen you. 29. We ought to go and see your father before he leaves. 30. It is useless for you to say anything; he will have his own way. 31. You may say what you like; young people will have their own way. 32. I would as soon go as stay. 33. I am not very well this morning; I am going to send for the doctor. 34. The doctor has just come; shall I send him up? 35. We thought we heard some one go by, but we must have been mistaken.

EXERCISE XXIX, a. (§§276-285, *continued.*)

Il est à travailler.	He is busy working.
J'y suis accoutumé.	I am used to it.
Il finira mal.	He will come to a bad end.
Se plaire à mal faire.	To delight in evil- (wrong-) doing.
Il tarde à venir.	He is long in coming.
Tenez-vous (beaucoup) à y aller?	Are you (very) anxious to go there?
Je n'y tiens pas.	I am not anxious (for it).

1. Continue reading until you are called. 2. We are busy writing our exercises. 3. I have my work to do. 4. Our teacher taught us to do that. 5. Will you help me to do my work? 6. I should like to help you, but I have work to do also. 7. I have difficulty in believing that he has done that. 8. How old is that child? 9. He is two years old; he is beginning to talk. 10. The servant is busy washing dishes in the kitchen. 11. We are occupied to-day in writing to our friends. 12. He spends his time in reading novels. 13. He is not lazy; he sets about writing his lesson as soon as his teacher tells (it to) him. 14. Do you not get tired (in) reading those difficult works? 15. A little, but I am rather used to it. 16. He lost a great deal in selling his house. 17. That boy persists in reading bad books; he will come to a bad end. 18. The wicked delight in evil-doing. 19. Our friends invited us to stay with them. 20. I should like to know where my mother is; she is long in coming. 21. I wish she would come; I long to see her. 22. Are you anxious to have it to-day? 23. Oh no, I am not anxious for that; but I must have it to-morrow. 24. Are those apples good to eat? 25. We are looking for a maid of all work. 26. That young lady sings and dances charmingly. 27. There are five bed-rooms in that house. 28. That poor little girl has hurt her hand; she is crying pitifully. 29. Our neighbour has died; his family is to be pitied. 30. That young man seems to delight in wrong-doing. 31. Are you not very anxious to see your friends? 32. Yes, I should like to see them; I have not seen them for a long time. 33. That is very difficult to do; I should like you to help me. 34. I am always ready to help you. 35. I am glad to know that you are not the only one to say so. 36. That scoundrel did not succeed in deceiving us.

EXERCISE XXX, a. (§§ 276-285, *continued.*)

Il fait semblant de dormir.	He pretends to be asleep.
Bien faire, mal faire.	To do well, to do evil (wrong).

1. Our teacher tells us that it is easy to read that book. 2. I am ashamed to say that we are mistaken. 3. He pretends to be asleep. 4. She pretends to be reading. 5. It is difficult to say whether we are right or wrong. 6. He is wrong to

believe that we are his enemies. 7. Will you permit me to go to bed? 8. Promise us not to go away without telling us (it). 9. I am very glad to say that I shall be able to come and see you at once. 10. We are sorry to tell you that we cannot come. 11. Cease to do evil; learn to do well. 12. Hasten to finish your work before leaving. 13. Let us hasten to leave, or we shall be late. 14. I am afraid to speak, although I know it is my place to tell them that they have done wrong. 15. He commenced by telling me that he was a rich man's son, and he finished by asking me to lend him five dollars. 16. Take care not to fall. 17. If you happen to see him, tell him that I shall not go away before seeing him. 18. I have just seen him, and he told me to tell you that he would come to-morrow. 19. We (*on*) should not live to eat. 20. It is too cold to go for a walk. 21. It is not cool enough to go for a walk. 22. I rose early this morning in order to be able to do my work before going down town. 23. We learn French in order to be able to read French books. 24. After writing our exercises we went for a walk. 25. That little boy was punished for having lied. 26. That young girl is much to be pitied; her father and mother are dead. 27. Before going we should like to see you. 28. We should like to see you before you go. 29. We saw those houses being built. 30. He did that without telling us (it). 31. We went away without his seeing us. 32. It was very windy, and we would not go out for a sail for fear of being drowned. 33. Although he made me many compliments at first, he finally insulted me. 34. Your father has just come; shall I tell him to wait here, or should you like to see him at once? 35. I have not time to see him now; I shall try to see him to-morrow. 36. We cannot hinder him from doing so.

EXERCISE XXXI, a. (§§ 286-287.)

Cette femme me fait pitié.	I am sorry for that woman.
Il s'est fâché contre moi.	He got angry with me.

1. Knowing so many things, those gentlemen must be very learned. 2. The field of battle was covered with the dead and dying. 3. I am sorry for that poor woman; she is always ill. 4. In neglecting her duties, she shows herself careless. 5.

Their misfortunes went on increasing from day to day. 6. Don't you see them coming? 7. Yes; there they come! 8. Man is the only speaking creature. 9. Frenchmen will say (pres.) that, generally speaking, Frenchmen are better than Englishmen. 10. How happy those peasants are! They are always singing their beautiful songs, as they work. 11. One's appetite comes while eating; but, said the Gascon, I have been eating two hours, and it has not come yet. 12. I like reading, but I prefer hunting and fishing. 13. Where are the children? 14. There they are, playing under the trees. 15. Our neighbour's son has made astonishing progress at (the) college. 16. The sewing-machine is an American invention, but there are many of them in Europe now. 17. Our friends were very much astonished at our coming; they thought we were in Europe. 18. As we were taking a walk this morning, we met the old gentleman who used to live next door. 19. Our neighbours are speaking of going away, but I do not think they will. 20. That young man went away without saying good-bye; he must have got angry with me. 21. That prince has powerful enemies. 22. That lady, being ill, has not come to-day. 23. Those children, having finished their work, have gone out. 24. Those so-called learned men, who really know nothing, are very tiresome. 25. Who is that man going past? 26. That is the would-be nobleman. 27. England has the most powerful fleet in the world. 28. That little girl, having been ill, cannot go to school. 29. Our friends, being tired, have gone to bed. 30. Seriously speaking, that young man is not worthy of being respected. 31. Those children appear to be well. 32. If the population of the towns goes on increasing, and that of the country diminishing, we shall probably have great misfortunes. 33. I saw him coming down the street before I met you. 34. While travelling, I saw many astonishing things. 35. Did you not see my brothers going out?

EXERCISE XXXII, a. (§§ 288-292.)

Elle s'y est plu.	She liked it there.
Vous êtes-vous bien amusé?	Did you have a good time?
Elles se sont donné la main.	They have shaken hands.
Elles se sont brouillées.	They have fallen out.
Les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait.	The great heat that there has been

1. That is the old lady whom I saw fall in the street yesterday. 2. She fell in front of Mr. Simon's, and I helped her to get up. 3. Our friends have gone away, but they will come back to-morrow. 4. Your mother has been in the country; did she like it there? 5. She enjoyed herself (there) very much; she intends to go back again soon. 6. Your sister and mother have come. 7. You will find enclosed [a] copy of the contract which we have signed. 8. The ten hours that he has slept have not been enough to rest him. 9. The children had a good time to-day at the picnic. 10. Where is the servant? 11. I have let her go to see her friends. 12. Those are the three miles that I ran to (*pour*) fetch the doctor. 13. Those are the dangers we have incurred to save our country. 14. She remembered the dangers I had incurred. 15. Did those two ladies shake hands? 16. No; they did not even look at each other. 17. Those ladies have written each other many letters. 18. There are the letters I wrote. 19. Those young ladies have fallen out, and have burnt the letters they wrote to each other. 20. They have said good-bye to each other. 21. They have lost what they have given each other. 22. The great heat that there has been has killed the crops. 23. The person I asked (*prier*) to sing will not sing. 24. What difficulty we have had to remember what you told us! 25. The crops are poor this year; the great heat has killed them. 26. That is the house which we had built. 27. How many houses they have built! 28. How many beautiful houses they have had built! 29. That is the lady we heard sing at the concert last evening. 30. Those are the children we saw playing this morning. 31. Those are the beautiful songs we heard sung at the concert. 32. Do you remember the houses we saw being built last year? 33. There is a letter which I forgot to put in the post. 34. He has read all the books he could. 35. There are the books we sent for. 36. We have told them to go out. 37. Those are the books which I thought he would read.

EXERCISE XXXIII, a. (§§ 293-299.)

Il se croit honnête homme.	He thinks he is an honest man.
Il ne s'en est pas aperçu.	He did not notice it.
Ce chapeau ne lui va pas.	That hat does not fit him.
Il ne (nous) est pas permis de . . .	We are not permitted to . . .
Je le lui ai payé.	I paid him for it.
Je l'en ai remercié.	I thanked him for it.
Je pense à vous.	I am thinking of you.
Que pensez-vous de cela ?	What do you think of that ?

1. We shall make them do their work. 2. They (*on*) have made her suffer great ills. 3. Show them up stairs when they come. 4. I have seen the children play. 5. We have seen him play that part. 6. He was born [a] poet. 7. He has become [a] soldier. 8. What will become of us ! 9. I believe he is an honest man. 10. He thinks he is [a] scholar. 11. I know he is [a] scholar. 12. We should not slander our neighbours. 13. I perceived their dejection, as soon as I came in; did you ? (see § 256). 14. No, I did not notice it. 15. We cannot do without our books; we are going to use them to-morrow. 16. I remember the sorrows you made me undergo. 17. These gloves do not fit me. 18. That young lady's gloves do not fit her. 19. I shall look for a house which suits me better (see § 270, 1). 20. That house does not suit our friends. 21. I cannot trust him; he often lies. 22. The son resembles his father. 23. We are not permitted to leave the city. 24. The law does not permit children to marry. 25. The king pardons him his crime. 26. Did you pay the tailor for your coat ? 27. I have not paid him for it yet. 28. What are you looking at ? 29. I am looking at those men working in the field. 30. Wait for me, till I come. 31. I think of my friends who have gone away. 32. Do you think of the money you have lost ? 33. I do not. 34. Shall you be at the ball this evening ? 35. I do not know; that depends on you. 36. Did you thank him for having lent you his book ? 37. I did. 38. He stole that watch from his father; what do you think of that ? 39. He is laughing at us. 40. Those men were playing cards. 41. Those young ladies play on the violin. 42. You believe me; do you not ? 43. Yes, I believe you. 44. That old lady believes in ghosts. 45. He loves

and obeys his parents. 46. He missed the train; did he not? 47. I am short of money this morning; I cannot pay you. 48. He fails in his duty when he does not pay his debts. 49. Have you asked your father for money? 50. I have not asked him for any.

EXERCISE XXXIV, a. (§§ 300-306.)

1. Tell the servant to put the frying-pan on the stove. 2. That man is a regular dupe. 3. He is not a friend; he is a mere acquaintance. 4. He was received with all the honours. 5. That poet is always singing of his first love. 6. The errors of men are numerous. 7. The old man has (*faire*) a nap after dinner. 8. He paid me a large sum of money. 9. My memory is not good; give me a memorandum of that affair. 10. Steam makes the steamer go. 11. That man and his wife are a happy couple. 12. I have Hugo's works at home. 13. The works of the sculptor Barye were exhibited in Paris in 1889. 14. Old people are generally less thoughtless than young people. 15. Those people are not all good. 16. All those people were present. 17. All good people are worthy of respect. 18. All the clever people in (*de*) the town were present at the ball. 19. Happy [are] the people who do not love vice. 20. All the young men of the village were present at the celebration.

EXERCISE XXXV, a. (§§ 307-314.)

Tomber à genoux.	To fall on one's knees.
Le petit bonhomme.	The brave little fellow.

1. That man has broken his two arms. 2. The 'ifs' and the 'buts' are often convenient words. 3. The criminal fell on his knees before the king. 4. That little boy likes to pick up pebbles. 5. The generals have good horses. 6. We read the newspapers before going down town [in] the morning. 7. Frenchmen like carnivals and balls. 8. Our neighbour has some beautiful corals at home. 9. The Minister of Public Works has ordered a railway to be constructed. 10. His grandfathers are dead. 11. Our ancestors were great men who left [behind them] many noble works. 12. The poor boy had tears in his (*aux*) eyes when he was told that his bird was

dead. 13. That painter makes beautiful skies. 14. Several Te Deums were sung this year in that church. 15. Give me two postage-stamps, if you please. 16. We had some delightful private interviews. 17. Those corkscrews are useless. 18. Those lamp-shades are very pretty. 19. Give me a toothpick, if you please. 20. Do not condemn me on rumours. 21. The two Corneilles were dramatic authors. 22. All the Ribots were present. 23. I have two Molières at home. 24. The Bourbons have been very unfortunate ; I pity them. 25. I saw the school-boys marching yesterday ; the brave little fellows were really fine-looking. 26. The noblemen of France have suffered much during this century. 27. There are two gentlemen and two ladies waiting for you. 28. Good morning, ladies ; how do you do? 29. I have visited all the county-towns of that part of France. 30. Many of Molière's works are masterpieces.

EXERCISE XXXVI, a. (§§ 315-335.)

1. He showed remarkable courage in struggling with his difficulties. 2. We used to enjoy good health when we lived in France. 3. Do you not like music? 4. I do, when it is good. 5. Gold and silver are abundant in that country. 6. The rich have much gold and silver. 7. Does that young lady know Greek? 8. She does not, but she knows French and German well. 9. Does your mother speak French? 10. Yes, she speaks French and German well. 11. We have French and German books in our library. 12. Have you any good sugar for sale, sir? 13. Have you any of my books in your library? 14. Have you any of the good wine you bought last year? 15. We have no pens and no paper. 16. They have no more money, and so they must stay at home. 17. That is not wine ; it is water. 18. It is not money I ask you for, but friendship. 19. Why do you complain; have you not friends? 20. I should like to buy a pound of tea ; have you any of the good tea which you ordered from China? 21. I shall give you something good, if you come to see me. 22. He promised me something very beautiful, but he never gave it to me. 23. Many people believe that he will come to a bad end. 24. Many others believe that he will succeed well. 25. Most people are ignorant of their true interests. 26. We were

absent most of the time. 27. Silk dresses and gold watches are not always necessary. 28. Horses are animals which are useful to men. 29. Queen Victoria has been reigning a long time. 30. The President of the French Republic has signed the treaty. 31. King Louis XIV. is often called the Great. 32. That old man has a long beard. 33. Give me your hand, and I shall help you to rise. 34. We shook hands before we parted. 35. She has not taken off her hat and gloves; she says she cannot stay. 36. I have tooth-ache and ear-ache, and so I cannot go out. 37. That little girl has blue eyes, and blond hair. 38. I had my hair cut before starting. 39. What is the matter with you, my little boy? 40. My hands and feet are cold.

EXERCISE XXXVII, a. (§§ 315-335, *continued.*)

Combien les avez-vous payés?	How much did you pay for them?
Je les ai payés dix francs la douzaine.	I paid ten francs a dozen for them.
Il part pour la France.	He is starting for France.
Au nord de la France.	In the north of France.

1. You have some very fine pears; how much did you pay for them? 2. I paid two cents apiece for them. 3. That is not dear; I thought that pears would not sell so cheap this year. 4. Carpenters are earning ten francs a day at present. 5. We do not go to school on Saturday. 6. He will come on Saturday. 7. You were wrong to come on Wednesday; you should always come on Thursday. 8. Did I step on your toe? I ask your pardon. 9. Are you going on horseback or on foot? 10. How we love spring! 11. In spring nature awakes from its long repose. 12. In winter there is sometimes much snow in France. 13. Those gentlemen are Frenchmen. 14. Our neighbour is a carpenter. 15. His son has become a distinguished physician. 16. Charles the First, King of England, was beheaded. 17. She was born at Marseilles, a city of Southern France. 18. We were without friends and money. 19. Those children have neither father nor mother. 20. He will come home at Michaelmas. 21. Those ladies dress in French style. 22. Have you ever read Tasso's great poem? 23. Yes, and Ariosto's also. 24. We are to start for Europe to-morrow. 25. Normandy is a province of France.

26. Did you ever live in Paris? 27. Yes, I lived a long time in France, and in England too. 28. My brother has lived in China, but he is living now in Japan. 29. The United States is the most important country in North America. 30. Havre is an important seaport of the north of France. 31. New Orleans is a large city of the United States. 32. French wines are celebrated in all parts of the world. 33. That traveller comes from Africa, and is going to South America. 34. Ladies, you are welcome; we are always glad to receive you. 35. Our neighbour goes to the city every other day.

EXERCISE XXXVIII, a. (§§ 336-358.)

1. That little boy's grandmother has given him a knife. 2. That little girl is very foolish. 3. I know those old ladies well; they are our old neighbours. 4. What a fine-looking man! Do you know him? 5. There are some beautiful trees! 6. The prince addressed him most flattering words. 7. That statesman is celebrated for his liberal principles. 8. There are, according to Catholic doctrine, seven capital sins. 9. The man and his wife were both old. 10. The French and Italian nations are often called Latin nations. 11. Those flowers smell sweet, do they not? 12. That large building is the school for (*de*) deaf-mutes. 13. He left the door wide open when he went out this morning. 14. The newly married couple had just left the church. 15. My mother had blue eyes and light auburn hair. 16. When I was young, I used to go barefoot to school. 17. That lady looks kind. 18. A pound sterling is worth twenty-five francs. 19. He is getting richer and richer. 20. He is richer than people (*on*) believe. 21. The older one is, the wiser one should be. 22. My brother is older than I by four years. 23. The richer one part of the population becomes, the poorer the rest often become. 24. Your house is small, but ours is smaller still. 25. That man is bad, but his brother is still worse. 26. The dearer those articles are, the less of them we shall be able to buy. 27. Our house is good, but yours is better. 28. His most intimate friends knew nothing of his good fortune. 29. Men are often the most unhappy when they ought to be the most happy. 30. Is that not a splendid

sight? 31. Yes, it is most beautiful! 32. The richest men in the world are not always the happiest. 33. She is shorter than I by three inches.

EXERCISE XXXIX, a. (§§ 336-358, *continued.*)

1. You are all welcome, ladies; how kind you are to come to see me! 2. What a pretty little girl! What is her name? 3. There were black horses and white ones in the procession. 4. Will you give me some cold water to (*pour*) drink? 5. Whose is that broken cane? 6. Our neighbour is not an educated man. 7. Our friends live in a beautiful white house behind the town. 8. The English language is spoken in all parts of the world. 9. I have just seen that pretended nobleman go by. 10. We have just been at a political meeting, where we listened to a very long speech. 11. My dear child, you are too young to wear dear dresses! 12. I love that gentleman; he is so kind to children. 13. Are you not ready to start? You are very slow in dressing. 14. I am very glad to see you; when are you coming to visit me? 15. I am very sorry to say that I have no time to visit you before I go away. 16. We are charmed with the beautiful present you gave (*faire*) us. 17. You are not angry with me, are you? 18. I do not like that man; he is too severe with his children. 19. That is a nice little girl; she is so polite to everybody. 20. That little boy is very clever at history and arithmetic. 21. That army is weak in numbers. 22. We must be charitable to everybody. 23. Living languages are more useful than dead languages. 24. We must not confound the verbal adjectives with the present participles. 25. That young man is the living image of his father. 26. The more learned that man becomes, the less generous he becomes.

EXERCISE XL, a. (§§ 359-373.)

1. Are there any good pens in the box? 2. There are none. 3. Do you know that old man? 4. I know him and his brother. 5. Do you know that man and his wife? 6. We know both him and her. 7. We know him only. 8. Did you see my father and mother? 9. We saw her only. 10. Are you going to give them some money? 11. I have already

given them some. 12. Will you give me some apples? 13. I shall give you and him some. 14. Have you spoken to my cousin of your plan? 15. I have spoken of it to her and her mother. 16. Will you have the goodness to introduce us to your mother? 17. I shall have great pleasure in introducing you to her. 18. I was thinking of you when you came in. 19. Do you think of me, when I am far away? 20. Yes, I always think of you. 21. Whose is that house? 22. It is mine. 23. As soon as the child saw his mother, he ran to her. 24. Are you that young man's sister? 25. I am. 26. Are you satisfied, madam? 27. I am. 28. Are you an American, sir? 29. I am. 30. Are you the gentlemen we met yesterday? 31. We are. 32. I shall go for the doctor, if you wish. 33. I shall do the work, if it is necessary. 34. That man is richer than we are. 35. Why do you tell me to be brave? I am so already. 36. He carried the day over all his rivals. 37. Tell me where he lives, if you know. 38. He is a Canadian, and I am one too. 39. Do you know the Robinsons? 40. Yes, they are very fastidious people, and I do not like to have [anything] to do with them. 41. There is the box; put the pens into it. 42. Go there, my child; do not stay here. 43. Do not go there, my daughter; you will hurt yourself. 44. Give them some, my little boy. 45. He is a bad man; I cannot trust him. 46. The earth about those flowers is dry; throw some water there, my daughter. 47. Let us not go away; let them laugh at us, if they will. 48. The children wish to go to the celebration; let us take them there. 49. That boy has apples and pears; let us ask him for some. 50. That boy has your knife; take it away from him.

EXERCISE XLI, a. (§§ 359-373, *continued.*)

1. My father did not hurt himself, but he had a narrow escape. 2. Every one for himself is too often the maxim of men. 3. One should not always be thinking of one's self. 4. The selfish live only for themselves. 5. Do you need money? 6. I do. 7. Do you come from London? 8. We do. 9. I cannot understand why he has a grudge against me. 10. However that may be, it is all over with him. 11. Have you any money? 12. I have, but I should like to have more.

13. How many apples have you? 14. I have six. 15. Here are some fine pears; do you wish any? 16. Yes, I should like some, for I have none. 17. Switzerland is my country; I love its blue sky and free institutions. 18. I planted this apple-tree; I hope I shall eat its fruit. 19. Do you ever think of your country when you are in foreign countries? 20. When I am far away, I always think of it. 21. My brother has gone home, and I am going too. 22. I see a crowd of people in the street; what is the matter? 23. Were you ever in Europe? 24. I never was. 25. We shall make him do it when we come. 26. The doctor is at home; shall I send for him? 27. There they are; go and get them. 28. There is some water; give us some, for we are thirsty. 29. Do not give them any; they do not need any. 30. Where are the children? 31. They are coming up the street. 32. Do not listen to them; they are making sport of you. 33. There is my hat; give it to me, if you please. 34. That is my hat; do not give it to him. 35. Let us go away; it is getting late. 36. If you have any money, give me some. 37. He gives himself some, but he will not give us any. 38. Take us there. 39. Give it to us; do not give it to them. 40. What are you doing, naughty dog? Go away. 41. I saw him, and gave him the money. 42. They are worthy people; I love and admire them. 43. Our duty to our parents is to love and obey them. 44. It is I who was there. 45. My father and I were not there. 46. What were you and he doing? 47. He was writing, and I was reading. 48. He has a house of his own. 49. You and he were there, were you not? 50. There is the box; I should like to know whether there is anything in it.

EXERCISE XLII, a. (§§ 374-377.)

Elle lui a fermé la porte au nez.	She shut the door in his face.
Cela lui a fait venir l'eau à la bouche.	That made his mouth water.
Cette nuit; de toute la nuit.	Last night; all night.

1. My father and yours will soon be here. 2. I have your books and my own. 3. Our friends are coming by the railway; yours are coming by the steamer. 4. My brother and sister have gone away; they will not be back till Wednesday next. 5. One should not fail to pay one's debts. 6. I had

my hair cut this morning; I am afraid I shall catch a cold. 7. The duke was presented to the queen, and he kissed her hand. 8. She has cut her finger. 9. I shall love him, as long as my heart beats. 10. It was so warm that I could not close my eyes all night. 11. Close your eyes, and open your mouth. 12. He shuts his eyes to the light. 13. He was walking [with] his eyes closed; he fell and broke his arm. 14. I have my hands full; I cannot help you. 15. I went to see him, but he shut the door in my face. 16. It is a very cold morning; will you not warm your hands? 17. Thank you; my hands are not cold. 18. That clumsy fellow stepped on my toe, and he hurt me very much. 19. My head aches this morning; I did not close my eyes last night. 20. The sight of those beautiful apples made my mouth water. 21. He stood there, [with] his arms folded, awaiting his fate like a brave soldier. 22. As long as my heart beats, I shall never forget you. 23. If they come here, we shall shut the door in their face. 24. Do you see those poor children; those beautiful pears made their mouths water. 25. Let us hope that the law has not lost its force in this country. 26. He has a watch of his own. 27. Whom do you mean; his father or her father? 28. I mean *her* father. 29. This house is his, not yours. 30. They lost their lives fighting for their (*la*) country. 31. Negroes have dark skins and large mouths. 32. One of my friends who is a doctor told me the following story. 33. I am going to take away these books of yours. 34. The difference between mine and thine is not always easy to determine. 35. I love very much these books of mine.

EXERCISE XLIII, a. (§§ 378-388.)

1. I have never read that book, but I have read this one, and I like it very much. 2. These houses are not so fine as those. 3. You should not eat in that way. 4. Have patience, I shall be (pres.) there this moment. 5. Those who do wrong will be punished. 6. He of whom you were speaking yesterday has arrived. 7. Which of those horses do you like best? 8. I like the one you bought better than your brother's, but I like my own best. 9. This house and the one in which our neighbours live will be sold to-morrow. 10. Our house and our neighbour's are both (*en*) brick [houses]. 11.

These facts, and those discovered since that time, prove that, although he was a great scholar, he was wrong. 12. I saw the man (*celui*) last evening who wanted to buy my horse. 13. Who are those two gentlemen? 14. This is Mr. Robinson, and that is Mr. Jones. 15. You are looking for apples; very well, will you take these or those? 16. I will take these; those are too small. 17. How is butter selling to-day? 18. That sells at two francs a pound, and this, which is finer, at two francs fifty centimes. 19. Gambetta and Hugo were distinguished men; the former was an orator, the latter a poet. 20. That is a fine horse! How much is he worth? 21. Why do these people not reply when we speak to them? 22. They are Russians; they do not understand you. 23. Who did that? 24. It was John who did it. 25. What o'clock is it? 26. It is half-past ten. 27. What day of the month is it? 28. To-day is the tenth. 29. Is that the house of which you spoke to me? 30. No, it is the next one. 31. Who is that lady? 32. She is the lady who lives next door. 33. What I fear is that he will never come back. 34. It is not that he is losing his money, but he is destroying his health also. 35. It is time to go home.

EXERCISE XLIV, a. (§§ 378-388, *continued.*)

C'est une belle chose que de protéger les faibles.	It is a fine thing to protect the weak.
Ce sont des qualités nécessaires pour régner que la douceur et la fermeté.	Mildness and firmness are necessary qualities for ruling.
Il a cela de bon.	He has this good thing about him.

1. It is they who have done it. 2. It was kind of you to help those poor people. 3. You can do it; it is easy. 4. That was not kind of you; you should have allowed me to do it. 5. You are rich; it is easy for you to say so. 6. It is a pity that we did not know it sooner. 7. It is unfortunate that he did not come yesterday. 8. My father told me you were here; that is why I came. 9. It is to be feared that the traveller has died of hunger. 10. It is to be desired that those misfortunes will never happen. 11. What we were speaking of has happened. 12. What I am thinking of is the way of preventing that misfortune. 13. What he says is true. 14. It's a fine thing,

('is') money! 15. It is not to you that I speak. 16. He has lost all his money, which is sad. 17. What a beautiful thing is virtue! 18. It is money that he wishes. 19. He is a fine young man, ('is') John! 20. It would be a good thing to go away. 21. It is a fine thing to love virtue. 22. Health and good sense are qualities necessary for succeeding in the world. 23. You are the one who did that. 24. Love is the strongest of all passions. 25. This does not belong to me, but that does. 26. Give me this; keep that for yourself. 27. He has this good thing about him, that he always tells the truth. 28. What a lazy beast; and yet he thinks that he works! 29. Did he give you back your pencil? 30. No, but that does not matter; I have another here. 31. It is difficult to translate the word 'that' into French. 32. I am sure that that 'that' that that man uses is superfluous.

EXERCISE XLV, a. (§§ 389-402.)

1. Whom did you see yesterday? 2. I saw him who was with you the day before yesterday. 3. I told you already what my reasons are. 4. What sort of weather is it this morning? 5. I think it will be fine. 6. I do not know to which of those men we were speaking. 7. What fine weather! I hope it will continue until we leave. 8. Who is that? 9. It is the man I sold my house to. 10. What was the matter this morning; I heard a great noise in the street? 11. What were you speaking of to that man you met? 12. I was speaking to him of what we were discussing yesterday. 13. Scoundrel that you are, if I catch you, I'll give you what you deserve. 14. What I complain of is that you make no progress in your studies. 15. I do not understand you; will you explain to me clearly what you mean? 16. What has become of that young gentleman with whom I saw you? 17. I don't know what has become of him; I have not seen him lately. 18. Which of those ladies did you see? 19. I saw the one that was here yesterday. 20. What are you thinking of? 21. I am thinking of what we are going to do to-morrow. 22. What did your father ask you to do? 23. I have done what he asked me to do. 24. The gentleman, whose son was visiting us last year, will come himself next year. 25. The lady, whose daughter has just been married, will

spend some weeks with us next summer. 26. The people, of whom I speak, would never do such a thing. 27. I, who am your friend, tell you so, and you ought to believe it. 28. It was we who gave them their liberty, and yet to-day they are our enemies. 29. He has gone away, and what is worse, he has not paid his debts. 30. That is very strange! I sent him a letter, and yet he says he never received it. 31. To whom are you speaking, sir? 32. It is to you I am speaking, and I want you to pay attention to what I say. 33. The house they are coming out of belongs to my father. 34. The people of the village from which he came were very glad to be rid of him. 35. The gentleman, for whose house I offered such a high price, has bought another. 36. The cause, for which those soldiers fought, was the deliverance of their country. 37. The man, in whom I trust, will not deceive me. 38. That child is deaf and dumb, which is a great pity, for he seems very intelligent. 39. I thank you very much. 40. Don't mention it. 41. What I was expecting was that he would pay me. 42. That is not a poor man; he is well off. 43. Where is the pen I made use of yesterday? 44. Take what you need; there will be enough for all. 45. Which way did you come this morning? 46. I came the way you came yesterday. 47. There is, in that affair, something strange and mysterious.

EXERCISE XLVI, a. (§§ 403-407.)

1. Certain people say the criminal has escaped. 2. Each day brings its labour. 3. We rise every morning at six o'clock. 4. I have seen him many a time. 5. I have no apples, but I have some pears and peaches. 6. However great and rich we may be, we must die. 7. Whatever your intentions were, your actions were not good. 8. However good your intentions were, you did not succeed in doing us good. 9. We should respect the rights of others. 10. Every one for himself is, happily, not a maxim which everybody practises. 11. If we do not love others, others will not love us. 12. Those children will receive, each one at his majority, their portion of their father's estate. 13. Mother, will you come down? You are wanted. 14. It is said that the robber has been caught. 15. It is not known whether the ship was wrecked or not. 16. When one is pretty, one is rarely

ignorant of it. 17. People wonder why that young man associates with those scoundrels. 18. When one sees a noble action, it always gives one pleasure. 19. I have never seen any one who had so many noble qualities. 20. I am afraid to say anything about it to any one. 21. No one has ever done anything like that. 22. What a beautiful view! Did you ever see anything like it? 23. He went away without visiting anyone. 24. Did you find anything where you were looking yesterday? 25. I do not know any one of his friends. 26. I doubt whether any one of you will do so. 27. If I can do it without any expense, I shall do it willingly. 28. I do not like this book; give me another. 29. That little boy has had one apple, and now he wants another. 30. Frenchmen often laugh at us Englishmen, because we are less gay than they. 31. This man I have seen elsewhere, but that one I never saw anywhere. 32. These are the same people that were here yesterday morning. 33. That lady is goodness itself. 34. Even if you were to say so, I should not believe it. 35. That is a young man in whom I have confidence; I shall put him in a position to make his fortune. 36. Were there any children at the meeting? 37. Yes, there were several. 38. I shall never accept such conditions. 39. I never saw such a foolish man. 40. If he were to say such a thing to me, I should put him out of doors. 41. He spent his whole life in doing good. 42. Our neighbour's daughters have become quite tall. 43. He comes to town every other week. 44. Where are the children? Both were here a little ago. 45. I found two apples in the basket, but neither is good. 46. Any line being given, draw a straight line which shall be equal to it. 47. There is no reason whatever which can persuade me. 48. Whoever has stolen that poor woman's money ought to be punished. 49. Whoever he is who told you that, he is mistaken. 50. Whatever that man may do, he will never succeed. 51. Whatever the reason may be, he will never come to see us.

EXERCISE XLVII, a. (408-420.)

1. I will not sell it, cheap or dear. 2. You did it on purpose, did you not? 3. Not at all, it was quite accidental. 4. A Christian ought to love not only his friends, but even his

enemies. 5. Those poor people had scarcely any bread to eat when we found them. 6. We have said nothing at all about it. 7. That is a very complicated affair; I can understand nothing of it. 8. We did not see a living soul in the street when we rose that morning. 9. Whom did you see? I saw nobody at all. 10. I shall be silent, so as not to hinder you from working. 11. He told me to do nothing until he returned. 12. I went away so as not to be punished. 13. What is the matter with that little boy? 14. I do not know, sir; I neither did nor said anything to him. 15. Would you not be glad to see our old friend? 16. No, I neither wish to see him nor speak to him. 17. I have a headache this evening; I can neither sing nor play. 18. Neither he nor his father were there. 19. I saw neither him nor his brother. 20. I have neither friend nor money, but I have strong arms and courage. 21. No more regrets; take courage, and forget the past. 22. Why did he not tell me so before leading me into this peril? 23. There is nobody here he does not know. 24. Take care that you are not deceived. 25. There is nothing which does not please me better than that. 26. Not one of those we invited has come. 27. Do you know where Dr. B. lives? 28. I cannot tell you. 29. If you have no use for this book, lend it to me. 30. Unless you do what you said, I shall not pay you. 31. Do you not fear he will go away? 32. I do not fear he will go away. 33. I am afraid our friends will not be there. 34. If I were afraid he would do it, I should do something to hinder him (from it). 35. If I were not afraid he would hurt himself with it, I should let him have it. 36. That man writes better than he speaks. 37. We do not wish more money than we have now. 38. I do not doubt that that is true. 39. Not much is lacking for the number to be complete. 40. We have not seen each other for three years. 41. It is more than three years since we were there. 42. I cannot go with you; I have no time. 43. Yes, you have, you are not so busy. 44. You have stolen my apples. 45. I tell you I have not. 46. But I say yes, for I saw you. 47. He has as much money as you have, but he has not as much as I have. 48. Let us say no more about it. 49. We are in a hurry; let us not stay any longer. 50. I have more than fifty francs, but he has more than I, and his brother has still more.

EXERCISE XLVIII. (§§ 421-430.)

Il a une vingtaine d'années.	He is about twenty (years old).
Il a une trentaine de mille francs.	He has about thirty thousand francs.

1. Columbus discovered America in the year 1492. 2. The French national *fête* is on the fourteenth of July, because [on] that day the Bastille was taken. 3. My father left England on the first of May, 1824. 4. Napoleon the First was a greater man than Napoleon the Third. 5. Charles the First of England and Louis the Sixteenth of France were both beheaded. 6. The first train leaves at a quarter to five in the morning, and the second at twenty minutes past two in the afternoon. 7. We went to bed last night at half-past twelve. 8. The first two houses in the street belong to us. 9. We have only the last two chapters in the book to read. 10. The carriage arrived at half-past one in the morning. 11. The father gave his son a fifth of his property when the son was twenty-one. 12. How old would you say that man is? 13. I should say he is about forty. 14. It is twenty years since I saw him. 15. That man is well off; he has an income of about twenty thousand francs a year. 16. The first volume of his works contains poetry, and the fourth novels. 17. This house cost three times as much as that one. 18. Ten times ten make a hundred. 19. We paid a hundred and twenty dollars for that horse. 20. That carriage cost one thousand one hundred dollars. 21. That old man is eighty-five years old. 22. [On] what day of the month did that happen? 23. It happened on the twelfth. 24. That table is two metres long by one metre wide. 25. We are going to have a house built sixty feet long by twenty-four wide. 26. What o'clock is it? 27. It is just noon. 28. A boy ten years old was killed last evening by a carriage in the *Boulevard des Italiens*. 29. That girl is older than her brother by two years. 30. I am taller than my brother by two inches. 31. Will you come at two o'clock or at three? 32. I shall be there precisely at three. 33. Is that boy ten years old or eleven? 34. He is eleven.

EXERCISE XLIX, a. (§§431-454.)

1. I was thinking of what you were talking about this morning. 2. He paid about twenty francs for that hat. 3. He will be here about six o'clock in the evening. 4. The day after our arrival we went to see the museum. 5. That child has black eyes; he takes after his father. 6. The money was divided amongst the children. 7. Amongst all those people there is not one sensible person. 8. Art arrived at great perfection among the Greeks. 9. He was at my house when I was at his. 10. They all laughed at my expense. 11. We all laughed at him. 12. The thief will have to appear before the court. 13. He will be here before a quarter past three. 14. That is greater by half than what we expected. 15. That box is six feet long by two wide. 16. It is a quarter to four by my watch. 17. I know that man by sight only. 18. He will leave for France in a week. 19. We lived in that city for twenty years. 20. I have been here for two years. 21. I traded my black horse for this white one. 22. I thanked him for his kindness. 23. From the fifteenth of May I shall live in that house. 24. They drank their wine from golden cups. 25. That picture is painted from nature. 26. In spring the weather is warm and the flowers open. 27. There is not so much misery in Canada as in Russia. 28. Let us live in peace with everybody. 29. There are several nations in North America. 30. Not one in a hundred was good. 31. Is your house (in) brick or stone? 32. It was kind of you to aid me in my misfortune. 33. In rainy weather we stay at home. 34. We shall go away on Saturday. 35. He is now on the road for England. 36. Our house is on this side of the street, and his is on that side. 37. When you come to the next street, turn to the right. 38. Instead of studying he is always looking out of the window. 39. His gun was hanging above the chimney. 40. The dog jumped over the fence. 41. He watched over my interests. 42. In passing through the forest we saw many rare plants. 43. We work from morning till night. 44. We are going to our friends' house. 45. The train for Paris will be here immediately. 46. They sold those goods under their value. 47. Wicked men tread God's laws under foot. 48. If you will live with us, we shall

treat you well. 49. Do you remember the man with the big nose whom we saw yesterday? 50. She told us her story with tears in her eyes.

EXERCISE L, a. (§§ 455-459.)

1. For fear it should rain we shall not go away to-day. 2. He did his work so that all were pleased with him. 3. Unless you come to-morrow, we shall not wait for you. 4. Both he and his brother were there. 5. Go and get us some bread. 6. She neither laughs nor cries. 7. Those poor people are without bread or meat. 8. He does not believe what you say; nor I either. 9. We shall not be there; nor he either. 10. We have not gone away, nor shall we. 11. As soon as you are there and have the time, will you go and visit my brother? 12. If he is there and we see him, we shall tell him what you say. 13. When bread is dear and the weather is cold, the poor suffer. 14. I think we shall go away the day after to-morrow. 15. If your friend comes to the meeting and I am there, I shall speak to him. 16. Since you went away I have been writing letters. 17. Since you cannot do it, you must let me try. 18. Since you went away yesterday he has done nothing but play. 19. Since every action brings its recompense with it, we must pay attention to what we do. 20. While I was doing my exercise, she was writing her letters. 21. The good shall be rewarded, whilst the bad shall be punished. 22. When I saw him, he was busy working in his field. 23. As long as the world lasts, justice shall prevail over injustice. 24. He did his work, so that he was praised by all. 25. He was kind to the poor, so that he might be praised by all.

EXERCISE LI, a.

The largest clock in the world will be the one[1] which soon[2] will adorn the city hall of Philadelphia. The dial of this colossal clock will be[3] ten metres in diameter, and will be placed and illuminated so as to be visible night and day (*de*) everywhere in the city. The hands will be, one[4] four metres and the other three metres long; the bell of the striking part will weigh forty-six thousand pounds, and in order to wind the

clock a steam-engine placed in the tower will be used daily (= one will use daily a steam-engine, etc.).

[1] § 381. [2] § 413. [3] § 428, *obs.* 3. [4] § 406, 7, (1), *a.*

EXERCISE LII, a.

Horses[1], birds[1] and animals[1] of all (the) sorts speak a language as well as men[1]. We cannot understand all (= all that which) they say, but we understand enough of it to[2] know that they have thoughts[3] and feelings[3]. They are sad when they lose a companion, or when they are driven away[4] from home. They are pleased when they are well treated[4], and angry when they are ill treated[4]. They have, so to speak, a conscience; they feel ashamed when they do what displeases us, and are very glad when they merit our approbation. Kindness[1] on our part towards them is as reasonable as love[1] and kindness[1] between brothers[3].

[1] § 321. [2] § 282, 2. [3] § 322. [4] § 241, 2, *a.*

EXERCISE LIII, a.

A rich[1] man, it is said[2], once[3] asked[4] a learned man what was[5] the reason that scientific men were[5] so often[3] seen at the doors of the rich, while[8] the rich were[6] very rarely seen[2] at the doors of the learned. "It is," replied[4] the scholar, "because the man of science knows the value of riches[7], but the rich man does not always know the value of science[7]."

[1] § 351. [3] § 413. [5] § 258, 5. [7] § 321.
[2] § 241, 2, *a.* [4] § 459, 2. [6] § 258, 1. [8] § 459, 2.

EXERCISE LIV, a.

Molière, the great French[1] author, was born[2] in Paris in the year one thousand six hundred and twenty-two[3]. His father was the king's upholsterer, and was probably a rather rich[4] man. The son received[5] a good education, but not much is known[6] of his youth. When he was about twenty years old[7], he organized[5] a company of actors, which was[5] called *L'Illustre Théâtre.* But in this enterprise he did not succeed[5] very well. He soon[8] lost[5] all his money, and with his *troupe* was[5] forced to[9] leave Paris and (to) make a tour in [the] province[s]. This

tour lasted[5] from sixteen hundred and forty-six to sixteen hundred and fifty-eight. During these years he travelled[5] over nearly the whole of France, and played[5] in many of the large cities. After his return to Paris he became[5] the king's favourite, and produced[5] the masterpieces which have rendered him so celebrated. At last, after fifteen years of great success, he died[5] in sixteen hundred and seventy-three at the age of fifty-one.

[1] § 352, 1, (2). [2] Past Def. [3] § 421, *c*. [4] § 351. [5] § 260. [6] § 241, 2, *a*. [7] § 430. [8] § 413. [9] § 280, 6.

EXERCISE LV, a.

Speaking of the small world in which even the greatest live[1], Lord Beaconsfield used to tell[2] that Napoleon I., a year after his accession to the throne, determined to[3] find out if there was[4] anybody in the world who had never heard of him. Within a fortnight the police of Paris had[5] discovered a wood-chopper at Montmartre, in Paris itself, who had never heard of the Revolution, nor of the death of Louis XVI., nor of the Emperor Napoleon.

§ [1] 237, 6. [2] § 258, 2. [3] § 280, 6. [4] § 258, 5. [5] § 232, 1.

EXERCISE LVI, a.

Napoleon, the greatest general of modern times[1], was born[2] at Ajaccio on the 15th of August, 1769. At the age of ten[3] he was sent to the military[4] school at Brienne, where he remained more than[5] five years. Then entering the French[4] army, he was, in 1796, appointed general of the army of Italy[6], and soon succeeded in conquering[7] that country. He used so well the opportunities which were offered him by the weakness of the Republic that in less than ten years he was elected Emperor. The ten years' struggle, in which he engaged with the purpose of subduing[8] Europe[9], ended with the battle of Waterloo in 1815. Banished to (*à*) St. Helena he died[10] there on the 5th of May, 1821. Twenty years after his death his remains were brought back to (*en*) France, and interred in the *Hôtel des Invalides*.

[1] § 321. [2] Past Def. [3] § 430, *obs.* 2. [4] § 352, 1, (2). [5] § 412, 1, *b*. [6] § 333, 2, note. [7] § 279, 2. [8] § 280, 2. [9] § 333, 1. [10] § *mourut* or *est mort*.

EXERCISE LVII, a.

Great Britain[1] and Ireland[1] are two large islands in the west of Europe[1]. Great Britain is the larger of the two and comprises England[1], Scotland[1], and Wales[1]. The monarch of the United Kingdom of Great Britain[2] and Ireland[2] is Queen[3] Victoria, who was born[4] on the 24th of May, 1819. She is the daughter of the Duke of Kent, son of George III. She ascended the throne on (*à*) the death of William IV. in 1837. She has to (*pour*) assist her in the government of the country a parliament which meets once a year at Westminster. When she appeared before (*le*) parliament for the first time, Queen Victoria declared that she would place her trust in the wisdom of her parliament and the love of her people, and she has not failed to keep this promise. Having thus early won the hearts of all her subjects, she has retained their affection during a long reign of more than[5] sixty years. Queen Victoria is a[6] widow; her husband, Prince[3] Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, whom she married in 1840, died in 1861, much regretted by the Queen and the people.

[1] § 333, 1. [3] § 327. [4] § *est née.* [5] § 412, 1, *b.* [6] § 330, 3.
[2] § 333, 2.

EXERCISE LVIII, a.

There was[1], in the city of Mâcon, a parrot which had learned to[2] say continually: "Who is there? Who is there?" This parrot escaped one day from its cage in the garden, and soon[3] flew into a wood near by, where a peasant saw it, and began to[2] chase it. The peasant had never seen a parrot in (*de*) all his life. He approached[4] the tree where the bird was, and was going to[5] kill the poor bird with his gun. At that moment the parrot began to[2] repeat the usual question: "Who is there? Who is there?" The peasant, terrified at these words, let his gun fall[6] from his hands. Then taking his hat off, he said, very respectfully: "My dear sir, I pray you to[7] excuse me, I thought that it was a bird."

[1] § 250. [3] § 413. [5] § 278, 6. [6] § 230, 6, *a* and 7. § 280, 6.
[2] § 279, 6. [4] § 296, 1.

EXERCISE LIX, a.

The unknown[1] author of "Beowulf" was not a[2] native of England, and so the first of the long line of English[3] poets is really Cædmon. Bæda tells us a pretty story of the way in which[4] Cædmon became a[2] poet. He was already almost an[2] old man before he knew anything[5] of the art of poetry. At the feasts, in those days, everybody used to sing[6] in turn to[7] amuse the company, but Cædmon used to leave[6] the table before the harp was given[8] to him. One evening, when he had done thus, he went to the stable and lay down, after having[9] cared for the cattle, because, you must know, he was only a farm-servant in the monastery at Whitby. As he slept[10], some one appeared to him, and said, "Cædmon, sing a song to me." "I cannot[11] sing," he replied, "and that is why I left the feast." "Nevertheless," was the answer, "you must sing to me." "Well, then," asked Cædmon, "what shall I sing?" The other replied, "Sing the beginning of created things[12]." Thereupon he made some verses, which he still remembered when he awoke. The Abbess Hilda, hearing of his dream, believed (that) the grace of God had been given him, and made him a[2] monk.

[1] § 352, 1, (3).
[2] § 330, 3.
[3] § 352, 1, (2).
[4] § 398.
[5] § 405, 4, *a*.
[6] § 258, 2.
[7] § 282, 2.
[8] § 241, 2, *a*.
[9] § 282, 4.
[10] § 258, 1.
[11] § 230, 4.
[12] § 321.

EXERCISE LX, a.

A miser went[1] one day to market[2], and bought[1] some[3] fine apples. He carried[1] them home, arranged[1] them carefully in his cupboard, and used to go[4] and look at them almost every day, but would[5] not eat any until they began to spoil. Every time he did eat one he regretted it. But he had a son, a young school-boy, who liked apples; and one day, with a comrade, he found the miser's treasure. I do not know how he found the key of the cupboard; but he did[6], and you may imagine how many apples they ate. When they had[7] finished the apples, the old father came, and caught them. How angry[8] he was! How he shouted at them! "Wretches! where are my beautiful apples? You shall both be hanged! You have eaten them all!" His son replied: "Do not be

angry, father[9]! You only eat the bad apples; we have not touched (*à*) those; we have eaten the good ones, and left you yours."

[1] § 260. [2] § 331, ex. 4. [3] § 324, 1. [4] § 258, 2. [5] § 265, 1, *b*. [6] § 256. [7] § 262, 3. [8] § 350, *a*. [9] § 376, 4.

EXERCISE LXI, a.

A hungry[1] fox was one day looking for[2] a poultry-yard. It was late in the afternoon, and, as he was passing[3] a farm-house, he saw[4] a cock and some hens which had[5] gone up into a tree for the night. He drew near[4], and invited[4] them to[6] come down and[7] rejoice with him on account of a new treaty of peace which had been formed between the animals. The cock said he was[8] very glad of it, but that he did not intend[8] to[9] come down before the next morning. "But," said he, "I see two dogs coming[10]; I have no doubt they will be[11] glad to[12] celebrate the peace with you." Just then the fox remembered that he had business[13] elsewhere, and, bidding the cock good-bye, began[4] to run. "Why do you run?" said the cock, "If the animals have made a peace, the dogs won't hurt you. I know them, they are good, loyal[14] dogs, and would not harm any one." "Ah," said the fox, "I am afraid they have[15] not yet heard the news."

[1] § 352, 1, (3). [2] § 258, 1, ; § 296, 3. [3] § 258, 1. [4] § 260. [5] § 229; § 262, 2. [6] § 279, 6. [7] § 456, 2. [8] § 258, 5. [9] § 280, 2, *a*. [10] § 287, 3. [11] § 269, 5. [12] § 356. [13] § 323. [14] § 352, 3. [15] § 269, 4, *a*.

EXERCISE LXII, a.

A woodman, who was cutting[1] wood on the bank of a river, let[2] his axe fall[3] into the water. He at once[4] began[2] to[5] pray [to] the gods to[6] find it for him. Mercury appeared[2] and asked[2] him what was[7] the matter. "I have lost my axe," said[2] he. Having heard this, Mercury dived[2] into the water, and brought[2] up a golden axe. "Is this[8] yours?" "No," said the man. Next time Mercury brought up a silver one. "Is this one yours?" "No," said[2] the chopper again. The third time Mercury brought up an iron one, which the man recognized, as soon as he saw[2] it. "It is yours," said the god, "and for your honesty I shall give you the other two also."

[1] § 258, 1. [2] § 260. [3] § 230, 6, *a*, and 7. [4] § 413. [5] § 279, 6. [6] § 280, 6. [7] § 258, 5. [8] § 236, 2.

EXERCISE LXIII, a.

Two men were travelling[1] together, when they saw[2] a bear coming out[3] of the forest. The one climbed into a tree, and tried to[4] conceal himself in the branches. The other, when he saw that the bear would (=was going to) attack him, threw himself upon the ground, and, when the bear came up, he ceased to[4] breathe, for it is said[5] that a bear will not touch[6] a dead[7] body. When the bear had[8] gone, his companion came down, and asked: "What was it that the bear was saying to you?" His friend replied: "He advised me not[9] to travel with a friend who runs away at the approach of danger[10]."

[1] § 258, 1. [2] § 260. [3] § 287, 3. [4] § 280, 6. [5] § 241, 2, *a*. [6] § 296, 5. [7] § 352, 1, (3). [8] § 262, 3. [9] § 416, *a*. [10] § 321.

EXERCISE LXIV, a.

A well-known[1] English[2] actor, travelling to Birmingham by the Great Western[3] railway the other day, on approaching[4] Banbury, began to feel hungry, and determined to have one of the buns for which the town is famous.

The train having stopped, he called a boy, gave him six-pence, and asked him to get "two Banburys," promising him one of the two for his trouble.

Just as the train was about to start, the boy rushed up to the carriage in which the impatient actor was seated, and offering him three pence, exclaimed:

"Here's your change, sir."

"Bother the change; where's the bun," roared the hungry actor.

"There was only one left," replied the boy, "and I'm eating that!"

[1] § 352, 1, (3). [2] § 352, 1, (2). [3] § 330, 4, *c*, note. [4] § 296, 1.

EXERCISE LXV, a.

Under a magnificent walnut-tree near the village, two little boys found a walnut. "It belongs to me," said the one, "for it was[1] I[2] who was the first to see it (=who have seen it the first)." "No, it belongs to me," exclaimed the other, "for it was[1] I[2] who picked it up." Thereupon there[3] arose between

them a violent quarrel. "I am going to make peace[4] between you," said to them a third boy, who was passing at that moment. The latter placed himself between the two claimants, opened the walnut, and pronounced this sentence: "One of the shells belongs to him[5] who was the first to see the walnut; the other to him[5] who picked it up; as to the kernel, I keep it for the costs of the court. That's how lawsuits[4] generally end," added he, laughing.

[1] § 257, 3, *b*. [2] § 372, 3. [3] § 252, 2. [4] § 321. [5] § 381.

EXERCISE LXVI, a.

Many years ago[1] there[2] lived in the city of Paris a celebrated[3] physician who was very fond of animals. One day a friend of his[4] brought to his house a favourite[3] dog, whose leg had been broken, and asked him if he could do anything for the poor creature. The kind doctor examined the wounded[5] animal, and, prescribing a treatment for him, soon[6] cured him, and received the warm thanks of his friend, who set a very high value upon his dog. Not very long afterwards, the doctor was in his room busy studying[7]. He thought[8] he heard a noise at the door, as if some animal was scratching in order to be let[9] in. For some time he paid no attention to the noise, but continued studying[10]. At last, however, he rose up and opened the door. To his great astonishment he saw enter the dog which he had cured, and with him another dog. The latter also had a broken[5] leg, and was able to move only with much difficulty. The dog which the surgeon had cured had brought his friend to his benefactor, in order that he, too, might be[11] healed; and, as well as he could, he made the doctor[12] understand that this was what he wanted.

[1] § 250, 4. [2] § 252, 2. [3] § 351. [4] § 377, 3. [5] § 352, 1, (3). [6] § 413. [7] § 279, 2. [8] § 458, 3. [9] § 241, 2, *a*. [10] § 279, 6. [11] § 271, 2. [12] § 230, 6, *b*.

EXERCISE LXVII, a.

There was once a cat who was a[1] great enemy of the rats. He had eaten a great many[2], and they were much afraid of him. So the chiefs of the rats called a meeting to[3] discuss what they should do to[3] rid themselves of him. A great

many plans were proposed, but after a little discussion they were all abandoned. At last a young rat, who thought himself very clever, rose and said: "Do not despair my friends, I have not yet proposed a plan. A splendid idea occurs to me; I know what we can do. We can, if we are economical, soon save enough money to[3] buy a little bell. This we can attach to the neck of our old enemy, and, if he approaches, we can[4] flee to (*dans*) a place of safety."

The young rats all applauded the idea, but one of the old [ones], who up to this time had said nothing, gravely[5] asked the one who had made the speech if he would promise to put the bell on the cat. The young rat blushed, and said he would think of it[6].

The meeting broke up shortly after, and the rats dispersed without doing anything[7].

[1] § 330, 3. [2] § 367, 2, (1). [3] § 282, 2. [4] § 263, 2. [5] § 413. [6] § 368. [7] § 405, 4, *a*.

EXERCISE LXVIII, a.

Long ago[1] the frogs, tired of having[2] a republic, resolved to[3] ask Jupiter to send them a king. Jupiter did not receive their petition with much favour, but as they seemed really to[4] desire one, he thought (that) it would be better to please[5] them. So, one fine day, when they were all expecting[6] their king, a great log fell from the sky into the pond, where they were[6]. They were very much afraid of the noise[7] it made, and they took refuge in holes and in the mud at the bottom of the pond. Little by little, however, they approached[8] their king to[9] get a good look at him, and seeing that he was so quiet, they became more bold, and finally leaped on him, and treated him with great familiarity (= very familiarly). Then they complained again to Jupiter saying that the king he had sent was not worthy of their respect, and that they desired another, who would show[10] more vigour. In order to please them Jupiter sent them this time a stork, who immediately began to devour them with much avidity. They complained again, but Jupiter told them that, since[11] they had desired a king, they would be forced to quietly submit to the one[12] he had sent.

[1] § 250, 4. [2] § 280, 2. [3] § 280, 6. [4] § 278, 6. [5] § 296, 2. [6] § 258, 1. [7] § 402, 1. [8] § 296, 1. [9] § 282, 2. [10] § 270, 1. [11] § 459, 3. [12] § 381; 402, 1.

EXERCISE LXIX, a.

The two youngest of my children were already in bed and asleep, the third had[1] gone out, but at my return I found him sitting beside my gate, weeping[2] very sore. I asked him the reason. "Father[3]," said he, "I took this morning from[4] my mother, without her knowing[5] it, one of those three apples you brought her, and I kept[6] it a long while; but, as I was playing some time ago[7] with my little brother in the street, a slave that went[8] by snatched it out of my hands, and carried it off; I ran after him asking for it, and, besides, told him that it belonged to my mother, who was ill, and that you had taken a fortnight's journey to fetch it; but all in vain, he would[9] not give it back. And because I still followed him, crying out, he stopped and beat me, and then ran away as fast as he could, from one street to another, till at length I lost sight of him. I have since that been walking outside the town, expecting your return, to pray you, dear father, not to tell my mother [of] it, lest it should make her worse." And when he had[10] said these words, he began weeping again more bitterly than ever.

[1] § 229. [2] § 286, 2. [3] § 376, 4. [4] § 296, 4. [5] § 271, 5. [6] § 259, 2. [7] § 250, 4. [8] § 258, 1. [9] § 265, 1, *b*. [10] § 262, 3.

EXERCISE LXX, a.

A celebrated Italian[1] painter had told his pupils to[2] ask the name of any (*tout*) person who might come[3] to his house during his absence in the city. One day three gentlemen came to[4] see the painter, and the latter was not at home. One of the pupils, whose name was John, opened the door for them[5], said that his master was not in, and let them depart without asking their names. When the master returned and[6] heard of the three gentlemen, he asked[7] John who they were. John could say nothing but, "I do not know, sir." The painter got angry, but John, with a few strokes of his pencil, drew (*faire*) the portrait of the three, and gave it to his master, who immediately[8] recognized them. The artist admired the skill of the young man so much that he took the drawing, and kept it afterwards among his most precious possessions. It is needless to[9] add that he pardoned the pupil.

[1] § 352, 1, (2). [2] § 280, 6. [3] § 270, 1. [4] § 278, 6. [5] § 362, 2. [6] § 458, 2. [7] § 296, 2. [8] § 413. [9] § 384, 1, *a*.

EXERCISE LXXI, a.

A man (*celui*) who would[1] have friends must show himself friendly. A man was passing the night at an inn. He had just left a town where he had spent several years. The landlord asked[2] him why he had left the place. He replied, "because my neighbours were so disagreeable and disobliging that one could not live with them." The landlord replied, "you will find exactly the same sort of neighbours where you are going." The following day another traveller came from the same place. He told the landlord that he was obliged to leave the place where he had been living, and that it caused him great pain to part with his neighbours, who had been so kind and obliging. The landlord encouraged him by telling[3] him that he would find exactly the same sort of neighbours where he was going.

[1] § 230, 1. [2] § 296, 2. [3] § 286, 3.

EXERCISE LXXII, a.

When I was[1] at school, I was[1] often very idle. Even in [the] class I used to play[1] with boys as idle as myself. We used to try[1] to hide this from[2] our master, but one day he caught[3] us cleverly.

"You must not be idle," said he. "You must not raise your[4] eyes from your books. You do not know what you lose by idleness[5]. Study while you are young; you will not be able to study when you are[6] old. If any one sees another boy, who is not studying, let him tell me[7]."

"Now," said I to myself, "there is Fred Smith, I do not like him. If I see that he is not studying, I shall tell[7]."

Soon after, I saw Fred Smith looking[8] out of the window, and I told the master what I had seen. "Indeed!" said he, "how do you know he was idle?" "If you please, sir," said I, "I saw[9] him." "O you saw[9] him, and where were your eyes when you saw[9] him?"

I saw the other boys laugh[8], and I was[10] ashamed, for the master smiled, and said it was a good lesson for me.

[1] § 258. [3] § 260. [5] § 321. [7] § 365. [9] § 259, 2.
[2] § 296, 4. [4] § 328. [6] § 263, 2. [8] § 287, 3. [10] § 258, 1.

EXERCISE LXXIII, a.

The princes of Europe[1] have found out a manner of rewarding[2] their subjects who have behaved well, by presenting[3] them with about two yards of blue[4] ribbon, which is worn[5] on the shoulder. Those who are honoured with this mark of distinction are called knights, and the king himself is always at the head of the order. This is a cheap method of recompensing[2] the most important services; and it is very fortunate for kings[6] that their subjects are[7] satisfied with such[8] trifling rewards. Should[9] a nobleman lose his leg in a battle, the king presents him with two yards of ribbon, and he is recompensed for the loss of his leg. Should[9] an ambassador spend all his fortune in[10] supporting the honour of his country abroad, the king presents him with two yards of ribbon, which is considered[5] the equivalent of his estate. In short, as long as an European king has a yard or two of blue or green ribbon, he will not want statesmen, generals and soldiers.

[1] § 333, 2. [2] § 280, 2. [3] § 286, 3. [4] § 352, 1, (1). [5] § 241, 2. [6] § 321. [7] § 269, 4. [8] § 406, 5, *a*, note. [9] § 275. [10] § 279, 2.

EXERCISE LXXIV, a.

At a time when ancient art was attracting so much attention in Italy that modern art[1] was being neglected[2], Michael Angelo had resort to a stratagem in order to teach the critics the folly of judging such things according to fashion[1] or reputation[1]. He made a statue which represented[3] a beautiful girl asleep[4], and, breaking off an arm, buried the statue in a place where excavations were being made[2]. It was soon found, and was lauded by critics[1] and by the public as a valuable relic of antiquity[1]. When Michael Angelo thought the time opportune, he produced the broken arm, and, to the great mortification of the critics, revealed himself as the sculptor.

[1] § 321. [2] § 241, 2. [3] § 258, 3. [4] § 352, 1, (3).

EXERCISE LXXV, a.

Had you seen us, Mr. Harley, when we were turned out of South-hill, I am sure you would have wept at that sight. You

remember old Trusty, my dog; I shall never forget it while I live (fut.); the poor creature was old and almost blind, and could scarce crawl after us to the door; he went, however, as far as the gooseberry-bush, which, as you may remember, stood on the left side of the yard; he was wont to bask in the sun there; when he had reached that spot, he stopped; we went on; I called him; he wagged his tail, but did not stir; I called again; he lay down; I whistled, and cried "Trusty"; he gave a howl, and died! I could have lain down and died (= should have liked to lie down and die) too; but God gave me strength to live for my children.

FRENCH READER.

I. PAROLES D'UN CROYANT, CHAP. VII.

LAMENNAIS (1782-1854).

Lorsqu'un arbre est seul, il est battu des vents et dépouillé le ses feuilles; et ses branches, au lieu de s'élever, s'abaissent omme si elles cherchaient la terre.

Lorsqu'une plante est seule, ne trouvant point d'abri contre 'ardeur du soleil, elle languit et se dessèche, et meurt.

Lorsque l'homme est seul, le vent de la puissance le courbe ers la terre, et l'ardeur de la convoitise des grands de ce nonde absorbe la sève qui le nourrit.

Ne soyez donc point comme la plante et comme l'arbre qui ont seuls: mais unissez-vous les uns aux autres, et appuyez-ous, et abritez-vous, mutuellement.

Tandis que vous serez désunis, et que chacun ne songera qu'à oi, vous n'avez rien à espérer, que souffrance, et malheur, et ppression.

Qu'y a-t-il de plus faible que le passereau, et de plus désarmé ue l'hirondelle? Cependant quand paraît l'oiseau de proie, es hirondelles et les passereaux parviennent à le chasser, en se assemblant autour de lui, et le poursuivant tous ensemble.

Prenez exemple sur le passereau et sur l'hirondelle.

Celui qui se sépare de ses frères, la crainte le suit quand il narche, s'assied près de lui quand il repose, et ne le quitte pas nême durant son sommeil.

Donc, si l'on vous demande: "Combien êtes-vous?" répon-ez: "Nous sommes un, car nos frères, c'est nous, et nous, 'est nos frères."

Dieu n'a fait ni petits ni grands, ni maîtres ni esclaves, ni ois ni sujets: il a fait tous les hommes égaux.

Mais, entre les hommes, quelques-uns ont plus de force ou de orps, ou d'esprit, ou de volonté, et ce sont ceux-là qui cherchent s'assujettir les autres, lorsque l'orgueil ou la convoitise étouf-nt en eux l'amour de leurs frères.

Et Dieu savait qu'il en serait ainsi, et c'est pourquoi il a commandé aux hommes de s'aimer, afin qu'ils fussent unis, et que les faibles ne tombassent point sous l'oppression des forts.

Car celui qui est plus fort qu'un seul sera moins fort que deux, et celui qui est plus fort que deux sera moins fort que quatre; et ainsi les faibles ne craindront rien lorsque, s'aimant les uns les autres, ils seront unis véritablement.

Un homme voyageait dans la montagne, et il arriva en un lieu où un gros rocher, ayant roulé sur le chemin, le remplissait tout entier, et hors du chemin il n'y avait point d'autre issue, ni à gauche, ni à droite.

Or, cet homme voyant qu'il ne pouvait continuer son voyage à cause du rocher, essaya de le mouvoir pour se faire un passage, et il se fatigua beaucoup à ce travail, et tous ses efforts furent vains.

Ce que voyant, il s'assit plein de tristesse et dit: "Que sera-ce de moi lorsque la nuit viendra et me surprendra dans cette solitude, sans nourriture, sans abri, sans aucune défense à l'heure où les bêtes féroces sortent pour chercher leur proie?"

Et comme il était absorbé dans cette pensée, un autre voyageur survint, et celui-ci, ayant fait ce qu'avait fait le premie et s'étant trouvé aussi impuissant à remuer le rocher, s'assit e silence et baissa la tête.

Et après celui-ci, il en vint plusieurs autres, et aucun ne pu mouvoir le rocher, et leur crainte à tous était grande.

Enfin l'un d'eux dit aux autres: "Mes frères, prions notr Père qui est dans les cieux: peut-être qu'il aura pitié de nou dans cette détresse."

Et cette parole fut écoutée, et ils prièrent de cœur le Pèr qui est dans les cieux.

Et quand ils eurent prié, celui qui avait dit: "Prions," di encore: "Mes frères, ce qu'aucun de nous n'a pu faire seul, qu sait si nous ne le ferons pas tous ensemble?"

Et ils se levèrent, et tous ensemble ils poussèrent le rocher e le rocher céda, et ils poursuivirent leur route en paix.

Le voyageur c'est l'homme, le voyage c'est la vie, le roche ce sont les misères qu'il rencontre à chaque pas sur sa route.

Aucun homme ne saurait soulever seul ce rocher, mais Die en a mesuré le poids de manière qu'il n'arrête jamais ceux qu voyagent ensemble.

2. PAROLES D'UN CROYANT, CHAP. XVII.

LAMENNAIS (1782-1854).

Deux hommes étaient voisins, et chacun d'eux avait une emme et plusieurs petits enfants, et son seul travail pour les aire vivre.

Et l'un de ces deux hommes s'inquiétait en lui-même, disant: 'Si je meurs ou que je tombe malade, que deviendront ma emme et mes enfants?"

Et cette pensée ne le quittait point, et elle rongeait son cœur omme un ver ronge le fruit où il est caché.

Or, bien que la même pensée fût venue également à l'autre ère, il ne s'y était point arrêté; "car, disait-il, Dieu, qui connaît toutes ses créatures et qui veille sur elles, veillera aussi ur moi, et sur ma femme, et sur mes enfants."

Et celui-ci vivait tranquille, tandis que le premier ne goûtait as un instant de repos ni de joie intérieurement.

Un jour qu'il travaillait aux champs, triste et abattu à cause e sa crainte, il vit quelques oiseaux entrer dans un buisson, en ortir, et puis bientôt y revenir encore.

Et, s'étant approché, il vit deux nids posés côte à côte, et ans chacun plusieurs petits nouvellement éclos et encore sans lumes.

Et quand il fut retourné à son travail, de temps en temps il vait les yeux, et regardait ces oiseaux qui allaient et venaient ortant la nourriture à leurs petits.

Or, voilà qu'au moment où l'une des mères rentrait avec sa ecquée, un vautour la saisit, l'enlève, et la pauvre mère se ébattant vainement sous sa serre, jetait des cris perçants.

À cette vue, l'homme qui travaillait sentit son âme plus oublée qu'auparavant; "car, pensait-il, la mort de la mère, est la mort des enfants. Les miens n'ont que moi non plus. ue deviendront-ils si je leur manque?"

Et tout le jour il fut sombre et triste, et la nuit il ne dormit oint.

Le lendemain, de retour aux champs, il se dit: "Je veux oir les petits de cette pauvre mère: plusieurs sans doute ont éjà péri." Et il s'achemina vers le buisson.

Et, regardant, il vit les petits bien portants; pas un ne semait avoir pâti.

Et, ceci l'ayant étonné, il se cacha pour observer ce qui se passerait.

Et, après un peu de temps, il entendit un léger cri, et il aperçut la seconde mère rapportant en hâte la nourriture qu'elle avait recueillie, et elle la distribua à tous les petits indistinctement, et il y en eut pour tous, et les orphelins ne furent point délaissés dans leur misère.

Et le père qui s'était défié de la Providence raconta le soir à l'autre père ce qu'il avait vu.

Et celui-ci lui dit: "Pourquoi s'inquiéter? Jamais Dieu n'abandonne les siens. Son amour a des secrets que nous ne connaissons point. Croyons, espérons, aimons, et poursuivons notre route en paix.

"Si je meurs avant vous, vous serez le père de mes enfants; si vous mourez avant moi, je serai le père des vôtres.

"Et si l'un et l'autre, nous mourons avant qu'ils soient en âge de pourvoir eux-mêmes à leurs nécessités, ils auront pour père le Père qui est dans les cieux."

---

3. LE MAÎTRE CHAT OU LE CHAT BOTTÉ.

PERRAULT (1628-1703).

Un meunier ne laissa pour tous biens à trois enfants qu'il avait, que son moulin, son âne et son chat. Les partages furent bientôt faits; ni le notaire, ni le procureur n'y furent appelés. Ils auraient eu bientôt mangé tout le pauvre patrimoine. L'aîné eut le moulin, le second eut l'âne, et le plus jeune n'eut que le chat. Ce dernier ne pouvait se consoler d'avoir un si pauvre lot. "Mes frères, disait-il, pourront gagner leur vie honnêtement en se mettant ensemble; pour moi, lorsque j'aurai mangé mon chat, et que je me serai fait un manchon de sa peau, il faudra que je meure de faim." Le Chat, qui entendait ce discours, mais qui n'en fit pas semblant, lui dit d'un air posé et sérieux: "Ne vous affligez point, mon maître, vous n'avez qu'à me donner un sac et me faire faire une paire de bottes pour aller dans les broussailles, et vous verrez que vous n'êtes pas si mal partagé que vous croyez."

Quoique le maître du Chat ne fît pas grand fond là-dessus, il lui avait vu faire tant de tours de souplesse pour prendre des rats et des souris, comme quand il se pendait par les pieds, ou qu'il se cachait dans la farine pour faire le mort, qu'il ne désespéra pas d'en être secouru dans sa misère. Lorsque le Chat eut ce qu'il avait demandé, il se botta bravement, et, mettant son sac à son cou, il en prit les cordons avec ses pattes de devant, et s'en alla dans une garenne où il y avait grand nombre de lapins. Il mit du son et des lacerons dans son sac, et, s'étendant comme s'il eût été mort, il attendit que quelque jeune lapin, peu instruit encore des ruses de ce monde, vînt se fourrer dans son sac pour manger ce qu'il y avait mis. À peine fut-il couché, qu'il eut contentement; un jeune étourdi de lapin entra dans son sac, et le maître Chat, tirant aussitôt les cordons, le prit et le tua sans miséricorde. Tout glorieux de sa proie, il s'en alla chez le roi et demanda à lui parler. On le fit monter à l'appartement de Sa Majesté, où étant entré, il fit une grande révérence au roi, et lui dit: "Voilà, Sire, un lapin de garenne que M. le marquis de Carabas (c'était le nom qu'il prit en gré de donner à son maître) m'a chargé de vous présenter de sa part.—Dis à ton maître, répondit le roi, que je le remercie, et qu'il me fait plaisir." Une autre fois, il alla se cacher dans un blé, tenant toujours son sac ouvert, et lorsque deux perdrix y furent entrées, il tira les cordons et les prit toutes deux. Il alla ensuite les présenter au roi, comme il avait fait du lapin de garenne. Le roi reçut encore avec plaisir les deux perdrix, et lui fit donner pour boire. Le Chat continua ainsi, pendant deux ou trois mois, de porter de temps en temps au roi du gibier de la chasse de son maître. Un jour qu'il sut que le roi devait aller à la promenade sur le bord de la rivière, avec sa fille, la plus belle princesse du monde, il dit à son maître: "Si vous voulez suivre mon conseil, votre fortune est faite; vous n'avez qu'à vous baigner dans la rivière, à l'endroit que je vous montrerai, et ensuite me laisser faire." Le marquis de Carabas fit ce que son chat lui conseillait, sans savoir à quoi cela serait bon. Dans le temps qu'il se baignait, le roi vint à passer, et le Chat se mit à crier de toute sa force: "Au secours! au secours! voilà M. le marquis de Carabas qui se noie!" À ce cri, le roi mit la tête à la portière, et reconnaissant le Chat qui lui avait apporté tant de fois du gibier, il ordonna à ses gardes qu'on allât vite au secours de M. le

marquis de Carabas. Pendant qu'on retirait le pauvre marquis de la rivière, le Chat, s'approchant du carrosse, dit au roi que, dans le temps que son maître se baignait, il était venu des voleurs qui avaient emporté ses habits, quoiqu'il eût crié *au voleur!* de toute sa force: le drôle les avait cachés sous une grosse pierre. Le roi ordonna aussitôt aux officiers de sa garde-robe d'aller querir un de ses plus beaux habits pour M. le marquis de Carabas. Le roi lui fit mille caresses; et, comme les beaux habits qu'on venait de lui donner relevaient sa bonne mine (car il était beau et bien fait de sa personne), la fille du roi le trouva fort à son gré, et le marquis de Carabas ne lui eut pas plus tôt jeté deux ou trois regards fort respectueux et un peu tendres, qu'elle en devint amoureuse à la folie. Le roi voulut qu'il montât dans son carrosse et qu'il fût de la promenade. Le Chat, ravi de voir que son dessein commençait à réussir, prit les devants, et, ayant rencontré des paysans qui fauchaient un pré, il leur dit: "*Bonnes gens qui fauchez, si vous ne dites pas au roi que le pré que vous fauchez appartient à M. le marquis de Carabas vous serez tous hachés menu comme chair à pâté.*" Le roi ne manqua pas de demander aux faucheurs à qui était ce pré qu'ils fauchaient. "C'est à M. le marquis de Carabas," dirent-ils tous ensemble; car la menace du Chat leur avait fait peur. "Vous avez là un bel héritage, dit le roi au marquis de Carabas.—Vous voyez, sire, répondit le marquis, c'est un pré qui ne manque point de rapporter abondamment toutes les années." Le maître Chat, qui allait toujours devant, rencontra des moissonneurs, et leur dit: "*Bonnes gens qui moissonnez, si vous ne dites pas que tous ces blés appartiennent à M. le marquis de Carabas, vous serez tous hachés menu comme chair à pâté.*" Le roi, qui passa un moment après, voulut savoir à qui appartenaient tous les blés qu'il voyait. "C'est à M. le marquis de Carabas," répondirent les moissonneurs, et le roi s'en réjouit encore avec le marquis. Le Chat, qui allait devant le carrosse, disait toujours la même chose à tous ceux qu'il rencontrait; et le roi était étonné des grands biens de M. le marquis de Carabas. Le maître Chat arriva enfin dans un beau château, dont le maître était un ogre, le plus riche qu'on ait jamais vu: car toutes les terres par où le roi avait passé étaient de la dépendance de ce château. Le Chat eut soin de s'informer qui était cet ogre, et ce qu'il savait faire, et demanda à lui parler, disant qu'il n'avait

pas voulu passer si près de son château sans avoir l'honneur de lui faire la révérence. L'ogre le reçut aussi civilement que le peut un ogre, et le fit reposer. "On m'a assuré, dit le Chat, que vous aviez le don de vous changer en toutes sortes d'animaux, et que vous pouviez, par exemple, vous transformer en lion, en éléphant.—Cela est vrai, répondit brusquement l'ogre, et, pour vous le montrer, vous allez me voir devenir lion." Le Chat fut si effrayé de voir un lion devant lui, qu'il gagna aussitôt les gouttières, non sans peine et sans péril, à cause de ses bottes, qui ne valaient rien pour marcher sur les tuiles. Quelque temps après, le Chat ayant vu que l'ogre avait quitté sa première forme, descendit et avoua qu'il avait eu bien peur. "On m'a assuré encore, dit le Chat, mais je ne saurais le croire, que vous aviez aussi le pouvoir de prendre la forme des plus petits animaux, par exemple de vous changer en un rat, en une souris : je vous avoue que je tiens cela tout à fait impossible.—Impossible ! reprit l'ogre, vous allez le voir ;" et en même temps il se changea en une souris, qui se mit à courir sur le plancher. Le Chat ne l'eut pas plus tôt aperçue, qu'il se jeta dessus et la mangea. Cependant le roi, qui vit en passant le beau château de l'ogre, voulut entrer dedans. Le Chat qui entendit le bruit du carrosse qui passait sur le pont-levis, courut au-devant, et dit au roi : "Votre majesté soit la bienvenue dans ce château de M. le marquis de Carabas !—Comment, monsieur le marquis, s'écria le roi, ce château est encore à vous ! Il ne se peut rien de plus beau que cette cour et tous ces bâtiments qui l'environnent; voyons les dedans, s'il vous plaît." Le marquis donna la main à la jeune princesse, et, suivant le roi qui montait le premier, ils entrèrent dans une grande salle, où ils trouvèrent une magnifique collation que l'ogre avait fait préparer pour ses amis, qui devaient venir le voir ce même jour-là, mais qui n'avaient pas osé y entrer, sachant que le roi y était. Le roi, charmé des bonnes qualités de M. le marquis de Carabas, de même que sa fille, qui en était folle, et voyant les grands biens qu'il possédait, lui dit, après avoir bu cinq ou six coups : "Il ne tiendra qu'à vous, monsieur le marquis, que vous ne soyez mon gendre." Le marquis, faisant de grandes révérences, accepta l'honneur que lui faisait le roi ; et, dès le même jour, il épousa la princesse. Le chat devint grand seigneur, et ne courut plus après les souris que pour se divertir.

4. UN NEZ GELÉ.

DUMAS (1803-1870).

Un jour, à Saint-Pétersbourg, je me décidai de faire mes courses en me promenant. Je m'armai de pied en cap contre les hostilités du froid ; je m'enveloppai d'une grande redingote d'astracan, je m'enfonçai un bonnet fourré sur les oreilles, je roulai autour de mon cou une cravate de cachemire, et je m'aventurai dans la rue, n'ayant de toute ma personne que le bout du nez à l'air.

D'abord tout alla à merveille ; je m'étonnai même du peu d'impression que me causait le froid, et je riais tout bas de tous les contes que j'en avais entendu faire ; j'étais, au reste, enchanté que le hasard m'eût donné cette occasion pour m'acclimater. Néanmoins, comme les deux premiers écoliers chez lesquels je me rendais n'étaient point chez eux, je commençais à trouver que le hasard faisait trop bien les choses, lorsque je crus remarquer que ceux que je croisais me regardaient avec une certaine inquiétude, mais cependant sans me rien dire. Bientôt un monsieur, plus causeur, à ce qu'il paraît, que les autres, me dit en passant : *Noss !* Comme je ne savais pas un mot de russe, je crus que ce n'était pas la peine de m'arrêter pour un monosyllabe, et je continuai mon chemin. Au coin de la rue des Pois, je rencontrai un cocher qui passait ventre à terre en conduisant son traîneau ; mais, si rapide que fût sa course, il se crut obligé de me parler à son tour et me cria : *Noss ! noss !* Enfin, en arrivant sur la place de l'Amirauté, je me trouvai en face d'un moujik qui ne me cria rien du tout, mais qui, ramassant une poignée de neige, se jeta sur moi, et avant que j'eusse pu me débarrasser de tout mon attirail, se mit à me débarbouiller la figure et à me frotter particulièrement le nez de toute sa force. Je trouvai la plaisanterie assez médiocre, surtout par le temps qu'il faisait, et tirant un de mes bras d'une de mes poches, je lui allongeai un coup de poing qui l'envoya rouler à dix pas. Malheureusement ou heureusement pour moi, deux paysans passaient en ce moment qui, après m'avoir regardé un instant, se jetèrent sur moi, et malgré ma défense, me maintinrent les bras, tandis que mon enragé moujik ramassait une autre poignée de neige, et, comme s'il ne voulait pas en avoir le démenti, se précipitait de nouveau sur moi. Cette fois, profitant de l'impossibilité où

j'étais de me défendre, il se mit à recommencer ses frictions. Mais, si j'avais les bras pris, j'avais la langue libre : croyant que j'étais la victime de quelque méprise ou de quelque guet-apens, j'appelai de toute ma force au secours. Un officier accourut et me demanda en français à qui j'en avais.

"Comment, monsieur !" m'écriai-je en faisant un dernier effort et en me débarrassant de mes trois hommes, qui, de l'air le plus tranquille du monde, se remirent à continuer leur chemin, l'un vers la Perspective, et les deux autres du côté du quai Anglais, "vous ne voyez donc pas ce que ces drôles me faisaient ?—Que vous faisaient-ils donc ?—Mais ils me frottaient la figure avec de la neige. Est-ce que vous trouveriez cela une plaisanterie de bon goût par hasard, avec le temps qu'il fait ?—Mais, monsieur, ils vous rendaient un énorme service, me répondit mon interlocuteur en me regardant comme nous disons, nous autres Français, dans le blanc des yeux.—Comment cela ?—Sans doute, vous aviez le nez gelé.—Miséricorde ! m'écriai-je en portant la main à la partie menacée.—Monsieur, dit un passant en s'adressant à l'interlocuteur, monsieur l'officier, je vous préviens que votre nez gèle.—Merci, monsieur," dit l'officier, comme si on l'eût prévenu de la chose la plus naturelle du monde.

Et se baissant, il ramassa une poignée de neige et se rendit à lui-même le service que m'avait rendu le pauvre moujik que j'avais si brutalement récompensé de son obligeance.

"C'est-à-dire alors, monsieur, que, sans cet homme . . .—Vous n'auriez plus de nez, continua l'officier en se frottant le sien.

"Alors, monsieur, permettez. . ."

Et je me mis à courir après mon moujik, qui, croyant que je voulais achever de l'assommer, se mit à courir de son côté, de sorte que, comme la crainte est naturellement plus agile que la reconnaissance, je ne l'eusse probablement jamais rattrapé si quelques personnes, en le voyant fuir et en me voyant le poursuivre, ne l'eussent pris pour un voleur, et ne lui eussent barré le chemin. Lorsque j'arrivai, je le trouvai parlant avec une grande volubilité, afin de faire comprendre qu'il n'était coupable que de trop de philanthropie ; dix roubles que je lui donnai expliquèrent la chose. Le moujik me baisa les mains, et un des assistants, qui parlait français, m'invita à faire désormais plus d'attention à mon nez. L'invitation était inutile ; pendant tout le reste de ma course, je ne le perdis pas de vue.

—By kind permission of the Publisher,
Calmann Lévy, 3 rue Auber, Paris.

5. LA PIPE DE JEAN BART

DUMAS (1803-1870).

Jean Bart était de Dunkerque, pays humide et froid, où la pipe est non seulement une compagne, mais un poêle. Il était petit-fils et neveu de corsaires, et fut corsaire lui-même jusqu'à l'époque où Louis XIV l'appela dans la marine militaire.

À cette époque, Jean Bart avait déjà quarante et un ans; il était donc trop tard pour qu'il changeât ses habitudes de jeunesse. Cependant, ceux qui voudront y réfléchir, demeureront parfaitement convaincus que, lorsque Jean Bart alluma sa pipe dans l'antichambre du roi, ce n'était pas par ignorance de l'étiquette de Versailles, mais parce qu'il voulait attirer l'attention sur lui, de façon à ce qu'on fût forcé de le mettre à la porte du palais. Or, comme, après tout, il était chef d'escadre et qu'il s'appelait Jean Bart, ce n'était pas chose facile de le mettre à la porte, ou d'aller dire à Louis XIV qu'il y avait, porte à porte avec lui, un homme qui fumait.

On savait que Jean Bart venait demander au roi une grâce, —une grâce que le roi avait déjà refusée deux fois.

On ne faisait pas parvenir au roi les demandes d'audience de Jean Bart; il fallait que Jean Bart prît le cabinet du roi par surprise.

Jean Bart mit de côté ses fameux habits de drap d'or doublé d'argent, qui faisaient tant de bruit dans les salons de Paris, revêtit son simple costume d'officier supérieur de la marine, passa seulement à son cou la chaîne d'or que le roi lui avait donnée autrefois en récompense de ses exploits, et se présenta à l'antichambre de Sa Majesté, comme s'il avait sa lettre d'admission.

" Monsieur le capitaine de frégate, demanda l'officier chargé d'introduire les solliciteurs près du roi; monsieur le capitaine de frégate, avez-vous votre lettre d'audience?

—Ma lettre d'audience? dit Jean Bart; pourquoi faire? Je suis, certes, assez bon ami du roi pour qu'il n'y ait pas besoin de toutes ces niaiseries-là entre nous. Dites-lui que c'est Jean Bart qui demande à lui parler, et cela suffira.

—Du moment où vous n'avez pas de lettre d'audience, reprit l'officier, personne ne se permettra de vous annoncer.

—Mais j'ai besoin qu'on m'annonce, fit Jean Bart, et je ne m'annoncerai pas bien moi-même!

Et il s'avança vers la porte de communication.

—On ne passe pas, mon officier, dit le mousquetaire de faction.

—Est-ce la consigne? demanda Jean Bart.

—C'est la consigne, répondit le mousquetaire.

—Respect à la consigne," dit Jean Bart.

Puis, s'adossant à la boiserie, il tira une pipe du fond de son chapeau, la bourra de tabac, battit le briquet, et l'alluma.

Les courtisans le regardaient avec stupéfaction.

"Je vous ferai observer, Monsieur le capitaine de frégate, dit l'officier, qu'on ne fume pas dans l'antichambre du roi.

—Alors, qu'on ne m'y fasse pas attendre; moi, je fume toujours quand j'attends.

—Monsieur le capitaine de frégate, je vais être obligé de vous faire sortir.

—Avant que j'aie parlé au roi! fit Jean Bart en riant. Ah! je vous en défie bien."

Et, en effet, ce n'était pas, comme nous l'avons dit, chose facile que de mettre Jean Bart à la porte; de deux maux choisissant le moindre, et surtout le moins dangereux, l'officier alla dire au roi:

"Sire, il y a dans votre antichambre un officier de marine qui fume, qui nous défie de le faire sortir, et qui nous déclare qu'il entrera malgré nous."

Louis XIV ne se donna pas même la peine de chercher.

"Je parie que c'est Jean Bart!" dit-il.

L'officier s'inclina.

"Laissez-le finir sa pipe, dit Louis XIV, et faites-le entrer."

Jean Bart ne finit pas sa pipe; il la jeta dans la cheminée et s'élança vers le cabinet du roi. Mais à peine en eut-il franchi le seuil, qu'il s'arrêta, saluant respectueusement Louis XIV.

Jean Bart était arrivé à son but. Il se trouvait en face du roi avec la même adresse qu'il manœuvrait devant les escadres ennemies. Il conduisit la conversation à travers les écueils, les passes, les rochers, où il voulait l'amener; c'est-à-dire qu'ayant commencé par se faire faire force compliments sur sa sortie du port de Dunkerque où il était étroitement bloqué par les Anglais; sur l'incendie de plus de quatre-vingts bâtiments ennemis qu'il brûla en mer; et enfin sur sa descente à New-castle,—il mit un genou en terre devant le roi, et finit par lui

demander la grâce de Keyser, son matelot, condamné à mort pour avoir tué son adversaire en duel.

Le roi hésitait.

Jean Bart, que l'amitié fraternelle qu'il portait à Keyser rendait éloquent, pria, adjura, conjura !

"Jean Bart, dit Louis XIV, je vous accorde ce que j'ai refusé à Tourville.

—Sire, répondit Jean Bart, mon père, deux de mes frères, vingt autres membres de ma famille, sont morts au service de Votre Majesté. Vous me donnez aujourd'hui la vie de mon matelot, je vous donne quittance pour celles des autres."

Et Jean Bart sortit, pleurant comme un enfant, et criant : "Vive le roi !" à tue-tête.

Ce fut alors qu'enveloppé par tous les courtisans désireux de faire la cour à un homme qui était demeuré plus d'une demi-heure en audience privée avec Louis XIV, et ne sachant comment sortir de ce cercle vivant qui commençait à l'étouffer, il profita de ce qu'un des courtisans lui demandait :

"Monsieur Jean Bart, comment donc êtes-vous sorti du port de Dunkerque, bloqué comme vous l'étiez par la flotte anglaise ?

—Vous voulez le savoir ? répondit-il.

—Oui, oui, s'écrièrent-ils tous en chœur ; cela nous ferait grand plaisir.

—Eh bien ! vous allez voir. Je suis Jean Bart, n'est-ce pas ? Vous êtes la flotte anglaise ; vous me bloquez dans l'antichambre du roi ; vous m'empêchez de sortir. . . Eh bien, vli ! vlan ! piff ! paff ! voilà comment je suis sorti !"

Et à chaque exclamation, allongeant un coup de pied ou un coup de poing à celui qui était en face de lui et l'envoyant tomber sur son voisin, il s'ouvrit un passage jusqu'à la porte.

Arrivé là :

"Messieurs, dit-il, voilà comment je suis sorti du port de Dunkerque."

Et il sortit de l'antichambre du roi.

—By kind permission of the Publisher,
Calmann Lévy, 3 rue Auber, Paris.

---

6. LA DERNIÈRE CLASSE.

DAUDET (1840-1897).

Ce matin-là j'étais très en retard pour aller à l'école, et j'avais grand'peur d'être grondé, d'autant plus que M. Hamel nous avait dit qu'il nous interrogerait sur les participes, et je n'en savais pas le premier mot. Un moment l'idée me vint de manquer la classe et de prendre ma course à travers champs. Le temps était si chaud, si clair !

On entendait les merles siffler à la lisière du bois, et dans le pré Rippert, derrière la scierie, les Prussiens qui faisaient l'exercice. Tout cela me tentait bien plus que la règle des participes ; mais j'eus la force de résister, et je courus bien vite vers l'école.

En passant devant la mairie, je vis qu'il y avait du monde arrêté près du petit grillage aux affiches. Depuis deux ans, c'est de là que nous sont venues toutes les mauvaises nouvelles, les batailles perdues, les réquisitions, les ordres de la commandature ; et je pensai sans m'arrêter :

"Qu'est-ce qu'il y a encore ?"

Alors, comme je traversais la place en courant, le forgeron Wachter, qui était là avec son apprenti en train de lire l'affiche, me cria :

"Ne te dépêche pas tant, petit ; tu y arriveras toujours assez tôt, à ton école !"

Je crus qu'il se moquait de moi, et j'entrai tout essoufflé dans la petite cour de M. Hamel.

D'ordinaire, au commencement de la classe, il se faisait un grand tapage qu'on entendait jusque dans la rue, les pupitres ouverts, fermés, les leçons qu'on répétait très haut ensemble en se bouchant les oreilles pour mieux apprendre, et la grosse règle du maître qui tapait sur les tables :

"Un peu de silence !"

Je comptais sur tout ce train pour gagner mon banc sans tre vu ; mais justement ce jour-là tout était tranquille, comme un matin de dimanche. Par la fenêtre ouverte je voyais mes camarades déjà rangés à leur place, et M. Hamel, qui passait et repassait avec la terrible règle en fer sous le bras. Il fallut ouvrir la porte et entrer au milieu de ce grand calme. Vous ensez si j'étais rouge, et si j'avais peur !

Eh bien, non. M. Hamel me regarda sans colère et me dit très doucement :

"Va vite à ta place, mon petit Frantz ; nous allions commencer sans toi."

J'enjambai le banc et je m'assis tout de suite à mon pupitre. Alors seulement, un peu remis de frayeur, je remarquai que notre maître avait sa belle redingote verte, son jabot plissé fin et la calotte de soie noire brodée qu'il ne mettait que les jours d'inspection ou de distribution de prix. Du reste, toute la classe avait quelque chose d'extraordinaire et de solennel. Mais ce qui me surprit le plus, ce fut de voir au fond de la salle, sur les bancs qui restaient vides d'habitude, les gens du village assis et silencieux comme nous, le vieux Hauser avec son tricorne, l'ancien maire, l'ancien facteur, et puis d'autres personnes encore. Tout ce monde-là paraissait triste ; et Hauser avait apporté un vieil abécédaire mangé aux bords qu'il tenait grand ouvert sur ses genoux, avec ses grosses lunettes posées en travers des pages.

Pendant que je m'étonnais de tout cela, M. Hamel était monté dans sa chaire, et, de la même voix douce et grave dont il m'avait reçu, il nous dit :

"Mes enfants, c'est la dernière fois que je vous fais la classe. L'ordre est venu de Berlin de ne plus enseigner que l'allemand dans les écoles de l'Alsace et de la Lorraine. . . . Le nouveau maître arrive demain. Aujourd'hui c'est votre dernière leçon de français. Je vous prie d'être bien attentifs."

Ces quelques paroles me bouleversèrent. Ah ! les misérables, voilà ce qu'ils avaient affiché à la mairie :

Ma dernière leçon de français !

Et moi qui savais à peine écrire ! Je n'apprendrais donc jamais ! Il faudrait donc en rester là ! Comme je m'en voulais maintenant du temps perdu, des classes manquées à courir les nids ou à faire des glissades sur la Saar ! Mes livres que tout à l'heure encore je trouvais si ennuyeux, si lourds à porter, ma grammaire, mon histoire sainte, me semblaient de vieux amis qui me feraient beaucoup de peine à quitter. C'est comme M. Hamel. L'idée qu'il allait partir, que je ne le verrais plus, me faisait oublier les punitions, les coups de règle. Pauvre homme !

C'est en l'honneur de cette dernière classe qu'il avait mis ses beaux habits du dimanche, et maintenant je comprenais pour

quoi ces vieux du village étaient venus s'asseoir au bout de la salle. Cela semblait dire qu'ils regrettaient de ne pas y être venus plus souvent, à cette école. C'était aussi comme une façon de remercier notre maître de ses quarante ans de bons services, et de rendre leurs devoirs à la patrie qui s'en allait.

J'en étais là de mes réflexions, quand j'entendis appeler mon nom. C'était mon tour de réciter. Que n'aurais-je pas donné pour pouvoir dire tout au long cette fameuse règle des participes, bien haut, bien clair, sans une faute ; mais je m'embrouillai aux premiers mots, et je restai debout à me balancer dans mon banc, le cœur gros, sans oser lever la tête. J'entendais M. Hamel qui me parlait :

"Je ne te gronderai pas mon petit Frantz, tu dois être assez puni. Voilà ce que c'est. Tous les jours on se dit : Bah ! j'ai bien le temps. J'apprendrai demain. Et puis tu vois ce qui arrive. . . . Ah ! ç'a été le grand malheur de notre Alsace de toujours remettre son instruction à demain. Maintenant ces gens-là sont en droit de nous dire : Comment ! Vous prétendiez être Français, et vous ne savez ni parler ni écrire votre langue ! . . . Dans tout ça, mon pauvre Frantz, ce n'est pas encore toi le plus coupable. Nous avons tous notre bonne part de reproches à nous faire.

"Vos parents n'ont pas assez tenu à vous voir instruits. Ils aimaient mieux vous envoyer travailler à la terre ou aux filatures pour avoir quelques sous de plus. Moi-même, n'ai-je rien à me reprocher ? Est-ce que je ne vous ai pas souvent fait arroser mon jardin au lieu de travailler ? Et quand je voulais aller pêcher des truites, est-ce que je me gênais pour vous donner congé ?" . . .

Alors, d'une chose à l'autre, M. Hamel se mit à nous parler de la langue française, disant que c'était la plus belle langue du monde, la plus claire, la plus solide, qu'il fallait la garder entre nous et ne jamais l'oublier, parce que quand un peuple tombe esclave, tant qu'il tient bien sa langue, c'est comme s'il tenait la clef de sa prison. Puis il prit une grammaire et nous lut notre leçon. J'étais étonné de voir comme je comprenais. Tout ce qu'il me disait me semblait facile, facile. Je crois aussi que je n'avais jamais si bien écouté et que lui non plus n'avait jamais mis autant de patience à ses explications. On aurait dit qu'avant de s'en aller le pauvre homme voulait nous

donner tout son savoir, nous le faire entrer dans la tête d'un seul coup.

La leçon finie, on passa à l'écriture. Pour ce jour-là M. Hamel nous avait préparé des exemples tout neufs, sur lesquels était écrit en belle ronde: *France, Alsace, France, Alsace.* Cela faisait comme des petits drapeaux qui flottaient tout autour de la classe pendus à la tringle de nos pupitres. Il fallait voir comme chacun s'appliquait, et quel silence! On n'entendait que le grincement des plumes sur le papier. Un moment des hannetons entrèrent; mais personne n'y fit attention, pas même les tous petits, qui s'appliquaient à tracer leurs *bâtons* avec un cœur, une conscience, comme si cela encore était du français... Sur la toiture de l'école, des pigeons roucoulaient tout bas, et je me disais en les écoutant:

"Est-ce qu'on ne va pas les obliger à chanter en allemand, eux aussi?"

De temps en temps quand je levais les yeux de dessus ma page, je voyais M. Hamel immobile dans sa chaire et fixant les objets autour de lui, comme s'il avait voulu emporter dans son regard toute sa petite maison d'école... Pensez! depuis quarante ans, il était là à la même place, avec sa cour en face de lui et sa classe toute pareille. Seulement les bancs, les pupitres s'étaient polis, frottés par l'usage; les noyers de la cour avaient grandi, et le houblon qu'il avait planté lui-même enguirlandait maintenant les fenêtres jusqu'au toit. Quel crève-cœur ça devait être pour ce pauvre homme de quitter toutes ces choses, et d'entendre sa sœur qui allait, venait, dans la chambre au-dessus, en train de fermer leurs malles! car ils devaient partir le lendemain, s'en aller du pays pour toujours.

Tout de même il eut le courage de nous faire la classe jusqu'au bout. Après l'écriture, nous eûmes la leçon d'histoire; ensuite les petits chantèrent le BA BE BI BO BU. Là-bas au fond de la salle, le vieux Hauser avait mis ses lunettes, et, tenant son abécédaire à deux mains, il épelait les lettres avec eux. On voyait qu'il s'appliquait, lui aussi; sa voix tremblait d'émotion, et c'était si drôle de l'entendre, que nous avions tous envie de rire et de pleurer. Ah! je m'en souviendrai de cette dernière classe...

Tout à coup l'horloge de l'église sonna midi, puis l'Angelus. Au même moment, les trompettes des Prussiens qui revenaient de l'exercise éclatèrent sous nos fenêtres.... M. Hamel so

eva, tout pâle, dans sa chaire. Jamais il ne m'avait paru si rand.

"Mes amis, dit-il, mes amis, je . . . je. . . ."

Mais quelque chose l'étouffait. Il ne pouvait pas achever a phrase.

Alors il se tourna vers le tableau, prit un morceau de craie, t, en appuyant de toutes ses forces, il écrivit aussi gros qu'il ut :

"VIVE LA FRANCE !"

Puis il resta là, la tête appuyée au mur, et, sans parler, avec a main il nous faisait signe :

"C'est fini . . . . allez-vous-en."

-From "Contes du Lundi," by kind permission of the Publisher,
Eugène Fasquelle, 11 rue de Grenelle, Paris.

---

7. LA CHÈVRE DE M. SEGUIN.

DAUDET (1840-1897).

M. Seguin n'avait jamais eu de bonheur avec ses chèvres.

Il les perdait toutes de la même façon : un beau matin, elles ssaient leur corde, s'en allaient dans la montagne, et là-haut loup les mangeait. Ni les caresses de leur maître, ni la peur u loup, rien ne les retenait. C'était, paraît-il, des chèvres indé-endantes, voulant à tout prix le grand air et la liberté.

Le brave M. Seguin, qui ne comprenait rien au caractère de s bêtes, était consterné. Il disait :

"C'est fini ; les chèvres s'ennuient chez moi, je n'en garderai as une."

Cependant il ne se découragea pas, et, après avoir perdu six ièvres de la même manière, il en acheta une septième ; seule-ent, cette fois, il eut soin de la prendre toute jeune, pour 'elle s'habituât mieux à demeurer chez lui.

Ah ! qu'elle était jolie la petite chèvre de M. Seguin ! qu'elle ait jolie avec ses yeux doux, sa barbiche de sous-officier, ses bots noirs et luisants, ses cornes zébrées et ses longs poils ancs qui lui faisaient une houppelande ! et puis, docile, cares-nte, se laissant traire sans bouger, sans mettre son pied dans cuelle. Un amour de petite chèvre . . .

M. Seguin avait derrière sa maison un clos entouré d'aubépines. C'est là qu'il mit sa nouvelle pensionnaire. Il l'attacha à un pieu au plus bel endroit du pré, en ayant soin de lui laisser beaucoup de corde, et de temps en temps il venait voir si elle était bien. La chèvre se trouvait très heureuse et broutait l'herbe de si bon cœur que M. Seguin était ravi.

"Enfin, pensait le pauvre homme, en voilà une qui ne s'ennuiera pas chez moi!"

M. Seguin se trompait, sa chèvre s'ennuya.

Un jour, elle se dit en regardant la montagne:

"Comme on doit être bien là-haut! Quel plaisir de gambader dans la bruyère, sans cette maudite longe qui vous écorche le cou!... C'est bon pour l'âne ou pour le bœuf de brouter dans un clos!.. Les chèvres, il leur faut du large."

À partir de ce moment, l'herbe du clos lui parut fade. L'ennui lui vint. Elle maigrit, son lait se fit rare. C'était pitié de la voir tirer tout le jour sur sa longe, la tête tournée du côté de la montagne, la narine ouverte, en faisant *Mê!*... tristement.

M. Seguin s'apercevait bien que sa chèvre avait quelque chose, mais il ne savait pas ce que c'était... Un matin, comme il achevait de la traire, la chèvre se retourna et lui dit dans son patois:

"Écoutez, monsieur Seguin, je me languis chez vous, laissez-moi aller dans la montagne.

—Ah! mon Dieu!... Elle aussi! cria M. Seguin stupéfait, et du coup il laissa tomber son écuelle; puis, s'asseyant dans l'herbe à côté de sa chèvre:

—Comment Blanquette, tu veux me quitter!"

Et Blanquette répondit:

"Oui, monsieur Seguin:

—Est-ce que l'herbe te manque ici?

—Oh! non! monsieur Seguin.

—Tu es peut-être attachée de trop court; veux-tu que j'allonge la corde!

—Ce n'est pas la peine, monsieur Seguin.

—Alors, qu'est-ce qu'il te faut! qu'est-ce que tu veux?

—Je veux aller dans la montagne, monsieur Seguin.

—Mais, malheureuse, tu ne sais pas qu'il y a le loup dans la montagne... Que feras-tu quand il viendra?...

—Je lui donnerai des coups de corne, monsieur Seguin.

—Le loup se moque bien de tes cornes. Il m'a mangé des biques autrement encornées que toi... Tu sais bien, la pauvre vieille Renaude qui était ici l'an dernier? une maîtresse chèvre, forte et méchante comme un bouc. Elle s'est battue avec le loup toute la nuit... puis, le matin, le loup l'a mangée.

—Pécaïre! Pauvre Renaude!... Ça ne fait rien, monsieur Seguin, laissez-moi aller dans la montagne.

—Bonté divine!... dit M. Seguin; mais qu'est-ce qu'on leur fait donc à mes chèvres? Encore une que le loup va me manger... Eh bien, non... je te sauverai malgré toi, coquine! et de peur que tu ne rompes ta corde, je vais t'enfermer dans l'étable, et tu y resteras toujours.

Là-dessus, M. Seguin emporta la chèvre dans une étable toute noire, dont il ferma la porte à double tour. Malheureusement, il avait oublié la fenêtre, et à peine eut-il le dos tourné, que la petite s'en alla....

Quand la chèvre blanche arriva dans la montagne, ce fut un ravissement général. Jamais les vieux sapins n'avaient rien vu d'aussi joli. On la reçut comme une petite reine. Les châtaigniers se baissaient jusqu'à terre pour la caresser du bout de leurs branches. Les genêts d'or s'ouvraient sur son passage, et sentaient bon tant qu'ils pouvaient. Toute la montagne lui fit fête.

On pense bien si notre chèvre était heureuse! Plus de corde, plus de pieu... rien qui l'empêchât de gambader, de brouter à sa guise... C'est là qu'il y en avait de l'herbe! jusque par-dessus les cornes!... Et quelle herbe! savoureuse, fine, dentelée, faite de mille plantes... C'était bien autre chose que le gazon du clos. Et les fleurs donc!... De grandes campanules bleues, des digitales de pourpre à longs calices, toute une forêt de fleurs sauvages débordant de sucs capiteux!...

La chèvre blanche, à moitié soûle, se vautrait là dedans les jambes en l'air et roulait le long des talus, pêle-mêle avec les feuilles tombées et les châtaignes... Puis, tout à coup elle se redressait d'un bond sur ses pattes. Hop! la voilà partie, la tête en avant, à travers les maquis et les buissières, tantôt sur un pic, tantôt au fond d'un ravin, là-haut, en bas, partout... On aurait dit qu'il y avait dix chèvres de M. Seguin dans la montagne.

" C'est qu'elle n'avait peur de rien la Blanquette.

Elle franchissait d'un saut de grands torrents qui l'éclaboussaient au passage de poussière humide et d'écume. Alors, toute ruisselante, elle allait s'étendre sur quelque roche plate et se faisait sécher par le soleil .. Une fois, s'avançant au bord d'un plateau, une fleur de cytise aux dents, elle aperçut en bas, tout en bas dans la plaine, la maison de M. Seguin avec le clos derrière. Cela la fit rire aux larmes.

"Que c'est petit, dit-elle; comment ai-je pu tenir là dedans?"

Pauvrette! de se voir si haut perchée, elle se croyait au moins aussi grande que le monde...

Tout à coup le vent fraîchit... La montagne devint violette; c'était le soir...

" Déjà!" dit la petite chèvre; et elle s'arrêta fort étonnée.

En bas, les champs étaient noyés de brume. Le clos de M. Seguin disparaissait dans le brouillard, et de la maisonnette on ne voyait plus que le toit avec un peu de fumée. Elle écouta les clochettes d'un troupeau qu'on ramenait, et se sentit l'âme toute triste... Un gerfaut, qui rentrait, la frôla de ses ailes en passant. Elle tressaillit...puis ce fut un hurlement dans la montagne:

" Hou! hou!"

Elle pensa au loup; de tout le jour la folle n'y avait pas pensé... Au même moment une trompe sonna bien loin dans la vallée. C'était ce bon M. Seguin qui tentait un dernier effort.

"Hou! hou!...faisait le loup.

—Reviens! reviens!..." criait la trompe

Blanquette eut envie de revenir; mais en se rappelant le pieu, la corde, la haie du clos, elle pensa que maintenant elle ne pouvait plus se faire à cette vie, et qu'il valait mieux rester.

La trompe ne sonnait plus...

La chèvre entendit derrière elle un bruit de feuilles. Elle se retourna et vit dans l'ombre deux oreilles courtes, toutes droites, avec deux yeux qui reluisaient... C'était le loup.

Énorme, immobile, assis sur son train de derrière, il était là regardant la petite chèvre blanche et la dégustant par avance. Comme il savait bien qu'il la mangerait, le loup ne se pressait pas; seulement, quand elle se retourna, il se mit à rire méchamment.

"Ha! ha! la petite chèvre de M. Seguin!" et il passa sa grosse langue rouge sur ses babines d'amadou.

Blanquette se sentit perdue... Un moment en se rappelant l'histoire de la vieille Renaude, qui s'était battue toute la nuit pour être mangée le matin elle se dit qu'il vaudrait peut-être mieux se laisser manger tout de suite; puis, s'étant ravisée, elle tomba en garde, la tête basse et la corne en avant, comme une brave chèvre de M. Seguin qu'elle était... Non pas qu'elle eût l'espoir de tuer le loup,—les chèvres ne tuent pas le loup,—mais seulement pour voir si elle pourrait tenir aussi longtemps que la Renaude...

Alors le monstre s'avança, et les petites cornes entrèrent en danse.

Ah! la brave chevrette, comme elle y allait de bon cœur! Plus de dix fois, je ne mens pas, elle força le loup à reculer pour reprendre haleine. Pendant ces trèves d'une minute, la gourmande cueillait en hâte encore un brin de sa chère herbe; puis elle retournait au combat, la bouche pleine... Cela dura toute la nuit. De temps en temps la chèvre de M. Seguin regardait les étoiles danser dans le ciel clair, et elle se disait:

"Oh! pourvu que je tienne jusqu'à l'aube..."

L'une après l'autre, les étoiles s'éteignirent. Blanquette redoubla de coups de cornes, le loup de coups de dents... Une lueur pâle parut dans l'horizon... Le chant d'un coq enroué monta d'une métairie.

"Enfin!" dit la pauvre bête, qui n'attendait plus que le jour pour mourir; et elle s'allongea par terre dans sa belle fourrure blanche toute tachée de sang...

Alors le loup se jeta sur la petite chèvre et la mangea.

—From "Lettres de mon Moulin," by kind permission of the Publisher, Eugène Fasquelle, 11 rue de Grenelle, Paris.

---

8. LA PATTE DE DINDON.

LEGOUVÉ (b. 1807).

Ce matin, à propos d'un plaisir manqué, je dis en riant à mon fils :

"Je vois que tu as besoin que je te fasse une petite leçon.

—Eh ! sur quoi, père ?

—Sur une disposition que tu tiens de moi, hélas ! et dont je voudrais bien te guérir.

—Quelle est-elle ?

—Le récit d'une petite aventure de ma vie d'écolier te l'apprendra.

J'avais dix ans ; j'étais au collège ; je rapportais chaque lundi, de chez mes parents, la grosse somme de quinze sous, destinée à payer mes déjeuners du matin, car le collège ne nous fournissait pour ce repas qu'un morceau de pain tout sec.

Un lundi, en rentrant, je trouve un de nos camarades (je me rappelle encore son nom, il se nommait Couture) armé d'une superbe patte de dindon. Je dis patte et non cuisse, car l'objet tout entier se composait de ce que, dans mon ignorance, j'appellerai un *tibia*, et de la patte avec ses quatre doigts, le tout recouvert de cette peau noire, luisante et rugueuse qui fait que le dindon a l'air de marcher sur des brodequins de chagrin.

Dès que mon camarade m'aperçut : "Viens voir !" me dit-il, "viens voir !"

J'accours ; il serrait le haut de la patte dans ses deux mains, et, sur un mouvement de sa main droite, les quatre doigts s'ouvraient et se refermaient comme les doigts d'une main humaine. Je restai stupéfait et émerveillé. Comment cette patte morte pouvait-elle remuer ? Comment pouvait-il la faire agir ? Un garçon de dix-huit ans qui va au spectacle et qui suit le développement du drame le plus merveilleux, n'a pas les yeux plus écarquillés, les regards plus ardents, la tête plus fixement penchée en avant que moi, en face de cette patte de dindon. Chaque fois que ces quatre doigts s'ouvraient et se refermaient, il me passait devant les yeux comme un éblouissement. Je croyais assister à un prodige.

Lorsque mon camarade, qui était plus âgé et plus malin que moi, vit mon enthousiasme arrivé à son paroxysme, il remit sa

merveille dans sa poche et s'éloigna. Je m'en allai de mon côté, mais rêveur et voyant toujours cette patte flotter devant mes yeux comme une vision...

—Si je l'avais, me disais-je, j'apprendrais bien vite le moyen de la faire agir. Couture n'est pas sorcier. Et alors, comme je m'amuserais !

Je n'y tins plus, je courus à mon camarade...

—Donne-moi ta patte ! ...lui dis-je avec un irrésistible accent de supplication. Je t'en prie !...

—Ma patte !...Te donner ma patte !...veux-tu t'en aller !

Son refus irrita encore mon désir.

—Tu ne veux pas me la donner ?...

—Non !

—Eh bien !...vends-la moi.

—Te la vendre ? combien ?

Je me mis à compter, dans le fond de ma poche, l'argent de ma semaine...

—Je t'en donne cinq sous.

—Cinq sous, une patte comme celle-là !...Est-ce que tu te moques de moi ?

Et prenant le précieux objet, il recommença devant moi cet éblouissant jeu d'éventail, et chaque fois ma passion grandissait d'un degré.

—Eh bien, je t'en offre dix sous.

—Dix sous !...dix sous !...reprit-il avec mépris. Mais regarde donc...

Et les quatre doigts s'ouvraient et se refermaient toujours !

—Mais enfin, lui dis-je en tremblant, combien donc en veux-tu ?

—Quarante sous ou rien.

—Quarante sous ! m'écriai-je, quarante sous ! près de trois semaines de déjeuners ! Par exemple !

—Soit ! à ton aise !

La patte disparut dans sa poche, et il s'éloigna. Je courus de nouveau après lui.

—Quinze sous !

—Quarante.

—Vingt sous !

—Quarante.

—Vingt-cinq sous !

—Quarante.

Oh ! ce Couture ! comme il aura fait son chemin dans le monde ! comme il connaissait déjà le cœur humain ! Chaque fois que ce terrible mot *quarante* touchait mon oreille, il emportait un peu de ma résistance. Au bout de deux minutes, je ne me connaissais plus !

—Eh bien donc, quarante !. . . m'écriai-je. Donne-la-moi !

—Donne-moi d'abord l'argent, reprit-il.

Je lui mis dans la main les quinze sous de ma semaine, et il me fit écrire un billet de vingt-cinq sous pour le surplus. . . Oh ! le scélérat ! il était déjà homme d'affaires à treize ans !. . . Puis, tirant enfin le cher objet de sa poche :

—Tiens, me dit-il, la voilà !. . .

Je me précipitai sur elle. Au bout de quelques secondes, ainsi que je l'avais prévu, je connaissais le secret et je tirais le tendon qui servait de cordon de sonnette, aussi bien que Couture.

Pendant deux minutes cela m'amusa follement ; après deux minutes, cela m'amusa moins ; après trois, cela ne m'amusa presque plus ; après quatre, cela ne m'amusa plus du tout. Je tirais toujours, parce que je voulais avoir les intérêts de mon argent ;. . . mais le désenchantement me gagnait ;. . . puis vint la tristesse, puis le regret, puis la perspective de trois semaines de pain sec, puis le sentiment de ma bêtise !. . . Et tout cela se changeant peu à peu en amertume, la colère s'en mêla ; et au bout de dix minutes, saisissant avec une véritable haine l'objet de mon amour, je le lançai par-dessus la muraille, afin d'être bien sûr de ne plus le revoir.

Ce souvenir m'est revenu bien souvent, depuis que je n'ai plus dix ans, et bien souvent aussi j'ai retrouvé en moi l'enfant à la patte de dindon. Cette impétuosité de désir, cette impatience de tous les obstacles qui me séparaient de la possession désirée, cette folle imprévoyance, cette puissance d'illusion, égale seulement hélas ! à ma puissance de désillusion, tous ces traits de caractère se sont mille fois réveillés. . . que dis-je ? se réveillent encore en moi, dès qu'une passion m'envahit. Oh ! on n'étudie pas assez les enfants ! On traite leurs sentiments de puérilités ! Rien n'est puéril dans l'âme humaine. L'enfant ne meurt jamais tout entier dans l'homme, et ce qui est puéril aujourd'hui peut être terrible ou coupable demain. Les passions sont différentes, mais le cœur où elles poussent est le même, et le meilleur moyen de bien diriger un jeune homme est d'avoir

bien observé le garçon de dix ans. Ainsi cette patte de dindon m'a fort servi. Vingt fois dans ma vie, au beau milieu d'une sottise, ce souvenir m'est revenu... "Tu seras donc toujours le même?" me disais-je, et je me mettais à rire, ce qui m'arrêtait court. Il n'y a rien de plus utile que de se rire au nez de temps en temps.

Je me retournai alors vers mon fils, et je lui dis: "*Cette fable montre*...que les fils ressemblent quelquefois à leurs pères."

—By kind permission of the Publishers,
J. Hetzel & Cie., 18 rue Jacob, Paris.

---

9. HORTIBUS.

POUVILLON (b. 1840).

I.

Le petit collège est en fête. Portes ouvertes, volets battants, des drapeaux aux fenêtres, du monde partout, des bousculades dans les escaliers, des galopades dans les corridors, et, dominant le tapage, les coups de marteau du tapissier en train de clouer les tentures sur l'estrade dressée dans la cour pour la distribution des prix.

Les prix! les vacances! des mots qui rient, des mots qui chantent, des mots qui éclatent comme des soleils et qui embaument comme un bouquet de fleurs des champs!

Très triste, là-haut, dans l'infirmerie toute blanche, le petit malade se soulève pour écouter. Des pas montent, se hâtent, passent devant la porte; aucun ne s'arrête. Personne. Le docteur—hem! hem!—est venu tout à l'heure, très pressé à cause de la fête; bonjour, bonsoir, adieu mon médecin. L'infirmière, qui aide à faire les malles à la lingerie, paraît une fois tous les quarts d'heure, fait voir le bout du nez, referme la porte et s'en va.

Qu'elle s'en aille!

Ce n'est pas elle qu'attend le petit malade, le docteur pas davantage. Ceux qu'il attend, tenez, les voilà qui arrivent. Trois campagnards: un homme en veste ronde, une petite femme courte en bonnet blanc, une fillette en robe longue,

trop longue, les manches jusqu'au bout des doigts; le père, la mère, la petite sœur.

Ils entrent: l'homme, discrètement, très circonspect, un peu timide; la mère, tout de go, les bras tendus en avant jusqu'à ce qu'elle tienne embrassée, étouffée sur sa poitrine, la chère petite tête de l'enfant. Le père serre la main du malade, la fillette se hausse sur la pointe des pieds jusqu'aux joues penchées vers ses lèvres.

Et les questions pleuvent.

—Qu'as-tu, Tiennet?

—Qu'est-ce qui te fait mal, *pitchou?*

—Rien, presque rien. Là, au front, quelque chose qui me pèse.

—Depuis quand?

—Depuis la composition en thème latin. Oh! ce sera bientôt passé.

—Bientôt? Non; tout de suite, reprend la mère. Demain, jour de lessive, je fais des fouaces. C'est bon, les fouaces, eh! Tiennet?

Ils bavardent, et d'en bas, de l'estrade dressée en plein air, une rumeur monte; des pas se précipitent; des crosses de fusil sonnent sur le pavé de la cour.

Les pompiers sont arrivés.

—Père, allons-y, sollicite la petite sœur. Tantôt, nous n'aurons plus de place.

Et, câline, elle tire l'homme vers la porte.

—Tu peux bien, dit la mère. À trois, que ferions-nous de plus? Descendez; moi, je reste, s'il me veut, lui, ajoute-t-elle en couvant de l'œil son Tiennet.

II.

La petite sœur, le père, sont partis. La mère a fermé les volets, à cause du grand jour, et, dans la demi-obscurité de l'infirmerie close, ils demeurent tous les deux sommeillant.

—Dors un peu, mien, ça te guérira.

—Oui, mère.

Et Tiennet ferme les yeux.

Mais le moyen de s'endormir, avec le remue-ménage de la distribution des prix sous la fenêtre?

—Mère, va voir, s'il te plaît. Que fait-on?

—Rien encore. Les messieurs sont arrivés; une pleine estrade. Oh! je vois au milieu un officier avec un chapeau garni d'un énorme plumet!

—Le colonel!

—Et un autre au premier rang, en face, tout brodé d'argent.

—Le sous-préfet. Bon; que vois-tu encore?

—Jésus! tant de prix! Ils en ont fait trois piles au bord de l'estrade; et des couronnes! une montagne!

Brusquement, une fanfare éclate à pleins cuivres, à pleins poumons. C'est beau, la musique! Élèves, parents, jusqu'au petit malade, tout le monde applaudit.

Attention, maintenant!

Le frac brodé d'argent se lève, un chiffon de papier roulé sur le doigt...le discours. On n'entend pas un mot, rien qu'un chantonnement aigu, berçant, monotone.

C'est curieux comme, à distance, un sous-préfet qui parle peut faire l'effet d'un moucheron qui siffle.

Le frac brodé d'argent s'assied; une robe noire se lève: un long, chauve, avec un fort cahier à la main. Il ne siffle pas, celui-ci, il bourdonne. Telle une grosse mouche. Des phrases d'une lieue, des périodes d'une heure; un sermon.

Du coup, la mère s'est endormie.

Tiennet, lui, s'impatiente.

Aura-t-il, n'aura-t-il pas le prix de thème latin? Le prix, il est là, dans la pile, un beau livre doré sur tranche, l'attestation collée en dedans avec les palmes académiques en vignette et le parafe du principal.

S'il pouvait lire le nom du vainqueur!

Et pendant qu'il calcule ses chances, le sommeil le prend à son tour.

III.

Il rêve.

Quel cauchemar! L'attestation est dans ses mains, sous ses yeux. Hélas! un autre a vaincu; Luc Onziès a obtenu le premier prix.

—Erreur! injustice! objecte Tiennet, ma copie était sans faute.

—Sans faute, ricane le professeur, sans faute! Et ceci, petit malheureux, qu'en-faites-vous?

Suivant alors le doigt accusateur de M. Régulus Bec sur la copie criblée d'annotations, Tiennet découvre, souligné trois fois à l'encre rouge, cet affreux barbarisme :

HORTIBUS.

Hortibus ! Adieu le prix, adieu la gloire !

Hortibus ! Le mot fatal l'obsède ; il danse multiplié devant lui, écrit en ronde, en coulée, en anglaise, imprimé en lettres rouges, en lettres bleues, affiché sur le mur en capitales, charbonné en lettres comiques qui s'animent, tirant la langue, envoyant des pieds de nez au vaincu.

Hortibus !

IV.

Le malade s'agite, ses lèvres remuent.

—Il appelle quelqu'un, dit la mère. Tiennet, Tiennet !

Embrassé, secoué de caresses, Tiennet ouvre les yeux.

Plus de hortibus ! Évanoui dans le pays des songes avec la figure irritée du professeur Régulus Bec.

Bon voyage à tous deux !

Mais le prix ? la couronne ?

Le prix, la couronne ? Ils viennent, ils montent, pieusement, religieusement apportés par le père et la petite sœur. Une marche triomphale !

Ils entrent, et voilà le volume étalé sur le lit du petit malade, la couronne posée sur son front.

Le père rit, la mère pleure ; tous s'embrassent. Oh ! le bonheur des braves gens, le vrai bonheur !

Et tandis qu'on fait fête au vainqueur, hem ! hem ! quelqu'un se présente, lévite noire, figure rose : le docteur.

—Hem ! hem !. . .l'enfant va mieux ; ce laurier sur le front a fait des miracles. Allons, le grand air achèvera de le guérir. Des marches à pied, de l'exercice, et surtout pas de thème latin ! Hem ! hem !

Le docteur fait deux pas vers la porte, et, saluant la famille, le doigt levé dans un geste de menace amicale :

—Pas de thème latin, entendez-vous !

—By kind permission of the Publisher,
A. Lemerre, 23-31 passage Choiseul, Paris.

10. CHAGRIN D'UN VIEUX FORÇAT.

PIERRE LOTI (b. 1850).

C'est une bien petite histoire, qui m'a été contée par Yves, —un soir où il était allé en rade conduire, avec sa canonnière, une cargaison de condamnés au grand transport en partance pour la Nouvelle-Calédonie.

Dans le nombre se trouvait un forçat très âgé (soixante-dix ans pour le moins), qui emmenait avec lui, tendrement, un pauvre moineau dans une petite cage.

Yves, pour passer le temps, était entré en conversation avec ce vieux, qui n'avait pas mauvaise figure, paraît-il,—mais qui était accouplé par une chaîne à un jeune monsieur ignoble, gouailleur, portant lunettes de myope sur un mince nez blême.

Vieux coureur de grands chemins, arrêté, en cinquième ou sixième récidive, pour vagabondage et vol, il disait : "Comment faire pour ne pas voler, quand on a commencé une fois, —et qu'on n'a pas de métier, rien,—et que les gens ne veulent plus de vous nulle part ? Il faut bien manger, n'est-ce pas ?— Pour ma dernière condamnation, c'était un sac de pommes de terre que j'avais pris dans un champ, avec un fouet de roulier et un giraumont. Est-ce qu'on n'aurait pas pu me laisser mourir en France, je vous demande, au lieu de m'envoyer là-bas, si vieux comme je suis ? . . ."

Et, tout heureux de voir que quelqu'un consentait à l'écouter avec compassion, il avait ensuite montré à Yves ce qu'il possédait de précieux au monde : la petite cage et le moineau.

Le moineau apprivoisé, connaissant sa voix, et qui pendant près d'une année, en prison, avait vécu perché sur son épaule. . . —Ah ! ce n'est pas sans peine qu'il avait obtenu la permission de l'emmener avec lui en Calédonie !—Et puis après, il avait fallu lui faire une cage convenable pour le voyage ; se procurer du bois, un peu de vieux fil de fer, et un peu de peinture verte pour peindre le tout et que ce fût joli.

Ici, je me rappelle textuellement ces mots d'Yves : "Pauvre moineau ! Il avait pour manger dans sa cage un morceau de ce pain gris qu'on donne dans les prisons. Et il avait l'air de se trouver content tout de même ; il sautillait comme n'importe quel autre oiseau."

Quelques heures après, comme on accostait le transport et que les forçats allaient s'y embarquer pour le grand voyage, Yves, qui avait oublié ce vieux, repassa par hasard près de lui.

—Tenez, prenez-la, vous, lui dit-il d'une voix toute changée, en lui tendant sa petite cage. Je vous la donne ; ça pourra peut-être vous servir à quelque chose, vous faire plaisir. . .

—Non, certes ! remercia Yves. Il faut l'emporter au contraire, vous savez bien. Ce sera votre petit *compagnon* là-bas. . .

—Oh ! reprit le vieux, *il* n'est plus dedans... Vous ne saviez donc pas ? *il* n'y est plus. . .

Et deux larmes d'indicible misère lui coulaient sur les joues.

Pendant une bousculade de la traversée, la porte s'était ouverte, le moineau avait eu peur, s'était envolé,—et tout de suite était tombé à la mer à cause de son aile coupée. Oh ! le moment d'horrible douleur ! Le voir se débattre et mourir, entraîné dans le sillage rapide, et ne pouvoir rien pour lui ! D'abord, dans un premier mouvement bien naturel, il avait voulu crier, demander du secours, s'adresser à Yves lui-même, le supplier... Élan arrêté aussitôt par la réflexion, par la conscience immédiate de sa dégradation personnelle : un vieux misérable comme lui, qui est-ce qui aurait pitié de son moineau, qui est-ce qui voudrait seulement écouter sa prière ? Est-ce qu'il pouvait lui venir à l'esprit qu'on retarderait le navire pour repêcher un moineau qui se noie,—et un pauvre oiseau de forçat, quel rêve absurde !... Alors il s'était tenu silencieux à sa place, regardant s'éloigner sur l'écume de la mer le petit corps gris qui se débattait toujours ; il s'était senti effroyablement seul maintenant, pour jamais, et de grosses larmes, des larmes de désespérance solitaire et suprême lui brouillaient la vue,—tandis que le jeune monsieur à lunettes, son collègue de chaîne, riait de voir un vieux pleurer.

Maintenant que l'oiseau n'y était plus, il ne voulait pas garder cette cage, construite avec tant de sollicitude pour le petit mort ; il la tendait toujours à ce brave marin qui avait consenti à écouter son histoire, désirant lui laisser ce legs avant de partir pour son long et dernier voyage.

Et Yves, tristement, avait accepté le cadeau, la maisonnette vide,—pour ne pas faire plus de peine à ce vieil abandonné en ayant l'air de dédaigner cette chose qui lui avait coûté tant de travail.

—By kind permission of the Publisher,
Calmann Lévy, 3 rue Auber, Paris.

II. L'AVARE, Acte III, Sc. V.

Molière (1622-1673).

Harpagon—Valère, aide-moi à ceci. Or çà, maître Jacques, approchez-vous ; je vous ai gardé pour le dernier.

Maître Jacques—Est-ce à votre cocher, monsieur, ou bien à votre cuisinier, que vous voulez parler? car je suis l'un et l'autre.

Harpagon—C'est à tous les deux.

Maître Jacques—Mais à qui des deux le premier?

Harpagon—Au cuisinier.

Maître Jacques—Attendez donc, s'il vous plaît. [*Il ôte sa casaque de cocher, et paraît vêtu en cuisinier.*]

Harpagon—Quelle diantre de cérémonie est-ce là?

Maître Jacques—Vous n'avez qu'à parler.

Harpagon—Je me suis engagé, maître Jacques, à donner ce soir à souper.

Maître Jacques—Grande merveille !

Harpagon—Dis-moi un peu, nous feras-tu bonne chère?

Maître Jacques—Oui, si vous me donnez bien de l'argent.

Harpagon—Que diable ! toujours de l'argent ! Il semble qu'ils n'aient autre chose à dire, de l'argent, de l'argent, de l'argent ! Ah ! ils n'ont que ce mot à la bouche, de l'argent ! Toujours parler d'argent ! Voilà leur épée de chevet, de l'argent !

Valère—Je n'ai jamais vu de réponse plus impertinente que celle-là. Voilà une belle merveille que de faire bonne chère avec bien de l'argent ! C'est une chose la plus aisée du monde, et il n'y a si pauvre esprit qui n'en fît bien autant ; mais, pour agir en habile homme, il faut parler de faire bonne chère avec peu d'argent.

Maître Jacques—Bonne chère avec peu d'argent?

Valère—Oui.

Maître Jacques—Par ma foi, monsieur l'intendant, vous nous obligerez de nous faire voir ce secret, et de prendre mon office de cuisinier ; aussi bien vous mêlez-vous céans d'être le factoton.

Harpagon—Taisez-vous. Qu'est-ce qu'il nous faudra?

Maître Jacques—Voilà monsieur votre intendant, qui vous fera bonne chère pour peu d'argent.

HARPAGON—Haye! je veux que tu me répondes.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Combien serez-vous de gens à table?

HARPAGON—Nous serons huit ou dix; mais il ne faut prendre que huit. Quand il y a à manger pour huit, il y en a bien pour dix.

VALÈRE—Cela s'entend.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Hé bien, il faudra quatre grands potages et cinq assiettes d'entrées.

HARPAGON—Que diable! Voilà pour traiter toute une ville entière!

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Rôt...

HARPAGON—[*Lui mettant la main sur la bouche.*] Ah, traître, tu manges tout mon bien.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Entremets...

HARPAGON—Encore? [*Lui mettant encore la main sur la bouche.*]

VALÈRE—Est-ce que vous avez envie de faire crever tout le monde? et monsieur a-t-il invité des gens pour les assassiner à force de mangeaille? Allez-vous-en lire un peu les préceptes de la santé, et demander aux médecins s'il y a rien de plus préjudiciable à l'homme que de manger avec excès.

HARPAGON—Il a raison.

VALÈRE—Apprenez, maître Jacques, vous et vos pareils, que c'est un coupe-gorge qu'une table remplie de trop de viandes; que pour se bien montrer ami de ceux que l'on invite, il faut que la frugalité règne dans les repas qu'on donne et que, suivant le dire d'un ancien, *il faut manger pour vivre, et non pas vivre pour manger.*

HARPAGON—Ah, que cela est bien dit! approche, que je t'embrasse pour ce mot. Voilà la plus belle sentence que j'aie entendue de ma vie: *il faut vivre pour manger, et non pas manger pour viv*... Non, ce n'est pas cela. Comment est-ce que tu dis?

VALÈRE—*Qu'il faut manger pour vivre, et non pas vivre pour manger.*

HARPAGON—[*à Maître Jacques.*] Oui. Entends-tu? [*À Valère.*] Qui est le grand homme qui a dit cela?

VALÈRE—Je ne me souviens pas maintenant de son nom.

HARPAGON—Souviens-toi de m'écrire ces mots. Je les veux faire graver en lettres d'or sur la cheminée de ma salle.

VALÈRE—Je n'y manquerai pas. Et pour votre souper, vous n'avez qu'à me laisser faire. Je réglerai tout cela comme il faut.

HARPAGON—Fais donc.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Tant mieux, j'en aurai moins de peine.

HARPAGON—Il faudra de ces choses dont on ne mange guère, et qui rassasient d'abord; quelque bon haricot bien gras, avec quelque pâté en pot bien garni de marrons.

VALÈRE—Reposez-vous sur moi.

HARPAGON—Maintenant, maître Jacques, il faut nettoyer mon carrosse.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Attendez. Ceci s'adresse au cocher. [*Il remet sa casaque.*] Vous dites . . .

HARPAGON—Qu'il faut nettoyer mon carrosse, et tenir mes chevaux tout prêts pour conduire à la foire . . .

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Vos chevaux, monsieur? Ma foi, ils ne sont point du tout en état de marcher. Je ne vous dirai point qu'ils sont sur la litière, les pauvres bêtes n'en ont point, et ce serait mal parler; mais vous leur faites observer des jeûnes si austères, que ce ne sont plus rien que des idées ou des fantômes, des façons de chevaux.

HARPAGON—Les voilà bien malades; ils ne font rien.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Et pour ne rien faire, monsieur, est-ce qu'il ne faut rien manger? Il leur vaudrait bien mieux, les pauvres animaux, de travailler beaucoup, et de manger de même. Cela me fend le cœur de les voir ainsi exténués; car, enfin, j'ai une tendresse pour mes chevaux, qu'il me semble que c'est moi-même, quand je les vois pâtir; je m'ôte tous les jours pour eux les choses de la bouche; et c'est être, monsieur, d'un naturel trop dur, que de n'avoir nulle pitié de son prochain.

HARPAGON—Le travail ne sera pas grand, d'aller jusqu'à la foire.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Non, monsieur, je n'ai pas le courage de les mener; et je ferais conscience de leur donner des coups de fouet, en l'état où ils sont. Comment voudriez-vous qu'ils traînassent un carrosse? Ils ne peuvent pas se traîner eux-mêmes.

VALÈRE—Monsieur, j'obligerai le voisin Picard à se charger de les conduire: aussi bien nous fera-t-il ici besoin pour apprêter le souper.

MAÎTRE JACQUES—Soit. J'aime mieux encore qu'ils meurent sous la main d'un autre que sous la mienne.

12. WATERLOO, CHAP. IX.

VICTOR HUGO (1802-1885).

Ils étaient trois mille cinq cents. Ils faisaient un front d'un quart de lieue. C'étaient des hommes géants sur des chevaux colosses. Ils étaient vingt-six escadrons ; et ils avaient derrière eux, pour les appuyer, la division de Lefebvre-Desnouettes, les cent six gendarmes d'élite, les chasseurs de la garde, onze cent quatre-vingt-dix-sept hommes, et les lanciers de la garde, huit cent quatre-vingts lances. Ils portaient le casque sans crins et la cuirasse de fer battu, avec les pistolets d'arçon dans les fontes et le long sabre-épée. Le matin toute l'armée les avait admirés, quand, à neuf heures, les clairons sonnant, toutes les musiques chantant : *Veillons au salut de l'empire*, ils étaient venus, colonne épaisse, une de leurs batteries à leur flanc, l'autre à leur centre, se déployer sur deux rangs entre la chaussée de Genappe et Frischemont, et prendre leur place de bataille dans cette puissante deuxième ligne, si savamment composée par Napoléon, laquelle, ayant à son extrémité de gauche les cuirassiers de Kellermann et à son extrémité de droite les cuirassiers de Milhaud, avait, pour ainsi dire, deux ailes de fer.

L'aide de camp Bernard leur porta l'ordre de l'empereur. Ney tira son épée et prit la tête. Les escadrons énormes s'ébranlèrent.

Alors on vit un spectacle formidable.

Toute cette cavalerie, sabres levés, étendards et trompettes au vent, formée en colonne par division, descendit d'un même mouvement et comme un seul homme, avec la précision d'un bélier de bronze qui ouvre une brèche, la colline de la Belle-Alliance, s'enfonça dans le fond redoutable où tant d'hommes déjà étaient tombés, y disparut dans la fumée, puis, sortant de cette ombre, reparut de l'autre côté du vallon, toujours compacte et serrée, montant au grand trot, à travers un nuage de mitraille crevant sur elle, l'épouvantable pente de boue du plateau de Mont-Saint-Jean. Ils montaient, graves, menaçants, imperturbables ; dans les intervalles de la mousqueterie et de l'artillerie, on entendait ce piétinement colossal. Étant deux divisions, ils étaient deux colonnes ; la division Wathier avait la droite, la division Delord avait la gauche. On croyait voir de loin s'allonger vers la crête du plateau deux immenses

couleuvres d'acier. Cela traversa la bataille comme un prodige.

Rien de semblable ne s'était vu depuis la prise de la grande redoute de la Moskowa par la grosse cavalerie ; Murat y manquait, mais Ney s'y retrouvait. Il semblait que cette masse était devenue monstre et n'eût qu'une âme. Chaque escadron ondulait et se gonflait comme un anneau du polype. On les apercevait à travers une vaste fumée déchirée çà et là. Pêle-mêle de casques, de cris, de sabres, bondissement orageux des croupes des chevaux dans le canon et la fanfare, tumulte discipliné et terrible ; là-dessus les cuirasses, comme les écailles sur l'hydre.

Ces récits semblent d'un autre âge. Quelque chose de pareil à cette vision apparaissait sans doute dans les vieilles épopées orphiques racontant les hommes-chevaux, les antiques hippanthropes, ces titans à face humaine et à poitrail équestre dont le galop escalada l'Olympe, horribles, invulnérables, sublimes ; dieux et bêtes.

Bizarre coïncidence numérique, vingt-six bataillons allaient recevoir ces vingt-six escadrons. Derrière la crête du plateau, à l'ombre de la batterie masquée, l'infanterie anglaise, formée en treize carrés, deux bataillons par carré, et sur deux lignes, sept sur la première, six sur la seconde, la crosse à l'épaule, couchant en joue ce qui allait venir, calme, muette, immobile, attendait. Elle ne voyait pas les cuirassiers et les cuirassiers ne la voyaient pas. Elle écoutait monter cette marée d'hommes. Elle entendait le grossissement du bruit des trois mille chevaux, le frappement alternatif et symétrique des sabots au grand trot, le froissement des cuirasses, le cliquetis des sabres, et une sorte de grand souffle farouche. Il y eut un silence redoutable, puis, subitement, une longue file de bras levés brandissant des sabres apparut au-dessus de la crête, et les casques, et les trompettes, et les étendards, et trois mille têtes à moustaches grises criant : vive l'empereur ! Toute cette cavalerie déboucha sur le plateau, et ce fut comme l'entrée d'un tremblement de terre.

Tout à coup, chose tragique, à la gauche des Anglais, à notre droite, la tête de colonne des cuirassiers se cabra avec une clameur effroyable. Parvenus au point culminant de la crête, effrénés, tout à leur furie et à leur course d'extermination sur les carrés et les canons, les cuirassiers venaient d'apercevoir

entre eux et les Anglais un fossé, une fosse. C'était le chemin creux d'Ohain.

L'instant fut épouvantable. Le ravin était là, inattendu, béant, à pic sous les pieds des chevaux, profond de deux toises entre son double talus ; le second rang y poussa le premier, et le troisième y poussa le second ; les chevaux se dressaient, se rejetaient en arrière, tombaient sur la croupe, glissaient les quatre pieds en l'air, pilant et bouleversant les cavaliers, aucun moyen de reculer, toute la colonne n'était plus qu'un projectile, la force acquise pour écraser les anglais écrasa les français, le ravin inexorable ne pouvait se rendre que comblé ; cavaliers et chevaux y roulèrent pêle-mêle se broyant les uns les autres, ne faisant qu'une chair dans ce gouffre, et quand cette fosse fut pleine d'hommes vivants, on marcha dessus et le reste passa. Presque un tiers de la brigade Dubois croula dans cet abîme.

Ceci commença la perte de la bataille.

Une tradition locale, qui exagère évidemment, dit que deux mille chevaux et quinze cents hommes furent ensevelis dans le chemin creux d'Ohain. Ce chiffre vraisemblablement comprend tous les autres cadavres qu'on jeta dans ce ravin le lendemain du combat.

Napoléon, avant d'ordonner cette charge des cuirassiers de Milhaud, avait scruté le terrain, mais n'avait pu voir ce chemin creux qui ne faisait pas même une ride à la surface du plateau. Averti pourtant et mis en éveil par la petite chapelle blanche qui en marque l'angle sur la chaussée de Nivelles, il avait fait, probablement sur l'éventualité d'un obstacle, une question au guide Lacoste. Le guide avait répondu non. On pourrait presque dire que de ce signe de tête d'un paysan est sortie la catastrophe de Napoléon.

D'autres fatalités encore devaient surgir.

Était-il possible que Napoléon gagnât cette bataille? nous répondrons non. Pourquoi? à cause de Wellington? à cause de Blücher? non. À cause de Dieu.

Bonaparte vainqueur à Waterloo, ceci n'était plus dans la loi du dix-neuvième siècle. Une autre série de faits se préparait, où Napoléon n'avait plus de place. La mauvaise volonté des événements s'était annoncée de longue date.

Il était temps que cet homme vaste tombât.

L'excessive pesanteur de cet homme dans la destinée humaine troublait l'équilibre. Cet individu comptait à lui seul plus que

le groupe universel. Ces pléthores de toute la vitalité humaine concentrée dans une seule tête, le monde montant au cerveau d'un homme, cela serait mortel à la civilisation, si cela durait. Le moment était venu pour l'incorruptible équité suprême d'aviser. Probablement les principes et les éléments, d'où dépendent les gravitations régulières dans l'ordre moral comme dans l'ordre matériel, se plaignaient. Le sang qui fume, le trop-plein des cimetières, les mères en larmes, ce sont des plaidoyers redoutables. Il y a, quand la terre souffre d'une surcharge, de mystérieux gémissements de l'ombre, que l'abîme entend.

Napoléon avait été dénoncé dans l'infini, et sa chute était décidée.

Il gênait Dieu.

Waterloo n'est point une bataille ; c'est le changement de front de l'univers.

—From "les Misérables," by kind permission of
M. Paul Meurice, Paris.

---

13. LA MARSEILLAISE.

ROUGET DE L'ISLE (1760-1836).

Allons, enfants de la patrie,
Le jour de gloire est arrivé !
Contre nous de la tyrannie
L'étendard sanglant est levé.
Entendez-vous dans les campagnes
Mugir ces féroces soldats ?
Ils viennent jusque dans nos bras,
Égorger nos fils, nos compagnes !

Aux armes, citoyens ! formez vos bataillons !
Marchons, marchons !
Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons !
Marchons, marchons !
Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons !

. . . .

Amour sacré de la patrie,
Conduis, soutiens nos bras vengeurs ;
Liberté, Liberté chérie,
Combats avec tes défenseurs !
Sous nos drapeaux que la Victoire
Accoure à tes mâles accents !
Que tes ennemis expirants
Voient ton triomphe et notre gloire !

Aux armes, citoyens ! formez vos bataillons !
Marchons, marchons !
Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons !
Marchons, marchons !
Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons !

---

14. LA FEUILLE.

ARNAULT (1766-1834).

"De ta tige détachée,
Pauvre feuille desséchée,
Où vas-tu ?—Je n'en sais rien.
L'orage a brisé le chêne
Qui seul était mon soutien ;
De son inconstante haleine,
Le zéphyr ou l'aquilon
Depuis ce jour me promène
De la forêt à la plaine,
De la montagne au vallon.
Je vais où le vent me mène,
Sans me plaindre ou m'effrayer,
Je vais où va toute chose,
Où va la feuille de rose
Et la feuille de laurier."

---

15. L'EXILÉ.

CHATEAUBRIAND (1768-1848).

Combien j'ai douce souvenance
Du joli lieu de ma naissance !
Ma sœur, qu'ils étaient beaux, les jours
De France !
O mon pays ! sois mes amours,
Toujours !

Te souvient-il que notre mère,
Au foyer de notre chaumière,
Nous pressait sur son cœur joyeux
Ma chère ?
Et nous baisions ses blancs cheveux,
Tous deux.

Te souvient-il du lac tranquille
Qu'effleurait l'hirondelle agile,
Du vent qui courbait le roseau
Mobile,
Et du soleil couchant sur l'eau,
Si beau ?

Ma sœur, te souvient-il encore
Du château que baignait la Dore,
Et de cette tant vieille tour
Du Maure,
Où l'airain sonnait le retour
Du jour ?

Oh ! qui me rendra mon Hélène,
Et la montagne, et le grand chêne ?
Leur souvenir fait tous les jours
Ma peine.
Mon pays sera mes amours
Toujours !

---

16. LA CHIMÈRE.

Théophile Gautier (1811-1872).

Une jeune chimère, aux lèvres de ma coupe,
Dans l'orgie, a donné le baiser le plus doux ;
Elle avait les yeux verts, et jusque sur sa croupe
Ondoyait en torrent l'or de ses cheveux roux.

Des ailes d'épervier tremblaient à son épaule ;
La voyant s'envoler, je sautai sur ses reins ;
Et, faisant jusqu'à moi ployer son cou de saule,
J'enfonçai comme un peigne une main dans ses crins.

Elle se démenait, hurlante et furieuse,
Mais en vain. Je broyais ses flancs dans mes genoux ;
Alors elle me dit d'une voix gracieuse,
Plus claire que l'argent : Maître, où donc allons-nous ?

Par delà le soleil et par delà l'espace,
Où Dieu n'arriverait qu'après l'éternité,
Mais avant d'être au but ton aile sera lasse :
Car je veux voir mon rêve en sa réalité.

---

17. EXTASE.

Victor Hugo (1802-1885).

J'étais seul près des flots, par une nuit d'étoiles.
Pas un nuage aux cieux, sur les mers pas de voiles.
Mes yeux plongeaient plus loin que le monde réel.
Et les bois, et les monts, et toute la nature,
Semblaient interroger dans un confus murmure
Les flots des mers, les feux du ciel.

Et les étoiles d'or, légions infinies,
À voix haute, à voix basse, avec mille harmonies,
Disaient, en inclinant leurs couronnes de feu ;
Et les flots bleus, que rien ne gouverne et n'arrête,
Disaient, en recourbant l'écume de leur crête :
—C'est le Seigneur, le Seigneur Dieu !

—From "les Orientales," by kind permission of
M. Paul Meurice, Paris.

---

18. L'AUTOMNE.

LAMARTINE (1791-1869).

Salut ! bois couronnés d'un reste de verdure !
Feuillages jaunissants sur les gazons épars !
Salut, derniers beaux jours ! Le deuil de la nature
Convient à ma douleur, et plaît à mes regards.

Je suis d'un pas rêveur le sentier solitaire,
J'aime à revoir encor, pour la dernière fois,
Ce soleil pâlissant, dont la faible lumière
Perce à peine à mes pieds l'obscurité des bois.

Oui, dans ces jours d'automne où la nature expire,
À ses regards voilés je trouve plus d'attraits :
C'est l'adieu d'un ami, c'est le dernier sourire
Des lèvres que la mort va fermer pour jamais !

Ainsi, prêt à quitter l'horizon de la vie,
Pleurant de mes longs jours l'espoir évanoui,
Je me retourne encore, et d'un regard d'envie
Je contemple ces biens dont je n'ai pas joui.

Terre, soleil, vallons, belle et douce nature,
Je vous dois une larme au bord de mon tombeau.
L'air est si parfumé ! la lumière est si pure !
Aux regards d'un mourant le soleil est si beau.

Je voudrais maintenant vider jusqu'à la lie
Ce calice mêlé de nectar et de fiel ;
Au fond de cette coupe où je buvais la vie,
Peut-être restait-il une goutte de miel.

Peut-être l'avenir me gardait-il encore
Un retour de bonheur dont l'espoir est perdu ;
Peut-être dans la foule, une âme que j'ignore
Aurait compris mon âme et m'aurait répondu.

La fleur tombe en livrant ses parfums au zéphire,
À la vie, au soleil, ce sont là ses adieux ;
Moi, je meurs, et mon âme, au moment qu'elle expire,
S'exhale comme un son triste et mélodieux.

—By kind permission of M. Robert Vallier, gérant de la Société propriétaire des œuvres de Lamartine.

---

19. TRISTESSE.

De Musset (1810-1857).

J'ai perdu ma force et ma vie,
Et mes amis et ma gaieté :
J'ai perdu jusqu'à la fierté
Qui faisait croire à mon génie.

Quand j'ai connu la vérité,
J'ai cru que c'était une amie :
Quand je l'ai comprise et sentie
J'en étais déjà dégoûté.

Et pourtant elle est éternelle,
Et ceux qui se sont passés d'elle,
Ici-bas ont tout ignoré.

Dieu parle, il faut qu'on lui réponde.
Le seul bien qui me reste au monde
Est d'avoir quelquefois pleuré.

—By kind permission of Mme Lardin de Musset, Paris.

20. LE VASE BRISÉ.

SULLY-PRUDHOMME (b. 1839).

Le vase où meurt cette verveine
D'un coup d'éventail fut fêlé;
Le coup dut effleurer à peine.
Aucun bruit ne l'a révélé.

Mais la légère meurtrissure,
Mordant le cristal chaque jour,
D'une marche invisible et sûre
En a fait lentement le tour.

Son eau fraîche a fui goutte à goutte,
Le suc des fleurs s'est épuisé;
Personne encore ne s'en doute,
N'y touchez pas, il est brisé.

Souvent aussi la main qu'on aime,
Effleurant le cœur, le meurtrit;
Puis le cœur se fend de lui-même,
La fleur de son amour périt;

Toujours intact aux yeux du monde,
Il sent croître et pleurer tout bas
Sa blessure fine et profonde,
Il est brisé, n'y touchez pas.

21. LE CHÊNE ET LE ROSEAU.

LA FONTAINE (1621-1695).

Le chêne un jour dit au roseau :
Vous avez bien sujet d'accuser la nature ,
Un roitelet pour vous est un pesant fardeau ;
Le moindre vent qui d'aventure
Fait rider la face de l'eau
Vous oblige à baisser la tête ;
Cependant que mon front, au Caucase pareil,
Non content d'arrêter les rayons du soleil,
Brave l'effort de la tempête.
Tout vous est aquilon, tout me semble zéphyr.
Encor si vous naissiez à l'abri du feuillage
Dont je couvre le voisinage,
Vous n'auriez pas tant à souffrir,
Je vous défendrais de l'orage :
Mais vous naissez le plus souvent
Sur les humides bords des royaumes du vent.
La nature envers vous me semble bien injuste.
Votre compassion, lui répondit l'arbuste,
Part d'un bon naturel ; mais quittez ce souci :
Les vents me sont moins qu'à vous redoutables.
Je plie, et ne romps pas. Vous avez jusqu'ici
Contre leurs coups épouvantables
Résisté sans courber le dos ;
Mais attendons la fin. Comme il disait ces mots,
Du bout de l'horizon accourt avec furie
Le plus terrible des enfants
Que le nord eût portés jusque-là dans ses flancs.
L'arbre tient bon ; le roseau plie.
Le vent redouble ses efforts,
Et fait si bien qu'il déracine
Celui de qui la tête au ciel était voisine,
Et dont les pieds touchaient à l'empire des morts.

COMPOSITION EXERCISES

BASED ON

THE FRENCH READER.

[It is recommended that the extracts from the Reader should be used as a basis for oral practice, dictation, etc. The exercises here given have not been divided into lessons: such portions may be assigned for this purpose as the teacher deems advisable. The vocabulary required for translating any given exercise is to be found in the extract from the Reader on which it is based.]

EXERCISE I.

(Paroles d'un croyant, pp. 395-6.)

A. 1. Instead of bending we rise. 2. This plant will dry up and die, if it finds no shelter from the fierce heat of the sun. 3. The wind bends the trees to the ground. 4. If we unite with one another, we shall shelter one another. 5. Let us not think of ourselves alone. 6. What is there that is stronger than covetousness? 7. The swallows gathered round the bird of prey. 8. Fear sat down beside him, and did not leave him. 9. We asked them: "How many were there of you?" 10. They answered: "There were four of us." 11. It is thus, and therefore God commands us not to fall under the oppression of the strong. 12. The weak do not fear, when they love one another. 13. A rock had rolled upon the road. 14. There is no way out, except the road. 15. The man tried to make a way for himself. 16. He saw that his efforts were vain. 17. If we sit down full of sadness, what will become of us? 18. The second traveller did what the first one did. 19. Several others come up, sit down, and bow their heads. 20. If we pray to our Father, He will have pity on us.

21. When we had prayed, we pushed the rock, and it gave way. 22. Life is a journey, and man is a traveller. 23. He meets many troubles on his way.

B. The wind strips of its leaves the tree which is alone, and it finds no shelter from the fierce heat of the sun, and the fierce heat of the covetousness of the great dries up the sap which nourishes the man who is alone. Then, let us be united. So long as we think only of ourselves, we have nothing to hope for but oppression. The sparrows succeed in driving off birds of prey, by pursuing them all together. Let us take example from the sparrows. Fear follows him who separates himself from his brethren. All men are equal. God makes neither great nor small. But when covetousness stifles the love of others in those who are stronger in body or mind, they try to subdue their brothers to themselves. God knows that these things are so, and that is why He commands us to love one another, so that we may be united, and may not fall under the oppression of the strong. A man who was travelling in the mountains came to a place where a great rock filled the road completely. The man saw that he could not continue his journey, and he tried to move the rock, but he found himself powerless to move it. He grew weary and said, "What will become of me in this solitude, when the wild beasts come out to seek their prey?" Another traveller came up, and then several others, and none of them being able to move the rock, they prayed to their Father in Heaven that He might have (subj.) pity on them. The Father in Heaven listened to them, and rising up all together, they took away (*enlever*) the rock and went on their way. God measures the troubles which we meet on our path, and if we travel together, the weight of no rock will ever stop us.

EXERCISE II.

(Paroles d'un croyant, pp. 397-8.)

A. 1. If we should die or fall ill, what would become of you? 2. If this thought never leaves you it will gnaw your heart like a worm. 3. Although the same thought comes to

me, I do not dwell on it. 4. Let us live without anxiety. 5. Those who do not live without anxiety, do not enjoy a moment of repose. 6. Soon the mother came back again to her nest. 7. The man was sad and downcast, on account of the orphans in their nest. 8. The poor bird struggled, but the vulture carried it off. 9. What will become of my children, if they lose me? 10. The little birds have only their mother. 11. My children, too, have only me. 12. When he returned to the fields, he wished to see the young ones again. 13. All the little birds were well. 14. If he hides himself, he will see what will happen. 15. He observed what had happened. 16. The food, which was brought back by the mother, was given to all without distinction. 17. If we do not distrust Providence, God will not abandon us. 18. Let us not be anxious. 19. Those who pursue their journey in peace will know the secrets of God's love. 20. If our children are not of an age to provide for their own needs, they will have the Father in Heaven.

B. Two men had only their labour to support their wives and their little children. And one of them was troubled, and asked himself (*se demander*) what would become of his wife and children if he should die. But the other man lived without anxiety, for he said that God knew His creatures, and that He would watch over him and his children. One day when the first man was working in the fields, he saw some birds which were going into and coming out of a clump of trees. He drew near, and saw two nests in which were several young birds without feathers. He returns to his work, but watches the birds as they come and go with food for their young. Now, as the man was working, one of the mother [birds] uttered a piercing cry, for a vulture had seized her as she was returning home with her mouthful of food. At the sight of this, the man felt his soul deeply (*bien*) disturbed, and said, "What will become now of the little birds?" But the next day, directing his steps towards the clump of trees, he saw that none of the young had suffered. This astonished him. But he soon saw the second mother distributing to all the young ones the food which she had gathered. She had not abandoned the orphans in their distress. Let us not dis-

trust Providence. God will not forsake His own. We shall never know the secrets of His love. If one father dies before the other, the latter will be a father to all the children. If both die, the children will have their Father in Heaven, and He will provide for all their needs.

EXERCISE III.

(Le chat botté, pp. 398-401.)

A. 1. We did not call the notary. 2. The miller received the mill. 3. Shall we be able to console ourselves for having such a poor share? 4. When he has his bag, and when he has put bran into it, he will go into the brushwood. 5. I have got a pair of boots made for myself. 6. He hung himself up by the feet, and pretended to be dead. 7. He waited for some young rabbit to eat the bran. 8. We were shown up to his apartments. 9. Did you bow to the king? 10. We thank you. 11. Let us go and hide ourselves in the wheat. 12. One day, when we learned that you were to go to the river's banks, we went for a walk. 13. We said, "Follow our advice, and leave it to us." 14. They advised him to bathe in the river. 15. As they were bathing, we happened to pass. 16. She put her head out of the carriage door, and screamed. 17. Order your guards that some one go to his help. 18. The marquis was pulled out of the water. 19. Although the cat cried, "Stop thief," the thieves carried off his master's clothes. 20. Go and get those fine clothes. 21. We had just given him a carriage. 22. They wished us to get into the carriage. 23. We shall not fail to ask them whose meadow it is. 24. That meadow yields well every year. 25. Do you wish to know whose castle this is? 26. We shall say the same thing to those we meet. 27. That is the castle whose master is an ogre. 28. He is the richest man I have ever seen. 29. Tell us what that cat can do. 30. Can the cat change itself into a lion? 31. The ogre became a lion. 32. Boots are no good for walking on tiles. 33. Would you be frightened to see a lion before you? 34. We have been assured that he was afraid, but we cannot believe it. 35. Can the cat assume the form of a rat? 36.

The mice began to run over the floor. 37. If we hear the noise of the carriage, we shall not enter the castle. 38. Run to meet the marquis and the princess. 39. You are welcome! 40. Let us see these buildings, if you please. 41. We went up first, the cat followed us. 42. Our friends were to come and see us. 43. They did not dare to come in. 44. We saw the great wealth he possessed. 45. It will be my fault alone, if I am not the king's son-in-law. 46. Cats do not become great lords. 47. They run after mice to amuse themselves.

B. All the property a miller had was a mill, an ass and a cat. He left the mill to his eldest son and the cat to the youngest. The latter said that he would have to die of hunger, while his eldest brother would be able to earn his living decently. The cat pretended not to hear this speech. He told his master not to be troubled, but to give him a bag, and to get a pair of boots made for him. His master no longer despaired of being helped in his misery, for he had seen the cat play many clever tricks. He had seen him catch many rats and mice. Then the cat put on his boots, and seizing his bag with his fore-paws, he went off where there were many rabbits. Having put some bran into his bag, he stretched himself out, as if he were dead. A giddy young rabbit poked himself into the bag, the cat drew the strings, and caught him. Then he went to the king's palace, carrying his prey with him. He went up to the king's apartments, and making a bow, he told the king that the Marquis de Carabas had commissioned him to present a rabbit to his majesty. Another time, he hid himself in some wheat, and caught two partridges which had gone into his bag. He presented these to the king also, and the king received them with pleasure. He carried thus, from time to time, game to the king. One day, the king went for a drive with his daughter, on the banks of the river. The cat advised his master to bathe in the river, where the king would pass by. The marquis did not know what use it would be, but he followed the cat's advice. As the king was passing, the cat screamed, "Help! help! a man is drowning!" The king recognized the cat, and ordered his guards to go to the man's help. Now (*or*), the cat had hid his master's clothes under a

stone, although he told the king that robbers had carried them off. Then the officers of the king's wardrobe went for some very fine clothing for the marquis. The king's daughter fell in love with the marquis, for he was very fine-looking, and the fine clothes heightened his good looks. Then he got into the king's carriage and took part in the drive. The cat was delighted to see that his plan was succeeding, and going ahead he came upon some peasants who were mowing in a meadow. He ordered them to say to the king, if the king asked them whose meadow it was, that it belonged to the marquis. They did not fail to say so (*le*) to the king. Then the cat came upon some harvesters, and told them that, if they did not say that the field of wheat which they were cutting belonged to the marquis, they would be cut up as fine as mince-meat. The king asked whose field it was, and they replied that it belonged to the marquis. The king rejoiced at this, but was astonished at the great possessions of the marquis. Now, all these lands belonged to a rich ogre, who lived in a great castle. The cat made enquiries as to who this ogre was, and what he could do, and asked to speak to him, saying that he wished to have the honour of paying him his respects. He was civilly received by the ogre. Then the ogre, to show the cat what he could do, changed himself into a lion. The cat was frightened, and fled to the eave-troughs. After a little time the cat came down, and told the ogre that he had been assured that the ogre could also change himself into a rat or a mouse, but that he considered that impossible. The ogre replied that he would soon see, and changing himself into a mouse began to run over the floor. The cat pounced on the mouse and ate it. The king, seeing the beautiful castle, crossed the drawbridge and entered the court. The cat ran to meet him and said, "Your majesty is welcome to the castle of the Marquis de Carabas." The king went in first, the marquis and princess followed him. In a great hall they found a wonderful repast which had been prepared by the ogre for his friends. The king and the princess were charmed by the good qualities and the great wealth of the marquis, and the king said to him "You shall be my son-in-law." That very day he married the princess.

EXERCISE IV.

(Un nez gelé, pp. 402-3.)

A. 1. We have decided to make our rounds on foot. 2. They were armed from head to foot. 3. I was delighted that we had the opportunity. 4. We were going to a gentleman's house who was not at home. 5. He was more of a talker, as it seems, than the others. 6. The coachman drove his sleigh at full speed. 7. However fast you may run, I shall catch (*rattraper*) you. 8. Before I could take off my cashmere scarf, he was washing my face. 9. In such weather as it is, I do not venture into the street. 10. They looked at us a moment. 11. We rushed again at them. 12. I profited by the fact that he could not defend himself. 13. He thought he was the victim of an ambuscade. 14. I got rid of the three men. 15. He did not think the joke in good taste. 16. We French look at people (*gens*) straight in the eye. 17. I rendered the same service to myself as the peasant had rendered me. 18. Gratitude is less nimble than fear. 19. We were guilty only of too much philanthropy. 20. Those present spoke Russian, and did not understand French.

B. Dumas, being at St. Petersburg, ventured into the street one day, having only the tip of his nose to the air. He had armed himself against the cold, by (*en*) wrapping himself in a great Astrachan coat, and by pulling over his ears a fur-lined cap. At first, he was surprised at the little impression the cold made upon him. He laughed to himself at the stories he had heard told about it. Still he noticed that those whom he met looked at him with anxiety, but without saying anything to him. Soon, a gentleman, who was passing, shouted (*crier*) to him in Russian, but he did not know a word of Russian, and continued on his way. He soon met another man, who was driving his sleigh. The latter also shouted to him in Russian. Finally he met a labourer, who picked up a handful of snow, and rushing at Dumas, rubbed his face and nose vigorously. In such weather, Dumas thought this a rather poor joke, and he gave the labourer a blow with his fist. Then two peasants looked at him a moment, and rushing at him, held his arms. The labourer, after having picked up

another handful of snow, rushed at him again, and began again his rubbing. Dumas thought he was the victim of some mistake, and he called for help. An officer, who had run up, asked him in French with whom he was angry. "What," exclaimed Dumas, "don't you see what those scamps were doing?" The officer replied that they were rendering him a great service by (*en*) rubbing his face with snow, for Dumas had his nose frozen. A passer-by, addressing the officer, told him that his nose was freezing too. The officer stooped, picked up some snow, and rubbed his nose. Then Dumas put off after the labourer, whom he would not have overtaken if some people had not stopped the way. When Dumas arrived where the labourer was, he gave him ten roubles, and explained the affair to him. Those present recommended Dumas to pay more attention in future to his nose. During the rest of his rounds he never lost sight of it.

EXERCISE V.

(La pipe de Jean Bart, pp. 404-6.)

A. 1. It is not too late for us to change our habits. 2. Reflect on it and you will be convinced. 3. We did not wish to attract attention. 4. They did not turn Jean Bart out of the palace. 5. For he was a rear-admiral. 6. They did not go and tell the king that a man whose name was Jean Bart was smoking in his ante-chamber. 7. We come to ask a favour of the king. 8. The rear-admiral has to take the king's cabinet by surprise. 9. We shall lay aside our famous garments. 10. The king put upon Jean Bart's neck a chain of gold. 11. Captains receive gold chains as a reward for great deeds. 12. He showed the petitioners into the king's presence. 13. Are you a good enough friend of the captain, for there to be no need of that? 14. It will be enough if you tell him that I ask to speak to him. 15. Let us advance towards the door. 16. The orders are that no one can enter. 17. He looked at us with astonishment. 18. The officer observed to us that no smoking was allowed. 19. Do not keep us waiting. 20. If you keep me waiting, I shall smoke. 21. We shall be obliged to smoke, if we wait here. 22. We shall put them out, if they smoke. 23. I defy you to put me

out. 24. We shall not go out, before we speak to the king. 25. You must choose the less of two evils. 26. Let us go and tell him that Jean Bart is here. 27. Let us not take the trouble to look. 28. We shall show him in. 29. Do not let him finish his pipe. 30. We had hardly crossed the threshold, when we stopped. 31. If we salute the king, we shall arrive at our goal. 32. We began by paying compliments. 33. We finished by asking for the pardon of our friend. 34. We shall get many compliments paid us. 35. Many ships were burned at sea. 36. Many members of his family died in the king's service. 37. They were shouting, "Long live the king!" as loud as they could. 38. We profited by the fact that we had remained more than half an hour with the king. 39. It would afford them great pleasure if you told them how you got out of the port. 40. Do not prevent me from getting out. 41. I shall make a way for myself to the door.

B. When Jean Bart was called into the navy by Louis XIV., he was forty-one years old. The descendant of pirates, he had been a pirate himself, and he loved his pipe, for he was of Dunkirk, which is a damp and cold locality. But it was not from ignorance of the etiquette of Versailles that he lit his pipe in the king's ante-chamber. He had come to ask of the king a favour which had been twice refused him. And he wished to attract attention to himself. Having put off his famous garments of cloth of gold, and having put on a plain officer's costume, he presents himself at the ante-chamber of the king, but without his letter of admission. The officer who was charged with introducing petitioners into the king's presence, asked him where his letter was. He replied that he was a good enough friend of the king not to have need of a letter. But the officer would (*voulait*) not take the liberty of announcing Jean Bart. The latter leaned against the wainscot, and drawing a pipe from the crown of his hat, he lit it. The courtiers observed to him that people did not smoke in the king's ante-chamber. But Jean Bart replied that he always smoked when he was waiting. The officer said he would be obliged to put him out. But it was not easy to put Jean Bart out of doors, so the officer chose the less of two evils, and told the king that there was an officer in the ante-chamber who was smoking and who dared the courtiers to put

him out. The king told the officer to let Jean Bart finish his pipe and then to show him in. But Jean Bart did not wait. Throwing his pipe away, he rushed into the king's cabinet. He conducted the conversation with much skill. He got many compliments paid to him regarding his exit from the port of Dunkirk and his burning of the enemy's ships. Then kneeling on one knee he asked pardon for one of his sailors who had killed his opponent in a duel. The king hesitated, but finally granted him what he asked for. When Jean Bart came out, he was surrounded by the courtiers. One of the latter asked him how he got out of the port of Dunkirk, when he was blockaded by the English fleet. They all said it would be a great pleasure to them to know (it). "Well," said he, "you shall see. You are the English fleet which is blockading me." And he gave kicks and blows to those who were in front of him, and opened a passage for himself. When he arrived at the door, he told them that that was how he got out of the port of Dunkirk.

EXERCISE VI.

(La dernière classe, pp. 407-11.)

A. 1. I was afraid, the more so as the master would question me. 2. We did not run away from school. 3. Were the Prussians drilling in the meadow? 4. Did you see people standing near the bulletin-board? 5. The blacksmith ran across the square. 6. We were busy reading the notice. 7. If you hasten, you will get to school in time. 8. Are you making fun of me? 9. They entered the school out of breath. 10. They stopped their ears when they were repeating their lessons. 11. Relying on this noise we gained our seats without being seen. 12. Everything was quiet, as on a Sunday morning. 13. You may well imagine he was afraid. 14. Were they going to begin without us? 15. They sat down at their desks. 16. The teacher puts on his frock coat only on inspection days. 17. What surprises us most is to see the postman sitting on a bench at the back of the room. 18. Did you bring your ABC book? 19. We shall teach nothing but German. 20. He asked us to be attentive. 21. That is what we had posted up at the school. 22. They hardly knew how to read. 23. Are books tiresome? 24. It pains me to leave

old friends. 25. Did you come and sit down on the bench? 26. Will they regret not having come oftener? 27. Will the fatherland pass away? 28. When we were at that point in our reflections, we heard our names called. 29. We got confused at the first word. 30. That's how things go when you do not know how to speak your language. 31. We shall see what will happen. 32. Let us not put it off till to-morrow. 33. Are you anxious to see your children educated?—We are. 34. Would you prefer to send them to work on the land? 35. The master made us water his garden. 36. As long as a people retains its language, it will not become a slave. 37. You would have said that the poor man wished to go away. 38. You should have seen how we worked! 39. No one pays attention to them. 40. He did not raise his eyes from the page. 41. The desks were worn by use. 42. Let us pack our trunks, for we must leave to-morrow. 43. It was so funny that they all wanted to laugh. 44. Shall you forget it? 45. He seems tall to me. 46. Can you finish the phrase? 47. We motion to them to go away. 48. Do not go away. 49. If we do not go away, we shall not see our friend.

B. Little Frantz was late that morning, and he was afraid of being scolded, and he did not know the first word about the participles. The weather was so warm that the thought came to him to play truant. But he had the strength to resist, although (*bien que* with subj.) the blackbirds were whistling in the woods, and he ran to school. As he was passing the mayor's office, he saw people who were reading the notices. And he thought without stopping, "What is the matter? Is there bad news again?" The blacksmith and his apprentice shouted to him, as he was running across the square, not to (*de ne pas*) be in such a hurry, that he would get to school soon enough. But Frantz thought the blacksmith was making fun of him, and he entered the school yard. Generally you could hear (impf. ind.) out into the street the noise that was made, but that day everything was still. They (*on*) were not repeating their lessons out loud, and the master was not striking the table with his ruler. The little boy's comrades were already in their places, and the master was going up and down with his ruler under his arm, and Frantz had to enter in the midst of that calm. Then he noticed the

29

master's beautiful green frock coat, and his silk skull-cap. He noticed also, at the back of the room, sitting on benches, the old mayor and postman, who were holding open on their knees old ABC books. Then M. Hamel told the children that it was the last time he would have (*faire*) the class, that it was their last lesson in French. These words upset little Frantz. Then he was angry with himself for the time that was lost. His books, which seemed a little ago so heavy to carry, were now old friends whom he could not leave. The little boy understood now why poor M. Hamel had put on his Sunday clothes, and why the old men had come to school. They were thanking the master for his forty years' services. Then he heard his name called. What would he not have given to be able to recite the rule of the participles! But the master did not scold him, for he was sufficiently punished. He had said to himself that he had plenty of time, that he would put off his education. He had claimed to be French and he could neither speak nor write his own language. The people of Alsatia were not anxious enough to see their children educated. They sent them to work in the spinning-factories or on the land. And the teacher himself had something to reproach himself with. When he wanted to go fishing for trout, he did not hesitate to give them a holiday. Then M. Hamel spoke of the French language. And the little boy was astonished to see how he understood. "The French language," said he, "is the finest language in the world. It must never be forgotten." Whatever the master said seemed so easy to the boy. The poor man wanted to make all his knowledge go into the heads of his class before departing. Then they began to write. The copy-lines were,—*France*, *Alsatia*, and everybody was diligent. Even the little fellows, who were tracing their "strokes," paid no attention to the may-bugs which came in. And M. Hamel was motionless in his desk. For forty years he had been there, and now he wished to carry away in his eye all the objects in his school. The walnut trees which he had planted had grown large, and the hop-vine encircled the windows. And now he and his sister were to go away from the country for ever. Then he gave the children their history lesson. The little fellows sang *ba*, *be*, *bi*, and old Hauser having put on his

spectacles spelled the letters with them. When the church clock rang noon, M. Hamel rose in his desk, and turning towards the black-board, he wrote with a piece of chalk, "Hurrah for France."

EXERCISE VII.

(La chèvre de M. Seguin, pp. 411-15.)

A. 1. They all went off in the same way. 2. I could not make out their nature at all. 3. Do you weary being at home? 4. Do not get discouraged. 5. We are getting used to it. 6. How pretty the goat is! 7. Her beard was as pretty as that of a non-commissioned officer. 8. Will she let herself be milked? 9. Yes, she will never move, nor put her foot into the dish. 10. I shall go now and then to see whether you are comfortable. 11. That's one that does not grow weary. 12. The tether rubs her neck. 13. From that day she cropped no more grass. 14. She turned her head in the direction of the mountain. 15. Does that seem insipid to you? 16. Is anything the matter with you? 17. Did you notice that the goat was pulling on its tether? 18. Do not let her go to the mountain. 19. Did you drop your dish? 20. Do not sit down in the grass. 21. She was not tied too short. 22. Shall I lengthen the rope? 23. What will you do when the wolf comes? 24. The wolf will not make fun of her horns. 25. Let us not fight with him. 26. That makes no difference, I shall not stay with you. 27. He will tie her to a stake for fear she should go away. 28. Hardly had he closed the door, when she ran off. 29. They bowed to the earth. 30. Those flowers smell sweet, do they not? 31. You may well imagine that she was happy! 32. She had grass up over her horns! 33. The white goat jumps up on her feet again. 34. There, she is off! 35. I should have said there were ten goats. 36. Let us jump across this stream. 37. Go and stretch yourself out on a flat rock. 38. We did not notice M. Seguin's field. 39. We laughed till we cried. 40. How little that house is, we can never find room in it. 41. Listen to the bells. 42. They are bringing home the flocks. 42. Do you think of the goat?—I do. 44. I have a mind to return.

45. But I can never get used to that life again. 46. We see two ears and two shining eyes. 47. Let us be in no hurry. 48. Do not turn round. 49. Do you remember that story? 50. It will be better to eat it at once. 51. She changed her mind. 52. Can we hold out as long as the others? 53. If we go about it heartily, we may kill the wolf. 54. Let us take breath again. 55. We did not gather a blade of grass. 56. Let us not look at the stars dancing in the sky. 57. The stars will die out, when a pale light appears (fut.).

B. M. Seguin had had six goats, and he had lost them all in the same way. They were independent animals which wished for liberty at any price. Good M. Seguin could not understand them. Nothing could hold them back. They all went away into the mountain, and the wolves ate them. Then he bought a seventh one, a pretty little goat, and quite young, for he wished it to get accustomed to living with him. It was a dear little goat with long, white hair, soft eyes and black hoofs! M. Seguin tied his goat to a stake in a meadow surrounded with hawthorn, where she was very comfortable. She ate the grass so heartily that M. Seguin thought she would never grow weary with him, but she did grow weary. One day she looked at the mountain, and from that moment the grass of the field seemed tasteless to her. She said to herself that one must be very happy on the mountain, that an ox might crop grass in a field but that goats needed room. When M. Seguin noticed that his goat was getting lean, he knew that something was the matter with her, but he did not know what it was. She said to him that she was pining away, and that she wished to go into the mountain. It was not the grass that was lacking; it was not the rope that was too short. M. Seguin told her that the wolf would eat her, but she said she would butt him, she would fight with him all night. But M. Seguin said he would save her in spite of herself, and he shut his goat into a stable and locked the door securely. But he forgot the window, and the goat ran away. The old fir trees welcomed her. The chestnut trees caressed her, the golden broom smelled sweet. The whole mountain received her like a queen. It was there that there was grass, fine and sweet! And the wild flowers overflowed with juices! She

wallowed in the fallen leaves; she ran (*courir*) through the bushes; she was afraid of nothing. If the torrents splashed her with foam, she stretched herself out on a rock and dried herself in the sun. Suddenly it was evening. The fields disappeared in the mist. You could see no longer anything but the smoke of M. Seguin's cottage. There was a howl, and she thought of the wolf. Then M. Seguin blew his horn in the valley. She heard it and had a mind to return, but she remembered the stake and the rope, and thought it would be better to stay. There was a noise in the leaves, and turning round she saw the wolf. There he was on his haunches. He knew he would eat her, and was in no hurry. She remembered the story of another goat of M. Seguin, and being a brave goat, she said to herself that she would not let herself be eaten at once. She had no hope of killing the wolf, but she assumed a defensive attitude. The fight lasted all night. She forced the wolf to retreat more than ten times. The stars danced in the sky, and she said to herself, "If I only hold out till daylight!" The stars died out on the horizon; a hoarse cock crowed in the valley; the wolf ate the poor little goat.

EXERCISE VIII.

(La patte de dindon, pp. 416-19.)

A. 1. Do you need a lesson from me? 2. He would like to cure us of it. 3. They were ten years old. 4. We had a large sum, which was intended to pay for our breakfast. 5. Do you still remember his name? 6. Their name is Couture. 7. The object is composed of what is called a *tibia*. 8. He looked as if he were walking. 9. Will the fingers open and shut? 10. How can you make it move? 11. If you go to the theatre, will you follow the development of the drama? 12. A dazzling brightness passed before our eyes. 13. Did you think you were present at a miracle? 14. You are older and sharper than we. 15. We withdrew. 16. Did you go away too? 17. We shall soon learn the way to do it. 18. What fun we shall have! 19. Give it to us, we beg of you. 20. Won't you give it to us? 21. We'll give you ten cents for it. 22. He is making game of us. 23. How much

did they want for it? 24. He ran after us again. 25. How they must have got on in the world! 26. How they know the human heart! 27. He knows himself no longer. 28. Put a cent into my hand. 29. He is a business man. 30. Do not rush after it. 31. That does not amuse me now at all. 32. Disenchantment seizes me. 33. The prospect of three weeks of dry bread did not amuse me. 34. These traits of character will not awaken again in you. 35. People have often called the feelings of children puerilities. 36. The hearts where passions grow are the same. 37. The best way of guiding a boy is to observe him. 38. It is useful to laugh at one's self now and then. 39. Sons are not always like their fathers.

B. Ernest was at school on a Monday. He had fifteen cents which he had brought back from home to pay for his breakfast. On his return he found one of his comrades who had a fine turkey's foot. When his comrade said to him to come and see, he ran up. His comrade, by a movement of his hand, was opening and closing the fingers like the fingers of a human hand. He stood amazed every time the four fingers opened and closed. How could the dead foot move? The comrade was shrewder than he, and when he saw Ernest's great enthusiasm he put the turkey's foot back into his pocket. Ernest could stand it no longer. He begged his comrade to give him the dead foot. His comrade told him to be gone. "If you will not give it to me, will you sell it to me?" He offered his comrade five cents for it, then ten cents, and then twenty cents. But the comrade demanded forty cents. After a few seconds he put fifteen cents into his comrade's hand, and wrote out a note for twenty-five cents for the remainder. After a couple of minutes he knew the secret as well as his comrade. For a couple of minutes it amused him highly. But soon it amused him no longer. Sadness and regret came, and then bitterness and anger. After a few minutes he seized the turkey's foot and threw it over the wall, so as never to see it any more. The recollection of this often comes back to him. He finds in himself again the child with the turkey's foot. And that turkey's foot has often been of great service to him. In the midst of a foolish action, he stops and says to himself, "Will you always be the same?"

EXERCISE IX.

(Hortibus, pp. 419-22.)

A. 1. It was a holiday at the school. 2. The hammers were making a greater noise than all the rest. 3. They rose up to listen. 4. No one stopped at his door. 5. Are you packing your trunk? 6. They will appear every fifteen minutes. 7. If he were to show the tip of his nose, I should close the door. 8. Are you going away? 9. Let them go away too. 10. We are not waiting for the doctor, or the nurse. 11. The father came in circumspectly, the mother came in briskly, the little girl came in on tiptoe. 12. How long has it pained you? 13. On washing days the mother used to make hearth-cakes. 14. Is the platform in the college or in the open air? 15. I hear hurried steps. 16. Let us not go there. 17. There was no more room on the platform. 18. They gazed affectionately on their child. 19. Please go and see who are there. 20. The colonel had a hat with a plume. 21. The speech of the *sous-préfet* was on a bit of paper rolled round his finger. 22. We could not hear a word of it. 23. It was only a monotonous hum. 24. The certificate was pasted inside. 25. The principal's signature was there. 26. We saw the academic palm-wreath in the form of a head-piece. 27. Did you make a mistake in your Latin prose? 28. No, my paper was perfect. 29. Your paper was bristling with corrections. 30. Your paper contained (*contenir*) this frightful error—"hortibus." 31. The master underlined it three times with red ink. 32. The awful word was posted on the wall. 33. His lips moved, he called his mother. 34. Hortibus had vanished (*s'évanouir*). 35. It was in the land of dreams. 36. Good-bye to Hortibus. 37. Both have come. 38. The winner received his book. 39. They put the wreath on his brow. 40. Are you better? 41. Yes, I am much better. 42. The open air, walks, and exercise will cure you, but above all no Latin prose.

B. Vacation is a word that smells as sweet as a bouquet of flowers! The decorators are busy putting up the drapery. There are people everywhere, jostling one another (*se bousculer*) in the halls and stairways. A platform has been erected for the distribution of the prizes. But there is one little sick

boy in the sick-ward who is awaiting some one. The doctor comes in great haste and goes away, and the nurse also. But they are not the ones the little patient is waiting for. He is awaiting some country-people—a man, a woman, and a young girl. There they come! They enter the sick-ward. They clasp his hands and embrace him. They ask what is the matter with him. He had had a heavy feeling in his head since the Latin prose paper. But it would soon be gone. As they chatted, a murmur rose from the platform in the court. The father and little sister went down to it. The mother and little Tiennet (Stevey) stayed. She said to him that if he slept a little it would cure him. But how could he fall asleep, with the hubbub under the window! The platform was full. The colonel was there, and the *sous-préfet* in his dress-coat, all embroidered with silver. There were so many prizes,—three piles of books and a mountain of wreaths! The brass-band blared forth and everybody applauded. The *sous-préfet* rose, but not a word was heard of his speech. Then a black gown arose with his sermon in his hand. He hummed away, and the mother fell asleep. Tiennet became impatient. Would he have the Latin prose prize? The beautiful, gilt-edged book was in the pile. But he could not see the winner's name. And he fell asleep too. He dreamed that he had made a frightful barbarism in his Latin prose, and that another had won the first prize. The awful word "hortibus" haunted him. It danced before him in a thousand forms (*multiplié* or *en mille formes*). It stuck out its tongue and made grimaces at him. But when Tiennet opened his eyes, there was no more "hortibus." The father and little sister brought up the prize and laid it on the little sick boy's bed. The doctor came too, and said the boy was better, the wreath on the brow had worked wonders, the open air would complete the cure, but, said he, "no Latin prose!"

EXERCISE X.

(Chagrin d'un vieux forçat, pp. 423-4.)

A. 1. Did Yves not go to conduct the convicts? 2. The convict was seventy at least. 3. Whom did you take away with you? 4. Why did you enter into conversation with him? 5. It was to pass the time. 6. They did not have bad

faces. 7. Does he wear spectacles? 8. People did not want anything to do with me. 9. He had stolen a carter's whip. 10. He would not consent to listen to Yves. 11. The cage and the sparrow were his most precious possessions. 12. He had tamed the sparrow and it knew his voice. 13. If he has to build a cage fit for the journey, he will procure wood. 14. He will paint it, so that it may be pretty. 15. Do you remember the very words of Yves? 16. He will eat coarse bread like any other bird. 17. They embarked for the journey. 18. Will that be of any use to him? 19. You must take it with you. 20. Big tears run down his cheeks. 21. The cage door opened. 22. Was the bird frightened? 23. The poor bird struggled and died. 24. It was carried away in the wake of the ship. 25. He applied to me. 26. That would never occur to him. 27. We staid silent in our place. 28. Did you not feel dreadfully alone? 29. Tears dimmed their sight. 30. Did they laugh to see the old man weep? 31. Will you not keep the cage? 32. This cage was made for the little bird. 33. He wished to leave me this legacy. 34. We did not wish to pain the old man. 35. He seemed to despise the thing.

B. The transport-ship was about to sail for New Caledonia, and Yves was taking some convicts to it with his gunboat. Amongst the convicts was an old man who had a sparrow in a cage. He had been arrested for the fifth or sixth time. He had to eat and he had no trade, and so (*par conséquent*) he had stolen a bag of potatoes. He said they might have let him die in France instead of sending him away off there. He had obtained permission to take away his sparrow. And then he had got wood and old wire and green paint, and he had made a cage for the sparrow. The sparrow had only the dark-coloured bread of the prisons to eat, but he seemed happy, and hopped about like any other bird. But during the passage to the transport-ship the bird flew away and fell into the sea. It was a moment of sorrow for the convict. He saw his bird struggle and die, and could do nothing for it. The first impulse was to ask for help, but the impulse was arrested by the consciousness of his personal degradation. Nobody would have pity on his sparrow; nobody would listen to his request. Who would stop the ship to pick up again a

convict's drowning bird! Then he watched the poor little body grow more distant on the sea foam, and he felt himself very much alone. The bird was no longer in the cage, and so he handed it to Yves, who had listened to his story. And Yves, not wishing to seem to despise the thing which had cost the old convict so much work, accepted the gift.

EXERCISE XI.

(L'Avare, pp. 425-7.)

Harpagon is a miser. Valère is his steward, and Maître Jacques is his cook and coachman. The miser is going to give a supper, and has invited eight or ten people. He wishes good cheer, but does not wish to give much money. He thinks that a clever man can make good cheer with little money. Valère, the steward, says the same thing. Ten people have been invited, but the miser says that if there is enough to eat for eight, there will be plenty for ten. There is nothing more hurtful to men than to eat to excess. Frugality must rule in the repasts we give, and one must remember the maxim, "We should eat to live, and not live to eat." Harpagon will have these words cut in letters of gold on his mantel-piece. Maître Jacques will not fill the table with soups, *entrées* and roasts, but with those things of which people eat sparingly. Then the miser addresses the coachman, tells him to clean the carriage, and have the horses ready to drive to the fair. But Harpagon makes the poor brutes observe such strict fasting that they cannot walk. Poor Maître Jacques has pity on his neighbour. It breaks his heart to see his horses suffer. They cannot drag themselves along, and he has not the heart to whip them.

EXERCISE XII.

(Waterloo, pp. 428-31).

A. 1. There were three thousand five hundred of us. 2. The light cavalry was supporting them. 3. We did not wear helmets. 4. The cavalry descended like a battering-ram of bronze, so to speak. 5. A cloud of grape-shot burst at their right. 6. Do you hear that mighty stamping? 7.

Nothing like it will ever be seen. 8. Murat had been at the taking of the redoubt of the Moskowa, but he was lacking at Waterloo. 9. Something like these stories appears in the epics of another age. 10. The infantry was taking aim at the cavalry. 11. The English listened to that tide rising. 12. Three thousand shouted, "Long live the Emperor." 13. There was an awful noise like that of an earthquake. 14. We have just noticed a ditch. 15. The second rank forced the first into the gulf. 16. The horses overturned and crushed the riders. 17. There was no way of retreat. 18. Fifteen hundred men were buried there. 19. It was a grave into which many other dead bodies were thrown on the day after the battle. 20. Did he examine the ground? 21. He asked a question of the peasant. 22. He was not warned by the peasant. 23. Napoleon's end came from a peasant's shake of the head. 24. It is time for Napoleon to fall. 25. Napoleon by himself counts for more than all others. 26. The moral order, like the material order, depends on principles.

B. There were eleven hundred and ninety-seven of them, and they had behind them one hundred and eighty lancers. At nine o'clock the bugles sounded and all the bands played. They came and took their place in the second line, where they had two iron wings, Kellermann on the left and Milhaud on the right. Then was seen a great sight. All that cavalry began to move. Like one man it came down the hill of la Belle-Alliance, disappeared in the valley and, reappearing on the other side, ascended the dreadful slope of Mont-Saint-Jean. There were two columns of them. Like two great serpents of steel they stretched out towards the plateau. Nothing like it was ever seen. The mass had become a monster. Through a great smoke you could see a pell-mell of helmets, swords, and of the rumps of horses, and above them the cuirasses, like the scales on the hydra. It was like a vision of Titans climbing Olympus. Twenty-six battalions of infantry were waiting for the twenty-six squadrons of cavalry. The infantry could not see the cavalry, but it could hear the noise of the horses, the rattle of the armour and the clanking of the swords. Then suddenly the helmets, the trumpeters, the standards and the horses appeared on the crest of the plateau. The cuirassiers arrived at the crest, and suddenly

they saw between themselves and the English the hollow road of Ohain. It was a frightful ravine, two fathoms deep. Horses and riders fell into that grave and crushed one another. When the abyss was full of men and horses, the others marched on them and passed over. Napoleon did not see this ravine when he ordered the charge, and the peasant of whom he asked the question replied that there was no hollow road. Why was it not possible that Napoleon should win the battle? Because a new series of facts was preparing. The moment had come for that man to fall. His weight was disturbing the equilibrium of human destiny. Reeking blood, cemeteries, mothers' tears were complaining. Napoleon's fall was settled.

VOCABULARY.

FRENCH-ENGLISH.

A.

a [a], 3 sg. pres. indic. *avoir.*
a [a], to, towards, at, for, in, into, around, by, with, from ; — *votre montre*, by your watch.
abaisser [abɛse], to lower ; *s'*—, to lower one's self, fall, sink, be lowered.
abandonner [abɑ̃dɔne], to abandon, forsake.
abattre [abatr], to throw down, knock down, cast down, dishearten ; *abattu*, p.p., disheartened, discouraged, depressed.
abécédaire [abesedɛːr], m., primer, spelling-book.
abîme [abiːm], m., abyss.
abondamment [abɔ̃damɑ̃], abundantly.
abondant [abɔ̃dɑ̃], abundant.
abord (d') [d abɔːr], at first, first (of all), at the outset.
abreuver [abrœve], to water, fill, soak.
bri [abri], m., shelter, cover ; *à l'— de*, in the shelter of.
briter [abrite], to shelter, shield.
bsorber [apsɔrbe], to absorb, engross.
bsurde [apsyrd], absurd.
buser [abyze], to make a bad use (of, *de*), abuse.
cadémique [akademik], academic.
ccent [aksɑ̃], m., accent, tone.
ccepter [aksɛpte], to accept.
ccident [aksidɑ̃], m., accident, incident.
cclimater [aklimɑte], to acclimatize ; *s'*—, to become acclimatized.
accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe], to accompany.
accorder [akɔrde], to grant, concede.
accoster [akɔste], to come alongside (nav.).
accoupler [akuple], to couple, fasten.
accourir [akuriːr], § 164, to run or hasten up ; run or hasten to one's aid.
accourut [akury], 3 sg. p. def. *accourir.*
accoutumer [akutyme], to accustom, habituate.
accusateur [akyzatœːr], accusing.
accuser [akyze], to accuse, blame, reproach.
achat [aʃa], m., purchase.
acheter [aʃte], § 158, to buy, purchase.
acheminer (s') [s aʃmine], to take one's way, set out.
achever [aʃve], § 158, to finish, complete ; — *de* + infin., to finish.
acier [asje], m., steel.
acquérir [akeriːr], § 162, to acquire.
acquis [aki], p.p. *acquérir.*
acteur [aktœːr], m., actor.
action [aksjɔ̃], f., action.
actuellement [aktɥɛlmɑ̃], now, at this very time.
addition [adisjɔ̃], f., bill, reckoning.
adieu [adjø], m., good-bye, farewell.
adjurer [adʒyre], to adjure, beseech.
admettre [admɛtr], § 198, to admit.

admirablement [admirabləmɑ̃], admirably.
admirer [admire], to admire.
admission [admisjɔ̃], f., admittance.
adosser (s') [s adose], to lean one's back (against, *à, contre*).
adresse [adrɛs], f., address, skill, dexterity.
adresser [adrɛse], to address; *s'*—, to address one's self, be addressed or directed, apply, have recourse.
adversaire [advɛrsɛːr], m., adversary, opponent.
affaire [afɛːr], f., affair, business, matter; pl., things, business.
affectueux [afɛktɥø], affectionate.
affiche [afiʃ], f., placard, poster.
afficher [afiʃe], to post up.
affliger [afliʒe], § 156; to afflict, vex, grieve; *s'*—, to grieve, be troubled, be sorrowful, fret.
affreux [afrø], frightful, horrible.
afin de [afɛ̃ də] + infin., in order to.
afin que [afɛ̃ kə], in order that, that (takes subjunctive).
âge [ɑːʒ], m., age, century, time; *en — de*, of an age to; *quel — a-t-il?*, how old is he?
âgé [ɑʒe], aged, old.
agile [aʒil], nimble, swift.
agir [aʒiːr], to act, operate, work, move, manage.
agiter (s') [s aʒite], to stir, move, be or grow restless.
agneau [aɲo], m., lamb.
agréable [agreabl], agreeable, pleasant.
ah! [ɑ *or* ɑː], ah!, hah!, oh!
ai [e], 1 sg. pres. ind. *avoir*.
aide [ɛːd], m., helper; *— de camp*, aide-de-camp.
aider [ɛde], to aid, help, assist.
aie [ɛ], 1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impve. *avoir*.
aigu [ɛgy], acute; shrill, penetrating.
aile [ɛl], f., wing.
aimable [ɛmabl], kind, amiable.
aimer [ɛme], to love, like; *— mieux*, to prefer.
aîné [ene], eldest.
ainsi [ɛ̃si], thus, so; *— que*, as, just as; *pour — dire*, so to say.
air [ɛːr], m., air, atmosphere; air, look, appearance; *à l' —, en l' —*, in the air; *le grand —*, the open air; *en plein —*, in the open air; *avoir l' — de*, to seem to.
airain [ɛrɛ̃], m., brass, bronze.
aise [ɛːz], f., gladness; ease, convenience; *à ton —*, comfortably, at your ease, just as you like, suit yourself.
aisé [ɛze], easy.
aisément [ɛzemɑ̃], easily.
ait [ɛ], 3 sg. pres. subj. *avoir*.
ajouter [aʒute], to add.
Albret (d') [d albrɛ]; *Henri* — father of Henry IV. of France.
Allah [allɑ], m., Allah.
allemand [almɑ̃], adj., German; *l'*—, m., German (the language).
aller [ale], § 160, to go; — + infin. to go to, go and; *y — de bon cœur* to go at (a thing) with spirit; *s'en —*, to go away, depart, set out; *allez-vous-en*, go away; *qu'elle s'en aille!*, let her go (away)!; *allons!*, come!, courage!, up!, arise!; *— à la rencontre de*, to go to meet; *— chercher*, go for, go and get; — *trouver*, go and find, go to; — (of garments) fit.
allonger [alɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to lengthen, stretch out; *— un coup*, to deal or administer a blow; *s'*—, to stretch out, extend.
allumer [alyme], to light.
alors [alɔːr], then.
Alsace [alzas], n. pr. f., Alsatia.
alternatif [altɛrnatif], alternate, alternating.
amadou [amadu], m., tinder, punk; *babines d'*—, red lips (of animals).
ambition [ɑ̃bisjɔ̃], f., ambition.
âme [ɑːm], f., soul, heart.
amener [amne], § 158, to bring, lead.

américain [amerikɛ̃], American.
amertume [amɛrtym], f., bitterness.
ami [ami], m., friend; *mon —*, my good fellow.
amie [ami], f., friend, loved one.
amical [amikal], friendly.
amirauté [amirote], f., admiralty.
amitié [amitje], f., friendship, affection.
amour [amuːr], m. in sing. and f. in pl., love, affection; *un — de petite chèvre*, a dear little goat.
amoureux [amurø], enamoured, in love; *— à la folie*, madly in love.
amusant [amyzɑ̃], amusing.
amusement [amyzmɑ̃], m., amusement.
amuser [amyze], to amuse; *s' —*, to amuse or enjoy one's self, play.
an [ɑ̃], m., year; *avoir quarante —s*, to be forty years old, forty years of age; *le jour de l'An*, New Year's day.
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃], ancient, old; former, *un —*, m., an ancient.
âne [ɑːn], m., ass, donkey.
anecdote [anɛgdɔt], f., anecdote.
Angelus [ɑ̃ʒelys], m., Angelus (a prayer in honour of the Incarnation), ringing bell for ditto.
anglais [ɑ̃glɛ], adj., English; n. m., Englishman; *l'—*, m., English.
anglaise [ɑ̃glɛːz], f., running-hand (of writing).
angle [ɑ̃ːgl], m., angle, corner.
animal [animal], m., animal, beast.
animer (s') [s anime], to become animated, become lively.
anneau [ano], m., ring.
année [ane], f., year, twelvemonth; *l'— dernière*, last year.
annoncer [anɔ̃se], § 156, to announce, usher in; *s'—*, to announce one's self, be indicated, be evident.
annotation [anɔtɑsjɔ̃], f., annotation, note.
antichambre [ɑ̃tiʃɑ̃ːbr], f., antechamber.
antique [ɑ̃tik], ancient.
août [u], m., August.
apercevoir [apɛrsəvwaːr], § 213, to perceive, see, observe, notice; *s'—*, ditto.
aperçoit [apɛrswa], 3 sg. pres. indic. *apercevoir*.
aperçu [apɛrsy], p.p. *apercevoir*.
aperçut [apɛrsy], 3 sg. p. def. *apercevoir*.
apôtre [apoːtr], m., apostle.
apparaître [aparɛːtr], § 188, to appear.
appartement [apartəmɑ̃], m., apartments, suite of rooms.
appartenir [apartəniːr], § 177, to belong (to, *à*).
appel [apɛl], m., call.
appeler [aple], § 158, to call; call in, summon; name; *s'—*, to be called, named; *comment s'appelle-t-il?*, what is his name?; *il s'appelle Jean Bart*, his name is Jean Bart.
applaudir [aplodiːr], to applaud, clap (the hands).
appliquer [aplike], to apply; *s'—*, to apply one's self, work, set to work, take pains.
apporter [apɔrte], to bring (to, *à*).
apprendre [aprɑ̃ːdr], § 202, to learn; teach.
apprenti [aprɑ̃ti], m., apprentice.
apprêter [aprɛte], to prepare, get ready.
apprivoiser [aprivwaze], to tame (animals).
approche [aprɔʃ], f., approach.
approcher [aprɔʃe], intr., to approach, draw near; *—de*, ditto; *s'—*, to approach, draw near (to, *de*).
appuyer [apɥije], § 157, to prop, support, lean, rest, press on; *appuyé*, p.p., leaning or supported (on, *à*); *s'—*, to support one's self, lean.
après [aprɛ], after, next (to); adv., afterwards, after.

après-demain [aprɛ dmɛ̃], the day after to-morrow.
après-midi [aprɛ midi], m. f., afternoon.
aquilon [akilɔ̃], m., north-wind.
arabe [arab], Arabian ; *Arabe*, m., (an) Arabian.
Arabie [arabi], f., Arabia.
arbre [arbr], m., tree.
arbuste [arbyst], m., shrub.
Arc de Triomphe [ark də triɔ̃ːf], name of an arch in Paris.
arçon [arsɔ̃], m., saddle-bow.
ardent [ardɑ̃], fiery, eager, intense.
ardeur [ardœːr], f., heat, burning heat.
argent [arʒɑ̃], m., silver, money.
argument [argymɑ̃], m., argument.
arithmétique [aritmetik], f., arithmetic.
arme [arm], f., arm, weapon ; *aux —s!* to arms!
armée [arme], f., army.
armer [arme], to arm, equip, fit out, provide ; *s'*—, to arm, fortify, secure one's self.
armoire [armwaːr], f., cupboard, clothes-press.
Arnault [arno], French author, b. 1766, d. 1834.
arracher [araʃe], to pull out, snatch (from), extract (a tooth).
arranger [arɑ̃ʒe], § 156, to arrange.
arrêter [arɛte], to stop, delay, stay, check, arrest ; *s'*—, to stop, pause, give heed (to, *à*) ; *du monde arrêté*, people standing.
arrière [arjɛːr], m., back part ; *en*—, back(wards).
arriver [arive], to arrive (at, *à*, *dans*, *sur*) ; come, come to, come up ; happen, occur ; *les voilà qui arrivent*, see them coming (there).
arroser [aroze], to sprinkle, water (a garden, etc.).
article [artikl], m., article.
articuler [artikyle], to articulate, utter.
artillerie [artijri], f., artillery.
as [a], 2 sg. pres. indic. *avoir*.
ascension [asɑ̃sjɔ̃], f., ascension ; *la fête de l'Ascension*, Ascension day.
assassiner [asasine], to assassinate, murder.
asseoir(s') [s aswaːr], § 215, to sit down, seat one's self, be seated.
asseyant(s') [s asɛjɑ̃], pres. part. *s'asseoir*.
assez [ase], enough, sufficiently ; pretty, rather, quite, very ; — *bon*, good enough.
assied(s') [s asje], 3 sg. pres. indic. *s'asseoir*.
assiette [asjɛt], f., plate.
assis [asi], p.p. *s'asseoir*, seated, sitting.
assistant [asistɑ̃], m., person present, bystander.
assister [asiste], to be present (at, *à*), look upon.
assit(s') [s asi], 3 sg. past def. *s'asseoir*.
associé [asɔsje], m., partner.
assommer [asɔme], to knock down, beat to death.
assomption [asɔ̃psjɔ̃], f., assumption ; *la fête de l'Assomption*, Assumption day.
assujettir [asyʒetiːr], to subdue, enthral, subject.
assurer [asyre], to assure.
astracan [astrakɑ̃], astrakhan (a kind of fur).
attacher [ataʃe], to fasten, tie, make fast.
attendre [atɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to wait ; wait for, expect.
attentif [atɑ̃tif], attentive.
attention [atɑ̃sjɔ̃], f., attention ; *faire* —, to pay attention.
attentivement [atɑ̃tivmɑ̃], attentively.
attestation [atɛstɑsjɔ̃], f., certificate.
attirail [atiraːj], m., apparatus, gear, paraphernalia.
attirer [atire], to attract, draw.
attrait [atrɛ], m., attraction, charm.
au [o], contr. of *à* + *le*.

aube [oːb], f., dawn.
aubépine [obepin], f., hawthorn.
auberge [ɔbɛrʒ], f., inn.
aubergiste [ɔbɛrʒist], m., innkeeper.
aucun [okœ̃], any, no ; *ne . . .* —, no, none, no one.
au-dessus [odsy], above ; — *de*, above.
audience [odjɑ̃ːs], f., audience, interview.
Auguste [ɔgyst], m., Augustus.
aujourd'hui [ɔʒurdɥi], to-day, now ; — *en huit*, a week from to-day.
auparavant [oparavɑ̃], adv., before.
auprès de [oprɛ də], into the presence of, to.
auquel [okɛl], contr. of *à* + *lequel*.
aura [ɔra], 3 sg. fut. *avoir*.
aurai [ɔre], 1 sg. fut. *avoir*.
auraient [ɔrɛ], 3 pl. condl. *avoir ;* — *eu* (obs. form), would have.
aurais [ɔrɛ], 1 sg. condl. *avoir*.
aurait [ɔrɛ], 3 sg. condl. *avoir*.
auras [ɔra], 2 sg. fut. indic. *avoir*.
aurez [ɔre], 2 pl. fut. *avoir*.
auriez [ɔrje], 2 pl. condl. *avoir*.
auront [ɔrɔ̃], 3 pl. fut. *avoir*.
ausculter [oskylte], to auscultate, sound (lungs, etc.).
aussi [osi], too, also, likewise ; as (in comparison) ; — *bien*, besides ; — *bien que*, as well as.
aussitôt [osito], immediately, forthwith, at once.
austère [ostɛːr], austere, severe, rigorous.
autant [otɑ̃], as *or* so much, as *or* so many ; — *de*, ditto ; *d'* — *plus*, the more so ; *bien* —, quite as much.
automne [otɔn], m., autumn ; *en* —, in autumn.
autour de [otuːr də], prep., around, round.
autre [otr], other ; *les* —*s*, others, the others, other people ; *d'*—*s*, others ; *l'un et l'*—, both ; *les uns les* —*s*, one another, both, all ; *nous* —*s Français*, we Frenchmen ; *bien* — *chose*, something very different.
autrefois [otrəfwa], formerly, once.
autrement [otrəmɑ̃], otherwise ; — *encornées que toi*, with horns very different from yours.
aux [o], contr. of *à* + *les*.
avaient [avɛ], 3 pl. impf. indic. *avoir*.
avait [avɛ], 3 sg. impf. indic. *avoir*.
avance [avɑ̃ːs], f., advance ; *par* —, beforehand.
avancer [avɑ̃se], § 156, to advance, forward ; *s'*—, to advance, move forward ; *avancé*, advanced ; proficient.
avant [avɑ̃], before ; *en* —, forward ; *la tête en* —, head first, head foremost ; — *de*, before.
avant que [avɑ̃ kə], conj. + subj., before.
avare [avaːr], m., miser ; *l'Avare*, a comedy by Molière.
avec [avɛk], with ; — *le temps qu'il fait*, in such weather as this.
avenir [avniːr], m., future.
aventure [avɑ̃tyːr], f., adventure ; *d'*—, by chance.
aventurer (s') [s avɑ̃tyre], to venture.
avenue [avny], f., avenue.
avertir [avɛrtiːr], to warn, inform ; *averti*, warned, put on one's guard.
avez [ave], 2 sg. pres. indic., *avoir*.
aviser [avize], to consider, take counsel.
avoir [avwaːr], § 154, to have ; obtain, receive, get ; *y* —, impers., *il y a*, there is, there are ; *il y avait*, there was, etc. ; *il y a huit jours*, a week ago ; *il y eut*, there was, etc. ; *il eut le moulin*, he obtained, received, the mill ; *cet enfant a quelque chose*, there is something the matter with that child ; *qu'est-ce que vous avez ?*, what is the matter with you ? ; *il a dix ans*, he is ten

years old, ten years of age; *vous n'avez qu'à parler*, you have only to speak; — *raison*, to be (in the) right; *en* — *à*, be angry with.
avons [avɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *avoir*.
avouer [avwe], to confess, declare, avow, acknowledge.
avril [avril], m., April.
ayant [ɛjɑ̃], pres. part. *avoir*.
ayez [ɛje], 2 pl. impve. *avoir*.
ayons [ɛjɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. subj. *avoir*.

B.

babine [babin], f., lip (of animals); —*s d'amadou*, red lips.
babiole [babjɔl], f., toy, trinket.
bah! [bɑ], pooh! pshaw!
baigner [bɛɲe], tr. to bathe, lave; *se* —, to bathe (intr.).
baiser [bɛze], to kiss.
baiser [bɛze], m., kiss.
baisser [bɛse], to lower, let down, hang (down); — *la tête*, bow down, hang one's head; *se* —, to stoop down, stoop.
balancer [balɑ̃se], § 156, to balance, swing, wave; *se* —, intr., to swing, rock, sway.
banane [banan], f., banana.
banc [bɑ̃], m., bench, seat.
bander [bɑ̃de], to bind up.
banque [bɑ̃:k], f., bank.
banquier [bɑ̃kje], m., banker.
barbarisme [barbarism], m., barbarism.
barbiche [barbiʃ], f., tuft of beard, tufted beard.
barrer [bɑre], to bar, obstruct, block.
Bart (Jean) [ʒɑ̃ ba:r], famous French seaman, b. at Dunkirk 1651, d. 1702.
bas [bɑ], low; *là* —, over there, yonder; *tout* —, in an undertone, to one's self, softly, silently; *en* —, below, at the bottom, down (below), down stairs; *d'en* —, from down below.
Bas-Canada [bɑ kanada], m., Lower Canada.
Bastille [basti:j], f., Bastile.
bataille [batɑ:j], f., battle.
bataillon [batɑjɔ̃], m., battalion, squadron.
bateau [bato], m., boat; *se promener en* —, to go for a boat-ride, row, sail (in a boat).
bâtiment [bɑtimɑ̃], m., building, edifice; ship, vessel.
bâtir [bɑti:r], to build.
bâton [bɑtɔ̃], m., stick; stroke (in learning to write); *coup de*—, blow with a stick.
batterie [batri], f., battery (milit.).
battre [batr], § 180, to beat, strike; thresh; — *des mains*, clap the hands; — *le briquet*, to strike a light with flint and steel; *battu*, beaten, wrought; *se* —, to fight; *battant*, swinging, swinging open, flapping.
bavarder [bavarde], to babble, prattle, gossip.
béant [beɑ̃], gaping.
beau, bel, belle, pl. **beaux, belles** [bo, bɛl, bɛl, bo, bɛl], beautiful, handsome, fine; *au* — *milieu*, in the very midst; *il fait* — (*temps*), it is fine.
beaucoup [boku], much, a great deal, very much, many, very many, a great many; — *de*, ditto.
Bec [bɛk], proper name.
bêcher [bɛʃe], to dig, delve.
becqueter [bɛkte], § 158, to peck.
becquée [bɛke], f., billful.
bel [bɛl], see *beau*.
bélier [belje], m., ram; battering-ram.
belle [bɛl], see *beau*.
bénédiction [benediksjɔ̃], f., benediction.
bénir [beni:r], § 163, to bless.
berçant [bɛrsɑ̃], soothing, somniferous.
bercer [bɛrse], § 156, to rock, lull to sleep.

berger [bɛrʒe], m., shepherd; *chien de* —, shepherd's dog.
Berlin [bɛrlɛ̃], m., Berlin.
besoin [bəzwɛ̃], m., need, necessity; *avoir — de*, to need, be in need of; *vous avez — que je vous aide*, you need my help; *aussi bien nous fera-t-il* —, then besides we shall need him.
bête [bɛːt], f., beast, brute, animal.
bête [bɛːt], stupid.
bêtise [bɛtiːz], f., stupidity, folly.
bibliothèque [bibliɔtɛːk], f., library.
bicyclette [bisiklɛt], f., bicycle.
bien [bjɛ̃], well, very, indeed, really, I am sure, surely, of course, quite; — *plus*, much more; *j'ai — le temps*, I have plenty of time; *être* —, to be well, be well off, be comfortable, be happy; — *que* (+ subj.), though, although; *ou* —, or indeed, or on the contrary; — *de*, much, a great deal of.
bien [bjɛ̃], m., good.
biens [bjɛ̃], m. pl., estate, property, goods, wealth, possessions; blessings.
bientôt [bjɛ̃to], soon, shortly, presently.
bienvenu [bjɛ̃vny], adj., welcome; *être* —, to be welcome.
billet [bijɛ], m., note, letter; promissory note; ticket; — *d'entrée*, ticket (of admission).
bique [bik], f., she-goat.
bise [biːz], f., north wind.
bizarre [bizaːr], odd, singular, strange.
blanc [blɑ̃], white; *le* —, n. m., the white.
Blanche [blɑ̃ːʃ], pr. n. f., Blanche.
Blanquette [blɑ̃kɛt], f., 'Whitey.'
blé [ble], m., wheat, wheat-field.
blême [blɛːm], pale, pallid.
blesser [blɛse], to wound.
blessure [blɛsyːr], f., wound.
bleu [blø], blue.
bloquer [blɔke], to blockade.
Blücher [blykɛːr *or* blyʃɛːr], Prussian general, ally of Wellington at Waterloo.
bœuf [bœf], m., ox.
boire [bwaːr], § 181, to drink; *donner pour* —, to give a gratuity, a tip (colloq.).
bois [bwɑ], m., wood(s), forest.
bois de Boulogne [bwɑ də bulɔɲ], m., name of a park in the suburbs of Paris.
boiserie [bwazri], f., wainscoting.
boîte [bwaːt], f., box.
bon [bɔ̃], good; kind; *sentir* —, to smell sweet.
Bonaparte [bɔnapart], (Napoleon) Bonaparte.
bonbon [bɔ̃bɔ̃], m., bonbon, candy.
bond [bɔ̃], m., bound, skip.
bondissement [bɔ̃dismɑ̃], m., bounding, leaping.
bonheur [bɔnœːr], m., happiness; good fortune, (good) luck.
bonjour [bɔ̃ʒuːr], m., good morning, good day.
bonne [bɔn], f., maid, servant, nursery-maid.
bonnet [bɔnɛ], m., cap.
bonsoir [bɔ̃swaːr], m., good evening.
bonté [bɔ̃te], f., goodness; — *divine!*, goodness gracious!
bord [bɔːr], m., shore, bank, margin, edge; board (nav.); *à — de*, on board of.
borner [bɔrne], to limit; *se* —, to be limited.
botte [bɔt], f., boot.
botter [bɔte], to furnish with boots; *botté*, booted, with boots on; "*Le Chat Botté*," "Puss in Boots;" *se* —, to put on one's boots.
bouc [buk], m., he-goat.
bouche [buʃ], f., mouth; *à la* —, in one's mouth.
boucher [buʃe], to stop, stop up.
boue [bu], f., mud, mire.
bouger [buʒe], § 156, intr., to stir, budge.
boulanger [bulɑ̃ʒe], m., baker.
bouleverser [bulvɛrse], to overthrow, overturn, upset, agitate.
bouquet [bukɛ], m., nosegay, bouquet.

bourdonner [burdɔne], to buzz, hum.
bourrer [bure], to stuff, fill.
bousculade [buskylad], f., jostling, hustling, confusion.
bout [bu], m., end, tip; edge, extremity; *au — de*, at the end of.
boutique [butik], f., shop.
branche [brɑ̃ːʃ], f., branch.
brandir [brɑ̃diːr], to brandish.
bras [bra], m., arm.
brave [braːv], brave, gallant; good, kind, honest, worthy.
bravement [bravmɑ̃], bravely, courageously.
braver [brave], to defy, brave.
brèche [brɛʃ], f., breach.
brigade [brigad], f., brigade.
brigand [brigɑ̃], m., brigand, thief.
briller [brije], to shine, sparkle.
brin [brɛ̃], m., blade, sprig.
briquet [brikɛ], m., steel (for striking a light); *battre le —*, to strike a light.
brise [briːz], f., breeze.
briser [brize], to break, break or dash to pieces, shatter.
broder [brɔde], to embroider; *brodé*, p. part., embroidered.
brodequin [brɔdkɛ̃], m., (laced-) boot.
bronze [brɔ̃ːz], m., bronze.
brosse [brɔs], f., brush.
brosser [brɔse], to brush.
brouillard [brujaːr], m., fog, mist, haze.
brouiller [bruje], to confuse; bedim (the sight).
broussailles [brusɑːj], f. pl., brushwood, bushes.
brouter [brute], to browse.
broyer [brwɑje], § 157, to grind, crush to pieces.
bruit [brɥi], m., noise, sound; fame, reputation; *faire tant de —*, to attract so much attention.
brûlant [brylɑ̃], burning hot.
brûler [bryle], to burn.
brume [brym], f., fog, mist, haze.
brusque [brysk], blunt.
brusquement [bryskmɑ̃], bluntly, roughly, abruptly; suddenly.
brutalement [brytalmɑ̃], brutally, rudely.
bruyère [bryjɛːr], f., heath, heather.
bu [by], p. part. *boire*.
buissière [bɥisjɛːr], f., thicket, bush.
buisson [bɥisɔ̃], m., bush, thicket.
bureau [byro], m., office.
but [byt *or* by], object, end, goal; *arriver à son —*, attain his object.
buvais [byvɛ], 1 sg. impf. indic. *boire*.

C.

ça [sa], (for *cela*) that.
ç'a été [s a ete], for *ça* or *ce a été*.
çà [sa], here; *— et là*, here and there, up and down, hither and thither.
cabinet [kabinɛ], m., cabinet; office, private office.
cabrer (se) [sə kɑbre], intr. to rear.
cachemire [kaʃmiːr], m., cashmere.
cacher [kaʃe], to hide, conceal; *se —*, to hide one's self.
cadavre [kadɑːvr], m., corpse, dead body.
cadeau [kado], m., present, gift.
café [kafe], m., coffee; coffee-house, restaurant, café.
cage [kaːʒ], f., cage.
cahier [kaje], m., note-book, exercise-book.
caille [kɑːj], f., quail.
caillou [kaju], m., pebble, stone.
caissier [kɛsje], m., cashier.
calculer [kalkyle], to calculate, reckon.
calice [kalis], m., chalice, cup; calyx.
câlin [kɑlɛ̃], adj., wheedling, coaxing.
calme [kalm], m., stillness, calm.
calme [kalm], calm, still.
calmer [kalme], to calm.

calotte [kalɔt], f., cap, skull-cap.
camarade [kamarad], m., f., comrade, playmate.
camp [kɑ̃], m., camp.
campagnard [kɑ̃paɲaːr], m., countryman.
campagne [kɑ̃paɲ], f., country, fields; *à la* —, in the country.
campanule [kɑ̃panyl], f., campanula, bell-flower.
Canada [kanada], m., Canada.
canadien [kanadjɛ̃], Canadian.
canard [kanaːr], m., duck.
caniche [kaniʃ], m., poodle.
canif [kanif], m., penknife.
canon [kanɔ̃], m., cannon.
canonnière [kanɔnjɛːr], f., gunboat.
cantique [kɑ̃tik], m., hymn.
cap [kap], head, obs., except in *de pied en* —, from head to foot.
capitaine [kapitɛn], m., captain.
capitale [kapital], f., capital letter.
capiteux [kapitø], heady, intoxicating.
car [kar], for.
caractère [karaktɛːr], m., character, disposition, temper.
caravane [karavan], f., caravan.
caressant [karɛsɑ̃], kindly, gentle.
caresse [karɛs], f., caress; *faire mille —s à, qq.*, to overwhelm anyone with kindness.
caresser [karɛse], to caress, stroke.
cargaison [kargɛzɔ̃], f., cargo.
carotte [karɔt], f., carrot.
carré [kɑre], m., square.
carrosse [karɔs], m., carriage, coach.
cas [kɑ], m., case.
casaque [kazak], f., jacket.
casque [kask], m., helmet.
casser [kɑːse], to break.
Castille [kastiːj], f., Castile.
catastrophe [katastrɔf], f., catastrophe.
Caucase [kɔkɑːz], m., Caucasus.
cauchemar [kɔʃmaːr], m., nightmare.
cause [koːz], f., cause; *à — de*, because of.
causer [koze], to cause; chat, talk; — *une impression*, to make an impression.
causeur [kozœːr], talkative.
cavalerie [kavalri], f., cavalry; *grosse* —, heavy cavalry.
cavalier [kavalje], m., horseman, rider, trooper.
ce [sə], pron., it, this, that; *c'est pourquoi*, that is why; *c'est nous*, it is we; *ce sont eux*, it is they; *ce qui, ce que*, that which, which, what.
ce, cet, cette, ces [sə, sɛt, sɛt, se], adj., this, that; *ce . . . -là*, that (emphatic).
céans [seɑ̃], here within, in this house.
ceci [səsi], pron., this.
céder [sede], § 158, to yield, give way.
cela [sla], pron., that; — *s'entend*, that is evident; of course.
célébrer [selebre], § 158, to celebrate.
célèbre [selɛbr], celebrated.
celle [sɛl], see *celui*.
celui, celle, ceux, celles [səlɥi, sɛl, sø, sɛl], this or that, this or that one; the one, he, him; — *qui*, the one who, he or him who.
celui-ci [səlɥi si], **celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci**, pron., this, this man, this one, the latter, he (too).
celui-là, etc. [səlɥi la], pron., that, that man, that one, the former, he.
cent [sɑ̃], (a) hundred.
centième [sɑ̃tjɛm], hundredth.
centime [sɑ̃tim], m., the hundredth part of a franc.
centre [sɑ̃ːtr], m., centre.
cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃], yet, nevertheless; still, however, in the meantime, meanwhile; — *que*, while, whilst.
cercle [sɛrkl], m., circle.
cérémonie [seremɔni], f., ceremony.
cerise [səriːz], f., cherry.

cerisier [sərizje], m., cherry-tree.
certain [sɛrtɛ̃], certain.
certes [sɛrt], certainly, surely.
cerveau [sɛrvo], m., brain, mind.
cervelle [sɛrvɛl], f., brains.
cesser [sɛse], to cease, leave off; — *de*, ditto.
ces [se], see *ce*.
cet [sɛt], see *ce*.
cette [sɛt], f. of *ce*.
ceux [sø], m. pl. *celui*.
chacun [ʃakœ̃], pron., each, each one, every one.
chagrin [ʃagrɛ̃], m., sorrow, grief; shagreen.
chaîne [ʃɛːn], f., chain.
chair [ʃɛːr], f., flesh, meat; — *à pâté*, mince-meat; *ne faisant qu'une* —, becoming only an indistinguishable mass of flesh.
chaire [ʃɛːr], f., pulpit, desk (of a teacher).
chaise [ʃɛːz], f., chair.
chaleur [ʃalœːr], f., heat.
chambre [ʃɑ̃ːbr], f., room; *Chambre des députés*, House of Parliament.
chameau [ʃamo], m., camel.
champ [ʃɑ̃], m., field.
Champs-Élysées [ʃɑ̃ːz elize], m. pl., name of certain public gardens in Paris.
chance [ʃɑ̃ːs], f., chance.
changement [ʃɑ̃ʒmɑ̃], m., change; — *de front*, change of front, transformation.
changer [ʃɑ̃ʒe], § 156, to change, alter, transform; *se* —, to change or transform one's self, change (intr.).
chanson [ʃɑ̃sɔ̃], f., song.
chant [ʃɑ̃], m., singing; crowing (of a cock).
chanter [ʃɑ̃te], to sing; chant, intone, play.
chantonnement [ʃɑ̃tɔnmɑ̃], m., humming, singing.
chapeau [ʃapo], m., hat.
chapelier [ʃapəlje], m., hatter; *chez le* —, to *or* at the hatter's.
chapelle [ʃapɛl], f., chapel.
chapitre [ʃapitr], m., chapter.
chaque [ʃak], each, every.
charbonner [ʃarbɔne], to write with charcoal, sketch, scrawl.
charge [ʃarʒ], f., charge, load.
charger [ʃarʒe], § 156, to charge, commission, order, entrust; *se* —, to undertake.
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃], charming.
charmer [ʃarme], to charm, delight; *charmé de*, charmed with, delighted with.
chasse [ʃas], f., chase, hunt, hunting, hunting-party.
chasser [ʃase], to chase, drive away.
chasseur [ʃasœːr], m., light infantry soldier, chasseur.
chat [ʃa], m., cat; "*Le Chat Botté*," "Puss in Boots."
châtaigne [ʃɑtɛɲ], f., chestnut.
châtaignier [ʃɑtɛɲe], m., chestnut-tree.
château [ʃɑto], m., castle, palace.
Chateaubriand [ʃɑtobriɑ̃], French writer, b. 1768, d. 1848.
chaud [ʃo], warm, hot.
chaud [ʃo], m., heat, warmth; *il fait* —, it is warm, hot (of weather, etc.); *avoir* —, to be warm, hot (of living beings).
chaumière [ʃomjɛːr], f., thatched house, cottage, cot.
chaussée [ʃose], f., highway, main road.
chaussures [ʃosyːr], f. pl., shoes, boots.
chauve [ʃoːv], bald; *un* —, a bald man.
chef [ʃɛf], m., chief, commander; — *d'escadre*, rear-admiral.
chemin [ʃəmɛ̃], m., way, road; *grand* —, main road, highway; — *de fer*, railway; — *faisant*, on the way; *en* —, on the way.
cheminée [ʃəmine], f., fire-place; mantel-shelf.
chêne [ʃɛːn], m., oak.
chenille [ʃəniːj], f., caterpillar.

cher [ʃɛːr], dear; beloved; *payer —*, pay dear(ly) for, pay too much for.
chercher [ʃɛrʃe], to seek, search, look for; *aller —*, go for, go and get; *— à*, seek to, try to.
chère [ʃɛːr], f., cheer, entertainment; *faire bonne —*, to provide good cheer, provide a good spread.
chérir [ʃeriːr], to cherish; *chéri*, beloved, cherished, dear.
cheval [ʃəval], m., horse; *à —*, on horseback.
chevet [ʃəvɛ], m., pillow, bolster, the head of a bed; *épée de —*, see *épée*.
cheveu [ʃəvø], m., hair; *cheveux*, pl., hair.
chèvre [ʃɛːvr], f., goat.
chevreau [ʃəvro], m., kid.
chevrette [ʃəvrɛt], f., little goat.
chez [ʃe], to, at, in, into (the house, shop, office, etc., of); with; *aller — le roi*, to go to the king's (palace, court, etc.); *ils étaient — eux*, they were at home; *— moi*, at my house, at home; *— vous*, at your house, at home.
chien [ʃjɛ̃], m., dog; *— de berger*, shepherd's dog; *— danois*, Danish dog, great Dane.
chiffon [ʃifɔ̃], m., rag; strip, piece.
chiffre [ʃifr], m., figure, number.
chimère [ʃimɛːr], f., chimæra (a fabulous beast of antiquity).
chœur [kœːr], m., chorus.
choisir [ʃwaziːr], to choose.
chose [ʃoːz], f., thing, affair, matter; *quelque —*, m. pron., something; *quelque — d'extraordinaire*, something extraordinary, unusual; *la chèvre a quelque —*, there is something the matter with the goat; *bien autre —*, something very different.
chou [ʃu], m., cabbage.
chute [ʃyt], f., fall, downfall.
-ci [si], see *ce*.
Cicéron [siserɔ̃], Cicero.
Cid [sid], *le Cid*, drama by Corneille.
ciel, pl. **cieux** [sjɛl, sjø], m., heaven, heavens, sky.
cimetière [simtjɛːr], cemetery, m.
cinq [sɛ̃ːk], five.
cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt], fifty.
cinquième [sɛ̃kjɛm], fifth.
circonspect [sirkɔ̃spɛ(kt)], circumspect, cautious.
cirque [sirk], m., circus.
cité [site], f., city.
citoyen [sitwajɛ̃], m., citizen.
civilement [sivilmɑ̃], civilly, courteously, politely.
civilisation [sivilizɑsjɔ̃], f., civilisation.
clair [klɛːr], clear, bright, plain.
clair [klɛːr], m., light, clearness; *— de lune*, moonlight.
clair [klɛːr], clearly, plain(ly).
clairon [klɛrɔ̃], m., clarion.
clameur [klamœːr], f., clamour, outcry.
classe [klɑːs], f., class, recitation, lesson, class-room; *manquer la —*, stay away from school, play truant; *faire la —*, give a lesson (to a class), teach (a class).
clef [kle], f., key.
cliquetis [klikti], m., rattle, clicking, jingle.
cloche [klɔʃ], f., bell.
clochette [klɔʃɛt], f., (small) bell.
clos [klo], p. part. *clore*, to close, shut.
clos [klo], m., enclosure, field.
clouer [klue], to nail.
cocher [kɔʃe], m., coachman.
cœur [kœːr], m., heart, heartiness, courage, energy; *de (bon) —*, heartily, fervently; *le — gros*, with a heavy heart.
coin [kwɛ̃], m., corner.
coïncidence [kɔɛ̃sidɑ̃ːns], f., coincidence.
colère [kɔlɛːr], f., anger; *se mettre en —*, to get angry, be angry.
collation [kɔlɑsjɔ̃], f., collation, repast.

collège [kɔlɛːʒ], m., college, school.
collègue [kɔlɛg], m., colleague, mate.
coller [kɔle], to glue, paste.
colline [kɔlin], f., hill.
colonel [kɔlɔnɛl], m., colonel.
colonne [kɔlɔn], f., column; — *épaisse*, close column, in close marching order.
colossal [kɔlɔsal], colossal, mighty.
colosse [kɔlɔs], m., colossus, giant; *chevaux —s*, colossal *or* gigantic horses.
combat [kɔ̃ba], m., combat, fight.
combattre [kɔ̃batr], § 180, to fight, do battle.
combien [kɔ̃bjɛ̃], how much?, how many?; at what price?; how much, how many; — *êtes-vous?*, how many are there of you?; — *serez-vous de gens à table?*, how many (people) will there be of you at table?; — *avez-vous payé?*, how much *or* what did you pay (for)?
combler [kɔ̃ble], to heap up; fill, crown, complete; *comblé*, full to overflowing.
comique [kɔmik], comical.
commandature [kɔmɑ̃datyːr], f., headquarters (milit.).
commander [kɔmɑ̃de], to command, order, bid.
comme [kɔm], as, like; as it were, as if; as well as; how; how!; — *voici*, as follows; — *il faut*, in fine style, exactly right, as it should be.
commencement [kɔmɑ̃smɑ̃], m., beginning, commencement.
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se], § 156, to begin, commence (to, *à*, *de*).
comment [kɔmɑ̃], how; how?; how!, what! — *cela?*, how is that?; — *faire pour ne pas voler?*, how is one to avoid stealing?
commode [kɔmɔd], comfortable.
communication [kɔmynikɑsjɔ̃], f., communication.
compact [kɔ̃pakt], compact, dense.
compagne [kɔ̃paɲ], f., companion; wife.
compagnie [kɔ̃paɲi], f., company.
compagnon [kɔ̃paɲɔ̃], m., companion; — *de voyage*, travelling-companion.
comparaison [kɔ̃parɛzɔ̃], f., comparison.
comparer [kɔ̃pare], to compare.
compartiment [kɔ̃partimɑ̃], m., compartment.
compassion [kɔ̃pɑsjɔ̃], f., compassion, pity.
complet [kɔ̃plɛ], m., suit (of clothes); complement; *être au* —, to be full.
compliment [kɔ̃plimɑ̃], m., compliment.
composer [kɔ̃poze], to compose, form, arrange; *se* —, to be composed, consist (of, *de*).
composition [kɔ̃pozisjɔ̃], f., composition.
comprendre [kɔ̃prɑ̃ːdr], § 202, to understand, comprehend; include; *faire* —, to explain.
compter [kɔ̃te], to count, reckon; intend, think; be of importance; *il comptait plus*, he was of more account.
concentrer [kɔ̃sɑ̃tre], to concentrate.
concert [kɔ̃sɛːr], m., concert.
concorde [kɔ̃kɔrd], f., concord; *place de la Concorde*, name of a square in Paris.
condamnation [kɔ̃danɑsjɔ̃], f., condemnation, sentence.
condamner [kɔ̃dɑne], to condemn, sentence.
condamné [kɔ̃dɑne], m., convict.
conduire [kɔ̃dɥiːr], § 185, to conduct, lead, guide, drive, take, convey.
confiance [kɔ̃fjɑ̃ːs], f., confidence, trust.
confiseur [kɔ̃fizœːr], m., confectioner.
confus [kɔ̃fy], confused, indistinct.
congé [kɔ̃ʒe], m., holiday; *donner* — *à*, to give a holiday to.

conjurer [kɔ̃ʒyre], to implore.
connais [kɔnɛ], 1 sg. pres. indic. *connaître.*
connaissance [kɔnɛsɑ̃ːs], f., acquaintance; *faire — avec*, become acquainted with.
connaissez [kɔnɛse], 2 pl. pres. indic. *connaître.*
connaissons [kɔnɛsɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *connaître.*
connaît [kɔnɛ], 3 sg. pres. indic. *connaître.*
connaître [kɔnɛːtr], § 188, to know, be acquainted with, understand.
conscience [kɔ̃sjɑ̃ːs], f., conscience; consciousness; conscientiousness; *je ferais — de*, I should scruple to, I should think it a sin to.
conseil [kɔ̃sɛːj], m., counsel, advice.
conseiller [kɔ̃sɛje], to advise, counsel.
consentir [kɔ̃sɑ̃tiːr], § 166, to consent.
conserver [kɔ̃sɛrve], to preserve, save.
consigne [kɔ̃siɲ], f., orders (milit.), instructions.
consister [kɔ̃siste], to consist.
consoler [kɔ̃sɔle], to console, solace, comfort; *se —*, to console one's self (with, *de*).
consterner [kɔ̃stɛrne], to astound, dismay, amaze, terrify.
construire [kɔ̃strɥiːr], § 185, to construct.
conte [kɔ̃ːt], m., story, tale; *faire un —*, tell a story.
contempler [kɔ̃tɑ̃ple], to contemplate, gaze on, survey.
contenir [kɔ̃təniːr], § 177, to contain.
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃], adj., content, satisfied, pleased, gratified, happy.
contentement [kɔ̃tɑ̃tmɑ̃], m., contentment, satisfaction.
contenter [kɔ̃tɑ̃te], to satisfy.
conter [kɔ̃te], to relate, tell.
continuer [kɔ̃tinɥe], to continue (to, *de*), keep on, pursue.
contraire [kɔ̃trɛːr], m., contrary; *au —*, on the contrary.
contre [kɔ̃tr], against, from.
convaincu [kɔ̃vɛ̃ky], convinced, satisfied.
convenable [kɔ̃vənabl], suitable.
convenir [kɔ̃vəniːr], § 178, to suit, become, be fitting or appropriate.
conversation [kɔ̃vɛrsɑsjɔ̃], f., conversation.
convoitise [kɔ̃vwatiːz], f., covetousness, envy.
copie [kɔpi], f., copy; exercise.
coq [kɔk], m., cock.
coquin-e [kɔkɛ̃, kɔkin], rogue, wretch, scamp.
corde [kɔrd], f., cord, rope.
cordon [kɔrdɔ̃], m., cord, string; *— de sonnette*, bell-pull, bell-rope.
corne [kɔrn], f., horn.
Corneille [kɔrnɛːj], m., French dramatist, b. 1606, d. 1684.
corps [kɔːr], m., body, form.
corridor [kɔridɔːr], m., corridor, passage.
corsaire [kɔrsɛːr], m., privateer.
costume [kɔstym], m., costume, dress.
côte [kot], f., coast, rib, side; *— à —*, side by side.
côté [kote], m., side, way; *d'un —*, on one side; *de l'autre —*, on the other side; *de ce —*, on this side; *de —*, to one side, aside; *du — de*, in the direction of, towards; *de son —*, on his part, he too; *à — de*, beside.
cou [ku], m., neck.
coucher [kuʃe], intr., to lie, lie down; set (of the sun); tr., to put to bed, lay down; *— en joue*, take aim (at); *se —*, to go to bed, retire (to rest); *être couché*, to be lying down.
coucher [kuʃe], m., setting; *— du soleil*, sunset.
coulée [kule], f., running-hand.
couler [kule], to flow, run, trickle.
couleur [kulœːr], f., colour.

couleuvre [kulœːvr], f., snake.
coup [ku], m., blow, stroke; drink; *boire cinq ou six —s*, to take five or six drinks or draughts; *— de poing*, a blow with the fist; *— de pied*, a kick; *d'un seul —*, at a single stroke; *tout à —*, all at once; *du —*, at once, thereupon; *donner des —s de corne*, to hook, butt; *— de dent*, bite; *donner des —s de fouet*, to whip; *— de tonnerre*, thunder-clap; *— de bâton*, blow with a stick; *— de pistolet*, pistol-shot; *de plusieurs —s*, in several places.
coupable [kupabl], guilty, at fault, blameworthy.
coupe [kup], f., cup, wine-cup.
coupe-gorge [kup gɔrʒ], m., a cut-throat place, a nest of swindlers.
couper [kupe], to cut.
cour [kuːr], f., court; yard, court-yard; *faire la —*, pay court; *gens de la —*, courtiers.
courage [kuraːʒ], m., courage.
courageux [kuraʒø], brave.
couramment [kuramɑ̃], fluently.
courber [kurbe], to bend, bow.
coureur [kurœːr], m., runner; *— de grands chemins*, tramp, vagrant.
courir [kuriːr], § 164, to run (about); hasten; hunt after; *— les nids*, to hunt after birds' nests, go birds' nesting.
couronne [kurɔn], f., crown; wreath.
couronner [kurɔne], to crown, wreathe.
course [kurs], f., course, tour, walk, round; *faire une —*, take a walk, make a round; *prendre sa —*, to take one's way.
court [kuːr], short (adj.); short (adv.); *de trop —*, too short, too tightly.
court [kuːr], 3 sg. pres. indic. *courir*.
courtisan [kurtizɑ̃], m., courtier.
couru [kury], p.p. *courir*.
courus [kury], 1 sg. past def. *courir*.
courut [kury], 3 sg. past def. *courir*.
cousin-e [kuzɛ̃, kuzin], cousin.
couteau [kuto], m., knife.
coûter [kute], to cost.
coutume [kutym], f., custom, habit.
couturière [kutyrjɛːr], f., dress-maker.
couver [kuve], to brood, hatch; *couvant de l'œil*, wistfully eying, gazing at.
couvert [kuvɛːr], p. p. *couvrir*, covered; cloudy, overcast; with one's hat on.
couvrir [kuvriːr], § 176, to cover; *se —*, cover one's self, be covered.
craindre [krɛ̃ːdr], § 190, to fear, be afraid of.
craie [krɛ], f., chalk.
crainte [krɛ̃ːt], f., fear.
cravate [kravat], f., neckcloth.
crayon [krɛjɔ̃], m., pencil.
créature [kreatyːr], f., creature.
crête [krɛːt], f., crest, summit.
creuser [krøze], to dig.
creux [krø], hollow; *chemin —*, deep-cut road.
crève-cœur [krɛv kœːr], m., heart-break, grief.
crever [krəve], § 158, to burst; die, perish.
cri [kri], m., cry, shout, outcry.
cribler [krible], to sift; riddle.
crier [krie], to cry (out), shout, call (out), exclaim.
crin [krɛ̃], m., hair (of the mane and tail of the horse, etc.); *crins*, pl., hair, mane· plume (of a helmet).
cristal [kristal], m., crystal.
croire [krwɑːr], § 191, to believe; think; *se —*, to believe or think one's self; *faire — à*, to make (one) believe in.
croiser [krwɑze], to cross, come across, meet.
croître [krwɑːtr], § 192, to grow, increase.

crosse [krɔs], f. ; — *de fusil*, butt (-end) of a gun or musket.
crouler [krule], to crumble, go to ruin, sink to ruin.
croupe [krup], f., croup, rump.
croyant [krwajɑ̃], pres. part. *croire* ; —, m., believer.
croyez [krwaje], 2 pl. pres. indic. *croire*.
croyons [krwajɔ̃], 1 pl. indic. or impve. *croire*.
crus [kry], 1 sg. past def. *croire*.
crut [kry], 3 sg. past def. *croire*.
cueillir [kœjiːr], § 165, to pick, pluck, gather.
cuiller [kyjɛːr], f., spoon.
cuir [kɥiːr], m., leather.
cuirasse [kɥiras], f., cuirass, breast-plate.
cuirassier [kɥirasje], m., cuirassier.
cuisinier [kɥizinje], m., cook.
cuisinière [kɥizinjɛːr], f., cook.
cuisse [kɥis], f., thigh ; leg, "drum-stick."
cuivre [kɥiːvr], m., copper, brass ; *à pleins —s*, as loud as the band could play.
culminant [kylminɑ̃], culminating.
curieux [kyrjø], curious, odd.
curiosite [kyrjozite], f., curiosity.
cytise [sitiːz], m., cytisus, bean-trefoil, laburnum.

D.

dame [dam], f., lady.
dangereux [dɑ̃ʒrø], dangerous.
danois [danwa], Danish.
dans [dɑ̃], in, within, to, into, at, on, among, between ; — *le temps*, at the time.
danse [dɑ̃ːs], f., dance ; *entrer en* —, to begin to play.
danser [dɑ̃se], to dance.
date [dat], f., date ; *de longue* —, long before.
Daudet [dɔdɛ], Alphonse Daudet, French novelist, b. at Nîmes, 1840, d. 1897.
davantage [davɑ̃taːʒ], more ; *le docteur pas* —, nor the doctor either.
de [də], of, from, out of, for, with, in, on, by, at, to ; — + infin., to, at, for, in, etc.
débarbouiller [debarbuje], to clean, wash (the face).
débarrasser [debarase], to disencumber, rid ; *se* —, to free one's self, get rid (of, *de*).
débattre (se) [sə debatr], § 180, to struggle.
déborder [debɔrde], to overflow, run over.
déboucher [debuʃe], to come out (on, *sur*), debouch.
debout [dəbu], adv., upright, standing.
décapiter [dekapite], to behead.
décembre [desɑ̃ːbr], m., December.
déchirer [deʃire], to tear (asunder), rend.
décidé [deside], decided.
décider [deside], to decide, determine ; *se* —, to decide, resolve, make up one's mind.
déclarer [deklare], to declare.
décourager [dekuraʒe], § 156, to discourage ; *se* —, to be discouraged, give up (intr.).
découvrir [dekuvriːr], § 176, to discover ; take off the hat.
dédaigner [dedɛɲe], to disdain.
dedans [dədɑ̃], adv., within, inside ; in it, into it ; *le* —, *les* —, n. m., the inside, interior ; *en* —, inside.
défendre [defɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to defend, protect (from, *de*) ; forbid ; *se* —, to defend one's self.
défense [defɑ̃ːs], f., defense, protection.
défenseur [defɑ̃sœːr], m., defender, guardian.
défier [defje], to defy, challenge ; *je vous en défie*, I dare, defy, you to do it ; *se* — *de*, to mistrust, distrust.
dégoûter [degute], to disgust.
dégradation [degradɑsjɔ̃], f., degradation.
degré [dəgre], m., step ; degree.

déguster [degyste], to taste, enjoy the taste of.
déjà [deʒa], already; *déjà!*, so soon!
déjeuner [deʒøne], m., breakfast; lunch; — *du matin* or *premier* —, breakfast (*i.e.*, the first meal of the day); — *à la fourchette* or *second* —, luncheon, lunch.
déjeuner [deʒøne], to breakfast, lunch.
delà [dəla], beyond; *par* —, further (than), beyond.
délaisser [delɛse], to abandon, desert, forsake.
délicatesse [delikatɛs], f., delicacy, consideration.
demain [dəmɛ̃], m., to-morrow.
demande [dəmɑ̃ːd], f., demand, request.
demander [dəmɑ̃de], to ask, ask for; — *à*, to ask of, from (indir. obj.), ask; — *à* + infin., to ask to; *se* —, to ask one's self, wonder.
démener (se) [sə demne], § 158, to struggle.
démenti [demɑ̃ti], m., contradiction; *il ne voulait pas en avoir le* —, he was determined not to be beaten.
demeurer [dəmœre], to live, dwell, reside; remain, be.
demi [dəmi], half; *à* —, half.
demi-heure [dəmi œːr], f., half an hour.
demi-obscurité [dəmi ɔpskyrite], f., half darkness, faint light, feeble light.
démontrer [demɔ̃tre], to show, prove.
denier [dənje], m., denarius (obs.), penny.
dénoncer [denɔ̃se], § 156, to denounce.
dent [dɑ̃], f., tooth; *coup de* —, bite.
dentelé [dɑ̃tle], denticulated, notched (said of leaves).
dentelle [dɑ̃tɛl], f., lace.
dentiste [dɑ̃tist], m., dentist.
départ [depaːr], m., departure.
dépêcher (se) [sə depɛʃe], to make haste, hurry; *ne te dépêche pas tant*, do not be in such a hurry.
dépendance [depɑ̃dɑ̃ːs], f., dependence, territory.
dépendre [depɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to depend (upon, *de*).
dépenser [depɑ̃se], to spend, expend.
déployer (se) [sə deplwaje], § 157, to deploy (milit.).
dépouiller [depuje], to strip, despoil, deprive.
depuis [dəpɥi], since; from; — *deux ans*, for two years back, for the last two years; — *que*, since; — *quand?*, since when?, how long?
député [depyte], m., deputy, member of parliament.
déraciner [derasine], to uproot.
déranger [derɑ̃ʒe], § 156, to derange; *se* —, to trouble one's self.
dernier [dɛrnje], latter, last, final.
derrière [dɛrjɛːr], behind (prep.); behind, at the back (adv.); *de* —, hind (adj.).
des [de], contr. of *de* + *les*.
dès [dɛ], from (dating from), not later than; — *demain*, beginning to-morrow; — *que*, as soon as, from the very moment that; — *le même jour*, on the (very same) day; — *le point du jour*, at daybreak.
désagréable [dezagreabl], disagreeable, unpleasant.
désarmer [dezarme], to disarm; *désarmé*, unprotected, helpless.
descendre [desɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to descend, come or go down; go down (stairs).
descente [desɑ̃ːt], f., descent.
désenchantement [dezɑ̃ʃɑ̃tmɑ̃], m., disenchantment, disappointment.
désert [dezɛːr], m., desert.
désespérance [dezɛsperɑ̃ːs], f., despair.
désespérer [dezɛspere], § 158, to despair.

désillusion [dezilyzjɔ̃], f., disillusion.
désir [dezi:r], m., desire, longing.
désirer [dezire], to desire, wish.
désireux [dezirø], desirous, anxious (to, *de*).
désormais [dezɔrmɛ], henceforth.
dessécher [deseʃe], § 158, to dry, dry up, parch, wither; *se* —, to dry up, wither.
dessein [desɛ̃], m., design, plan, scheme.
dessert [desɛ:r], m., dessert.
dessus [dəsy], adv., above, over; upon or over (it, them, etc.); *de* —, from (off).
destinée [dɛstine], f., fate, destiny.
destiner [dɛstine], to destine; intend, design.
destruction [dɛstryksjɔ̃], f., destruction.
désunir [dezyni:r], to disunite.
détacher [detaʃe], to detach, separate.
détresse [detrɛs], f., distress, grief, trouble.
deuil [dœ:j], m., mourning (attire).
deux [dø], two; *tous* (or *toutes*) —, both (of them).
deuxième [døzjɛm], second.
devant [dəvɑ̃], prep., before, in front of, ahead of.
devant [dəvɑ̃], adv., before, ahead, in advance; *pattes de* —, front paws, fore-paws; *prendre les—s*, to go on before, ahead; *courir au* —, to run to meet.
développement [devlɔpmɑ̃], m. development, progress.
devenir [dəvni:r], § 178, to become; become of.
deviendront [dəvjɛ̃drɔ̃], 3 pl. fut. *devenir*.
devint [dəvɛ̃], 3 sg. past def. *devenir*.
devoir [dəvwa:r], m., duty; exercise (lesson); *rendre leurs —s à*, to pay their respects to.
devoir [dəvwa:r], § 214, to owe; be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must; — + infin., to be one's duty to, ought, be to, have to, be obliged to, must.
diable [djɑ:bl], interj., the devil! the deuce!
diantre [djɑ̃:tr], interj., the deuce!
Dieu [djø], m., God; *ah! mon —!*, oh! dear me!
dieu [djø], m., god.
différence [diferɑ̃:s], f., difference.
différend [diferɑ̃], m., quarrel, dispute.
différent [diferɑ̃], different, divers, various.
difficile [difisil], difficult, hard.
difficulté [difikylte], f., difficulty.
digitale [diʒital], f., fox-glove.
dimanche [dimɑ̃:ʃ], m., Sunday; *tous les —s*, every Sunday.
dindon [dɛ̃dɔ̃], m., turkey; *patte de* —, see *patte*.
dîner [dine], to dine.
dîner [dine], m., dinner; *à* —, to *or* at dinner.
dire [di:r], § 193, to say, tell, recite; *c'est à* —, that is (to say); *dis-moi un peu*, just tell me; *vouloir* —, to mean.
dire [di:r], m., saying, maxim.
directeur [dirɛktœ:r], m., director, manager.
dirent [di:r], 3 pl. p. def. *dire*.
diriger [diriʒe], § 156, to direct, guide.
dis [di], 2 sg. indic. or impve. *dire*.
disais [dizɛ], 1 sg. impf. indic. *dire*.
disait [dizɛ], 3 sg. impf. indic. *dire*.
disant [dizɑ̃], pres. part. *dire*.
discipliner [disipline], to discipline.
discours [disku:r], m., discourse, speech.
discrètement [diskrɛtmɑ̃], discreetly, circumspectly, cautiously.
disons [dizɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *dire*.
disparaître [disparɛ:tr], § 188, to disappear, vanish.
disposition [dispozisjɔ̃], f., disposition, tendency, habit; disposal.
distance [distɑ̃:s], f., distance; *à* —, at a distance.
distribuer [distribɥe], to distribute, deal out, portion out.

distribution [distribysjɔ̃], f., distribution.
dit [di], 3 sg. pres. indic., 3 sg. past def., and p. part. of *dire.*
dites [dit], 2 pl. pres. indic. and 2 pl. impve. *dire ; vous — ? . . .*, what did you say ?
divertir [divɛrtiːr], to divert, amuse ; *se* —, to divert one's self, amuse one's self.
divin [divɛ̃], divine.
diviser [divize], to divide.
division [divizjɔ̃], f., division.
dix [dis], ten.
dix-huit [diz ɥit], eighteen.
dix-neuvième [diz nœvjɛm], nineteenth.
docile [dɔsil], docile, tractable, quiet.
docteur [dɔktœːr], m., doctor.
doigt [dwa], m., finger ; toe.
dois [dwɑ], 1 and 2 sg. pres. indic. *devoir.*
dollar [dɔlaːr], m., dollar.
dominer [dɔmine], to rule, prevail over, rise above.
dommage [dɔmaːʒ], m., damage, pity.
don [dɔ̃], m., gift, power, knack.
donc [dɔ̃], then, therefore, consequently.
donner [dɔne], to give ; bear (of trees) ; — *à souper*, to give a supper ; *se* —, to give to each other.
dont [dɔ̃], of whom, of (from, etc.) which, whose, with which, etc., whence.
Dore [dɔːr], f., name of a river in central France.
doré [dɔre], gilt.
dormir [dɔrmiːr], § 166, to sleep.
dos [do], m., back.
double [dubl], double.
doubler [duble], to double ; line (clothes).
doucement [dusmɑ̃], gently, softly, quietly, kindly.
douleur [dulœːr], f., pain, grief, sorrow.
douloureusement [dulurøzmɑ̃], sadly.
doute [dut], m., doubt ; *sans* —, no doubt, doubtless.
douter (se) [sə dute], to be suspicious ; *se — de*, to suspect.
doux [du], sweet ; soft, gentle, kindly.
douzaine [duzɛːn], f., dozen.
douze [duːz], twelve.
drame [dram], m., drama.
drap [dra], m., cloth.
drapeau [drapo], m., flag, banner.
dresser [drɛse], to erect, set up ; *se* —, to rise upright, rear.
droit [drwɑ], straight, right ; upright, erect.
droit [drwɑ], m., right ; *être en — de*, to have a right to.
droite [drwɑt], f., right hand, right, right side ; *à* —, *de* —, to or on the right (hand).
drôle [droːl], comical, amusing.
drôle [droːl], m., rogue, rascal.
du [dy], contr. of *de + le.*
ducat [dyka], m., ducat.
duel [dɥɛl], m., duel.
Dumas [dymɑ], Alexandre Dumas, French dramatist and novelist, b. 1803, d. 1870.
Dunkerque [dɔ̃kɛrk], a French seaport, Dunkirk.
duquel [dykɛl], contr. of *de + lequel.*
dur [dyːr], hard, harsh.
durant [dyrɑ̃], during.
durer [dyre], to last, continue, endure.

E.

eau [o], f., water.
éblouissant [ebluisɑ̃], dazzling.
éblouissement [ebluismɑ̃], m., dazzling.
ébranler (s') [s ebrɑ̃le], to begin to move (intr.).
écaille [ekɑːj], f., scale (of fish, etc.).
écarquillé [ekarkije], p. part., wide open (of eyes).
écarter (s') [s ekarte], to go away (from, *de*), ramble, stray.

échange [eʃɑ̃ːʒ], m., exchange; *en — de*, in exchange for.
échapper (s') [s eʃape], m., to escape.
éclabousser [eklabuse], to splash, spatter.
éclair [eklɛːr], m., lightning, flash of lightning; *il fait des —s*, it lightens.
éclat [ekla], m., burst, outburst.
éclater [eklate], to burst out, burst forth, sound out (suddenly and loudly), break out.
éclore [eklɔːr], § 183, to hatch; *éclos*, p. part., hatched.
école [ekɔl], f., school; *maison d'—*, school-house.
écolier [ekɔlje], m., school-boy, pupil.
écorcher [ekɔrʃe], to skin, flay, gall, rub the skin off.
écouter [ekute], to listen, listen to, hear.
écraser [ekrɑze], to crush, overwhelm.
écrier (s') [s ekrie], to cry out, exclaim.
écrire [ekriːr], § 194, to write.
écrit [ekri], p. part. *écrire.*
écriture [ekrityːr], f., writing.
écrivit [ekrivi], 3 sg. past def. *écrire.*
écueil [ekœːj], m., reef, rock.
écuelle [ekɥɛl], f., porringer, milk-pail.
écume [ekym], f., foam.
écureuil [ekyrœːj], m., squirrel.
édifice [edifis], m., edifice, building.
éducation [edykasjɔ̃], f., education, training.
effet [efɛ], m., effect; *en —*, in effect, indeed, in fact.
effleurer [ɛflœre], to skim (over), touch (lightly).
effort [ɛfɔːr], m., effort, endeavour; force, might; *tenter un dernier —*, to make a final effort.
effrayer [ɛfrɛje], § 157, to frighten, terrify, alarm; *s'—*, to be frightened, fear.
effréné [ɛfrene], unbridled, uncontrollable.
effroyable [efrwɑjabl], frightful, horrible.
effroyablement [efrwɑjabləmɑ̃], frightfully, terribly, dreadfully.
égal [egal], equal.
également [egalmɑ̃], equally, in like manner, also.
égarer (s') [s egare], to lose one's way.
église [egliːz], f., church.
égorger [egɔrʒe], § 156, to cut the throat of, butcher, slaughter.
égyptien [eʒipsjɛ̃], Egyptian.
eh! [e], ah!, well!; *— bien!*, well!, well then!, well now!
élan [elɑ̃], m., impulse.
élancer (s') [s elɑ̃se], § 156, to bound, rush, dash, precipitate one's self.
élément [elemɑ̃], m., element.
éléphant [elefɑ̃], m., elephant.
élève [elɛːv], m., f., pupil, scholar.
élever [elve], § 158, to raise, raise up, lift up, exalt; rear, bring up; *s' —*, to rise, exalt one's self, be lifted up, be exalted.
élite [elit], choice, pick; *d' —*, selected, picked.
elle [ɛl], she, it, her.
éloigné [elwaɲe], distant.
éloigner (s') [s elwaɲe], to go away, disappear in the distance.
éloquent [elɔkɑ̃], eloquent.
embarras [ɑ̃barɑ], m., embarrassment.
embarquer (s') [s ɑ̃barke], intr., to embark.
embaumer [ɑ̃bome], to perfume.
emblème [ɑ̃blɛːm], m., emblem.
embrasser [ɑ̃brase], to embrace, clasp, kiss; *s' —*, to embrace one another, kiss one another.
embrasure [ɑ̃brɑzyːr], f., embrasure, recess (of window, etc.).
embrouiller (s'), [s ɑ̃bruje], to become confused, get puzzled.
émerveillé [emɛrvɛje], p. part., astonished.
emmener [ɑ̃mne], § 158, to lead or take away.
émotion [emosjɔ̃], f., emotion, feeling.

empêcher [ɑ̃pɛʃe], to hinder, prevent (from, *de*).
empereur [ɑ̃prœːr], m., emperor.
empire [ɑ̃piːr], m., empire.
emplette [ɑ̃plɛt], f., purchase; *aller faire des* —, to go shopping.
emporter [ɑ̃pɔrte], to carry away, carry off, take away.
empressement [ɑ̃prɛsmɑ̃], m., eagerness.
en [ɑ̃], in, into; at; of; as a, like a; *en*+pres. part., in, while, whilst, by (or untranslated); — *âge de*, of an age to; — *route*, on the way; — *argent*, of silver; — *quoi?*, of what (material)?
en [ɑ̃], pron. and adv., of (from, out of, for, by, etc.) it or them; of him, of her, some of it, some of them; some, any.
enchanter [ɑ̃ʃɑ̃te], to enchant, charm, delight; *enchanté*, delighted.
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr], yet, still, again, more, still more, moreover, besides, also, now, only; — *un*, another, one more; — *si*, even if.
encorné [ɑ̃kɔrne], see under *autrement.*
encouragement [ɑ̃kuraʒmɑ̃], m., encouragement.
encre [ɑ̃ːkr], f., ink; *à l'*—, with ink.
encrier [ɑ̃krie], m., inkstand.
endormir (s') [s ɑ̃dɔrmiːr], § 166, to go to sleep, fall asleep; *endormi*, asleep.
endroit [ɑ̃drwɑ], m., place, spot.
enfant [ɑ̃fɑ̃], m. f., child, son, daughter; boy, girl, offspring.
enfermer [ɑ̃fɛrme], to shut up, lock up.
enfin [ɑ̃fɛ̃], at last, finally, in fine, in short.
enfoncer [ɑ̃fɔ̃se], § 156, to sink, push down, plunge; *s'*—, to bury one's self, plunge.
engager [ɑ̃gaʒe], § 156, to pledge, engage; *s'*—, to promise, pledge one's self.
enguirlander [ɑ̃girlɑ̃de], to wreathe, encircle.
enjamber [ɑ̃ʒɑ̃be], bestride, put one's leg over.
enlever [ɑ̃lve], § 158, to carry away, carry off.
ennemi [ɛnmi], m., enemy, foe.
ennemi [ɛnmi], hostile; of the enemy.
ennui [ɑ̃nɥi], m., weariness, ennui, tedium, vexation, annoyance.
ennuyer (s') [s ɑ̃nɥije], § 157, to be wearied, grow weary, find it tiresome.
ennuyeux [ɑ̃nɥijø], tiresome, annoying.
énorme [enɔrm], enormous, very large, very great.
enragé [ɑ̃raʒe], mad, enraged, desperate.
enroué [ɑ̃rwe], hoarse.
enseigner [ɑ̃sɛɲe], to teach.
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ̃ːbl], together, all together.
ensevelir [ɑ̃səvliːr], to bury, swallow up.
ensuite [ɑ̃sɥit], afterwards, then, thereupon, after that.
entendre [ɑ̃tɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to hear; *cela s'entend*, that is evident; of course.
enthousiasme [ɑ̃tuzjasm], m., enthusiasm.
entier [ɑ̃tje], entire, whole; *tout* —, wholly.
entièrement [ɑ̃tjɛrmɑ̃], entirely, wholly.
entourer [ɑ̃ture], to surround.
entraîner [ɑ̃trɛne], to carry away, drag away.
entre [ɑ̃ːtr], between, among, amongst.
entrée [ɑ̃tre], f., entrance, beginning; entrée (a term in cookery); *billet d'*—, ticket (of admission).
entremets [ɑ̃trə mɛ], side-dish, entremets.
entrer [ɑ̃tre], to enter, go in, come in; — *dans*, enter.

énumérer [enymere], § 158, to enumerate.
envahir [ɑ̃vaiːr], to invade, attack.
envelopper [ɑ̃vlɔpe], to envelop, wrap up, muffle ; surround.
envers [ɑ̃vɛːr], towards.
envie [ɑ̃vi], f., envy, desire, inclination ; *avoir — de*, to feel like, wish or desire to.
environner [ɑ̃virɔne], to surround, environ.
envoler (s') [s ɑ̃vɔle], to fly away, take to flight.
envoyer [ɑ̃vwaje], § 157, to send.
épais [epɛ], thick, close together ; *colonne épaisse*, see *colonne*.
épargner [eparɲe], to save, economize.
épars [epaːr], scattered.
épaule [epoːl], f., shoulder.
épée [epe], f., sword ; *— de chevet*, sword kept under the pillow for defence in case of attack by night, a thing which one constantly uses, a "stand by."
épeler [eple], § 158, to spell.
épervier [epɛrvje], m., hawk.
épi [epi], m., ear (of corn).
épingle [epɛ̃ːgl], f., pin.
épopée [epɔpe], f., epic poem, epic.
époque [epɔk], f., epoch, period, time.
épouser [epuze], to marry (tr.), take in marriage, wed.
épouvantable [epuvɑ̃tabl], frightful, dreadful, terrible.
épuiser (s) [s epɥize], to be or become exhausted, waste away.
équestre [ekɛstr], equestrian, of a horse.
équilibre [ekiliːbr], m., equilibrium, balance.
équité [ekite], f., equity, justice.
érable [erabl], m., maple.
erreur [ɛrœːr], f., error, mistake.
es [ɛ], 2 sg. pres. indic. *être*.
escadre [ɛskadr], f., squadron, fleet ; *chef d' —*, rear-admiral.
escadron [ɛskadrɔ̃], m., squadron (milit.).
escalader [ɛskalade], to scale, climb.
escalier [ɛskalje], m., stairs.
esclave [ɛsklɑːv], m. f., slave ; *tomber —*, to fall into slavery, become a slave.
espace [ɛspɑːs], m., space.
espèce [ɛspɛs], f., species, kind.
espérance [ɛsperɑ̃ːs], f., hope.
espérer [ɛspere], § 158, to hope, hope for, expect.
espoir [ɛspwaːr], m., hope, expectation.
esprit [ɛspri], m., spirit, mind, wit ; *Saint-Esprit*, Holy Ghost.
essayer [esɛje], § 157, to try, attempt ; try on.
essoufflé [esufle], p. part., out of breath, breathless.
est [ɛ], 3 sg. pres. indic. **être** ; *— -ce que ?*, is it (the case) that ? (a statement prefixed by *est-ce que ?* becomes interrogative) ; *n'est-ce pas ?*, lit., is it not (so) ? (variously rendered to suit the context).
estrade [ɛstrad], f., stage, platform.
et [e], and.
étable [etabl], f., stable, byre.
était [etɛ], 3 sg. impf. indic. *être*.
étaient [etɛ], 3 pl. impf. indic. *être*.
étaler [etale], to spread out, display.
étant [etɑ̃], pres. part. *être*.
état [eta], m., state ; condition ; *homme d'État*, statesman ; *en — de*, in a condition to.
États-Unis [etaz yni], m., pl., United States.
été [ete], m., summer ; *en —*, in summer.
éteindre [etɛ̃ːdr], § 190, to extinguish ; *s'—*, to be extinguished, die away, go out or disappear (of a light, etc.).
éteignirent [etɛɲiːr], 3 pl. past def. *éteindre*.
étendard [etɑ̃daːr], m., standard, banner.
étendre [etɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to stretch,

extend, stretch out: *s'—*, to stretch one's self out, lie down.
éternel [etɛrnɛl], eternal.
éternité [etɛrnite], f., eternity.
êtes [ɛːt], 2 pl. pres. indic. *être*.
étiquette [etikɛt], f., etiquette.
étoile [etwal], f., star.
étonner [etɔne], to astonish, surprise; *s'—*, to be astonished, surprised (at, *de*).
étouffer [etufe], to suffocate, choke, smother, stifle.
étourdi [eturdi], m., madcap.
être [ɛːtr], § 154, to be; — *à*, to belong to; *j'en étais là de mes réflexions*, I had gone thus far in my reflexions; *nous sommes cinq*, there are five of us.
étrenne [etrɛn], f., New Year's gift.
étroitement [etrwatmɑ̃], narrowly, closely.
étudier [etydje], to study.
eu [y], past p. *avoir*.
eûmes [ym], 1 pl. past def. *avoir*.
eurent [yːr], 3 pl. past def. *avoir*.
Europe [œrɔp], f., Europe.
européen [œrɔpeɛ̃], European.
eus [y], 1 sg. past def. *avoir*.
eusse [ys], 1 sg. impf. subj. *avoir*.
eut [y], 3 sg. past def. *avoir*.
eût [y], 3 sg. impf. subj. *avoir*.
eûtes [yt], 2 pl. p. def., *avoir*.
eux [ø], they, them.
eux-mêmes [ø mɛːm], they themselves, themselves.
évanouir (s') [s evanwiːr], to vanish; *évanoui*, p. part., vanished, vanishing.
éveil [evɛːj], m., awakening, watch; *en —*, on one's guard, on the watch.
événement [evɛnmɑ̃], m., event.
éventail [evɑ̃taːj], m., fan.
éventualité [evɑ̃tɥalite], f., contingency.
évidemment [evidamɑ̃], evidently.
exagérer [egzaʒere], § 156, to exaggerate.
examiner [egzamine], to examine.
excepté [eksɛpte], except.
excès [eksɛ], m., excess.
excessif [eksɛsif], excessive.
exciter [eksite], to excite.
exclamation [ɛsklamasjɔ̃], f., exclamation.
excuser [ɛkskyze], to excuse.
exemple [egzɑ̃pl], m., example, pattern; copy, copy-slip, headline; *par —*, for instance, for example; you don't say so!, dear me!
exercice [egzɛrsis], m., exercise; *faire l'—*, to drill (milit.).
exhaler (s') [s egzale], to be exhaled, be breathed forth.
exilé [egzile], m., exile.
exister [egziste], to exist.
expirer [ɛkspire], to expire, die.
explication [ɛksplikasjɔ̃], f., explanation.
expliquer [ɛksplike], to explain.
exploit [ɛksplwa], m., exploit, achievement.
exprimer [ɛksprime], to express.
extase [ɛkstaːz], f., ecstasy, rapture.
exténuer [ɛkstenɥe], to extenuate, enfeeble, weaken, reduce.
extermination [ɛkstɛrminasjɔ̃], f., extermination.
extraordinaire [ɛkstraɔrdinɛːr], extraordinary, unusual.
extrémité [ɛkstremite], f., extremity; — *de gauche*, extreme left.

F.

fable [fabl], f., fable, story.
façade [fasad], f., front, façade.
face [fas], f., face; *en —*, opposite, on the other side; *en — de*, opposite to, facing, before, face to face with, in the presence of; — *à* —, face to face, opposite (each other).
fâcher [faʃe], to vex, displease; *fâché*, sorry, angry.
fâcheux [faʃø], vexatious, annoying.
facile [fasil], easy.
facilement [fasilmɑ̃], easily.
façon [fasɔ̃], f., fashion, way,

manner; outline, sketch; *de — à ce que*, in such a way or manner that; *de la même —*, in the same way.

facteur [faktœːr], m., post-man, letter-carrier.

faction [faksjɔ̃], f., *être de —*, to be on duty.

factoton [faktotɔ̃], m., factotum.

fade [fad], insipid, tasteless.

faible [fɛːbl], weak, feeble.

faiblesse [fɛblɛs], f., weakness.

faim [fɛ̃], f., hunger; *avoir —*, to be hungry.

faire [fɛːr], § 195, to do, make, act, cause (+ infin., to do or be done), produce, occasion, give, form; say, reply, exclaim, cry, remark; *faire faire*, to have made, cause to be made; *— vivre*, to keep alive, support; *— le tour de*, to go round; *— le mort*, to pretend to be dead; *— plaisir*, to give pleasure; *— peur à*, to frighten; *— ses courses*, to make one's rounds; *— attention*, to pay attention; *— sortir*, to put out, expel; *— la cour*, pay court; *— l'exercice*, to drill (milit.); *— la classe*, to give a lesson, teach; *cela ne fait rien*, that makes no difference; *— fête à*, to welcome, hail with joy; *ce qui fait que le dindon a l'air de*, etc., which makes the turkey seem to, etc.; *— les malles*, to pack the trunks; *— voir*, to show; *— mal à*, to pain, hurt; *— un pas*, to take a step; *— bonne chère*, to provide good cheer, provide a good spread; *fais donc*, do (so) then, do (it your own way) then, all right; *je ferais conscience de*, I should scruple to, I should think it a sin to; *— une question*, to ask a question; *il fait beau* (*chaud*, etc.), it is fine (hot, etc.).

faire (se) [sə fɛːr], § 195, to make one's self, render one's self, make to or for one's self; to be done; to become; to take place; to be; *se — rare*, to decrease, become scanty; *il se faisait un grand tapage*, there was a great uproar; *se — à*, to adapt one's self to.

fais [fɛ], 1 sg. pres. indic. *faire.*

faisaient [fəzɛ], 3 pl. impf. indic. *faire.*

faisais [fəzɛ], 1 sg. impf. *faire.*

faisait [fəzɛ], 3 sg. impf. *faire.*

faisant [fəzɑ̃], pres. part. *faire.*

faisan [fɛzɑ̃], m., pheasant.

faisons [fəzɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. indic. *faire.*

fait [fɛt], m., fact, event; *tout à —* [tut a fɛ], altogether, entirely, quite.

fait [fɛ], 3 sg. pres. indic. *faire.*

fait [fɛ], p. part. *faire; bien — de sa personne*, handsome.

faites [fɛt], 2 pl. pres. indic. and impve. *faire.*

fallait [falɛ], 3 sg. impf. indic. *falloir.*

falloir [falwaːr], § 218, impers. vb., to be necessary, have to; *il faut* + infin., one (etc.) must, one has to; *il fallait que*, it was necessary that (he, etc.), he was obliged to *or* had to; *il lui faut*, he needs, must have; *il faut manger*, one must eat; *il avait fallu*, he had been obliged.

fallut [faly], 3 sg. past def. *falloir.*

fameux [famø], famous, celebrated.

famille [famiːj], f., family.

fanfare [fɑ̃faːr], f., flourish of trumpets, brass-band.

fantôme [fɑ̃toːm], m., phantom, shadow, ghost.

fardeau [fardo], m., burden, load.

farine [farin], f., flour.

farouche [faruʃ], wild, fierce.

fasse [fas], 3 sg. pres. subj. *faire.*

fatal [fatal], fatal.

fatalité [fatalite], f., fatality.

fatigue [fatiːg], f., fatigue.

fatigué [fatige], tired.

fatiguer [fatige], to fatigue, weary, tire; *se —*, to fatigue one's self, etc.

faucher [foʃe], to mow, reap.
faucheur [foʃœːr], m., mower, reaper.
faudra [fodra], 3 sg. fut. *falloir.*
faut [fo], 3 sg. pres. indic. *falloir.*
faute [foːt], f., fault, mistake.
faux-col [fo kɔl], m., collar.
fêler [fɛle], to crack (glass, etc.).
femme [fam], f., woman, wife.
fendre [fɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to split, cleave; break; *se* —, intr., to burst (asunder), break.
fenêtre [fənɛːtr], f., window.
fer [fɛːr], m., iron; *en* —, iron (adj.), of iron; — *battu*, wrought iron; *chemin de* —, railway; — *à cheval*, horse-shoe.
fera [fəra], 3 sg. fut. *faire.*
ferait [fərɛ], 3 sg. condl. *faire.*
ferez [fəre], 2 pl. fut. *faire.*
feriez [fərje], 2 pl. condl. *faire.*
ferme [fɛrm], firm(ly), hard.
fermer [fɛrme], to shut (up), close; lock; — *à double tour*, to double-lock.
féroce [ferɔs], fierce, ferocious, wild; *bête* —, wild beast.
ferrant [fɛrɑ̃], that shoes horses; *maréchal* —, blacksmith, horse-shoer.
ferons [fərɔ̃], 1 pl. fut. *faire.*
fête [fɛːt], f., holiday, festival; festivity, feast, merry-making; *être en* —, to be in festivity, hold a celebration; *faire* — *à*, to welcome, hail with joy; *Fête-dieu*, Corpus Christi day; *jour de* —, holiday.
feu [fø], m., fire.
feuillage [fœjaːʒ], m., foliage, leaves.
feuille [fœːj], f., leaf.
février [fevrie], m., February.
fidèlement [fidɛlmɑ̃], faithfully.
fiel [fjɛl], m., gall, bitterness.
fier [fjɛːr], proud.
fièrement [fjɛrmɑ̃], proudly.
fierté [fjɛrte], f., pride.
figure [figyːr], f., face, countenance.
fil [fil], m., thread; — *de fer*, wire.
filature [filatyːr], f., spinning-mill.
file [fil], f., row, file.
fille [fiːj], f., girl, daughter.
fillette [fijɛt], f., little girl.
fils [fis], m., son.
fin [fɛ̃], f., end; *à la* —, finally, at last.
fin [fɛ̃], fine, delicate, sweet; minute.
finir [finiːr], to finish, conclude, end; *il finit par lui demander*, he asked him finally; *c'est fini*, it's all over.
firent [fiːr], 3 pl. p. def. *faire.*
fis [fi], 1 sg. p. def. *faire.*
fit [fi], 3 sg. p. def. *faire.*
fît [fi], 3 sg. impf. subj. *faire.*
fîtes [fit], 2 pl. p. def. *faire.*
fixement [fiksmɑ̃], fixedly.
fixer [fikse], to fix, fasten; gaze (steadily) at.
flanc [flɑ̃], m., flank, side, womb.
flatter [flate], to flatter.
fleur [flœːr], f., flower; *en* —, in flower, blooming.
fleuve [flœːv], m., river.
flot [flo], m., wave, billow.
flotte [flɔt], f., fleet.
flotter [flɔte], to float, wave.
foi [fwɑ], f., faith; *ma* —!, faith!
foire [fwaːr], f., fair (market).
fois [fwa], f., time (repeated occasion); *tant de* —, so many times, so often; *une* —, *deux* —, once, twice; *encore une* —, once more.
folie [fɔli], f., madness, folly; *à la* —, madly, to distraction.
folle [fɔl], f., madwoman, madcap, giddy creature.
folle [fɔl], f. of *fou*; *être* — *de*, to be passionately fond of, dote on.
follement [fɔlmɑ̃], madly, extravagantly, exceedingly.
fond [fɔ̃], m., bottom, depth, abyss; crown (of hat); *au* — *de*, at or in the bottom of, at the back of, in the depth(s) of; *faire* — *sur*, to set store by, depend upon.
fondre [fɔ̃ːdr], § 210, to melt.
font [fɔ̃], 3 pl. pres. indic. *faire.*
fonte [fɔ̃ːt], f., holster.

forçat [fɔrsa], m., galley-slave, convict.
force [fɔrs], f., force, strength, might; *de toute sa* —, with all one's might; *à — de mangeaille*, by dint of gorging.
force [fɔrs], adv., much, many, a great many.
forcer [fɔrse], §156, to force, oblige (to, *de*).
forêt [fɔrɛ], f., forest.
forgeron [fɔrʒərɔ̃], m., blacksmith.
forme [fɔrm], f., form, shape.
former [fɔrme], to form; muster.
formidable [fɔrmidabl], formidable, frightful.
fort [fɔːr], strong, powerful; big, thick; clever.
fort [fɔːr], much, very, very much; loud, loudly; *m'a — servi*, has been of great service to me.
fortune [fɔrtyn], f., fortune, good luck; *chercher* —, to seek one's fortune, see what one can find.
fosse [foːs], f., pit, grave.
fossé [fose], m., ditch, moat.
fou [fu], mad, foolish, extremely or excessively fond (of, *de*).
fouace [fwas], f., hearth-cake.
fouet [fwɛ], m., whip.
fougueux [fugø], spirited, fiery.
foule [fuːl], f., crowd.
fourchette [furʃɛt], f., fork.
fourmi [furmi], f., ant.
fournir [furniːr], to furnish, provide.
fourré [fure], furry; *bonnet* —, fur-lined cap.
fourrer (se) [sə fure], to thrust one's self (into, *dans*), creep (into, *dans*).
fourrure [furyːr], f., fur.
foyer [fwaje], m., hearth.
frac [frak], m., dress-coat.
fraîchir [frɛʃiːr], intr., to freshen.
frais, fraîche [frɛ, frɛːʃ], cool, fresh; *faire* —, to be cool (of weather, temperature).
franc [frɑ̃], m., franc (a coin worth about 20 cents).
France [frɑ̃ːs], f., France.
français [frɑ̃sɛ], adj., French; m., Frenchman; *le* —, French (the language); *en* —, in French; *parler* —, to speak French.
franchir [frɑ̃ʃiːr], to pass, leap over, cross.
François [frɑ̃swa], m., Francis.
Franklin (Benjamin) [bɛ̃ʒamɛ̃ frɑ̃klɛ̃], Benjamin Franklin, American statesman and philosopher, b. 1706, d. 1790.
Frantz [frants], n. pr. m., Frank.
frappement [frapmɑ̃], m., striking, stroke; *— des sabots*, trampling of hoofs.
frapper [frape], to strike, knock, rap.
fraternel [fratɛrnɛl], brotherly, fraternal.
frayeur [frɛjœːr], f., fright, fear.
Frédéric le Grand [frederik lə grɑ̃], Frederic the Great, King of Prussia, b. 1712, d. 1786.
frégate [fregat], f., frigate.
frère [frɛːr], m., brother.
friction [friksjɔ̃], f., friction, rubbing.
froid [frwɑ], adj., cold; *froid*, m., cold.
froissement [frwɑsmɑ̃], m., clashing.
frôler [frole], to graze, touch lightly (in passing).
front [frɔ̃], m., forehead, brow; front, van; *changement de* —, change of front, transformation.
frotter [frɔte], to rub.
frugalité [frygalite], f., frugality.
fruit [frɥi], m., fruit.
fruitier [frɥitje], fruit-bearing; *arbre* —, fruit-tree.
fuir [fɥiːr], § 170, to flee, fly, run away, escape.
fumée [fyme], f., smoke.
fumer [fyme], to smoke, reek.
furent [fyːr], 3 pl. p. def. of *être*.
furie [fyri], f., fury, rage.
furieux [fyrjø], furious, fierce.
fusil [fyzi], m., gun, musket.
fussent [fys], 3 pl. imp. subj. *être*.
fut [fy], 3 sg. past def. *être*.

fût [fy], 3 sg. impf. subj. *être ; — de la compagnie*, should join the company; *que ce — joli*, in order that it should be pretty (*pour* being understood with *que*).

G.

gages [gaːʒ], m. pl., wages.
gagner [gaɲe], to gain, win, earn, obtain; reach; seize, come over; flee to, take refuge in.
gai [ge], gay, merry, cheerful.
gaîté [gete], f., gayety, mirth, glee.
galerie [galri], f., gallery.
galop [galo], m., gallop.
galopade [galɔpad], f., galloping, rushing.
gambader [gɑ̃bade], to gambol, frisk or skip about.
gant [gɑ̃], m., glove.
gantier [gɑ̃tje], m., glover.
garçon [garsɔ̃], m., boy.
garde [gard], m., guard, keeper.
garde [gard], f., defence, guard; *tomber en —*, to assume the defensive.
garder [garde], to keep, preserve, have in store.
garde-robe [gard rɔb], f., wardrobe.
gare [gaːr], f., station.
garenne [garɛn], f., warren; *lapin de —*, wild rabbit.
garnir [garniːr], to adorn, ornament.
gâté [gɑte], spoiled, decayed (of teeth).
gâter [gɑte], to spoil.
gauche [goːʃ], adj., left.
gauche [goːʃ], f., left-hand, left, left-side; *à (la) —*, *de —*, to or on the left (hand).
Gauthier (Théophile) [teɔfil gotje], French writer, b. 1811, d. 1872.
gazon [gɑzɔ̃], m., turf, grass, green-sward.
géant [ʒeɑ̃], gigantic.
geler [ʒəle], § 158, to freeze; *gelé*, frozen.
gémissement [ʒemismɑ̃], m., groan (ing), moan(ing).
gendarme [ʒɑ̃darm], m., dragoon.
gendre [ʒɑ̃ːdr], m., son-in-law.
gêner [ʒɛne], to impede, restrain, incommode, be in the way of, disturb; *se —*, to put one's self to inconvenience, to hesitate.
général [ʒeneral], general; m., general; *en —*, in general, generally.
générosité [ʒenerozite], f., generosity.
genêt [ʒənɛ], m., broom (bot.).
génie [ʒeni], m., genius.
genou [ʒənu], m., knee.
gens [ʒɑ̃], m. f. pl., people; *— de la cour*, courtiers.
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti], pretty, nice.
géographie [ʒeɔgrafi], f., geography.
gerfaut [ʒɛrfo], m., gyrfalcon.
germer [ʒɛrme], to sprout.
geste [ʒɛst], m., gesture, sign.
gibier [ʒibje], m., game (the product of the chase).
gilet [ʒilɛ], m., waistcoat, vest.
giraumont [ʒirɔmɔ̃], m., pumpkin.
glace [glas], f., ice; ice-cream.
glissade [glisad], f., slide; *faire des —s*, to go sliding (on the ice).
glisser [glise], to slip, slide.
gloire [glwaːr], f., glory.
glorieux [glɔrjø], glorious, proud, elated.
go [go]; *tout de —*, unceremoniously, without hesitation.
gonfler (se) [sə gɔ̃fle], to swell (up), be swollen.
gouailleur [gwajœːr], m., joker, one fond of teasing or chaffing.
gouffre [gufr], m., gulf, abyss.
gourmande [gurmɑ̃ːd], f., glutton, gourmand.
goût [gu], m., taste; *de bon —*, in good taste.
goûter [gute], m., lunch.
goûter [gute], to taste, enjoy.
goutte [gut], f., drop; *— à —*, drop by drop.

gouttière [gutjɛːr], f., gutter (of a roof), "eave-trough."
gouverner [guvɛrne], to govern, rule, control, guide.
grâce [grɑːs], f., grace, favour; pardon.
gracieux [grasjø], gracious, kindly.
grain [grɛ̃], m., grain, corn.
graine [grɛːn], f., seed.
grammaire [gramɛːr], f., grammar.
grand [grɑ̃], great, large, tall, grand; long.
grand'chose [grɑ̃ ʃoːz], much.
grandir [grɑ̃diːr], to grow, grow large, grow up; increase.
grand-père [grɑ̃ pɛːr], m., grandfather.
grange [grɑ̃ːʒ], f., barn.
gras [grɑ], fat; *mardi-* —, Shrove-Tuesday.
grave [graːv], grave, serious, solemn.
gravement [gravmɑ̃], gravely, seriously.
graver [grave], to engrave.
gravitation [gravitɑsjɔ̃], f., gravitation.
gré [gre], m., will, wish, liking, pleasure; *prendre en* — *de*, to take a fancy to; *à son* —, to one's taste.
grelot [grəlo], m., bell (spherical), sleigh-bell.
grillage [grijaːʒ], m., grating, wire-work; — *aux affiches*, bulletin-board (covered with a wire net-work as a protection).
grimper [grɛ̃pe], to climb.
grincement [grɛ̃smɑ̃], m., scratching (sound of pens on paper).
gris [gri], gray, dark-coloured; *pain* —, black bread, coarse bread, etc.
gronder [grɔ̃de], to chide, scold; grumble, rumble (of thunder).
gros [gro], large, big, great; heavy; *le cœur* —, with a heavy heart.
grossissement [grosismɑ̃], m., increase, growing.
groupe [grup], m., group, mass.
guère [gɛːr], but little, not much; *ne* . . . —, hardly . . . at all.
guérir [geriːr], to cure.
guerre [gɛːr], f., war.
guet-apens [gɛt apɑ̃], m., ambuscade.
guide [gid], m., guide.
guise [giːz], f., manner, way, fancy; *à sa* —, at will, as one likes.

H.

[h aspirate is indicated thus: **'h.**]

'ha! 'ha! [ɑ, ɑ], ha! ha!
habile [abil], able, clever.
habiller [abije], to dress.
habit [abi], m., garment, dress, apparel, garb; coat; pl., clothes, apparel, costume.
habitant [abitɑ̃], m., inhabitant, resident.
habiter [abite], to inhabit, live in.
habitude [abityd], f., habit, custom; *d'*—, ordinarily, usually.
habituer [abitɥe], to accustom; habituate; *s'*—, to accustom one's self, get used (to, *à*).
'hacher [aʃe], to chop, hack, cut to pieces, mince.
'haie [ɛ], f., hedge.
'haine [ɛːn], f., hatred.
haleine [alɛːn], f., breath; *prendre* —, to take breath, recover one's breath.
'hanneton [antɔ̃], m., may-bug, cock-chafer.
harmonie [armɔni], f., harmony.
'haricot [ariko], m., kidney-bean; stew of mutton and turnips.
'Harpagon [arpagɔ̃], Harpagon, a miser, the chief personage in Molière's "l'Avare".
'hasard [azaːr], m., chance; *par* —, by chance, perchance.
'hâte [ɑːt], f., haste; *en* —, in haste.
'hâter (se) [sə ɑte], to hasten, hurry.
'hausser (se) [se ose], to raise one's self, rise; *se — sur la pointe des pieds*, to stand upon tiptoe.

'haut [o], m., height; top, upper part, summit; *en* —, up stairs.
'haut [o], high; loud.
'haut [o], adv., loud.
'haye! [haːj], interj., indicating surprise.
'hé! [e], hoy!, halloo!
hélas! [elɑːs], alas!
Hélène [elɛːn], f., Helen.
Henri [ɑ̃ri], m., Henry.
herbe [ɛrb], f., grass, herb(s).
héritage [eritaːʒ], m., heritage, inheritance.
hésiter [ezite], to hesitate.
'hêtre [ɛːtr], m., beech.
heure [œːr], f., hour; time; *quelle — est-il?*, what o'clock is it?; *à — heure?*, at what o'clock?, at what hour?; *à neuf —s*, at nine o'clock; *tout à l'—*, not long ago, just now, a little ago; *de bonne —*, early, betimes, in good time.
heureusement [œrøzmɑ̃], happily, luckily, fortunately.
heureux [œrø], happy.
hier [jɛːr], yesterday; — *soir*, yesterday evening.
hippanthrope [ipɑ̃trɔp], m., a fabulous monster half man half horse, centaur.
hirondelle [irɔ̃dɛl], f., swallow.
histoire [istwaːr], f., history, story.
hiver [ivɛːr], m., winter; *en* —, in winter.
homme [ɔm], m., man; — *d'État*, statesman.
homme-cheval [ɔm ʃəval], m., centaur.
honnêtement [ɔnɛtmɑ̃], honestly, honourably, decently.
honneur [ɔnœːr], m., honour.
'honte [ɔ̃ːt], f., shame; *avoir* —, to be ashamed.
hôpital [ɔpital], m., hospital.
horizon [ɔrizɔ̃], m., horizon.
horloge [ɔrlɔːʒ], f., clock.
horrible [ɔribl], horrible.
'hors de [ɔːr də], outside of, except, apart from.
'hortibus [ɔrtibys], the erroneous Latin form which the school-boy dreamt that he wrote in his exercise instead of the form *hortis*.
hôte [oːt], m., guest.
hostilité [ɔstilite], f., hostility, attack.
Hôtel-Dieu [ɔtɛl djø], m., hospital.
hôtel de ville [ɔtɛl də vil], m., town-hall.
'houblon [ublɔ̃], m., hop, hop-vine.
'houppelande [uplɑ̃ːd], f., big coat, great-coat.
Hugo (Victor) [viktɔːr ygo], French writer, b. 1802, d. 1885.
huile [ɥil], f., oil.
'huit [ɥit], eight.
humain [ymɛ̃], human.
humeur [ymœːr], f., humour.
humide [ymid], damp, wet.
'hurlement [yrləmɑ̃], m., howl, howling.
'hurler [yrle], to howl, roar, bellow.
hydre [idr], f., hydra.

I.

ici [isi], here; *ici-bas*, here below.
idée [ide], f., idea.
ignoble [iɲɔbl], mean, base.
ignorance [iɲɔrɑ̃ːs], f., ignorance.
ignorer [iɲɔre], to be ignorant of, not to know.
il [il], he, it; — *en vint plusieurs*, there came several.
île [il], f., island.
ils [il], they.
illusion [ilyzjɔ̃], f., illusion.
immédiat [imedja], immediate.
immense [imɑ̃ːs], immense.
immobile [imɔbil], motionless.
impatience [ɛ̃pasjɑ̃ːs], f., impatience.
impatienter (s') [s ɛ̃pasjɑ̃te], to become impatient.
impertinent [ɛ̃pɛrtinɑ̃], impertinent, stupid.
imperturbable [ɛ̃pɛrtyrbabl], imperturbable.
impétuosité [ɛ̃petɥozite], f., impetuosity.
important [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃], important.

importer [ɛ̃pɔrte], to be of consequence; *n'importe,* no matter; *n'importe quel autre,* any other.
impossibilité [ɛ̃pɔsibilite], f., impossibility.
impossible [ɛ̃pɔsibl], impossible.
impression [ɛ̃prɛsjɔ̃], f., impression.
imprévoyance [ɛ̃prevwajɑ̃:s], f., want of foresight.
imprimer [ɛ̃prime], to print.
impuissant [ɛ̃pɥisɑ̃], powerless.
impur [ɛ̃py:r], impure.
inattendu [inatɑ̃dy], unexpected.
incendie [ɛ̃sɑ̃di], m., burning, fire.
incliner [ɛ̃kline], to incline, bend; *s'*—, to bow.
inconnu [ɛ̃kɔny], unknown.
inconstant [ɛ̃kɔ̃stɑ̃], variable, wavering.
inconvénient [ɛ̃kɔ̃venjɑ̃], m., disadvantage.
incorruptible [ɛ̃kɔryptibl], incorruptible.
indépendant [ɛ̃depɑ̃dɑ̃], independent.
indicible [ɛ̃disibl], unspeakable.
indiquer [ɛ̃dike], to indicate.
indistinctement [ɛ̃distɛ̃ktəmɑ̃], without distinction.
individu [ɛ̃dividy], m., individual.
inexorable [inegzɔrabl], inexorable.
infanterie [ɛ̃fɑ̃tri], f., infantry.
infini [ɛ̃fini], infinite.
infini [ɛ̃fini], m., infinite.
nfiniment [ɛ̃finimɑ̃], infinitely, very much.
nfirmerie [ɛ̃firməri], f., infirmary, sick-ward.
nfirmière [ɛ̃firmjɛ:r], f., nurse.
nfluent [ɛ̃flyɑ̃], influential.
nformer (s') [s ɛ̃fɔrme], to inquire.
njuste [ɛ̃ʒyst], unjust.
njustice [ɛ̃ʒystis], f., injustice.
nquiéter [ɛ̃kjete], § 158, to disquiet, trouble; *s'*—, to be anxious.
nquiétude [ɛ̃kjetyd], f., anxiety.
nsecte [ɛ̃sɛkt], m., insect.
nspection [ɛ̃spɛksjɔ̃], f., inspection.
instant [ɛ̃stɑ̃], m., instant, moment; *à l'*—, immediately.
instruction [ɛ̃stryksjɔ̃], f., instruction, education.
instruit [ɛ̃strɥi], informed, educated.
instrument [ɛ̃strymɑ̃], m., instrument.
intact [ɛ̃takt], intact, whole.
intelligent [ɛ̃tɛliʒɑ̃], intelligent.
intendant [ɛ̃tɑ̃dɑ̃], m., steward.
intention [ɛ̃tɑ̃sjɔ̃], f., intention; *avoir l'*—, to intend.
intéressant [ɛ̃terɛsɑ̃], interesting.
intéresser [ɛ̃terɛse], to interest.
intérêt [ɛ̃terɛ], m., interest.
intérieurement [ɛ̃terjœrmɑ̃], inwardly.
interlocuteur [ɛ̃tɛrlɔkytœ:r], m., interlocutor.
interroger [ɛ̃tɛrɔʒe], § 156, to question.
intervalle [ɛ̃tɛrval], m., interval.
introduire [ɛ̃trɔdɥi:r], § 185, to introduce.
inutile [inytil], useless.
invisible [ɛ̃vizibl], invisible, unseen.
invitation [ɛ̃vitɑsjɔ̃], f., invitation.
inviter [ɛ̃vite], to invite, beg.
invulnérable [ɛ̃vylnerabl], invulnerable.
irai [ire], 1 sg. fut. *aller.*
irrésistible [irezistibl], irresistible.
irriter [irite], to irritate, excite.
issue [isy], f., issue, outlet.

J.

jabot [ʒabo], m., frill.
Jacques [ʒɑ:k], James.
jamais [ʒamɛ], ever, never; *ne* . . . —, never; *pour* —, for ever.
jambe [ʒɑ̃:b], f., leg.
janvier [ʒɑ̃vje], m., January.
jardin [ʒardɛ̃], m., garden.
jaunissant [ʒonisɑ̃], turning yellow.
je [ʒə], I.
Jean [ʒɑ̃], John.
Jéricho [ʒeriko], Jericho.
Jérusalem [ʒeryzalɛm], Jerusalem.

Jésus-Christ [ʒezy kri], Jesus Christ.
jeter [ʒəte], § 158, to throw, cast, utter; *se* —, to fall upon, rush.
jeu [ʒø], m., play, game, motion.
jeudi [ʒødi], m., Thursday.
jeune [ʒœn], young.
jeûne [ʒø:n], m., fasting.
jeunesse [ʒœnɛs], f., youth.
joie [ʒwa], f., joy.
joli [ʒɔli], pretty, nice, fine.
joue [ʒu], f., cheek; *coucher en* —, to aim at.
jouer [ʒwe], to play.
jouet [ʒwɛ], m., toy.
jouir [ʒwi:r], to enjoy; — *de*, to enjoy.
jour [ʒu:r], m., day, light; — *de fête*, holiday; *le — de l'An*, New Year's day.
journal [ʒurnal], m., newspaper.
journée [ʒurne], f., day; *toute la* —, all day long.
joyeux [ʒwajø], joyous, glad.
juge [ʒy:ʒ], m., judge.
juif [ʒɥif], m., Jew.
juillet [ʒɥijɛ], m., July.
jusque (à) [ʒysk (a)], to, even, as far as, until; — *à ce que*, till, — *ici*, till now; — *-là*, till then.
justement [ʒystəmɑ̃], precisely.
justice [ʒystis], f., justice.

K.

Kellermann [kɛlɛrman], a general under Napoleon, b. 1770, d. 1835.
Keyser [kezɛ:r], a general under Napoleon.

L.

là [la], there; *celui-là*, that one, the former; *ce sont — ses adieux*, those are its farewells.
là-bas [la bɑ], yonder.
labourer [labure], to plough, dig.
laboureur [laburœ:r], m., husbandman.
lac [lak], m., lake.
laceron [lasərɔ̃], m., sow-thistle.
là dedans [la dədɑ̃], in it, therein.
là-dessus [la dsy], upon it, thereupon, on top of that.
La Fontaine [la fɔ̃tɛ:n], a celebrated French writer, b. 1621, d. 1695.
là-haut [la o], up there, up high.
laisser [lɛse], to leave, bequeath, let, let have; *me — faire*, to leave it to me; *se — traire*, to allow herself to be milked; — *tomber*, to let fall, drop.
lait [lɛ], m., milk.
laitue [lɛty], f., lettuce.
Lamartine [lamartin], French writer, b. 1791, d. 1869.
Lamennais [lamnɛ], French writer, b. 1782, d. 1854.
lance [lɑ̃:s], f., lance.
lancer [lɑ̃se], § 156, to fling, throw.
lancier [lɑ̃sje], m., lancer.
langue [lɑ̃:g], f., tongue, language.
languir [lɑ̃gi:r], to languish, pine away; *se* —, ditto.
lapereau [lapro], m., young rabbit.
lapin [lapɛ̃], m., rabbit.
large [larʒ], wide, broad.
larme [larm], f., tear; *rire aux —s*, to laugh till the tears come.
las [lɑ], weary.
latin [latɛ̃], Latin.
laurier [lɔrje], m., laurel.
laver [lave], to wash.
le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le], the.
le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le], him, her, it, them.
leçon [ləsɔ̃], f., lesson.
lecture [lɛkty:r], f., reading.
Lefebvre-Desnouettes [ləfɛ:vr denwɛt], a French general under Napoleon, b. 1773, d. 1822.
léger [leʒe], light, slight.
légion [leʒjɔ̃], f., legion.
Legouvé [ləguve], French writer, b. 1807.
legs [lɛ], m., legacy.
légume [legym], m., vegetable.
lendemain [lɑ̃dmɛ̃], m., next day, day after, the morrow.
lentement [lɑ̃tmɑ̃], slowly.
lequel, laquelle [ləkɛl, lakɛl], who, whom, which.

lessive [lɛsiːv], f., large washing.
lettre [lɛtr], f., letter.
leur [lœːr], poss., their; *le* —, theirs.
leur [lœːr], pers., to them, them.
lever [ləve], § 158, to raise; *se* —, to rise.
lever [ləve], m., rising; — *du soleil*, sun-rise.
lévite [levit], m., Levite.
lévite [levit], f., frock-coat.
lèvre [lɛːvr], f., lip.
lévrier [levrie], m., greyhound.
liberté [libɛrte], f., liberty.
libre [libr], free.
lie [li], f., lees, dregs.
lieu [ljø], m., place; *au* — *de*, instead of; *avoir* —, to take place.
lieue [ljø], f., league.
ligne [liɲ], f., line.
lingerie [lɛ̃ʒri], f., linen-room.
lion [ljɔ̃], m., lion.
lire [liːr], § 197, to read.
lisière [lizjɛːr], f., edge.
lit [li], m., bed.
litière [litjɛːr], f., litter, straw; *être sur la* —, said of a person very ill in bed.
livre [liːvr], m., book.
livrer [livre], to give up.
local [lɔkal], local.
loi [lwɑ], f., law.
loin [lwɛ̃], far, far off; *de* —, in the distance; *plus* —, farther off, farther on.
long [lɔ̃], long; *le* — *de*, along; *tout au* —, at full length.
longe [lɔ̃ːʒ], f., tether; loin.
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃], long, a long while.
Lorraine [lɔrɛːn], f., Lorraine.
lorsque [lɔrskə], when.
lot [lo], m., lot, portion.
Louis-Philippe [lwi filip], king of France from 1830 to 1848.
Louis XIV [lwi katɔrz], king of France from 1643 to 1715.
Louis XV [lwi kɛ̃ːz], king of France from 1715 to 1774.
Louis XVI [lwi sɛːz], king of France from 1774 to 1793.
loup [lu], m., wolf.
lourd [luːr], heavy; close, sultry (of weather).
lourdement [lurdmɑ̃], heavily.
Loti [lɔti], *nom de plume* of Julien Viaud, b. 1850.
Louvre [luːvr], m., Louvre.
Luc [lyk], Luke.
lueur [lɥœːr], f., gleam.
lui [lɥi], him, to him, to her, it, himself; he; — *-même*, himself; *à* — *seul*, by himself, alone.
luisant [lɥizɑ̃], shining, glossy.
lumière [lymjɛːr], f., light.
lundi [lœ̃di], m., Monday.
lune [lyn], f., moon; *clair de* —, moonlight.
lunettes [lynɛt], f., spectacles.
lut [ly], 3 sg. p. def. *lire*.
Lyon [ljɔ̃], m., Lyons.

M.

M. [məsjø], abbreviation of *Monsieur*.
madame [madam], f., madam, Mrs.
Madeleine [madlɛːn], f., Magdalen.
mademoiselle [madmwazɛl], f., miss.
magasin [magazɛ̃], m., shop, store.
magnifique [maɲifik], magnificent, splendid.
mai [mɛ], m., May.
maigrir [mɛgriːr], to become lean.
main [mɛ̃], f., hand; *à la* —, in his (your, etc.) hand; *battre des* —*s*, to clap hands.
maintenant [mɛ̃tnɑ̃], now.
maintenir [mɛ̃tniːr], § 177, to hold fast.
maire [mɛːr], m., mayor.
mairie [mɛri], f., mayor's office.
mais [mɛ], but; — *non*, not at all.
maison [mezɔ̃], f., house, home; *à la* —, at home.
maisonnette [mezɔnɛt], f., cottage, little house.
maître [mɛːtr], m., master.
maîtresse [mɛtrɛs], f., mistress; adj., superior.
majesté [maʒɛste], f., majesty.
majorité [maʒɔrite], f., majority.

mal [mal], m., evil, ill ; *faire — à*, to hurt, be sore, ache ; — *aux dents*, toothache.
mal [mal], badly, ill, wrong.
malade [malad], sick, ill, sore ; *le* —, the sick one, the patient.
maladresse [maladrɛs], f., clumsiness.
mâle [mɑːl], male, strong.
malgré [malgre], in spite of.
malheur [malœːr], m., misfortune, unhappiness.
malheureusement [malœrøzmɑ̃], unhappily.
malheureux [malœrø], unhappy ; m., poor creature.
malin [malɛ̃], cunning.
malle [mal], f., trunk.
manche [mɑ̃ːʃ], f., sleeve.
manchette [mɑ̃ʃɛt], f., cuff.
manchon [mɑ̃ʃɔ̃], m., muff.
mangeaille [mɑ̃ʒɑːj], f., food, eating.
manger [mɑ̃ʒe], § 156, to eat, wear away.
manière [manjɛːr], f., manner, way ; *de — que*, so that.
manœuvrer [manœvre], to manœuvre.
manquer [mɑ̃ke], to fail, be lacking, miss ; — *la classe*, to run away from school, play truant.
maquis [maki], m., thicket.
marchand [marʃɑ̃], m., merchant, shop-keeper.
marche [marʃ], f., march, walk, progress, speed.
marché [marʃe], m., market ; (*à*) *bon* —, cheap.
marcher [marʃe], to march, walk, go.
mardi [mardi], m., Tuesday ; *le — gras*, Shrove-Tuesday.
maréchal ferrant [mareʃal fɛrɑ̃], blacksmith, horse-shoer.
marée [mare], f., tide.
Marie [mari], f., Mary.
marin [marɛ̃], m., sailor, seaman.
marine [marin], f., marine, navy ; — *militaire*, royal navy.
marquer [marke], to mark, show.
marquis [marki], m., marquis ; *monsieur le* —, the marquis.
marron [marɔ̃], m., chestnut.
mars [mars], m., March.
Marseillaise [marsɛjɛːz], f., the French national air.
marteau [marto], m., hammer.
masqué [maske], masked.
masse [mas], f., mass.
matelot [matlo], m., sailor.
matériel [materjɛl], material.
matin [matɛ̃], m., morning ; *le* —, in the morning.
maudit [modi], cursed.
maure [mɔːr], m., Moor.
mauvais [movɛ], bad, ill, evil.
maux [mo], see *mal*.
maxime [maksim], f., maxim.
me [mə], me, to me, for me.
méchamment [meʃamɑ̃], maliciously.
méchant [meʃɑ̃], bad, cross.
mécontent [mekɔ̃tɑ̃], dissatisfied, displeased.
mécontentement [mekɔ̃tɑ̃tmɑ̃], m., dissatisfaction.
médecin [medsɛ̃], m., doctor.
médiocre [medjɔkr], mediocre, poor.
meilleur [mɛjœːr], better, best.
mêler [mɛle], to mingle ; *se — de*, to be mingled with, to meddle with.
mélodieux [melɔdjø], melodious.
membre [mɑ̃ːbr], m., member.
même [mɛːm], same, even, self, very ; *de* —, the same ; *de — que*, as well as.
mémoire [memwaːr], f., memory.
menace [mənas], f., menace, threat.
menacer [mənase], § 156, to menace, threaten.
mener [məne], § 158, to lead, conduct, take, drive.
mentir [mɑ̃tiːr], § 166, to lie.
menu [məny], small, fine.
mépris [mepri], m., scorn.
méprise [mepriːz], f., mistake.
mer [mɛːr], f., sea ; *en* —, at sea.
merci [mɛrsi], m., thanks, thank you.

mercredi [mɛrkrədi], m., Wednesday.
mère [mɛːr], f., mother.
mérite [merit], m., merit, worth.
mériter [merite], to deserve.
merle [mɛrl], m., blackbird.
merveille [mɛrvɛːj], f., marvel, wonder; *à* —, wonderfully.
merveilleux [mɛrvɛjø], wonderful.
messe [mɛs], f., mass (eccles.).
messieurs [mesjø], pl. of *monsieur*.
mesure [məzyːr], f., measure.
mesurer [məzyre], to measure.
métairie [metɛri], f., small farm.
métier [metje], m., trade.
mettre [mɛtr], § 198, to put, place, put on; *le — à la porte*, to turn him out of doors; — *de côté*, to lay aside; — *en éveil*, to warn; *se* —, to set one's self, begin; *se — à table*, to sit down to dinner, etc.; *se — en colère*, to get angry.
meunier [mønje], m., miller.
meurs [mœːr], 1 sg. pres. indic. *mourir*.
meurt [mœːr], 3 sg. pres. indic. *mourir*.
meurtrir [mœrtriːr], to bruise.
meurtrissure [mœrtrisyːr], f., bruise.
midi [midi], m., noon.
miel [mjɛl], m., honey.
mien [mjɛ̃], mine; *le* —, mine.
miette [mjɛt], f., crumb.
mieux [mjø], better.
Milhaud [mijo], a French general under Napoleon, b. 1776, d. 1833.
milieu [miljø], m., middle, midst; *au beau* —, in the very midst.
militaire [militɛːr], military.
mille [mil], a thousand.
million [miljɔ̃], m., million.
mince [mɛ̃ːs], thin.
mine [min], f., looks.
minuit [minɥi], m., midnight.
minute [minyt], f., minute.
miracle [mirɑːkl], m., miracle.
mis [mi], 1 sg. p. def. and p. part. *mettre*.
misérable [mizerabl], miserable, wretched.
misère [mizɛːr], f., misery, trouble, distress.
miséricorde [mizerikɔrd], f., pity, mercy.
mit [mi], 3 sg. p. def. *mettre*.
mitraille [mitrɑːj], f., grapeshot.
mobile [mɔbil], mobile, changeable, variable.
modeste [mɔdɛst], modest.
modiste [mɔdist], f., milliner.
moi [mwa], me, to me; I; —*-même*, (I) myself.
moindre [mwɛ̃ːdr], less, least.
moineau [mwano], m., sparrow.
moins [mwɛ̃], less, least; *pour le* —, at the least; *du* —, at least.
mois [mwɑ], m., month.
moisson [mwasɔ̃], f., harvest.
moissonner [mwasɔne], to reap.
moissonneur [mwasɔnœːr], m., reaper.
moitié [mwatje], f., half; *à* —, half.
Molière [mɔljɛːr], French dramatist, b. 1622, d. 1673.
molle [mɔl], f. of *mou*.
moment [mɔmɑ̃], m., moment; *du — où*, since; *au — où*, when, at the moment when.
mon, ma, mes [mɔ̃, ma, me], my.
monde [mɔ̃ːd], m., world, people; *tout le* —, everybody.
monnaie [mɔnɛ], f., coin, money.
monosyllabe [mɔnɔsilab], m., monosyllable.
monotone [mɔnɔtɔn], monotonous.
monsieur [məsjø], m., sir, gentleman, the gentleman, my lord, Mr.
monstre [mɔ̃ːstr], m., monster.
mont [mɔ̃], m., mountain.
montagne [mɔ̃taɲ], f., mountain.
monter [mɔ̃te], to mount, go up, ascend, rise, get into (of vehicles).
montre [mɔ̃ːtr], f., watch.
Montréal [mɔ̃real], m., Montreal.
montrer [mɔ̃tre], to show; *se* —, to show one's self.
monture [mɔ̃tyːr], f., beast (for riding).
monument [mɔnymɑ̃], m., monument.

moquer (se) [sə mɔke], to laugh at, make sport of, despise.
moral [mɔral], moral.
morale [mɔral], f., moral.
morceau [mɔrso], m., bit, piece.
mordre [mɔrdr], § 210, to bite, eat away.
mort [mɔːr], f., death.
mort [mɔːr], p.part. *mourir*, dead ; *le* —, the dead one.
mortel [mɔrtɛl], deadly.
Moskowa, Moskwa [mɔskɔva, mɔskva], f., river on which Moscow is built.
mot [mo], m., word.
mou [mu], soft.
mouche [muʃ], f., fly.
moucheron [muʃrɔ̃], m., gnat.
mouchoir [muʃwaːr], m., handkerchief.
moujik [muʒik], m., Russian peasant, labourer.
moulin [mulɛ̃], m., mill.
mourant [murɑ̃], m., dying person.
mourir [muriːr], § 174, to die, perish ; *il est mort*, he died ; — *de faim*, to die with hunger, starve (to death).
mousquetaire [muskətɛːr], m., musketeer, guardsman.
mousqueterie [muskɛtri], f., musketry.
moustache [mustaʃ], f., moustache.
mouvement [muvmɑ̃], m., movement ; *premier* —, first impulse.
mouvoir [muvwaːr], §219, to move.
moyen [mwajɛ̃], m., means, way ; *le — de le faire ?*, how shall we do it ?
muet [mɥɛ], mute, dumb.
mugir [myʒiːr], to bellow.
muguet [mygɛ], m., lily of the valley.
multiplier [myltiplie], to multiply.
mur [myːr], m., wall.
mûr [myːr], ripe.
muraille [myrɑːj], f., wall.
Murat [myra], famous general under Napoleon, born 1771, executed Oct. 13th, 1815.
mûrir [myriːr], to ripen.
murmure [myrmyːr], m., murmur.
musique [myzik], f., music, band (military).
Musset (de) [də mysɛ], French poet, b. 1810, d. 1857.
mutuellement [mytɥɛlmɑ̃], mutually.
myope [mjɔp], short-sighted.
mystérieux [misterjø], mysterious.

N.

naissance [nɛsɑ̃ːs], f., birth.
naître [nɛːtr], § 200, to be born ; *il est né*, he was born.
Napoléon [napɔleɔ̃], Napoleon Bonaparte (1769-1821), born in Corsica, became Emperor of the French, 1804, died in St. Helena.
nappe [nap], f., table-cloth.
narine [narin], f., nostril.
national [nasjɔnal], national.
nature [natyːr], f., nature.
naturel [natyrɛl], natural.
naturel [natyrɛl], m., nature, temper.
naturellement [natyrɛlmɑ̃], naturally.
Navarre [navaːr], f., ancient kingdom in the south of France.
navet [navɛ], m., turnip.
navire [naviːr], m., ship.
ne [nə], no, not ; *ne . . . pas*, no, not ; *ne . . . ni . . . ni*, neither . . . nor ; *ne . . . rien*, nothing ; *ne . . . que*, only ; untranslated after comparatives.
né [ne], p. part. *naître*.
néanmoins [neɑ̃mwɛ̃], nevertheless.
nécessaire [nesesɛːr], necessary.
nécessité [nesesite], f., necessity.
nectar [nɛktaːr], m., nectar.
neige [nɛːʒ], f., snow.
nettoyer [nɛtwaje], § 157, to clean.
neuf [nœf], nine.
neuf [nœf], new.
neuvième [nœvjɛm], ninth.
neveu [nəvø], m., nephew, descendant.
Ney [nɛ], a very distinguished general under Napoleon, born 1769, executed December 7th, 1815.

nez [ne], m., nose; *se rire au* —, to laugh at one's self; *faire (envoyer) un pied de — à*, to put one's fingers to one's nose at, to make grimaces at, to laugh at.
ni [ni], neither, nor; *ne . . . ni . . . ni*, neither . . . nor.
niaiserie [njɛzri], f., nonsense.
nid [ni], m., nest.
Noël [nɔɛl], m. or f., Christmas; *le jour de* —, Christmas day.
noir [nwaːr], black, dark.
noisette [nwɑzɛt], f., hazel-nut.
nom [nɔ̃m], m., name.
nombre [nɔ̃ːbr], m., number.
nombreux [nɔ̃brø], numerous.
nommer [nɔme], to name, call, appoint; *se* —, to be named, called.
non [nɔ̃], no, not; *ni moi — plus*, nor I either; *les miens n'ont que moi — plus*, mine also have no one but me; — *pas que*, not that.
nord [nɔːr], m., north.
nos [no], pl. of *notre.*
noss [nɔs], Russian for ' nose.
notaire [nɔtɛːr], m., notary.
notre, nos [nɔtr, no], our.
nôtre (le) [lə noːtr], ours.
Notre-Dame [nɔtr dam], f., church in Paris.
nourrir [nuriːr], to nourish, feed, bring up.
nourriture [nurityːr], f., food, nurture.
nous [nu], we, us, to us.
nouveau [nuvo], new; *de* —, again.
nouveauté [nuvote], f., novelty; *magasin de nouveautés*, dry-goods store.
Nouvelle-Calédonie [nuvɛl kaledɔni], f., New Caledonia, a French penal settlement.
Nouvelle-Orléans [nuvɛl ɔrleɑ̃], f., New Orleans.
nouvelles [nuvɛl], f. plu., news.
nouvellement [nuvɛlmɑ̃], newly.
novembre [nɔvɑ̃ːbr], m., November.
noyer [nwaje], m., walnut-tree.
noyer [nwaje], § 157, to drown; *noyé de brume*, hidden in mist; *se*—, to drown.
nu [ny], naked, bare.
nuage [nɥaːʒ], m., cloud.
nuit [nɥi], f., night; *cette* —, last night.
nul [nyl], no, no one.
numérique [nymerik], numerical.

O.

obélisque [ɔbelisk], m., obelisk.
objecter [ɔbʒɛkte], to object.
objet [ɔbʒɛ], m., object.
obligeance [ɔbliʒɑ̃ːs], f., kindness.
obliger [ɔbliʒe], § 156, to force; *vous nous obligerez de*, you will oblige us by.
obscurité [ɔpskyrite], f., darkness.
obséder [ɔpsede], § 158, to beset.
observer [ɔpsɛrve], to observe; *faire — à*, to observe to.
obstacle [ɔpstakl], m., obstacle.
obtenir [ɔptəniːr], § 177, to obtain.
occasion [ɔkɑzjɔ̃], f., opportunity.
occuper [ɔkype], to occupy.
œil, pl. **yeux** [œːj, jø], m., eye.
œillet [œjɛ], m., pink, carnation.
office [ɔfis], m., office, duty.
officier [ɔfisje], m., officer.
offrir [ɔfriːr], § 176, to offer.
ogre [ɔgr], m., ogre.
oh ! [o], oh !
oie [wa], f., goose.
oignon [ɔɲɔ̃], m., onion.
oiseau [wazo], m., bird.
Olympe [ɔlɛ̃ːp], m., Olympus.
ombre [ɔ̃ːbr], f., shade, shadow, obscurity; *à l'— (de)*, under or in the shadow (of).
on [ɔ̃], one, they, we, you, people, some one.
oncle [ɔ̃ːkl], m., uncle.
ondoyer [ɔ̃dwaje], § 157, to undulate, float.
onduler [ɔ̃dyle], to undulate.
ont [ɔ̃], 3 pl. pres. indic. *avoir.*
onze [ɔ̃ːz], eleven.
opinion [ɔpinjɔ̃], f., opinion.
oppression [ɔprɛsjɔ̃], f., oppression.
or [ɔːr], m., gold; *d'*—, gold(en).

or [ɔːr], now, but; — *çà*, come now.
orage [ɔraːʒ], m., storm.
orageux [ɔraʒø], stormy, agitated.
orateur [ɔratœːr], m., orator.
ordinaire [ɔrdinɛːr], ordinary; *d'*—, usually.
ordinairement [ɔrdinɛrmɑ̃], ordinarily.
ordinal [ɔrdinal], ordinal.
ordonnance [ɔrdɔnɑ̃ːs], f., prescription.
ordonner [ɔrdɔne], to order, prescribe.
ordre [ɔrdr], m., order.
oreille [ɔrɛːj], f., ear.
orgie [ɔrʒi], f., orgy.
orgueil [ɔrgœːj], m., pride.
origine [ɔriʒin], f., origin.
orme [ɔrm], m., elm.
orner [ɔrne], to adorn, decorate.
orphelin [ɔrfəlɛ̃], m., orphan.
orphique [ɔrfik], Orphic.
ortolan [ɔrtɔlɑ̃], m., ortolan.
oser [oze], to dare.
ôter [ote], to take off, take out, remove.
ou [u], or; *ou...ou*, either...or; — *bien*, or.
où [u], where, when, in which, on which; *d'*—, whence, from which, on which.
oublier [ublie], to forget.
ouest [wɛst], m., west.
oui [wi], yes.
outre [utr], beyond; *en* —, in addition; *passer* —, to pass by without noticing.
ouvert [uvɛːr], p. part. *ouvrir*, open.
ouvrage [uvraːʒ], m., work.
ouvre [uːvr], 3 sg. pres. indic. *ouvrir*.
ouvrir [uvriːr], § 176, to open; *s'*—, to open.

P.

page [paːʒ], m., page.
page [paːʒ], f., page.
paille [pɑːj], f., straw; *chapeau de* —, straw hat.
pain [pɛ̃], m., bread.
paire [pɛːr], f., pair.
paix [pɛ], f., peace.
palais [palɛ], m., palace, building, — *de justice*, court-house.
pâle [pɑːl], pale.
pâlir [pɑliːr], to grow pale.
pâlissant [pɑlisɑ̃], turning pale, waning.
palme [palm], f., palm; —*s académiques* (p. 421), wreath of palm leaves used as an ornamental design on the certificates granted to prize-winners at school.
papier [papje], m., paper.
Pâques [pɑːk], m., Easter; *lundi de* —, Easter Monday.
par [par], by, through; — *où*, by what place, by which, through which; — *exemple*, for example, (interj.) dear me!; — *ma foi*, upon my word; — *delà*, beyond; — *une nuit*, on a night; — *là*, by that place.
parafe [paraf], m., paraph, flourish (added to one's signature).
paraître [parɛːtr], § 188, to appear. *à ce qu'il paraît*, *paraît-il*, as it appears.
parce que [pars kə], because.
par-ci par-là [par si par la], here and there.
par-dessus [par dəsy], above, higher than, over; — (*le*) *bord*, overboard.
pardon [pardɔ̃], m., pardon; excuse me, I beg your pardon.
pareil [parɛːj], like, similar, equal.
parent [parɑ̃], m., parent, relative.
parfaitement [parfɛtmɑ̃], completely.
parfum [parfœ̃], m., perfume.
parfumé [parfyme], perfumed, sweet.
parier [parje], to wager, bet.
Paris [pari], m., Paris.
parisien [parizjɛ̃], Parisian.
parler [parle], to speak, talk; — *français*, to speak French.
parmi [parmi], amongst.
parole [parɔl], f., word.

paroxysme[parɔksism],m.,climax.
part [paːr], f., part, share; *de sa —*, from him; *nulle —*, nowhere.
partage [partaːʒ], m., share.
partager [partaʒe], § 156, to share; give a share to; *être mal partagé*, to have a bad share.
partance [partɑ̃ːs], f., setting sail; *en —*, on the point of sailing.
parterre [partɛːr], m., parterre, pit (theatre).
participe [partisip], m., participle.
particulier [partikylje], m., private individual.
particulièrement [partikyljɛrmɑ̃], especially.
partie [parti], f., part.
partir [partiːr], § 166, to leave, depart, go away, be off, start; *à — de*, from, beginning with.
partout [partu], everywhere.
parut [pary], 3 sg. p. def. *paraître*.
parvenir [parvəniːr], § 178, to arrive, succeed.
pas [pɑ], m., step, pace, footstep.
pas [pɑ], no, not; *ne . . . —*, no, not; *— un* (*ne*), not one; *— de*, no, not, none; *non —*, not; *n'est ce — ?*, shall we not?; etc., etc.
passage [pɑsaːʒ], m., passage, crossing.
passant [pɑsɑ̃], m., passer-by.
passe [pɑːs], f., pass, channel.
passé [pɑse], past, gone, over, last.
passer [pɑse], to pass, pass on, go by, put on; spend (time); *il passa sa langue sur*, he ran his tongue over; *— devant*, to pass, go past; *— chez*, to call on; *se —*, to take place, happen; *se — de*, to do without.
passereau [pɑsro], m., sparrow.
passion [pɑsjɔ̃], f., passion.
pasteur [pɑstœːr], m., pastor.
pâté [pɑte], m., pastry, pie; *chair à —*, mince-meat.
patience [pasjɑ̃ːs], f., patience.
patiner [patine], to skate.
pâtir [pɑtiːr], to suffer.

32

patois [patwa], m., dialect.
patrie [patri], f., native land.
patrimoine [patrimwan], m., inheritance.
patriotique [patriɔtik], patriotic.
patte [pat], f., paw, foot; *—s de derrière*, hind-feet; *—s de devant*, fore-feet; *— de dindon*, turkey's foot.
pauvre [poːvr], poor, paltry.
pauvrette [povrɛt], f., poor creature.
pavé [pave], m., pavement.
payer [pɛje], § 157, to pay, pay for.
pays [pei], m., country, locality.
paysan [peizɑ̃], m., peasant.
peau [po], f., skin.
pécaïre ! [pekaiːr], dear, dear!
pêcher [pɛʃe], to fish; *aller —*, to go fishing.
peigne [pɛɲ], m., comb.
peindre [pɛ̃ːdr], § 190, to paint.
peine [pɛːn], f., pain, difficulty, trouble, sorrow; *à —*, hardly; *ce n'est pas la —*, it is not worth while; *faire de la — à*, to pain.
peinture[pɛ̃tyːr],f.,paint,painting.
pêle-mêle [pɛl mɛl], pell-mell; m., confusion.
pencher [pɑ̃ʃe], to incline, bend.
pendant [pɑ̃dɑ̃], during; *— que*, whilst.
pendre [pɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to hang.
pensée [pɑ̃se], f., thought.
penser [pɑ̃se], to think; *vous pensez si*, imagine whether; *— à*, to think of.
pensionnaire [pɑ̃sjɔnɛːr], m. and f., boarder.
pente [pɑ̃ːt], f., slope.
Pentecôte [pɑ̃tkoːt], f., Whitsuntide; *lundi de la —*, Whit-Monday, Whitsun Monday.
percer [pɛrse], § 156, to pierce.
percher [pɛrʃe], to perch.
perdre [pɛrdr], § 210, to lose, ruin.
perdreau [pɛrdro], m., young partridge.
perdrix [pɛrdri], f., partridge.
père [pɛːr], m., father.
péril [peril], m., peril.

période [perjɔd], f., period, sentence.
périr [periːr], to perish.
perle [pɛrl], f., pearl.
permettre [pɛrmɛtr], § 198, to permit ; *se* —, to take the liberty ; *permis*, permitted.
permission [pɛrmisjɔ̃], f., permission.
Perrault [pɛro], French writer, b. 1628, d. 1703.
personnage [pɛ́rsɔnaːʒ], m., personage, character.
personne [pɛrsɔn], f., person ; pl. people.
personne [pɛrsɔn], m., anybody, nobody ; *ne*...—, not any one, no one, nobody.
personnel [pɛrsɔnɛl], personal.
perspective [pɛrspɛktiːv], f., prospect.
perte [pɛrt], f., loss.
pesant [pəzɑ̃], heavy.
pesanteur [pəzɑ̃tœːr], f., weight.
peser [pəze], § 158, to weigh, be heavy, oppress.
petit [pəti], small, little ; m., little one, young one.
petit-fils [pəti fis], m., grandson.
peu [pø], m., little ; also as adverb, little ; — *à* —, little by little ; *dis-moi un* —, tell me now ; *si* — *de chose*, so little.
peuple [pœpl], m., people, nation.
peur [pœːr], f., fear ; *lui faire* —, to frighten him ; *avoir* —, to be afraid ; *avoir grand'* —, to be in great fear ; *de* — *que*...*ne*, for fear lest.
peut [pø], 3 sg. pres. indic. *pouvoir*.
peut-être (que) [pøt ɛːtr kə], perhaps.
philanthropie [filɑ̃trɔpi], f., philanthropy.
phrase [frɑːz], f., phrase, sentence.
pic [pik], m., peak ; *à* —, perpendicular.
pied [pje], m., foot ; *à* —, on foot ; *de* — *en cap*, from head to foot.
pierre [pjɛːr], f., stone.
piétinement [pjetinmɑ̃], m., stamping.
pieu [pjø], m., stake.
pieusement [pjøzmɑ̃], piously.
pigeon [piʒɔ̃], m., pigeon.
pigeonneau [piʒɔno], m., young pigeon.
pile [pil], f., pile.
piler [pile], to pound (as in a mortar).
pipe [pip], f., pipe.
pique-nique [pik nik], m., picnic.
pistolet [pistɔlɛ], m., pistol ; — *d'arçon*, holster-pistol ; *tirer un coup de* —, to fire a pistol.
pitchou [pitʃu], dialectal for *petit.*
pitié [pitje], f., pity.
place [plas], f., place, post, square, seat, room, position.
plaidoyer [plɛdwaje], m., pleading.
plaie [plɛ], f., wound.
plaindre [plɛ̃ːdr], § 190, to pity ; *se* —, to complain.
plaine [plɛːn], f., plain.
plaire [plɛːr], § 201, to please ; *s'il vous plaît, s'il te plaît,* if you please.
plaisanterie [plɛzɑ̃tri], f., pleasantry, joke.
plaisir [plɛziːr], m., pleasure ; *faire* —, to give pleasure.
plan [plɑ̃], m., plan.
plancher [plɑ̃ʃe], m., floor.
plante [plɑ̃ːt], f., plant.
planter [plɑ̃te], to plant.
plat [pla], flat.
plateau [plato], m., plateau, upland.
plein [plɛ̃], full ; *en* — *air*, in the open air.
pléthore [pletɔːr], f., plethora.
pleurer [plœre], to weep.
pleuvoir [plœvwaːr], § 220, to rain, come thick.
plier [plie], to bend.
plisser [plise], to plait.
plonger [plɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to plunge, dive, dip.
ployer [plwaje], § 157, to bend.
plu [ply], p. part. *pleuvoir.*
pluie [plɥi], f., rain.
plume [plym], f., feather, pen.
plumet [plymɛ], m., plume.

plus [ply], more; — *de*, more, no more; *le* —, the more, the most; – *de* (with numerals), more than; *ne*... —, no more, no longer; *d'autant* — *que*, the more so as; *de* —, additional; *n'être* — *que*, to be no longer anything but; *ne*...*pas non* —, not...either.
plusieurs [plyzjœːr], several, many.
plutôt [plyto], rather.
poche [pɔʃ], f., pocket.
poêle [pwɑːl], m., stove.
poète [poɛːt], m., poet.
poids [pwɑ], m., weight.
poignée [pwaɲe], f., handful.
poil [pwal], m., hair.
poing [pwɛ̃], m., fist; *se battre à coups de* —, to box with one another.
point [pwɛ̃], m., point; *être sur le* — *de*, to be at the point of; — *du jour*, daybreak.
point [pwɛ̃], no, not; *ne*...— *de*, not any, no.
pointe [pwɛ̃ːt], f., point; *sur la* — *des pieds*, on tiptoe.
poire [pwaːr], f., pear.
poirier [pwarje], m., pear-tree.
pois [pwɑ], m., pea.
poitrail [pwatrɑːj], m., breast (of horse).
poitrine [pwatrin], f., breast, lungs.
polir [pɔliːr], to polish.
polype [pɔlip], m., polyp.
pomme [pɔm], f., apple; — *de terre*, potato.
pommier [pɔmje], m., apple-tree.
pompier [pɔ̃pje], m., fireman.
pont [pɔ̃], m., bridge.
pont-levis [pɔ̃ lvi], m., draw-bridge.
Pont-Neuf [pɔ̃ nœf], m., bridge over the Seine in Paris.
populaire [pɔpylɛːr], popular.
port [pɔːr], m., port.
portail [pɔrtɑːj], m., portal.
porte [pɔrt], f., door, gate; — *à* —, next door.
porte-plume [pɔrt plym], m., pen-holder.
porter [pɔrte], to bear, carry, take, wear, put; *se* — (*bien*), to be (well); *bien portant*, in good health, well; *comment vous portez-vous?*, how are you?
portière [pɔrtjɛːr], f., coach-door.
posé [poze], staid, sober.
poser [poze], to place, lay, set.
posséder [pɔsede], §158, to possess, own.
possession [pɔsɛsjɔ̃], f., possession.
possible [pɔsibl], possible.
pot [po], m., pot.
potage [pɔtaːʒ], m., soup; *grands* —*s*, first-rate soups.
poularde [pulard], f., fat pullet.
poulet [pulɛ], m., chicken.
poumon [pumɔ̃], m., lung.
pour [pur], for, in order to, to; — *que*, in order that; — *ainsi dire*, so to speak.
pourboire [purbwaːr], m., gratuity, 'tip.'
pourpre [purpr], m., purple.
pourquoi [purkwa], why; *c'est* —, therefore, so, hence, that is why.
pourrai [pure], 1 sg. fut., *pouvoir*.
poursuivre [pursɥiːvr], § 206, to pursue, continue.
pourtant [purtɑ̃], however, still.
pourvoir [purvwaːr], § 224, to provide.
pourvu que [purvy kə], provided that, I hope that.
pousser [puse], to push, grow.
poussière [pusjɛːr], f., dust.
Pouvillon (Émile) [emil puvijɔ̃], French writer, b. 1840.
pouvoir [puvwaːr], § 221, to be able, can, may; *il se peut*, it may be; *il ne se peut rien*, nothing can be; *on pourrait dire*, one might say.
pouvoir [puvwaːr], m., power.
pré [pre], m., meadow.
précepte [presɛpt], m., precept.
précieux [presjø], precious, valuable.

précipiter (se) [sə presipite], to rush, dart, hasten.
précis [presi], precise, exact.
précision [presizjɔ̃], f., precision.
prédicateur [predikatœːr], m., preacher.
préférer [prefere], § 158, to prefer.
préjudiciable [preʒydisjabl], prejudicial.
premier [prəmje], first, former; *marcher le* —, to walk ahead.
prendre [prɑ̃ːdr], § 202, to take, catch, assume, seize, suppose, reckon; — *exemple sur quelqu'un*, to take example by any one.
préparer [prepare], to prepare; *se* —, to be prepared.
près [prɛ], near by; — *de*, near, nearly; *à peu* —, almost, nearly.
présent [prezɑ̃], m., present; *à* —, now.
présenter [prezɑ̃te], to present; *se* —, to present one's self.
presque [prɛsk], nearly, hardly, almost.
pressé [prɛse], in haste.
presser [prɛse], to press; *se* —, to be in haste.
prêt [prɛ], ready.
prétendre [pretɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to claim, assert.
prêter [prɛte], to lend.
prêtre [prɛːtr], m., priest.
preuve [prœːv], f., proof.
prévenir [prevniːr], § 178, to warn.
prévoir [prevwaːr], § 224, to foresee.
prier [prie], to pray, pray to, beg, ask; *je t'en prie*, I beg of you.
prière [priɛːr], f., prayer, request.
prince [prɛ̃ːs], m., prince.
princesse [prɛ̃sɛs], f., princess.
principal [prɛ̃sipal], adj. and n. m., principal.
principe [prɛ̃sip], m., principle.
printemps [prɛ̃tɑ̃], m., spring; *au* —, in spring.
pris [pri], 1 sg. p. def. and p. part. *prendre*.
prit [pri], 3 sg. p. def. *prendre*.
prise [priːz], f., taking, capture.
prison [prizɔ̃], f., prison.
privé [prive], private.
prix [pri], m., price, prize.
probablement [prɔbabləmɑ̃], probably.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], next.
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃], m., neighbour, fellow-creature.
procurer (se) [sə prɔkyre], to procure.
procureur [prɔkyrœːr], m., solicitor.
prodige [prɔdiːʒ], m., miracle, prodigy.
produire [prɔdɥiːr], § 185, to produce.
professeur [prɔfɛsœːr], m., professor, teacher.
profession [prɔfɛsjɔ̃], f., profession, calling.
profiter [prɔfite], to profit, avail one's self.
profond [prɔfɔ̃], profound, deep; — *de deux toises*, two fathoms deep.
proie [prwɑ], f., prey.
projectile [prɔʒɛktil], m., projectile.
promenade [prɔmnad], f., walk, walking, drive; *aller à la* —, to go for a walk.
promener [prɔmne], § 158, to carry about, drive about; *se* — *à pied* (*en voiture*, *en bateau*, etc.), to take a walk (go for a drive, go for a sail, etc.); *se* — *en bicyclette*, to ride a bicycle.
propos [prɔpo], m., discourse, purpose; *à* —, seasonable, fit; by the way; *à* — *de*, with respect to.
proposer [prɔpoze], to propose.
protéger [prɔteʒe], § 156, to protect.
proverbe [prɔvɛrb], m., proverb.
providence [prɔvidɑ̃ːs], f., Providence.
prudence [prydɑ̃ːs], f., prudence.
prudent [prydɑ̃], prudent.
prune [pryn], f., plum.
prunier [prynje], m., plum-tree.
Prusse [prys], f., Prussia.

prussien [prysjɛ̃], m., Prussian.
pu [py], p. part. *pouvoir*.
public [pyblik], public.
puéril [pɥeril], puerile, childish.
puérilité [pɥerilite], f., childishness.
puis [pɥi], 1 sg. pres. indic. *pouvoir*.
puis [pɥi], then.
puissance [pɥisɑ̃:s], f., power, force.
puissant [pɥisɑ̃], powerful.
puits [pɥi], m., well.
punir [pyni:r], to punish.
punition [pynisjɔ̃], f., punishment.
pupitre [pypitr], m., desk.
pur [py:r], pure.
put [py], 3 sg. p. def. *pouvoir*.

Q.

quai [ke], m., quay.
qualité [kalite], f., quality, rank.
quand [kɑ̃], when; *depuis* — *?*, how long?
quant à [kɑ̃t a], as to, as for.
quarante [karɑ̃:t], forty.
quart [ka:r], m., quarter.
quatre [katr], four.
quatre-vingts [katr vɛ̃], eighty; *quatre-vingt-dix-sept*, ninety-seven.
que [kə], pron., whom, which, that, what; *qu'est-ce qui ?*, what?; *qu'est-ce — c'est — ?*, what is?; *ce* —, that which, what, which; *qu'est-ce qu'il y a ?*, what is there?; *qu'as-tu ?*, what is the matter with you?; *c'est là* —, it is there that, that is where.
que [kə], conj., that, used as a substitute for other conjunctions like *tandis* —, *lorsque*, *quand*, *si*, etc.; when, than, as, till, let (with subjunctive).
que [kə], adv., how, how many, how much, what (a); *ne...* —, only, but; *ne...rien* —, nothing but; *qu'elle est jolie !*, how pretty she is!; — *cela est bien dit !*, how well said that is!
Québec [kebɛk], m., Quebec.
quel [kɛl], what, which; who.
quelconque [kɛlkɔ̃:k], whatever.
quelque [kɛlkə], some, few; — *chose*, something.
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa], sometimes.
quelqu'un, quelques-uns [kɛlk œ̃, kɛlkəz œ̃], some one, some.
querir [kəri:r], § 162, to fetch; *aller* —, to go and fetch.
question [kɛstjɔ̃], f., question.
quête [kɛ:t], f., collection.
qui [ki], who, which, that, whom; *à* —, whose; *ce* —, what.
quinze [kɛ̃:z], fifteen.
quittance [kitɑ̃:s], f., receipt.
quitter [kite], to quit, leave, lay aside.
quoi [kwa], what; *à — bon*, what use; *en — ?*, of what (material)?
quoique [kwakə], although.

R.

race [ras], f., race, breed.
raconter [rakɔ̃te], to relate, tell.
rade [rad], f., roadstead.
raison [rɛzɔ̃], f., reason, sense; *avoir* —, to be (in the) right.
ralentir [ralɑ̃ti:r], to slacken.
ramasser [rɑmɑ:se], to pick up.
ramener [ramne], § 158, to bring back, bring home again.
rang [rɑ̃], m., row, rank.
rangée [rɑ̃ʒe], f., row.
ranger [rɑ̃ʒe], § 156, to range, put in place.
rapide [rapid], swift.
rappeler (se) [sə raple], § 158, to remember.
rapporter [raporte], to bring back; produce, yield.
rare [ra:r], rare, scanty.
rassasier [rasazje], to satiate, satisfy.
rassembler [rasɑ̃ble], to assemble.
rat [ra], m., rat.
rattraper [ratrape], to overtake.
ravi [ravi], charmed, delighted.
ravin [ravɛ̃], m., ravine.
raviser (se) [sə ravize], to change one's mind.

ravissement [ravismɑ̃], m., rapture, delight.
rayon [rɛjɔ̃], m., ray.
réalité [realite], f., reality.
recevoir [rəsəvwaːr], § 213, to receive.
récidive [residiːv], f., repetition of an offence.
récit [resi], m., story.
réciter [resite], to recite.
recommencer [rəkəmɑ̃se], § 156, to begin again.
récompense [rekɔ̃pɑ̃ːs], f., recompense.
récompenser [rekɔ̃pɑ̃se], to recompense, reward.
reconnaissance [rəkənɛsɑ̃ːs], f., gratitude.
reconnaître [rəkənɛːtr], § 188, to recognize.
reconnu [rəkəny], recognized.
recourber [rəkurbe], to bend round.
recouvert [rəkuvɛːr], p. part. *recouvrir*.
recouvrir [rəkuvriːr], § 176, to cover, cover again.
recueillir [rəkœjiːr], § 165, to gather.
reculer [rəkyle], to fall back.
reçut [rəsy], 3 sg. p. def. *recevoir*.
redingote [rədɛ̃gət], f., frock-coat, overcoat.
redoubler [rəduble], to redouble, increase.
redoutable [rədutabl], formidable, terrible.
redoute [rədut], f., redoubt.
redresser (se) [sə rədrɛse], to stand erect again.
réel [reɛl], real.
refermer (se) [sə rəfɛrme], to close again.
réfléchir [refleʃiːr], to reflect.
réflexion [reflɛksjɔ̃], f., reflection.
refus [rəfy], m., refusal.
refuser [rəfyze], to refuse.
regard [rəgaːr], m., look, glance, eye.
regarder [rəgarde], to look at, look.
règle [rɛːgl], f., rule, ruler.
régler [regle], § 158, to regulate, arrange.
règne [rɛɲ], m., reign.
régner [reɲe], § 158, to reign, rule.
regret [rəgrɛ], m., regret.
regretter [rəgrɛte], to regret.
régulier [regylje], regular.
Régulus [regylys], m., Regulus.
reine [rɛːn], f., queen.
reins [rɛ̃], m. pl., loins, back.
rejeter [rəʒte], § 158, to throw back; *se* —, to be thrown back.
rejoindre [rəʒwɛ̃ːdr], § 190, to rejoin.
réjouir (se) [sə reʒwiːr], to rejoice, be glad.
relever [rəlve], § 158, to heighten, raise, lift up.
religieusement [rəliʒjøzmɑ̃], religiously.
religieux [rəliʒjø], religious.
reluire [rəlɥiːr], § 185, to shine, glitter.
remarquer [rəmarke], to remark, notice.
remercier [rəmɛrsje], to thank.
remettre [rəmɛtr], § 198, to restore, put off, put back, put on again; *se* —, to recover, begin again; *remis*, recovered; *se* — *en route*, to set out again.
remplir [rɑ̃pliːr], to fill.
remporter [rɑ̃pərte], to take away.
remue-ménage [rəmy menaːʒ], m., hubbub.
remuer [rəmɥe], to move, stir.
Renaude [rənod], f., proper name.
rencontre [rɑ̃kɔ̃ːtr], f., meeting; *aller à leur* —, to go to meet them.
rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃tre], to meet.
rendre [rɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to render, give back, make; *se* —. to go, proceed; surrender.
rentrer [rɑ̃tre], to return, return home.
reparaître [rəparɛːtr], § 188, to reappear.
repas [rəpɑ], m., meal.
repasser [rəpɑse], to repass, pass again.

repêcher [rəpɛʃe], to fish up again.
répéter [repete], § 158, to repeat.
répliquer [replike], to reply.
répondre [repɔ̃ːdr], § 210, to answer.
réponse [repɔ̃ːs], f., reply.
repos [rəpo], m., repose, peace.
reposer [rəpoze], to repose, rest; *se* —, to rest; *se* — *sur*, to depend on.
reprendre [rəprɑ̃ːdr], § 202, to take again, reply; — *haleine*, to recover one's breath.
représenter [rəprezɑ̃te], to represent.
reprit [rəpri], 3 sg. p. def. *reprendre*.
reproche [rəprɔʃ], m., reproach.
reprocher [rəprɔʃe], to reproach.
réquisition [rekizisjɔ̃], f., requisition, levying.
réserver [rezɛrve], to reserve.
résistance [rezistɑ̃ːs], f., resistance.
résister [reziste], to resist.
respect [rɛspɛ], m., respect.
respecter [rɛspɛkte], to respect.
respectueusement [rɛspɛktɥøzmɑ̃], respectfully.
respectueux [rɛspɛktɥø], respectful.
ressembler [rəsɑ̃ble]; — *à*, to resemble.
restaurant [rɛstɔrɑ̃], m., restaurant.
reste [rɛst], m., rest, remainder; *du* —, *au reste*, besides, moreover.
rester [rɛste], to remain, stay; *en* — *là*, to stop there, get no further.
retard [rətaːr], m., delay; *être en* —, to be late.
retarder [rətarde], to delay.
retenir [rətniːr], § 177, to keep back, restrain.
retirer [rətire], to pull out; *se* —, to retire.
retour [rətuːr], m., return; *être de* —, to have returned, be back.
retourner [rəturne], to go back, return, turn up, turn over; *se* —, to turn round.
retraite [rətrɛt], f., retreat.
retrouver [rətruve], to find again; *se* —, to be met with again.
réussir [reysiːr], to succeed.
rêve [rɛːv], m., dream.
réveiller [revɛje], to waken; *se* —, to waken.
révéler [revele], § 158, to reveal.
revenir [rəvniːr], § 178, to come back; *revenu*, (having) returned.
rêver [rɛve], to dream.
révérence [reverɑ̃ːs], f., bow, courtesy; *lui faire la* —, to pay him one's respects.
revêtir [rəvɛtiːr], § 179, to put on.
rêveur [rɛvœːr], thoughtful, pensive.
revoir [rəvwaːr], § 224, to see again.
révolution [revɔlysjɔ̃], f., revolution.
revolver [revɔlvɛːr], m., revolver.
ricaner [rikane], to sneer.
riche [riʃ], rich.
richement [riʃmɑ̃], richly.
ride [rid], f., wrinkle.
rider [ride], to wrinkle.
ridicule [ridikyl], m., ridiculousness; *tourner en* —, to ridicule.
rien [rjɛ̃], anything, nothing; *ne* . . . —, not anything, nothing; *je n'en sais* —, I do not know.
rire [riːr], § 204, to laugh, smile.
rire [riːr], m., laughter.
ris de veau [ri də vo], m., sweetbread.
risquer [riske], to run the risk of.
rivière [rivjɛːr], f., river.
Rivoli [rivɔli], street in Paris.
robe [rɔb], f., robe, dress, frock, gown.
roche [rɔʃ], f., rock.
rocher [rɔʃe], m., rock.
roi [rwɑ], m., king; *le jour des Rois*, Twelfth-day, Epiphany.
roitelet [rwɑtlɛ], m., wren.
roman [rɔmɑ̃], m., novel.
rompre [rɔ̃ːpr], to break.
rond [rɔ̃], round.

ronde [rɔ̃ːd], f., round hand.
ronger [rɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to gnaw.
rosace [rozas], f., rose-window.
rose [roːz], f., rose.
rose [roːz], rosy.
roseau [rozo], m., reed.
rôt [ro], m., roast.
rouble [rubl], m., rouble.
roucouler [rukule], to coo.
Rouen [rwɑ̃], m., Rouen.
rouge [ruːʒ], red.
rouge-gorge [ruʒ gɔrʒ], m., robin.
Rouget de l'Isle [ruʒɛ də l il], French writer, b. 1760, d. 1836.
rouleau [rulo], m., roll.
rouler [rule], to roll.
roulier [rulje], m., carter.
route [rut], f., route, way, course; *en* —, on the way; *être en* —, to be on the way, be off.
roux [ru], reddish brown.
royaume [rwɑjoːm], m., kingdom, realm.
ruban [rybɑ̃], m., ribbon.
rue [ry], f., street.
rugueux [rygø], wrinkled, rough.
ruisselant [rɥislɑ̃], streaming.
rumeur [rymœːr], f., noise.
ruse [ryːz], f., wile, trick.
russe [rys], Russian.

S.

Saar [sɑːr], f., Saar (a river of Alsatia).
sable [sɑːbl], m., sand.
sabot [sabo], m., sabot, shoe, hoof.
sabre [sɑːbr], m., sabre.
sac [sak], m., sack, bag, satchel.
sachant [saʃɑ̃], pres. part. *savoir.*
sacré [sakre], sacred, holy.
sage [saːʒ], wise.
saint [sɛ̃], sacred, holy; m., saint.
Sainte-Chapelle [sɛ̃tə ʃapɛl], f., a church in Paris.
Saint-Esprit [sɛ̃t ɛspri], m., Holy Ghost.
Saint-Louis [sɛ̃ lwi], Louis IX. King of France from 1226 to 1270.
Saint-Pétersbourg [sɛ̃petɛrsbuːr], St. Petersburg.
sais [se], 1 sg. pres. indic. *savoir.*
saisir [sɛziːr], to seize.
saison [sɛzɔ̃], f., season.
sait [se], 3 sg. pres. indic. *savoir.*
salade [salad], f., salad.
salle [sal], f., hall, room; — *de classe*, class-room; — *à manger*, dining-room.
salon [salɔ̃], m., drawing-room.
saluer [salɥe], to salute, bow to, bow.
salut [saly], m., safety; hail!
Samaritain [samaritɛ̃], m., Samaritan.
samedi [samdi], m., Saturday.
sang [sɑ̃], m., blood.
sanglant [sɑ̃glɑ̃], bloody.
sans [sɑ̃], without, were it not for; — *que*, without.
santé [sɑ̃te], f., health.
sapin [sapɛ̃], m., fir.
saule [soːl], m., willow.
saut [so], m., leap.
sauter [sote], to leap, jump.
sautiller [sotije], to hop.
sauvage [sovaːʒ], wild.
sauver [sove], to save.
savamment [savamɑ̃], skilfully.
savoir [savwaːr], § 222, to know, know how; — *le français*, to know French; *aucun homme ne saurait*, no man can; *un jour qu'il sut*, one day when he learned.
savoir [savwaːr], m., knowledge.
savon [savɔ̃], m., soap.
savoureux [savurø], savoury, sweet.
scélérat [selera], m., scoundrel.
scène [sɛːn], f., scene.
scierie [siri], f., saw-mill.
scruter [skryte], to scrutinize.
se [sə], one's self, to one's self, himself, herself, etc.
sec [sɛk], dry.
sécher (se) [sə sɛʃe], § 158, to dry one's self.
second [səgɔ̃], second.
seconde [səgɔ̃ːd], f., second.
secouer [səkwe], to shake, disturb.
secourir [səkuriːr], § 164, to succour.

secours [səkuːr], m., help; *au —!* help!
secret [səkrɛ], m., secret.
Seguin [səgɛ̃], a pr. name.
seigneur [sɛɲœːr], m., lord.
Seine [sɛːn], f., Seine (river).
semaine [səmɛːn], f., week.
semblable [sɑ̃blabl], similar, like.
semblant [sɑ̃blɑ̃], m., appearance; *faire — de*, to pretend.
sembler [sɑ̃ble], to seem.
semer [səme], § 158, to sow.
sens [sɑ̃ːs], m., sense, direction, way.
sentence [sɑ̃tɑ̃ːs], f., maxim.
sentier [sɑ̃tje], m., path.
sentiment [sɑ̃timɑ̃], m., sentiment, feeling, sense.
sentir [sɑ̃tiːr], § 166, to feel, smell; — *bon*, to smell sweet; *se —*, to feel one's self, feel.
séparer [separe], to separate.
sept [sɛt], seven.
septembre [sɛptɑ̃ːbr], m., September.
septième [sɛtjɛm], seventh.
serai [səre], 1 sg. fut. *être*.
serge [sɛrʒ], f., serge.
série [seri], f., series.
sérieux [serjø], serious, grave.
sermon [sɛrmɔ̃], m., sermon.
serre [sɛːr], f., talon.
serrer [sɛre], to press, grasp, clasp, hold tight, crowd together.
service [sɛrvis], m., service.
serviette [sɛrvjɛt], f., towel, napkin.
servir [sɛrviːr], § 166, to serve, be of service, be of use; — *à quelque chose*, to be of some use.
seuil [sœːj], m., threshold.
seul [sœl], alone, single.
seulement [sœlmɑ̃], only, but, even, merely.
sève [sɛːv], f., sap.
sévérité [severite], f., severity.
si [si], if, whether.
si [si], so, however; — *rapide que*, however swift.
siècle [sjɛkl], m., century.
sien (le) [lə sjɛ̃], his, hers, its; *les —s*, his own.
siffler [sifle], to whistle, hiss, sing.
sifflet [siflɛ], m., whistle.
signe [siɲ], m., sign; *faire —*, to beckon.
signifier [siɲifje], to mean.
silence [silɑ̃ːs], m., silence.
silencieux [silɑ̃sjø], silent.
sillage [sijaːʒ], m., wake (of ship).
sillon [sijɔ̃], m., furrow.
simple [sɛ̃ːpl], simple, plain, mere.
sire [siːr], m., sire.
situé [sitɥe], situated, placed.
six [sis], six.
sixième [sizjɛm], sixth.
société [sɔsjete], f., society.
sœur [sœːr], f., sister.
soi [swa], one's self, himself.
soie [swɑ], f., silk.
soif [swaf], f., thirst; *avoir —*, to be thirsty.
soigner [swaɲe], to care for.
soin [swɛ̃], m., care; *avoir —*, to take care.
soir [swaːr], m., evening; *le —*, in the evening; *hier —*, last evening.
soirée [sware], f., evening.
sois [swa], 1 sg. pres. subj. and 2 sg. impve. *être*.
soit [swa], 3 sg. pres. subj. *être; soit!*, be it so!
soixante [swasɑ̃ːt], sixty; — *-dix*, seventy.
soldat [sɔlda], m., soldier.
soleil [sɔlɛːj], m., sun; (p. 419) Catherine-wheel.
solennel [sɔlanɛl], solemn.
solide [sɔlid], solid, strong, perfect.
solitaire [sɔlitɛːr], solitary, lonely.
solitude [sɔlityd], f., solitude.
solliciter [sɔlisite], to entreat.
solliciteur [sɔlisitœːr], m., petitioner.
sollicitude [sɔlisityd], f., solicitude.
sombre [sɔ̃ːbr], gloomy.
somme [sɔm], f., sum.
sommeil [sɔmɛːj], m., sleep.
sommeiller [sɔmɛje], to doze.
sommes [sɔm], 1 pl. pres. ind. *être*.
son [sɔ̃], m., sound.
son [sɔ̃], m., bran.
son, sa, ses [sɔ̃, sa, se], his, her, its.

songe [sɔ̃ːʒ], m., dream.
songer [sɔ̃ʒe], § 156, to think.
sonner [sɔne], to sound, ring, strike.
sonnette [sɔnɛt], f., little bell.
sont [sɔ̃], 3 pl. pres. ind. *être.*
sorcier [sɔrsje], m., magician.
sorte [sɔrt], f., sort ; *de — que,* so that.
sortie [sɔrti], f., going out, getting out.
sortir [sɔrtiːr], § 166, to come out, go out, stick out, arise ; *faire* —, to put out, force out.
sot [so], foolish, stupid.
sottise [sɔtiːz], f., foolish action.
sou [su], m., sou, halfpenny, cent.
souci [susi], m., care, anxiety.
souffle [sufl], m., breathing.
souffler [sufle], to blow.
souffrance [sufrɑ̃ːs], f., suffering.
souffrant [sufrɑ̃], poorly, unwell.
souffrir [sufriːr], § 176, to suffer ; *faire* —, to cause pain, pain.
soûl [su], drunk, intoxicated.
soulager [sulaʒe], § 156, to relieve.
soulever [sulve], § 158, to raise, lift up ; *se* —, to raise one's self.
soulier [sulje], m., shoe.
souligner [suliɲe], to underline.
souper [supe], m. supper.
souper [supe], to sup.
souplesse [suplɛs], f., suppleness.
sourire [suriːr], m., smile.
souris [suri], f., mouse.
sous [su], under, in the reign of, in.
sous-officier [suz ɔfisje], m., non-commissioned officer.
sous-préfet [su prefɛ], m., *sous-préfet,* important official in municipal administration.
soutenir [sutniːr], § 177, to sustain.
soutien [sutjɛ̃], m., support.
souvenance [suvnɑ̃ːs], f., recollection.
souvenir [suvniːr], m., recollection.
souvenir (se) [sə suvniːr], § 178, to remember ; *je me souviens* (*de*), *il me souvient* (*de*), I remember.
souvent [suvɑ̃], often.
soyez [swaje], 2 pl. pres. subj. and impve. *être.*
soyons [swajɔ̃], 1 pl. pres. subj. and impve. *être.*
spectacle [spɛktakl], m., spectacle, play, theatre.
splendide [splɑ̃did], splendid.
statue [staty], f., statue.
Strasbourg [strazbuːr], m., Strasburg.
stupéfaction [stypefaksjɔ̃], f., astonishment.
stupéfait [stypefɛ], astonished.
subitement [subitmɑ̃], suddenly.
sublime [syblim], sublime.
suc [syk], m., juice, sap.
succéder [syksede], § 158 ; — *à,* to succeed.
suffire [syfiːr], § 187, to suffice.
suis [sɥi], 1 sg. pres. indic. *être,* and *suivre.*
suite [sɥit], f., continuation ; *tout de* —, immediately ; *par la* —, subsequently.
suivant [sɥivɑ̃], prep., according to, following ; adj., following.
suivre [sɥiːvr], § 206, to follow ; — *des yeux,* to look after, watch.
sujet [syʒɛ], m., subject, cause.
Sully-Prudhomme [syli prydɔm], French writer, b. 1839.
superbe [sypɛrb], splendid.
supérieur [syperjœːr], superior.
supplication [syplikɑsjɔ̃], f., entreaty.
supplier [syplie], to entreat.
suprême [sypreːm], supreme, crowning.
sur [syr], on, upon, over, about.
sûr [syːr], sure.
surcharge [syrʃarʒ], f., excess of burden.
surface [syrfas], f., surface.
surgir [syrʒiːr], to arise, spring up.
surplus [syrply], m., surplus.
surprendre [syrprɑ̃ːdr], § 202, to surprise, overtake.
surprise [syrpriːz], f., surprise.
surtout [syrtu], above all, especially, particularly.

survenir [syrvəniːr], § 178, to come up.
sus [sy], 1 sg. p. def. *savoir*.
symétrique [simetrik], symmetrical.

T.

tabac [taba], m., tobacco.
table [tabl], f., table.
tableau [tablo], m., picture, blackboard ; — *noir*, blackboard.
tacher [taʃe], to stain.
tâcher [tɑʃe], to try, endeavour.
tailleur [tɑjœːr], m., tailor.
taire (se) [sə tɛːr], § 201, to be silent, become silent.
talus [taly], m., slope.
tandis que [tɑ̃dis kə], whilst.
tant [tɑ̃], so, so many, so much ; — *de fois*, so often ; — *que*, as much as, as long as ; — *mieux*, so much the better.
tante [tɑ̃ːt], f., aunt.
tantôt [tɑ̃to], presently, soon, just now, sometimes, now . . . at another time.
tapage [tapaːʒ], m., noise, racket.
taper [tape], to strike.
tapissier [tapisje], m., upholsterer.
tard [taːr], late ; *plus* —, later.
tâter [tɑte], to feel.
te [tə], thee, to thee, you, to you.
tel [tɛl], such, like, so ; *un* —, such a one.
tellement [tɛlmɑ̃], so, so much.
tempête [tɑ̃pɛːt], f., tempest.
temps [tɑ̃], m., time, weather ; *avec le* —, in time ; *de* — *en* —, from time to time ; *dans le* — *que*, whilst ; *en même* —, at the same time ; *par le* — *qu'il fait*, in such weather as it is ; *faire beau* —, to be fine weather ; *mauvais* —, bad weather ; *quel* — *fait-il ?*, what sort of weather is it ?
tendon [tɑ̃dɔ̃], m., sinew.
tendre [tɑ̃ːdr], tender, loving.
tendre [tɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to hold out, stretch.
tendrement [tɑ̃drəmɑ̃], affectionately.
tendresse [tɑ̃drɛs], f., affection.
tenir [təniːr], § 177, to hold, have, hold on, hold out, keep, resist ; be anxious, insist on ; be contained in, find room in ; *il ne tiendra qu'à vous que*, it will be your own fault if ; — *bon*, to stand fast ; *tiens !*, *tenez !*, now then !, here !, look ! ; *se* —, to hold one's self, stay, stand.
tenter [tɑ̃te], to attempt, tempt.
tenture [tɑ̃tyːr], f., hangings.
terrain [tɛrɛ̃], m., ground.
terre [tɛːr], f., earth, ground, land ; *par* —, *à* —, on the ground ; *la* — *sainte*, the Holy Land.
terre-neuve [tɛr nœːv], m., Newfoundland dog.
terrible [tɛribl], terrible.
tête [tɛːt], f., head.
texte [tɛkst], m., text.
textuellement [tɛkstɥɛlmɑ̃], word for word.
théâtre [teɑːtr], m., theatre ; *Théâtre-Français*, the most famous theatre of Paris.
théière [tejɛːr], f., teapot.
thème [tɛːm], m., exercise in translating from French into another language ; — *latin*, Latin prose.
Thomas [tɔmɑ], m., Thomas.
tibia [tibja], m., tibia.
tien (le) [lə tjɛ̃], thine, yours.
Tiennet [tjɛnɛ], dim. of *Étienne*, Stephen.
tiens [tjɛ̃], 1 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impve. of *tenir*.
tiers [tjɛːr], m., third part.
tige [tiːʒ], f., stem.
timide [timid], timid.
tins [tɛ̃], 1 sg. p. def. *tenir*.
tirer [tire], to draw, pull, deduce, shoot ; — *la langue*, to put out the tongue.
Titan [titɑ̃], m., Titan.
toi [twa], thee, thou, you.
toilette [twalɛt], f., toilet, dress ; *faire sa* —, to dress ; *table de* —, dressing-table.

toise [twaːz], f., fathom.
toit [twɑ], m., roof.
toiture [twɑtyːr], f., roofing, roof.
tombeau [tõbo], m., tomb, grave.
tomber [tõbe], to fall.
ton, ta, tes [tõ, ta, te], thy, your.
ton [tõ], m., tone, voice.
tonnerre [tɔnɛːr], m., thunder; *coup de* —, peal of thunder.
torrent [tɔrɑ̃], m., torrent.
tort [tɔːr], m., wrong; *avoir* —, to be (in the) wrong.
tôt [to], soon; *plus* —, sooner.
toucher [tuʃe], to touch; — *à*, to be near, approach; *n'y touchez pas*, do not touch it, hands off.
toujours [tuʒuːr], always, still, at all events; *disait* —, kept saying; *pour* —, for ever.
tour [tuːr], f., tower.
tour [tuːr], m., turn, trick, feat; *fermer à double* —, to lock fast; *à son* —, in his (her, its) turn; *faire le* — *de*, to go round.
tourner [turne], to turn.
tourte [turt], f., pie.
Tourville [turvil], a celebrated French naval officer, born 1642, died 1701.
Toussaint [tusɛ̃], f., All-saints' Day.
tout, tous [tu, tu(s)], all, any, every, everything; quite; — *le monde*, everybody; — *le jour*, *toute la journée*, the whole day; —*s les jours*, every day; *toutes* (*les*) *deux*, both; —*es les années*, every year; — *à fait*, altogether; — *à l'heure*, a little ago; — *ce que*, all that, whatever; — *de même*, all the same; — *à coup*, suddenly; *rien du* —, nothing at all; *le* —, the whole; — *à leur furie*, intent on their fury.
tracer [trase], § 156, to trace.
tradition [tradisjõ], f., tradition.
tragique [traʒik], tragical.
train [trɛ̃], m., train, noise; *en* — *de*, busy at; — *de derrière*, hind-quarters.
traîneau [trɛno], m., sleigh; *se promener en* —, to take a sleigh-ride.
traîner [trɛne], to drag, draw.
traire [trɛːr], § 208, to milk.
trait [trɛ], m., trait, feature, action.
traiter [trɛte], to treat, entertain; — *de*, to call.
traître [trɛːtr], m., traitor, scoundrel.
tramway [tramwe], m., tramway, street-car.
tranche [trɑ̃ːʃ], f., slice, edge (of book).
tranquille [trɑ̃kil], quiet, calm, easy in mind; *soyez* —, don't be uneasy, don't worry.
tranquillement [trɑ̃kilmɑ̃], calmly.
transformer [trɑ̃sfɔrme], to transform.
transport [trɑ̃spɔːr], m., transport-ship.
transporter [trɑ̃spɔrte], to convey, bring.
travail [travaːj], m., work, labour.
travailler [travaje], to work.
travers [travɛːr], m., breadth; *à* —, through, across; *en* — *de*, across.
traversée [travɛrse], f., voyage.
traverser [travɛrse], to traverse, cross, go through; — *en courant*, to run across.
treize [trɛːz], thirteen.
tremblement [trɑ̃bləmɑ̃], m., trembling; — *de terre*, earthquake.
trembler [trɑ̃ble], to tremble.
trente [trɑ̃ːt], thirty.
très [trɛ], very, very much.
trésor [trezɔːr], m., treasure.
tressaillir [trɛsajiːr], to give a start.
trève [trɛːv], f., truce.
tricorne [trikɔrn], m., three-cornered hat.
tringle [trɛ̃ːgl], f., rod.
triomphal [triõfal], triumphal.
triomphe [triõf], m., triumph.
triste [trist], sad.
tristement [tristmɑ̃], sadly.
tristesse [tristɛs], f., sadness.
trois [trwɑ], three.

troisième [trwɑzjɛm], third.
trompe [trɔ̃ːp], f., horn.
tromper [trɔ̃pe], to deceive; *se* —, to be mistaken.
trompette [trɔ̃pɛt], f., trumpet.
trop [trɔ], too, too much, too many.
trop-plein [trɔ plɛ̃], m., overflow.
trot [tro], m., trot; *grand* —, fast trot.
troubler [truble], to disturb.
troupeau [trupo], m., flock.
trouver [truve], to find; *aller* —, to go to; *se* —, to find one's self, be, feel.
truite [trɥit], f., trout.
tu [ty], thou, you.
tuer [tɥe], to kill.
tue-tête [ty tɛːt]; *à* —, as loud as possible.
tuile [tɥil], f., tile.
tuileries [tɥilri], f. pl., Tuileries (once a royal palace).
tulipe [tylip], f., tulip.
tumulte [tymylt], m., tumult.
tyrannie [tirani], f., tyranny.

U.

un [œ̃], one, a, an; *l'*—, one; *l'*— (*et*) *l'autre*, both; *les uns les autres*, one another.
unir [yniːr], to unite, join; *unissez-vous les uns aux autres*, join yourselves together.
univers [ynivɛːr], m., universe.
universel [ynivɛrsɛl], universal.
usage [yzaːʒ], m., use.
utile [ytil], useful.
utilité [ytilite], f., utility, use.

V.

va [va], 3 sg. pres. indic. and 2 sg. impve. *aller*.
vacances [vakɑ̃ːs], f. pl., holidays.
vache [vaʃ], f., cow.
vagabondage [vagabɔ̃daːʒ], m., vagrancy.
vague [vag], f., wave.
vain [vɛ̃], vain; *en* —, in vain.
vaincre [vɛ̃ːkr], § 209, to conquer.
vaincu [vɛ̃ky], vanquished (one).
vainement [vɛnmɑ̃], vainly.
vainqueur [vɛ̃kœːr], m., victor, winner.
vais [ve], 1 sg. pres. indic. *aller*.
vaisseau [vɛsɔ], m., ship.
vaisselle [vɛsɛl], f., dishes.
Valère [valɛːr], the name of a suitor for the hand of Harpagon's daughter, who enters his service as steward, and is anxious to ingratiate himself into the favour of Harpagon.
valet [valɛ], m., servant.
valeur [valœːr], f., value.
vallée [vale], f., valley.
vallon [valɔ̃], m., dale, valley.
valoir [valwaːr], § 223, to be worth; — *mieux*, to be better; — *la peine*, to be worth the trouble (while).
vas [va], 2 sg. pres. indic. *aller*.
vase [vɑːz], m., vase, vessel.
vaste [vast], vast, mighty.
vaudrai [vodre], 1 sg. fut. *valoir*.
vaut [vo], 3 sg. pres. indic. *valoir*.
vautour [votuːr], m., vulture.
vautrer (se) [sə votre], to wallow.
veau [vo], m., calf, veal.
vécu [veky], p. part. *vivre*.
veiller [vɛje], to watch (over, *à* or *sur*).
vendre [vɑ̃ːdr], § 210, to sell.
vendredi [vɑ̃drədi], m., Friday; — *saint*, Good Friday.
vengeur [vɑ̃ʒœːr], avenging.
venir [vəniːr], § 178, to come; *vint à passer*, happened to go by; — *de*, to have just; *on venait de lui donner*, they had just given him; *il venait voir*, he came to see; *lui — à l'esprit*, to occur to him.
vent [vɑ̃], m., wind; *il fait du* —, it is windy.
ventre [vɑ̃ːtr], m., belly; — *à terre*, at full speed.
ver [vɛːr], m., worm.
verdure [vɛrdyːr], f., verdure, green, greenness.
verger [vɛrʒe], m., orchard.
véritable [veritabl], true, real.
véritablement [veritabləmɑ̃], truly, really.

vérité [verite], f., truth.
verrai [vɛre], 1 sg. fut. *voir.*
vers [vɛːr], towards, about.
Versailles [vɛrsɑːj], m., a city of about 50,000 inhabitants, situated about twelve miles southwest of Paris. It contains the great *château* which was the chief residence of Louis XIV.
verser [vɛrse], to pour out.
verset [vɛrsɛ], m., verse (Bible, etc.).
vert [vɛːr], green.
verveine [vɛrvɛːn], f., verbena.
veste [vɛst], f., jacket.
vestibule [vɛstibyl], m., vestibule, hall.
vêtement [vɛtmɑ̃], m., clothes, suit.
vêtir [vɛtiːr], § 179, to clothe.
veulent [vœːl], 3 pl. pres. ind. *vouloir.*
veut [vø], 3 sg. pres. ind. *vouloir.*
veux [vø], 1 sg. pres. ind. *vouloir.*
viande [vjɑ̃ːd], f., meat.
victime [viktim], f., victim.
victoire [viktwaːr], f., victory.
vide [vid], empty.
vider [vide], to empty.
vie [vi], f., life, living.
vieil [vjɛːj], see **vieux.**
vieillard [vjɛjaːr], m., old man.
viendrai [vjɛ̃dre], 1 sg. fut. *venir.*
viens [vjɛ̃], 1 sg. pres. ind. and 2 sg. impve. *venir.*
vierge [vjɛrʒ], f., virgin; *la sainte Vierge,* the Virgin Mary.
vieux, vieil, vieille [vjø, vjɛːj, vjɛːj], old, aged; *un vieux,* an old man, an old fellow.
vignette [viɲɛt], f., vignette, ornamental design.
vigoureux [vigurø], vigorous.
village [vilaːʒ], m., village.
ville [vil], f., town, city; *en* —, down town.
vin [vɛ̃], m., wine.
vingt [vɛ̃], twenty; — *-huit,* twenty-eight.
vint [vɛ̃], 3 sg. p. def. *venir.*
vînt [vɛ̃], 3 sg. impf. subj. *venir.*
violet [vjɔlɛ], violet.
Virgile [virʒil], m., Virgil (Vergil).
vis [vi], 1 sg. p. def. *voir.*
vision [vizjɔ̃], f., vision.
visite [vizit], f., visit.
visiter [vizite], to visit.
vit [vi], 3 sg. p. def. *voir.*
vitalité [vitalite], f., vitality.
vite [vit], quick, quickly.
vivant [vivɑ̃], living.
vivre [viːvr], § 211, to live; *faire* —, to maintain; *vive!,* long live!, hurrah for!
vœu [vø], m., vow, wish.
voici [vwasi], see here, here is, here are; *nous* —, here we are.
voilà [vwala], behold, there is, there are, that is; — *que,* behold, lo; — *ce que c'est,* that's how things go; *en* — *un,* that's one; *la* —, here (there) it is! *nous* —, here we are!
voile [vwal], f., sail.
voiler [vwale], to veil.
voir [vwaːr], § 224, to see; *lui* — *faire des tours,* to see him play tricks; *faire* —, to show; *se* —, to be seen.
voisin [vwazɛ̃], neighbouring; m., neighbour.
voisinage [vwazinaːʒ], m., neighbourhood, vicinity.
voiture [vwatyːr], f., carriage, car; *en* —, in a carriage; *se promener en* —, to take a drive.
voix [vwa], f., voice.
vol [vɔl], m., theft, robbery.
volaille [vɔlɑːj], f., poultry.
voler [vɔle], to fly.
voler [vɔle], to steal, rob.
volet [vɔlɛ], m., shutter.
voleur [vɔlœːr], m., thief, robber; *au* —!, stop thief!
volière [vɔljɛːr], f., pigeon-house.
volonté [vɔlɔ̃te], f., will.
volubilité [vɔlybilite], f., volubility.
volume [vɔlym], m., volume.
vont [vɔ̃], 3 pl. pres. indic., *aller.*
votre, vos [vɔtr, vo], your.
vôtre (le) [lə voːtr], yours.
voudrai [vudre], 1 sg. fut. *vouloir.*
vouloir [vulwaːr], § 225, to will,

wish, want; *en — à*, to be angry with; *je voudrais* (*bien*), I should like; — *dire*, to mean; *aurait voulu*, would have liked.

vous [vu], you, to you, yourself, yourselves.

voyage [vwajaːʒ], m., journey, voyage; *bon —!*, a pleasant journey!; *compagnon de —*, fellow-traveller.

voyager [vwajaʒe], §156, to travel.

voyageur [vwajaʒœːr], m., traveller.

vrai [vrɛ], true, real.

vraiment [vrɛmɑ̃], really.

vraisemblablement [vrɛsɑ̃blabləmɑ̃], probably.

vu [vy], p. part. *voir*.

vue [vy], f., sight, view.

W.

Waterloo [vatɛrlo *or* watɛrlo], Waterloo.

Wathier [vatje], name of a French officer.

Wellington [vɛlɛ̃gton], the Duke of Wellington.

Y.

y [i], there, in it, to it, at it, on it, of it; *il — a*, there is, there are; *il — en a*, there is (are) some.

yeux [jø], plur. of *œil*, eyes.

Yves [iːv], name of a sailor friend of Loti, mentioned in several of his works, such as *Mon frère Yves*.

Z.

zébré [zebre], striped.

zéphire, zéphyr [zefiːr], zephyr.

ENGLISH-FRENCH.

[h aspirate is indicated thus: 'h.]

A.

a, an, un, m., une, f.; — *franc — dozen*, un franc la douzaine; — *franc — day*, un franc par jour; *not another*, ne...pas (point) d'autre.
abandon, abandonner.
abbess, abbesse, f.
ability, capacité, f., talent, m.
able; *be* —, pouvoir.
about, de, autour de, environ, sur; — *three o'clock*, vers (les) trois heures; — *it*, en; *be* —, s'agir de, être sur le point de; *he has this good thing — him*, il a cela de bon; *set* —, se mettre à.
above, au-dessus de.
abroad, à l'étranger.
absence, absence, f.
absent, absent.
abundant, abondant.
accept, accepter.
accession, accession, f.
accident, accident, m.
accidental, accidentel.
accompany, accompagner.
according to, selon.
account; *on — of*, à cause de.
ache; *have head—*, avoir mal à la tête; *my head—s*, j'ai mal à la tête.
acquaintance, connaissance, f.
acquire, acquérir.
act, agir.
action, action, f., trait, m.
actor, acteur, m., comédien, m.
add, ajouter.
address, adresser.
adjective, adjectif, m.
admire, admirer.
admission, entrée, f.
admit, admettre.
adorn, faire l'ornement de.
advance, avancer.
advanced, avancé.
advantage; *take — of*, abuser de.
advice, avis, m., conseil, m.
advise, conseiller.
affair, affaire, f.
afraid; *to be* — (*of*), avoir peur (de), craindre; — *of*, effrayé de; *be much* —, avoir grand'peur, avoir bien peur.
after, prep. and adv., après; *ten minutes — five*, cinq heures dix (minutes).
after, conj., après que.
afternoon, après-midi, m. and f.
afterwards, ensuite, puis, après.
again, encore, encore une fois, de nouveau.
against, contre.
age, âge, m.; *to be twenty years of* —, avoir vingt ans.
ago, il y a.
agreeable, agréable.
ahead; *walk* —, marcher le premier.
Ajaccio, Ajaccio.
alas!, hélas!
Albert, Albert.
all, tout; — *that* (*which*), tout ce qui; *not at* —, pas du tout; — *passions*, toutes les passions.
allow. laisser, permettre.
almost, presque.
alone, seul.
along, par; *as they went* —, chemin faisant.
already, déjà.
Alsatia, Alsace, f.
also, aussi.
although, bien que, quoique.
always, toujours.
ambassador, ambassadeur, m.
ambition, ambition, f.
America, Amérique, f.
American, américain.
amiable, aimable.

among, parmi, entre, chez.
amongst, parmi, entre, chez.
amuse, amuser; — *one's self*, s'amuser.
amusement, amusement, m.
amusing, amusant.
ancestors, ancêtres, m. pl.; aïeux, m. pl.
ancient, ancien, antique.
and, et; *to go — visit*, aller visiter.
angry; — *at*, — *with*, fâché de (contre); *be* —, *get* —, se fâcher.
animal, animal, m.
another, un autre, encore un.
answer, n., réponse, f.
answer, v., répondre.
ant, fourmi, f.
antechamber, antichambre, f.
antiquity, antiquité, f.
anxious; *be* —, tenir à.
any; de + def. art.; de; en; aucun, quelconque, tout; *I haven't* —, je n'en ai pas; *have you —?*, en avez-vous? ; *don't give him* —, ne lui en donnez pas; — *thing* (with neg.), rien; — *one* (with neg.), personne.
anybody, anyone, quelqu'un; *not* . . . —, ne . . . personne.
any one, see **anybody**.
anything, quelque chose, m.; *not* . . . —, ne . . . rien; — *good*, quelque chose de bon; *not* . . . — *good*, ne . . . rien de bon.
anywhere; *not* . . . —, ne . . . nulle part.
apiece, chacun, la pièce.
appear, paraître, sembler, comparaître.
appetite, appétit, m.
applaud, applaudir.
apple, pomme, f.
apple-tree, pommier, m.
appoint, nommer.
approach, n., approche, f.
approach, v., approcher, s'approcher de.
approbation, approbation, f.
approve, trouver bon.
April, avril, m.
Arab, Arabe, m.

are; see **be**; *here is* (or *are*), voici; *there is* (or *are*), voilà.
argument, argument, m.
Ariosto, Arioste, m.
arise, s'élever, naître.
arithmetic, arithmétique, f.
arm, bras, m.
army, armée, f.
around, autour de; *she looks — her*, elle regarde autour d'elle; *go — the city*, faire le tour de la ville.
arouse, exciter.
arrange, arranger.
arrival, arrivée, f.
arrive, arriver.
art, art, m.
article, article, m.; — *of dress*, article de toilette.
artist, artiste, m.
as, comme; aussi, si; pendant que, en; — . . . —, aussi . . . que; *not* — . . . —, pas aussi . . . que, pas si . . . que; *not so* . . . —, pas aussi . . . que, pas si . . . que, moins . . . que; — *much money* —, autant d'argent que; — *long* —, tant que; — *soon* —, aussitôt que; — *if*, comme si; — *well* —, aussi bien que; — *to*, quant à.
ascend, monter (sur).
ashamed; *be* —, avoir honte; *feel* —, avoir honte.
ask, demander, prier; — *for*, demander; — *him for it*, le lui demander; — *one's self*, se demander.
asleep, endormi; *be* —, être endormi, dormir; *we have been* —, nous avons dormi; *fall* —, s'endormir.
ass, âne, m.
assail, assaillir.
assist, aider.
associate, s'associer.
assure, assurer.
astonish, étonner.
astonishment, étonnement, m.
at, à, chez, de; — (*the house, shop, office, etc., of*), chez; — *the hatter's*, chez le chapelier; —

my father's, chez mon père ; — *home*, chez moi, chez toi, etc. ; — *my house*, chez moi ; — *our house*, chez nous ; — *daybreak*, dès le point du jour.
attack, attaquer.
attend, assister à.
attention, attention, f. ; *pay* —, *give* —, faire attention.
attentively, attentivement.
attract, attirer.
auburn, châtain.
audience, assistance, f., assistants, m. pl.
August, août, m.
Augustus, Auguste, m.
aunt, tante, f.
author, auteur, m.
autumn, automne, m. ; *in* —, en automne.
avenue, avenue, f.
avidity, avidité, f.
avoid, éviter.
await, attendre.
awake, intr., se réveiller.
away ; *go* —, partir, s'en aller ; *take* —, ôter ; *far* —, loin, loin d'ici ; *run* —, se sauver.
axe, 'hache, f.

B.

back, dos, m. ; *be* —, être de retour ; *give* —, rendre ; *come* —, revenir ; *go* —, retourner ; *bring* —, ramener.
bad, mauvais, méchant.
badly, mal ; *hurt* (*very*) —, faire (beaucoup de) mal à.
Bæda, Bède.
bag, sac, m.
bake, cuire.
baker, boulanger, m.
ball, bal, m.
banana, banane, f.
banish, bannir.
bank, bord, m. ; *on the* —, au bord.
banker, banquier, m.
banking-house, maison (f.) de banque.
barefoot, nu-pieds, les pieds nus.
bareheaded, découvert.
bargain, marché, m.
barn, grange, f.
bask, se chauffer.
basket, panier, m.
Bastille, Bastille, f.
battle, bataille, f.
be, être ; y avoir ; — (*of health*), se porter, aller ; — *about to*, aller, être sur le point de, devoir ; — *born*, naître ; — (*of weather*), faire ; — (*of age*), avoir ; — (*of time*), y avoir ; — *afraid*, avoir peur ; *here is* (*are*), voici ; *there is* (*are*), voilà, il y a ; *is he finishing?*, finit-il ? ; *is he not ?*, *etc.*, n'est-ce pas ? ; *how are you ?*, comment vous portez-vous ?, comment allez-vous ?, comment ça va-t-il ?, comment ça va ? ; *I am well*, je me porte bien, ça va bien, etc. ; *I am to do it*, je dois le faire ; *I am going to do it*, je vais le faire ; *it is fine*, il fait beau ; *is it ?*, vraiment ? ; *he is ten years old*, il a dix ans ; *a house to* — *sold*, une maison à vendre.
bear, n., ours, m.
bear, v. (*of fruit trees*), donner.
beard, barbe, f.
beast, animal, m. ; (p. 118) monture, f.
beat, battre.
beautiful, beau.
beauty, beauté, f.
because, parce que.
become, devenir, se faire ; — (*suit*), seoir ; *what has* — *of her ?*, qu'est-elle devenue ?
bed ; *go to* —, se coucher ; *be in* —, être au lit, être couché.
bedroom, chambre (f.) à coucher.
beech, 'hêtre, m.
before, prep., devant (*of place*) ; avant (*of time*) ; avant de + infin. ; — *the judge*, par devant le juge.
before, conj., avant que.
before, adv., auparavant.
beg ; *I* — *your pardon*, pardon.
beg, prier, mendier.

beggar, mendiant, m.
begin, commencer, se mettre à.
beginning, commencement, m.
behave, se comporter.
behead, décapiter.
behind, derrière.
believe, croire; *it is believed*, on croit.
bell, cloche, f.; *little* — (*spherical*), grelot; *sleigh-* —, grelot, m.
belong; — *to*, être à, appartenir à.
below; *here* —, ici-bas.
bend, courber.
benefactor, bienfaiteur, m.
benediction, bénédiction, f.
beside, à côté de.
besides, d'ailleurs.
best, adj., le meilleur.
best, adv., le mieux.
better, adj., meilleur.
better, adv., mieux; *be* —, *be worth more*, valoir mieux; *be* — (*of health*), se porter mieux, aller mieux; *like* —, *prefer*, aimer mieux.
between, entre.
bid; — *good-bye to*, dire adieu à.
big, grand, gros.
bind up, bander.
bird, oiseau, m.
birthday, fête, f., anniversaire (m.) de ma (sa) naissance.
bite, mordre.
bitterly, amèrement.
black, noir.
black-board, tableau noir, m.
blacksmith, maréchal ferrant, m.
blade, brin, m.
blind, aveugle.
blond, blond.
blow, n., coup, m.; — *with a stick*, coup de bâton.
blow, v., souffler.
blue, bleu.
blunt, brusque.
blush, rougir.
board, bord, m.; *on* — *of*, à bord de.
body, corps, m.
boil, bouillir.
bold, 'hardi.
bonbon, bonbon, m.
book, livre, m.
born; *to be* —, naître; *he was* —, il est né.
both, tous (les) deux, l'un et l'autre; — ... *and*, et ... et.
bother!, peste de!
bottom, fond, m.; *at the* — *of*, au fond de.
Boston, Boston, m.
bow; — *to*, saluer.
box, boîte, f.
boy, enfant, garçon, m.; *my* —, mon enfant, m.
branch, branche, f.
brave, courageux, brave.
bread, pain, m.
break, casser, rompre; — *out*, éclater; — *one's arm*, se casser le bras; — *off*, casser, ôter; — *up*, se dissoudre.
breakfast, déjeuner, m.
breathe, respirer.
brick, brique, f.; — *house*, maison (f.) en briques.
bridge, pont, m.
bring, apporter; (*carry*) transporter; (*lead*) amener; — *back*, ramener; — *down*, descendre; — *up* (*rear*) élever; — *up*, ramener à la surface.
Britain, see **Great Britain**.
brother, frère, m.
brush, n., brosse, f.
brush, v., brosser.
build, bâtir.
building, édifice, m.
bun, brioche, f.
burden, fardeau, m.
burn, brûler.
burst, éclat, m.
bury, enterrer.
business, commerce, m., affaires, f. pl.; *on* —, pour affaires; *go into* —, se mettre dans les affaires, se mettre en commerce.
busy, occupé (de); *be* — *doing anything*, *be* — *at anything*, être en train de faire quelque chose, être à faire quelque chose.
but, mais; *nothing* —, ne ... rien ... que.

butter, beurre, m.
buy, acheter.
by, par, de, sur, à, en ; —*rubbing*, en frottant ; — *the way*, à propos ; *go* —, passer ; — *sight*, de vue ; *taller* — *an inch*, plus grand d'un pouce ; *six feet* — *seven*, six pieds sur sept ; — *my watch*, à ma montre ; — *what he says*, à ce qu'il dit ; *loved* —, aimé de.

C.

cabbage, chou, m.
Cædmon, Cedmon.
café, café, m.
cage, cage, f.
Cain, Caïn.
call, appeler ; faire venir ; — *a meeting*, convoquer une assemblée ; *be called*, s'appeler.
camel, chameau, m.
can, pouvoir, savoir ; *he* —*not*, il ne peut pas, il ne sait pas ; *I could*, je pourrais, je pouvais ; *I could have*, j'aurais pu.
Canada, Canada, m.; *in* or *to* —, au Canada.
Canadian, canadien.
cane, canne, f.
cannon-shot, coup(m.)decanon, m.
capital, n., capitale, f.
capital, adj., capital.
captain, capitaine, m.
caravan, caravane, f.
card, carte, f.
care ; — *for*, soigner ; *take* — *of*, avoir soin de, soigner ; *take* —, prendre garde.
carefully, soigneusement.
careless, négligent.
caress, caresse, f.
carnival, carnaval, m.
carpenter, charpentier, m.
carriage, voiture, f.
carrot, carotte, f.
carry, porter ; — *off*, emporter ; — *the day*, l'emporter.
case, cas, m. ; *in*—(*that*),au cas que.
cat, chat, m.
catch, attraper ; — (*a*) *cold*, s'enrhumer.
catholic, catholique.
cattle, bétail, m. s., bestiaux, m. pl.
cause, n., cause, f.
cause, v., causer ; exciter ; — *to*, faire.
cavalry, cavalerie, f.
cease, cesser.
celebrate, célébrer.
celebrated, célèbre.
celebration, fête, f.
cent, sou, m.
centime, centime, m.
century, siècle, m.
certain, certain.
chair, chaise, f.
chance, 'hasard, m.
change, monnaie, f.
chapter, chapitre, m.
charge, charge, f.
charitable, charitable.
charm, charmer.
charming, charmant.
charmingly, à ravir.
chase, chasser, poursuivre.
chat, causer.
cheap, (à) bon marché, peu coûteûx ; *cheaper*, à meilleur marché, moins cher.
cherry, cerise, f.
cherry-tree, cerisier, m.
chicken, poulet, m.
chief, n., chef, m.
chief, adj., principal.
child, enfant, m. and f.
chimney, cheminée, f.
China, Chine, f.
chopper, bûcheron, m.
Christian, chrétien.
Christopher, Christophe.
church, église, f. ; *at* (*to*) —, à l'église.
city, ville, f. ; *in the* —, à la ville, en ville.
city-hall, hôtel (m.) de ville.
clad, see **clothe**.
claimant, prétendant, m.
class, classe, f.
class-room, classe, f.
clean, nettoyer.
clearly, clairement.
clever, habile, fort.

cleverly, habilement.
climb, grimper.
clock, horloge, f.
close, fermer, clore.
cloth ; *table-* —, nappe, f.
clothe, vêtir.
clothes, vêtements, m. pl., habits, m. pl.
clothes-press, armoire, f.
clumsy ; *be so — as to*, avoir la maladresse de ; *—fellow*, maladroit, m.
coat, habit, m.
cock, coq, m.
coffee, café, m.
cold, adj., froid ; n., froid, m. ; *be — (of living beings)*, avoir froid ; *be — (of weather)*, faire froid ; *I have — hands, my hands are —*, j'ai froid aux mains ; *catch (a) —*, s'enrhumer.
collect, ramasser.
collection, quête, f. ; *take up the —*, faire la quête.
college, collège, m.
colossal, colossal.
Columbus, Colomb.
comb, peigne, m.
come, venir, arriver ; — *again*, revenir ; — *back*, — *home*, revenir ; — *to see*, — *and see*, venir voir ; — *down*, descendre ; — *up*, monter, arriver ; — *in*, entrer ; — *out*, sortir ; *come !*, voyons !, allons !
comfortable, commode ; *be —*, faire bon.
command, commander.
commandment, commandement, m. ; *the ten —s*, les dix commandements, le décalogue.
commence, commencer.
commit, commettre.
companion, compagnon, m., compagne, f. ; *travelling —*, compagnon de voyage.
company, compagnie, f.
compartment, compartiment, m.
compassion, compassion, f.
complain, se plaindre.
complete, complet.
complicated, compliqué.
compliment, compliment, m.
comprise, comprendre.
comrade, camarade, m.
conceal, cacher.
concert, concert, m.
conclude, conclure.
condemn, condamner.
condition, condition, f.
confectioner, confiseur, m.
confess, avouer.
confidence, confiance, f.
confound, confondre.
conquer, conquérir, vaincre.
conscience, conscience, f.
consecrate, bénir.
consent, consentir.
consider, considérer.
construct, construire.
contain, contenir.
continually, sans cesse.
continue, continuer.
contract, contrat, m.
contrary ; *on the —*, au contraire.
convenient, commode.
cook, cuisinier, m., -ère, f.
cool, frais ; *it is — (of weather)*, il fait frais.
coolly, tranquillement.
copper, sou, m.
copy, exemplaire, m., copie, f.
coral, corail, m.
corkscrew, tire-bouchon, m.
costs, frais, m. pl.
cost, coûter.
country, pays, m. ; — *(native land)*, patrie, f. ; — *(as opposed to town)*, campagne, f. ; *in the —*, à la campagne.
county-town, chef-lieu, m.
couple, couple, m. and f.
courage, courage, m. ; *take —*, prendre courage.
court, cour, f.
courtier, courtisan, m.
cousin, cousin, m. ; cousine, f.
cover, couvrir ; *covered with*, couvert de.
cow, vache, f.
Cracow, Cracovie, f.
crawl, se traîner.

create, créer.
creature, créature, f.
crime, crime, m.
criminal, criminel, m.
critic, critique, m.
Crœsus, Crésus.
crops, récolte, f.
cross, adj., méchant.
cross, v., traverser.
crowd, foule, f.
crown, couronne, f.
crumb, miette, f.
cry, pleurer, crier; — *out*, crier.
cup, tasse, f., coupe, f.; **cupboard**, armoire, f.
cure, guérir.
curiosity, curiosité, f.
curse, maudire.
custom, coutume, f.
cut, couper; *have one's hair* —, se faire couper les cheveux.

D.

daily, tous les jours.
dance, danser.
danger, danger, m.
dangerous, dangereux.
dark, noir; *be* —, faire noir, faire obscur.
date (*time*), date, f.
date (*fruit*), datte, f.
daughter, fille, f.
day, jour, m., journée, f.; *every* —, tous les jours, chaque jour; *in those* —*s*, à cette époque; *what* — *of the month is it to-day?*, quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?, etc.; *the* — *after to-morrow*, après-demain; *the* — *before yesterday*, avant-hier; *all* — (*long*), toute la journée, tout le jour; *from* — *to* —, de jour en jour; *be* — (*daylight*), faire jour.
daybreak, point (m.) du jour; *at* (*since*) —, dès le point du jour.
dead, mort.
deaf-mute, sourd-muet.
deal; *a great* —, *a good* —, beaucoup.
dear, cher; *not so* —, pas si cher, moins cher.
death, mort, f.; *be at the point of* —, être sur le point de mourir; *put to* —, mettre à mort.
debt, dette, f.
decapitate, décapiter.
decayed, gâté.
deceive, tromper.
declare, déclarer.
decline, déchoir.
decorate, orner.
defect, défaut, m.
dejection, abattement, m.
delay, différer.
delicacy, délicatesse, f.
delight; — *in*, se plaire à.
delighted, enchanté.
delightful, charmant.
deliverance, délivrance, f.
delve, bêcher.
dentist, dentiste, m.
deny, nier.
depart, s'en aller, partir.
depend; — *on*, dépendre de.
describe, décrire.
desert, désert, m.
deserve, mériter.
desire, désirer, vouloir.
despair, désespérer.
dessert, dessert, m.
destroy, détruire.
determine, déterminer, résoudre.
devour, dévorer.
dial, cadran, m.
diameter, diamètre, m.
die, mourir; — *away*, se mourir.
difference, différence, f.; *that makes no* —, cela ne fait rien.
different, différent.
difficult, difficile.
difficulty, difficulté, f.
dig, creuser, bêcher.
diminish, diminuer.
dine, dîner.
dining-room, salle (f.) à manger.
dinner, dîner, m.
direct, adj., droit.
direct, v., diriger.
disagreeable, désagréable.
disappear, disparaître.
discover, découvrir.
discuss, discuter.

discussion, discussion, f.
dishes, vaisselle, f.
disobliging, désobligeant.
disperse, se disperser, se séparer.
displease, déplaire.
dispute, n., différend, m.
dispute, v., se disputer.
dissatisfied, mécontent.
distinction, distinction, f.
distinguished, distingué.
distract, distraire.
disturb, déranger.
dive, plonger.
divide, diviser ; partager.
do, faire ; — (*of health*), se porter, etc. ; — *without*, se passer de; — *you like?*, aimez-vous?, *did he speak ?*, a-t-il parlé ? ; *he does not speak*, il ne parle pas ; *he works, does he not ?*, il travaille, n'est-ce pas ? ; — *not* (*don't*) *speak*, ne parlez pas.
doctor, médecin, m., docteur, m.
doctrine, doctrine, f.
dog, chien, m.
dollar, dollar, m., piastre, f. ; *a — a dozen*, un dollar la douzaine.
door, porte, f. ; *next* —, à côté.
doubt, n., doute, m. ; *no* —, sans doute
doubt, v., douter.
down ; — *stairs*, en bas ; *come* —, *go* — (*stairs*), descendre, aller en bas ; *bring* —, descendre ; — *town*, en ville ; *bent* —, courbé ; *sit* —, s'asseoir ; *lie* —, se coucher.
dozen, douzaine, f.
Dr., docteur, m.
dramatic, dramatique.
draw, tirer ; tracer ; — *near*, s'approcher (de).
drawing, dessin, m.
dream, songe, m., rêve, m.
dress, n., robe, f. ; toilette, f.
dress, v., habiller ; se mettre ; s'habiller ; *be — ed*, être mis.
dress-maker, couturière, f.
drink, boire.
drive ; *go for a* —, *be out for a* —, se promener en voiture.
drive, v., conduire, mener, mouvoir, chasser ; — *away*, chasser.
drop, laisser tomber.
drown, se noyer.
dry, sec.
dry-goods store, magasin (m.) de nouveautés.
ducat, ducat, m.
duke, duc, m.
dupe, dupe, f.
during, pendant.
duty, devoir, m.
dwell, demeurer.

E.

each, chaque, tout.
each one, chacun.
each other, reflex. pron. pl., nous, vous, se ; indef., l'un l'autre.
eagerly, avec empressement.
ear, oreille, f. ; — *-ache*, mal aux oreilles ; — (*of corn*), épi, m.
early, de bonne heure.
earn, gagner.
earth, terre, f.
easily, facilement.
easy, facile.
eat, manger.
economical, économe.
educated, instruit.
education, éducation, f. ; *receive a good* —, faire de bonnes études.
eight, 'huit.
eighty, quatre-vingt(s).
either, ou ; *nor* . . . —, ni . . . non plus ; *he hasn't any* —, il n'en a pas non plus.
eldest, aîné.
elect, élire.
elephant, éléphant, m.
eleven, onze.
elm, orme, m.
else, autre ; *not . . . anything* —, *nothing* —, ne . . . rien autre.
elsewhere, autre part, ailleurs.
emblem, emblème, m.
embrasure, embrasure, f.
emperor, empereur, m.
employ ; *admit into his* —, admettre chez lui.
empty, vide.
enclose, clore, enclore.
enclosed, ci-inclus.

encourage, encourager.
end, n., fin, f. ; *come to a bad* —, finir mal.
end, v., finir, se terminer.
enemy, ennemi, m.
engage, s'engager.
England, Angleterre, f.
English, anglais ; —*man*, Anglais, m. ; — (*the language*), l'anglais, m., anglais, m.
enjoy, jouir de ; —*one's self*, s'amuser.
enough, assez (de) ; *not* —, pas assez ; *kind* —, assez bon.
enter, entrer (dans).
enterprise, entreprise, f.
equal ; *be* — (*to*), égaler.
equivalent, équivalent.
error, erreur, f.
escape, éviter, échapper ; *have a narrow* —, l'échapper belle.
estate, propriété, f., biens, m. pl.
Europe, Europe, f.
European, européen.
even, même ; —*if*, —*though*, quand même.
evening, soir, m., soirée, f. ; *in the* —, le soir ; *last* —, *yesterday* —, hier (au) soir.
ever, jamais.
every, tout, chaque ; — *Sunday*, tous les dimanches ; — *thing which*, tout ce qui ; — *other day*, tous les deux jours.
everybody, tout le monde, m.
everyone, chacun.
everywhere, partout.
evil, mal ; — -*doing*, mal faire, m.
exactly, exactement, précisément.
examine, examiner.
example, exemple, m. ; *for* —, par exemple.
excavation, excavation, f.
exclaim, s'écrier.
excuse, excuser.
exercise, devoir, m., exercice, m.
exercise-book, cahier, m.
exhibit, exposer.
expect, attendre, s'attendre, compter, espérer.
expense, dépense, f., dépens, m. pl.
explain, expliquer.
extract, arracher.
eye, œil, m., plur., **yeux.**

F.

façade, façade, f.
face, figure, f., visage, m. ; *shut the door in one's* —, fermer la porte au nez à quelqu'un.
fact, fait, m.
fail, faillir ; *to* — *in*, manquer à.
fairy, fée, f. ; — *story*, conte de fée(s).
faithful, fidèle.
fall, tomber ; — *due*, échoir ; — *out*, se brouiller ; — *asleep*, s'endormir.
familiarity, familiarité, f.
familiarly, familièrement.
family, famille, f.
famous, fameux.
far, adv., loin ; — *from*, loin que, loin de ; — *away*, loin, loin d'ici ; *farther off*, plus loin ; *farther on*, plus loin ; *as* — *as*, jusqu'à ; *how* — *is it ?*, combien y a-t-il ?
farmer, paysan, m., fermier, m., cultivateur, m.
farmhouse, ferme, f.
farm-servant, valet (m.) de ferme.
fashion, mode, f.
fast, vite.
fastidious, difficile.
fate, destin, m.
father, père, m.
favour, faveur, f.
favourite, favori, m.
fear, n., crainte, f., peur, f. ; *for* — *that*, de crainte que ; *for* — *of*, de crainte de.
fear, v., craindre, avoir peur.
feast, festin, m., banquet, m.
feed, nourrir.
feel, tâter ; sentir ; — *hungry*, sentir la faim, avoir faim.
feeling, sentiment, m.
fell, abattre.
fellow, garçon, m. ; *my good* —, mon ami ; *the brave little* —*s*, les petits bonshommes ; *the clumsy* —, le maladroit.

fence, clôture, f.
fetch, aller chercher.
few, peu, peu de, quelques ; *a* —, quelques-uns ; *but* —, ne... guère, ne...que peu.
field, champ, m.
fifteen, quinze.
fifteenth, quinzième, quinze.
fifth, cinquième, cinq.
fifty, cinquante.
fight, combattre.
fill, remplir.
finally, enfin, à la fin ; — *do*, finir par faire.
find, trouver ; *be found*, se trouver ; — *out*, découvrir.
fine, beau ; *it is* — (*weather*), il fait beau (temps).
fine-looking, beau, élégant.
finger, doigt, m.
finish, finir.
fire, feu, m.
first, adj., premier.
first, adv., d'abord ; *at* —, d'abord ; *for the* — *time*, pour la première fois.
fish, n., poisson, m.
fish, v., pêcher.
fit, aller à ; *my suit* —*s me well*, mon complet me va bien.
fitting, convenable.
five, cinq.
flatter, flatter.
flattering, flatteur.
flee, fuir, s'enfuir.
fleet, flotte, f.
Florida, Floride, f.
flour, farine, f.
flower, fleur, f. ; *in* —, en fleurs.
fluently, couramment.
fly, voler ; — *away*, s'envoler.
foggy ; *be* —, faire du brouillard.
folded, croisé.
foliage, feuillage, m.
follow, suivre.
following, suivant.
folly, folie, f.
fond ; *be* — *of*, aimer.
food, nourriture, f.
foolish, fou.
foot, pied, m. ; *on* —, à pied ; *tread under* —, fouler aux pieds.
for, prep., pour, pendant, de, contre, par ; — *a moment*, un moment ; — (*during*), pendant ; *set out* —, partir pour ; — (*since*), depuis ; — *a long time*, — *a week*, depuis longtemps, depuis une semaine ; — *me*, pour moi ; — *it*, en ; *trade* —, échanger pour (contre) ; *I am sorry* — *it*, j'en suis fâché.
for, conj., car.
forbid, défendre.
force, n., force, f.
force, v., forcer.
foreign, étranger ; *in* — *countries*, à l'étranger.
forest, forêt, f.
forget, oublier.
fork, fourchette, f.
form, former.
former ; *the* —, celui-là.
fortnight, quinzaine, f., quinze jours, m. pl.
fortunate, heureux.
fortune, fortune, f. ; *good* —, bonheur, m. ; *make one's* —, faire fortune.
forty, quarante.
four, quatre.
fourteenth, quatorzième, quatorze.
fourth, quatrième, quatre.
fox, renard, m.
franc, franc, m.
France, France, f. ; *in* —, *to* —, en France.
Francis, François, m., Francis, m.
Frederick the Great, Frédéric le Grand.
free, libre.
freeze, geler.
French, adj., français ; — (*the language*), le français, français ; — *man*, Français, m. ; — *teacher*, professeur (m.) de français.
Friday, vendredi, m.
friend, ami, m. ; amie, f.
friendly, aimable.
friendship, amitié, f.
frog, grenouille, f.

from, de, à, à partir de, dans, d'après, depuis; — *day to day*, de jour en jour; — *it*, en; — *nature*, d'après nature; *drink — a glass*, boire dans un verre; *take — the table*, prendre sur la table.
front; *in — of*, devant.
fruit, fruit, m.
frying-pan, poêle, f.
fulfil, accomplir.
full, plein.
furnish, fournir.

G.

gallery, galerie, f.
garden, jardin, m.
Gascon, Gascon, m.
gate, porte, f.
gather, cueillir.
gay, gai.
general, général, m.
generally, en général, généralement, ordinairement.
generous, généreux.
gentleman, monsieur, m.
George, Georges.
German, allemand.
get, prendre; avoir; obtenir; *go and* —, aller chercher, aller trouver; — *up*, *rise*, se lever; — *up on*, monter sur; — (*become*), devenir; — *made*, *have made*, faire faire; — *married*, se marier; — *angry*, se fâcher; — *on*, avancer.
ghost, revenant, m.
gird on, ceindre.
girl, fille, f., enfant, f.
give, donner; — *away*, donner; — *back*, rendre.
glad; — *at*, *of*, content de, charmé de.
glory, gloire, f.
glove, gant, m.
go, aller; se rendre; — *away*, s'en aller, partir; — *in*, *into*, entrer dans; — *out*, sortir; — *with*, accompagner, aller avec; — *by*, — *past*, passer (devant); — *up* (*stairs*), aller en haut, monter; — *down* (*stairs*), aller en bas, descendre; — *and see*, aller voir; — *around the city*, faire le tour de la ville; — *to bed*, se coucher; — *for a row*, *sail*, *etc.*, se promener en bateau; — (*out*) *for a walk*, aller se promener (à pied), aller faire une promenade (à pied); — *for a drive*, se promener en voiture; — *for a ride*, se promener à cheval; — *for*, — *after*, — *and get*, aller chercher; — *back* (*again*), retourner; — *down town*, aller en ville; — *home*, aller chez soi, rentrer; — *on*, continuer (à), aller en; — *to sleep*, s'endormir; — *to France*, aller en France, partir pour la France.
God, Dieu; *gods*, dieux, m. pl.
gold, or, m.; adj. (*of gold*), d'or, en or.
golden, d'or.
good, bon, brave; *my — fellow*, mon ami, m.; *be so — as to*, *be — enough to*, voulez-vous bien, ayez la bonté de, veuillez.
good, bien, m.; *do* —, faire du bien.
good-bye, adieu, au revoir.
goodness, bonté, f.
goods, marchandises, f. pl.
goose, oie, f.
gooseberry-bush, groseillier, m.
government, gouvernement, m.
grace, grâce, f.
grain, grain, m.
grammar, grammaire, f.
grandfather, grand-père, m., aïeul, m.
grandmamma, grand'mère, f.
grandmother, grand'mère, f.
grandson, petit-fils, m.
grass, herbe, f.
gravely, gravement.
great, grand, gros; — *deal*, beaucoup.
Great Britain, Grande-Bretagne, f.
Greek, grec.
green, vert.
grind, moudre.

ground, terre, f.; *(up)on the* —, à terre, par terre.
grow, croître; — *larger*, grandir.
grudge (have a), en vouloir.
guard, garde, m.
gun, fusil, m.

H.

hair, cheveux, m. pl.
half, demi, moitié, f.; — *an hour*, une demi-heure, f.; *half-past eight*, huit heures et demie.
half, adv., à demi.
hall, vestibule, m.; salle, f.
hand, main, f.; *shake hands with*, donner la main à; *on the right* —, à droite; *on the left* —, à gauche; — *(of a clock)*, aiguille, f.
handkerchief, mouchoir, m.
hang, pendre.
happen, arriver; venir à.
happily, heureusement.
happy, heureux, content.
hard; *work* —, travailler ferme.
hardly, à peine.
harm, faire mal à.
harp, 'harpe, f.
harvest, moisson, f.
hasten, se hâter, se dépêcher; — *into presence of*, accourir auprès de.
hat, chapeau, m.
hate, 'haïr.
hatred, 'haine, f.
hatter, chapelier, m.
have, avoir; obtenir; — *(as auxiliary)*, avoir, être; *I — to be there*, il faut que j'y sois; — *him go*, faites-le partir; — *(cause to be)*, faire; *I am having a house built*, je fais bâtir une maison; — *done*, faire faire; — *one's hair cut*, se faire couper les cheveux; — *just*, venir de; — *to do with*, avoir affaire à; *he has spoken, has he not?*, il a parlé, n'est-ce pas?; — *to*, être obligé de.
Havre, le Havre.
hay, foin, m.
hazel-nut, noisette, f.
he, il, lui; ce; — *who*, celui qui; — *himself*, lui-même.
head, tête, f.; maître, m.
headache; *have* —, avoir mal à la tête.
heal, guérir.
health, santé, f.
hear, entendre; — *from*, recevoir des nouvelles de; *I — from him*, je reçois de ses nouvelles; — *of*, entendre parler de.
heart, cœur, m.
heat, chaleur, f.
heavy, lourd.
hedge, 'haie, f.
Helena; *St.* —, Sainte-Hélène.
help, aider.
hen, poule, f.
hence, aussi, donc.
Henry, Henri, m.
her, adj., son, sa, ses; lui . . . le (à elle).
her, pers. pron., la, elle; *to* —, lui, à elle; — *own*, le sien, à elle.
here, ici, y; — *below*, ici-bas; — *is*, — *are*, voici.
hero, 'héros, m.
hers, le sien, à elle.
herself, se, elle-même.
hide, cacher.
high, 'haut; — *price*, grand prix, m., tant.
hill, colline, f.
him, le, lui; *to, for* —, lui; — *who*, celui qui.
himself, se, soi, lui, lui-même; *to* —, en lui-même; *he* —, lui-même.
hind, adj., de derrière.
hinder, empêcher.
his, adj., son, sa, ses; lui . . . le (à lui).
his, pron., le sien, à lui; — *own*, le sien.
history, histoire, f.
hither; — *and thither*, çà et là.
hold, tenir; — *out*, tendre.
hole, trou, m.
holiday, jour (m.) de fête; —*s*, vacances, f. pl.
holy, bénit.
home; *(at)* —, chez moi, chez toi,

etc., à la maison; *go* —, aller chez moi, chez toi, etc., aller à la maison.
honest, honnête, loyal, probe.
honesty, loyauté, f., probité, f.
honour, n., honneur, m.
honour, v., honorer.
hope, n., espérance, f.
hope, v., espérer.
horse, cheval, m.
horseback; *on* —, à cheval.
horseshoe, fer (m.) à cheval.
hot; chaud, brûlant; *it is* —, il fait chaud.
hour, heure, f.
house, maison, f.; *at* (*to*) *our* —, chez nous; *at whose* —?, chez qui?; *at Mr. B's* (—), chez Monsieur B; *in the* —, à la maison, dans la maison.
how, comment, comme, combien; —!, comme!, que!; — *much*, — *many*, combien; — *much!*, — *many!*, combien (de)!, que de!; — *long have you been here?*, depuis quand êtes-vous ici?; — *happy she is!*, qu'elle est heureuse!; — *old is he?*, quel âge a-t-il?; — *is he?*, comment se porte-t-il?, comment va-t-il?
however, cependant; — *good*, quelque bon que; — *that may be*, quoi qu'il en soit; — *little*, pour peu que.
howl, n., cri, m.; *give a* —, pousser un cri.
howl, v., pousser un cri.
humble, humble.
hundred; *a* (*one*) —, cent.
hunger, faim, f.
hungry; *be* (*feel*) —, avoir faim.
hunt, chasser.
hunting, chasse, f.
hurrah for!, vive(nt)!
hurry; — *up*, se dépêcher; *be in a* —, être pressé.
hurt, faire mal à; — *one's self*, se faire mal.
husband, mari, m.
husbandman, laboureur, m.
hymn, cantique, m.

I.

I, je, moi.
ice, glace, f.
idea, idée, f.
idle, paresseux.
idleness, paresse, f.
if, si.
ignorant, ignorant; *be* — *of*, ignorer.
ill, n., mal, m.
ill, adj., malade.
ill, adv., mal.
ill-fortune, malheur, m.
ill-treat, maltraiter.
illuminate, illuminer.
image, image, f.
imagine, s'imaginer.
immediately, tout de suite.
impatient, impatient.
important, important.
impossible, impossible.
in, dans, à, en, de, sur; — *it*, y; — (*after superlative*), de; — *the reign of*, sous; *be* —, y être, être chez soi; — *the evening*, le soir; *one* — *ten*, un sur dix; — *the west*, à l'ouest.
inch, pouce, m.
income, revenu, m.
increase, augmenter.
incur, courir.
indeed!, vraiment!
indisposed, souffrant.
individual, individu, m.
influence, n., influence, f.
influence, v., influencer.
inhabitant, habitant, m.
injustice, injustice, f.
ink, encre, f.
inkstand, encrier, m.
inn, auberge, f.
innkeeper, aubergiste, m.
insect, insecte, m.
instead of, au lieu de.
institution, institution, f.
instrument, instrument, m.
insult, dire des injures à, insulter.
intelligent, intelligent.
intend, avoir (l')intention.
intention, intention, f.

inter, enterrer.
interest, intérêt, m. ; *take — in*, prendre intérêt à, s'occuper de.
interest, intéresser.
interesting, intéressant.
interview ; (*private*) —, tête-à-tête, m.
intimate, intime.
into, dans, en ; — *it*, y, là dedans ; *fall — the sea*, tomber à la mer ; — *his presence*, auprès de lui.
introduce, présenter.
invention, invention, f.
invite, inviter.
iron, fer, m. ; — (adj.) de fer.
is, see **be** ; *here —, here are*, voici ; *here he —*, le voici.
island, île, f.
it, il, elle, ce ; le, la ; cela ; *in —*, y, dedans ; *of —, for —*, en ; *to —*, y ; — *is you*, c'est vous ; — *is they*, ce sont eux, c'est eux ; *think of —*, y penser ; *is —?*, vraiment?
Italian, italien.
Italy, Italie, f.
its, son, sa, ses ; en...le.
itself, se, soi ; lui-même ; même.

J.

January, janvier, m.
Japan, Japon, m.
Jericho, Jéricho.
Jerusalem, Jérusalem.
John, Jean.
joke, plaisanter.
journey, voyage, m. ; *set out again on a —*, se remettre en route.
joyful, joyeux.
judge, juge, m. ; *be a good — of*, se connaître à (en).
judge, juger.
July, juillet, m.
jump, sauter ; — *over*, sauter par-dessus.
Jupiter, Jupiter.
just, adj., juste, précis.
just, adv., justement, donc ; —*look*, regardez donc ; *to have —*, venir de, ne faire que de ; — *then*, à ce moment ; — *as*, au moment où.
justice, justice, f.

K.

keep, garder, tenir ; — *on*, aller en.
kernel, amande, f.
key, clef, f.
kick out, mettre à la porte.
kill, tuer, faire mourir.
kind, n., espèce, f., sorte, f. ; *what —of weath is it?*, quel temps fait-il ?
kind, adj., bon ; — *to*, bon pour ; *be so — as, be — enough to*, vouloir bien ; *it is — of him to*, c'est bon à lui de.
kindly, bien.
kindness, bonté, f. ; *have the — to*, vouloir bien, avoir la bonté de.
king, roi, m.
kingdom, royaume, m. ; *United —*, Royaume-Uni, m.
kiss, embrasser, baiser.
kitchen, cuisine, f.
knee, genou, m. ; *fall on one's —s*, tomber à genoux.
knife, couteau, m., canif, m.
knight, chevalier, m.
knock, frapper ; *there is a —*, on frappe.
know, savoir, connaître ; — *how*, savoir.
knowledge, science, f., connaissances, f. pl.

L.

labour, travail, m., labeur, m.
lady, dame, f. ; *young —*, demoiselle, f., jeune dame, f.
lake, lac, m.
lamb, agneau, m.
lamp, lampe, f.
lamp-shade, abat-jour, m.
land, terre, f.
landlord, aubergiste, m.
language, langue, f. ; — (*of animals, etc.*), langage, m.
large, grand, gros ; *grow —*, grandir.
last, adj., dernier, passé ; — *year*, l'année dernière, l'année passée ;

—*evening*, hier (au) soir; —*night*, cette nuit; *at* —, enfin, à la fin.
last, v., durer.
late, tard, en retard; *he is* —, il est en retard; *be — for*, manquer; *it is* —, il est tard; *it is getting* —, il se fait tard; *later on*, plus tard.
lately, dernièrement.
Latin, latin.
latter; *the* —, celui-ci.
laud, louer.
laugh, rire; — *at*, rire de, se moquer de.
laughter, rire, m.
law, loi, f.
law-suit, procès, m.
lazy, paresseux.
lead, mener, conduire.
leaf, feuille, f.
leap, sauter.
learn, apprendre, savoir.
learned; — *man*, savant, m.
leathern, de cuir.
leave, tr., quitter, laisser.
leave, intr., partir.
left, gauche; *on the* — (*hand*), à (la) gauche; *I have none* —, je n'en ai plus.
leg, jambe, f.
lend, prêter.
less, moins; — *than two*, moins de deux.
lesson, leçon, f.
lest, que...ne, de peur que...ne.
let, laisser, permettre; — *us go*, allons; — *him finish*, qu'il finisse; — *him be glad*, qu'il soit content; — *in*, laisser entrer.
letter, lettre, f.
Levite, lévite, m.
liberal, libéral.
liberty, liberté, f.
library, bibliothèque, f.
lie (*speak falsely*), mentir; — (*buried*), gésir; — *down*, se coucher.
life, vie, f.
light, n., lumière, f.
light; — *auburn hair*, cheveux châtain clair.
like, v., aimer; vouloir, désirer; — *better*, aimer mieux; — *to*, aimer à; *I should* — (*very much*), j'aimerais (bien), je voudrais (bien); *I should — you to do it*, je voudrais que vous le fassiez (fissiez); — *it in*, se plaire à; *I should — to have done it*, j'aurais voulu le faire.
like, prep., comme; *anything — that*, quelque chose de pareil, ne ... rien de pareil.
lily of the valley, muguet, m.
line, ligne, f.
listen (to), écouter.
little, adj., petit; —, adv., peu; *a* —, un peu (de); *however* —, pour peu que; *a — ago*, il y a quelques moments; — *by* —, peu à peu.
live, demeurer, vivre; — *in*, demeurer à, dans, etc., habiter; — *on*, vivre de; *long* —*!*, vive(nt)!
living, vivant; — *is dear*, il fait cher vivre; *not a — soul*, ne... âme vivante.
log, bûche, f.
London, Londres.
long, v., tarder; *I — to*, il me tarde de; *be — in*, tarder à.
long, adj. or adv., long, longtemps; *have you been here —?*, y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes ici?; *a — time*, *a — while*, longtemps; *how —?*, depuis quand?; *as — as*, tant que; *I have not seen them for a — time*, il y a longtemps que je ne les ai vus; *a — way off*, loin.
longer; *no* —, ne ... plus.
look, regarder; — *at*, regarder; — *around*, regarder autour; — *out of the window*, regarder par la fenêtre; — *for*, chercher; —, intr., avoir l'air, sembler, paraître; *get a good — at*, bien voir.
look out, prendre garde; — *of the window*, regarder par la fenêtre.
lose, perdre; — *sight of*, perdre de vue.

loss, perte, f.
loud, adv., fort, haut.
Louis, Louis, m.
love, n., amour, m. f., affection, f., tendresse, f. ; *my first* —, mes premières amours.
love, v., aimer.
luck ; *good* —, fortune, f.
lunch, v., déjeuner.
lunch, n., goûter, m., déjeuner, m.

M.

machine, machine, f.
madam, madame, f. pl. mesdames.
magnificent, magnifique.
maid, bonne, f. ; — *of all work*, bonne à tout faire.
majority, majorité, f.
make, faire, rendre ; *be made*, se faire ; — *use*, se servir.
man, homme, m. ; *old* —, vieillard, m., — (*soldier*), soldat, m. ; *the* — *who*, *a* — *who*, celui qui ; *young men*, jeunes gens.
manner, manière, f.
many ; *very* —, *a great* —, beaucoup (de) ; *so* —, tant (de) ; — *a*, maint ; *as* —, autant (de) ; *how* — ?, combien (de) ?, *many*, beaucoup de personnes.
maple, n., érable, m. ; adj., d'érable.
March, mars, m.
march, marcher.
mark, marque, f.
market, marché, m. ; *to*, *at* (*the*) —, au marché.
marry ; (*give in marriage*, *unite in marriage*), marier ; — (*take in marriage*), épouser, se marier à (avec) ; — (*be married*, *get married*), se marier.
Marseilles, Marseille, f.
Mary, Marie.
mass, messe, f.
master, maître, m.
masterpiece, chef-d'œuvre, m.
matter ; *what is the* — *with you ?*, qu'avez-vous ? ; *what is the* —?, qu'y a-t-il ?, de quoi s'agit-il ? ; *no* —, *that does not* —, n'importe.
maxim, maxime, f.
May, mai, m.
may, pouvoir ; *that* — *be*, cela se peut ; *it* — *be*, il se peut ; *I might have*, j'aurais pu ; — *it please*, qu'il plaise.
me, me, moi ; *to*, *for* —, me, moi ; *for* —, pour moi ; *with* —, avec moi.
mean, vouloir dire.
meat, viande, f.
medicine, médecine, f.
meet, rencontrer ; se réunir.
meeting, assemblée, f. ; *call a* —, convoquer une assemblée.
melt, fondre.
member ; — *of Parliament*, député, m.
memorandum, mémoire, m.
memory, mémoire, f.
mention ; *don't* — *it*, il n'y a pas de quoi.
merchant, marchand, m.
Mercury, Mercure.
mere, simple.
merely, seulement, rien que.
merit, mérite, m.
method, méthode, f.
metre, mètre, m.
Michaelmas, la Saint-Michel.
middle, milieu, m.
midnight, minuit, m.
midst, milieu, m. ; *into the* —, au milieu.
midsummer night's dream, songe (m.) d'une nuit d'été.
mild ; *be* —, faire doux.
mile, mille, m.
military, militaire.
milk, n., lait, m.
milk, v., traire.
mill, moulin, m.
miller, meunier, m.
milliner, modiste, f.
mind, âme, f.
mine, le mien ; à moi ; *a friend of* —, un de mes amis ; — *and thine*, le mien et le tien.
minister, ministre, m.
minute, minute, f. ; *five* —*s to five*, cinq heures moins cinq (minutes), quatre heures cinquante-cinq.

miser, avare, m.
misery, misère, f.
misfortune, malheur, m.
Miss, mademoiselle, f.
miss, manquer.
mistake; *make a* —, se tromper.
mistaken; *be* —, se tromper.
modern, moderne.
modest, modeste.
moment, moment, m.; *this* —, à l'instant.
monarch, monarque, m.
monastery, monastère, m.
Monday, lundi, m.
money, argent, m.
monk, moine, m.
month, mois, m.; *what day of the — is it?* (see § 427, 2); *in the — of May*, au mois de mai.
Montreal, Montréal, m.
moon, lune, f.
moonlight, clair (m.) de lune.
more, plus (de), encore, davantage; *have you any — money?*, avez-vous encore de l'argent?, *I have no —, I have not any* —, je n'en ai plus; — *money than*, plus d'argent que; *I have some* —, j'en ai encore; *no* —, ne...plus; — *than twenty times*, plus de vingt fois; *it is worth* —, il vaut mieux; — *than one*, plus d'un.
morning, matin, m.; *good* —, bonjour; *in the* —, le matin.
morrow, lendemain, m.
mortification, mortification, f.
most, très, bien, fort; *the* —, le plus; — *people*, la plupart des gens.
mother, mère, f.
mount, montagne, f.
mountain, montagne, f.
mouth, bouche, f.
move, mouvoir, émouvoir, remuer; se remuer.
Mr., monsieur, m.
much, beaucoup (de), bien, très, grand'chose; *very* —, beaucoup; *as — as*, autant que; *so* —, tant, tellement; *how* —?, combien (de)?; *too* —, trop; *as* —, autant (de); *pay twice as* —, payer deux fois plus cher; *give too* —, payer trop cher.
mud, vase, f., boue, f.
museum, musée, m.
music, musique, f.
must, falloir, devoir; *I — go*, il me faut partir, il faut que je parte; *he — have done it*, il a dû le faire.
my, mon, ma, mes; me (dat.)... le; *I wash — face*, je me lave la figure; — *own*, le mien, à moi.
myself, me, moi, moi-même.
mysterious, mystérieux.

N.

nail, clou, m.
naked, nu.
name, n., nom, m.
name, v. appeler; *be named*, s'appeler; *what is the — of?*, comment s'appelle?
nap, somme, m.
Napoleon, Napoléon.
narrow, étroit; *have a — escape*, l'échapper belle.
nation, nation, f.
national, national.
native, natif.
natural, naturel.
nature, nature, f.
naughty, méchant.
near, près de; — *by*, tout près; *be — falling*, penser tomber.
nearly, près de, presque.
necessary, nécessaire; *be* —, être nécessaire, falloir.
neck, cou, m.
need, n., besoin, m.
need, v., avoir besoin de, falloir; *what does he* —?, que lui faut-il?, de quoi a-t-il besoin?
needless, inutile.
neglect, négliger.
negro, nègre, m.
neighbour, voisin, m., voisine, f.
neighbouring, voisin.
neither, ni l'un ni l'autre ... ne; — ... *nor*, (ne...) ni ... ni.
nest, nid, m.

never, ne . . . jamais ; — *can any one*, on (personne) ne peut jamais.
nevertheless, cependant.
new, nouveau, neuf.
New Orleans, la Nouvelle - Orléans, f.
news, nouvelle(s), f. ; *what is the — ?*, qu'y a-t-il de nouveau ?
newly-married couple, nouveaux mariés.
newspaper, journal, m.
New-Year's Day, le jour de l'An.
next, adj., prochain, premier ; — *year*, l'année prochaine ; *the — day*, le lendemain ; — *time*, la prochaine fois ; — *door*, à côté ; *the — one*, celui à côté ; — *morning*, le lendemain matin.
next, adv., après, ensuite ; *the very — day*, dès demain, dès le lendemain.
nice, joli, gentil.
night, nuit, f. ; *all* —, (de) toute la nuit ; *last* —, hier soir, cette nuit.
nine, neuf.
nineteen, dix-neuf.
ninety, quatre-vingt-dix.
ninety-two, quatre-vingt-douze.
no, non, ne . . . pas, aucun ; — *man*, — *one*, personne, aucun ; — *longer*, — *more*, ne . . . plus.
noble, noble.
nobleman, noble, m., gentilhomme, m.
nobody, ne . . . personne ; — *at all*, ne . . . qui que ce soit (fût).
noise, bruit, m.
none, pas, nul ; *I have* —, je n'en ai pas ; *there are* —, il n'y en a pas ; *have — left*, n'en avoir plus.
nonsense !, allons donc !
noon, midi, m.
nor, ni, et ne . . . pas ; — *I either*, ni moi non plus.
Normandy, Normandie, f.
north, nord, m., du nord ; — *wind*, bise, f., vent (m.) du nord.
North America, l'Amérique (f.) du Nord.

nose, nez, m.
not, ne . . . pas (point), non ; *is he — ?*, n'est-ce pas ? ; — *for me*, (non) pas pour moi ; — *that*, non (pas) que ; — *one*, (ne . . .) pas un ; — *at all*, pas du tout ; — *very long afterwards*, pas longtemps après.
note, billet, m.
nothing, (ne . . .) rien ; *that is — to him*, cela ne lui fait rien ; — *good*, (ne . . .) rien de bon ; — *at all*, rien du tout, ne. . .quoi que ce soit (fût) ; *do — but*, ne faire que.
notice, apercevoir, s'apercevoir.
novel, roman, m.
November, novembre, m.
now, maintenant, à présent, déjà ; tiens ! ; *not to have* —, n'avoir plus ; — *and then*, de temps en temps.
number, nombre, m., numéro, m., compte, m.
numerous, nombreux.
nut, noisette, f.

O.

oak, chêne, m.
obelisk, obélisque, m.
obey, obéir (à).
oblige, obliger, forcer.
obliging, obligeant.
observe, observer, remarquer.
occasion, occasion, f.
occasionally, de temps en temps.
occupied, occupé.
occur (*of ideas*), venir à qqn. à l'esprit.
o'clock, heure(s), f. ; *at four* —, à quatre heures.
October, octobre, m.
of, de ; — *it*, — *them*, en, y.
offend, offenser, déplaire à.
office, bureau, m.
often, souvent ; *how* —, combien de fois.
oh !, oh !
oil, huile, f.
old (*in years*), vieux, âgé ; (*former*), ancien ; *how — are you ?*, quel

âge avez-vous?; *be five years* —, avoir cinq ans, être âgé de cinq ans; — *man*, vieillard, m.
on, sur, à, de, en; — *the right*, à (la) droite; — *business*, pour affaires; — *this side*, de ce côté; often omitted with time expressions, *e.g.*, — *the sixth*, le six.
once, une fois, autrefois; *at* —, tout de suite.
one, num., un, une.
one, indef. pron., on, vous (obj.); — *must eat*, il faut manger; *no* —, personne (*with* ne); *the white* —*s*, les blancs; *an iron* —, un en fer; *a small* —, un petit; *the* — *who*, celui qui; *that* —, celui-là; *I am* — *too*, je le suis aussi; — *of my friends, a doctor*, un docteur de mes amis.
one's, son; le.
one's self, se, soi.
only, ne ... que, seulement; *not* —, non seulement; — (*one*), seul.
open, adj., ouvert; *wide* —, grand(e) ouvert(e).
open, v., ouvrir; s'ouvrir, éclore.
opium, opium, m.
opportune, opportun.
opportunity, occasion, f.
or, ou; ni (*after* sans); *no* ... —, ne...ni...ni.
orator, orateur, m.
orchard, verger, m.
order, n., ordre, m.; *in* — *to*, pour, afin de; *in* — *that*, pour que, afin que.
order, give orders, ordonner; — (*send for*), faire venir.
organize, organiser.
other, autre; —*s*, d'autres; *many* —*s*, bien d'autres; *people give each* —, on se donne; *write to each* —, s'écrire; *every* — *day*, tous les deux jours.
ought, devoir; *he* — *to do it*, il devrait le faire; *he* — *to have done it*, il aurait dû le faire.
our, notre, nos; *at* — *house*, chez nous.
ours, le nôtre.
ourselves, nous, nous-mêmes.
out; *come* —, *go* —, sortir; *be* —, être sorti; — *of the window*, par la fenêtre.
outburst, éclat, m.
outside, hors de.
over, sur, par, par-dessus; *be all* — *with*, en être fait de.
owe, devoir.
own, adj., propre; *my* —, le mien; *of his* —, à lui.
own, v., posséder.

P.

page, page, m.
pain, peine, f., douleur, f.
paint, peindre.
painter, peintre, m.
painting, peinture, f., tableau, m.
pair, paire, f.
palace, palais, m., château, m.
paper, papier, m.
pardon, n., pardon, m.; *I beg your* —, pardon.
pardon, v., pardonner qqch. à qqn.
parent, parent, m.
Paris, Paris, m.; *in* —, à Paris; *in* — *itself*, dans Paris (même).
Parisian, parisien.
parliament, parlement, m.; Chambre (f.) des députés; *member of* —, député, m.
parlour, salon, m.
parrot, perroquet, m.
part, n., partie, f., part, f., région, f.; *play a* —, jouer un rôle; *on our* —, de notre part.
part, v.; — *with* (*from*), se séparer de.
participle, participe, m.
partner, associé, m.
pass, go past, passer (devant, près de); — *through*, traverser; — *by on the other side*, passer outre.
passion, passion, f.
past, n., passé, m.
past, adj., passé; et; *at half* — *one*, à une heure et demie.

pastor, pasteur, m.
paternal, paternel.
patience, patience, f.
patient, malade, m. f.
pay, pay for, payer; — *too much for it*, le payer trop cher; — *attention*, faire attention.
payment, paiement, m.
peace, paix, f.
peach, pêche, f.
pear, poire, f.
pearl, perle, f.
pear-tree, poirier, m.
peasant, paysan, m.
pebble, caillou, m.
peck at, becqueter.
peel, peler.
peep of day, point (m.) du jour.
pen, plume, f.
pencil, crayon, m.
pen-holder, porte-plume, m.
penknife, canif, m.
penny, deux sous, m.
people, peuple, m., on, gens, m. f., monde, m., personnes, f.; *few* —, peu de gens (monde, personnes); *most* —, la plupart des gens.
perceive, apercevoir, s'apercevoir de.
perhaps, peut-être.
peril, péril, m.
permission, permission, f.
permit, permettre (à); *we are permitted to*, il nous est permis de.
persist, persister.
person, personne, f.
persuade, persuader.
petition, pétition, f.
Philadelphia, Philadelphie, f.
phrase, phrase, f.
physician, médecin, m.
pick up, ramasser.
picnic, pique-nique, m.
picture, tableau, m., peinture, f.; — *gallery*, galerie (f.) de peintures.
piece, morceau, m.
pin, épingle, f.
pipe, pipe, f.
pitifully, à faire pitié.
pity, pitié, f.; *it's a* —, c'est dommage; *what a* —, quel dommage; *which is a great* —, (ce) qui est bien dommage.
place, n., endroit, m., lieu, m., place, f.; *take* —, avoir lieu; *it is my* — *to*, c'est à moi de.
place, v., mettre, placer.
plain, plaine, f.
plainly, franchement.
plan, plan, m.
plant, n., plante, f.
plant, v., planter.
plate, assiette, f.
play, jouer; — *at* (*games*), jouer à; — *on* (*instruments*), jouer de.
pleasant, agréable, aimable.
please, plaire à; *if you* —, s'il vous plaît; *as we* —, comme il nous plaira.
pleased, content.
pleasure, plaisir, m.; *give* —, faire plaisir.
plough, labourer.
plum, prune, f.
plum-tree, prunier, m.
pocket, poche, f.
poem, poème, m., vers, m. pl.
poet, poète, m.
poetry, poésie, f., vers, m. pl.
point, point, m.; *at the* — *of*, sur le point de.
Poland, Pologne, f.
Pole, Polonais, m.
police, police, f.
polite, poli.
political, politique.
pond, étang, m.
poodle, caniche, m.
poor, pauvre, mauvais.
population, population, f.
portion, part, f.
portrait, portrait, m.
position, place, f.; *put in a* — *to*, mettre à même de.
possession, possession, f.
possible, possible.
post, post-office, poste, f.; *put in the* —, mettre à la poste.
postage-stamp, timbre-poste, m
potato, pomme de terre, f.
poultry, volaille, f.; — *yard*, basse-cour, f.

pound, livre, f.
pour, verser.
powerful, puissant, fort.
practise, mettre en pratique
praise, louer.
pray, prier, prier Dieu.
precious, précieux.
precise, précis.
precisely, précisément ; *at two o'clock* —, à deux heures précises.
prefer, préférer, aimer mieux.
prepare, préparer.
prescribe, prescrire, ordonner.
presence, présence, f. ; *into his* —, auprès de lui.
present, n., cadeau, m.
present, adj., présent ; *at* —, à présent ; *be* — *at*, être présent à, assister à.
present (with), v., présenter.
preserve, conserver, confire.
president, monsieur le président.
pretend, faire semblant de.
pretended, prétendu.
pretty, adj., joli.
pretty, adv., assez.
prevail over, l'emporter sur.
prevent, empêcher.
price, prix, m. ; *at what* —, à quel prix, (à) combien.
priest, prêtre, m.
prince, prince, m.
principle, principe, m.
private interview, tête à tête, m.
probable, probable.
probably, probablement.
procession, cortège, m.
produce, produire.
product, produit, m.
progress, progrès, m.
promenade, promenade, f.
promise, n., promesse, f.
promise, v., promettre.
pronounce, prononcer, donner.
proof, preuve, f.
property, propriété, f., biens, m. pl.
prophet, prophète, m.
propose, proposer.
prosperous, florissant.
protect, protéger.
proud, fier, orgueilleux.
proudly, fièrement.
prove, prouver, démontrer.
provide with, fournir à.
province, province, f.
prudence, prudence, f.
prudent, prudent.
public, public ; — *works*, les travaux (m.) publics ; *the* —, le public.
punish, punir.
pupil, élève, m. f.
purchase, emplette, f., achat, m.
purpose, but, m., intention, f. ; *on* —, exprès ; *with the* —, dans le but.
purse, porte-monnaie, m.
pursue, poursuivre.
put, mettre, attacher ; — *on* (*clothing*), mettre ; — *out* (*fire, etc.*), éteindre ; — *out* (*of doors*), mettre à la porte ; — *to death*, mettre à mort.

Q.

quality, qualité, f.
quantity, quantité, f.
quarrel, dispute, f.
quarter, quart, m. ; *in a* — *of an hour*, dans un quart d'heure ; *a* — *past one*, une heure et quart ; *a* — *to one*, une heure moins (un) quart.
Quebec, Québec, m.
queen, reine, f.
question, question, f.
quickly, vite.
quiet, tranquille.
quietly, tranquillement.
quite, tout, tout à fait.

R.

race, race, f.
railway, **railroad**, chemin (m.) de fer.
rain, n., pluie, f.
rain, v., pleuvoir.
rainy, pluvieux ; *in* — *weather*, quand il pleut, quand le temps est à la pluie.

raise, lever, élever, relever.
rare, rare.
rarely, rarement; il est rare que.
rat, rat, m.
rather, assez; plutôt.
reach, arriver à (chez), atteindre.
read, lire.
reading, lecture, f.; *amuse yourself* —, vous amuser à lire.
ready, prêt.
really, réellement, vraiment.
reappear, reparaître.
rear-admiral, chef (m.) d'escadre.
reason, raison, f.
reasonable, raisonnable.
receive, recevoir; *received*, reçut, eut; *received a good education*, fit de bonnes études.
recite, réciter.
recognize, reconnaître.
recompense, n., récompense, f.
recompense, v., récompenser.
red, rouge.
refuge, refuge, m.; *take* —, se réfugier.
regret, n., regret, m.
regret, v., regretter.
regular, régulier, vrai.
reign, n., règne, m.
reign, v., régner.
rejoice at, se réjouir de.
rejoin, rejoindre.
relate, raconter.
relative, parent, m.
relic, reste, m.
religion, religion, f.
remain, rester.
remains, restes, m. pl.
remarkable, remarquable.
remember, se souvenir de, se rappeler, retenir; — *me to them*, rappelez-moi à leur bon souvenir.
render, rendre.
repeat, répéter.
reply, n., réponse, f.; *make a* —, répondre.
reply, v., répondre.
repose, repos, m.
represent, représenter.
republic, république, f.
reputation, renommée, f.
resemble, ressembler à.
resolve, résoudre, décider.
resort; *have* —, avoir recours, m.
respect, n., respect, m.
respect, v., respecter.
respectable, respectable, honorable.
respectfully, respectueusement.
rest (the), les autres.
rest, v., se reposer.
restaurant, restaurant, m.
retain, garder.
retire, se retirer.
return, n., retour, m.; *on my* —, à mon retour.
return, v., revenir, retourner (*go back*); — *home*, rentrer (chez soi).
reveal, révéler.
revolution, révolution, f.
revolver, revolver, m.
reward, n., récompense, f.
reward, v., récompenser.
ribbon, ruban, m.
rich, riche.
riches, richesse, f.
rid; *be* — *of*, *get* — *of*, se débarrasser de.
ride; *go for a* —, *be out for a* —, se promener à cheval.
right, n., droit, m.; *be* (*in the*) —, avoir raison; *all* —!, à la bonne heure!
right, adj., droit; *on the* — *hand*, *to the* —, à (la) droite.
ring, sonner.
ripe, mûr.
ripen, mûrir.
rise (up), se lever.
rival, rival.
river, fleuve, m., rivière, f.
road, route, f., chemin, m.; *on the* —, en route.
roar, rugir, crier.
robber, voleur.
Robert, Robert.
robin, rouge-gorge, m.
rock, rocher, m.
roll, n., rouleau, m.
roll, v., rouler.
room, salle, f.; chambre, f.; *in his* —, dans sa chambre, chez lui.

rose, rose, f.
Rouen, Rouen, m.
round, rond; *to go* —, faire le tour de.
row; *go for a* —, se promener en bateau.
rub, frotter, se frotter; — *out*, faire sortir.
ruin, perdre.
ruler, règle, f.
rumour, on dit, m.
run, courir; — *away*, se sauver; — *over*, parcourir.
rush, se précipiter, s'élancer, accourir.
Russia, Russie, f.
Russian, russe.
rustle, bruire.

S.

sad, triste.
saddle, v., seller.
safety, sûreté, f.
sail, faire voile; *go for a* —, se promener en bateau.
sailor, marin, m., matelot, m.
saint, saint, m.; *All Saints' Day*, la Toussaint.
sale, vente, f.; *for* —, à vendre.
salute, saluer.
Samaritan, Samaritain, m.
same, même.
sand, sable, m.
satisfied, satisfait, content.
Saturday, samedi, m.
save, sauver, conserver, (*money*) épargner.
Saxon, saxon.
say, dire; *it is said*, on dit; — *no*, dire que non; — *yes*, dire que oui (si); — *to each other*, — *to one's self*, se dire; *let us* — *no more about it*, n'en parlons plus; *how old would you* — *that man is?*, quel âge donneriez-vous à cet homme?; — *again*, redire.
scarce, **scarcely**, à peine; — *any*, très peu de.
scene, vue, f.
scholar, savant, m.
school, école, f.; *at* (*to*) —, à l'école.
school-boy, écolier, m., collégien, m.
school-fellow, camarade (m.) d'école.
science, science, f.; *man of* —, savant, m.
scientific man, savant, m.
Scotland, Écosse, f.
scoundrel, coquin, m., scélérat, m.
scratch, gratter.
scream, crier.
sculptor, sculpteur, m.
sea, mer, f.
seaport, port (m.) de mer.
search, **make a search**, chercher.
season, saison, f.
seat, banc, m.
seated, assis.
second, second, deuxième.
see, voir; — *again*, revoir.
seed, graine, f.
seek, chercher.
seem, sembler.
seize, saisir.
self, même, se; *enjoy one's* —, s'amuser.
selfish, égoïste.
sell, v. tr., vendre; v. intr., se vendre.
send, envoyer; — *for*, envoyer chercher, faire appeler, faire venir; — *up stairs*, faire monter.
sense, sens, m.
sensible, sensé, raisonnable.
sentence, sentence, f., (*gram.*) phrase, f., locution, f.
September, septembre, m.
serge, serge, f.
seriously, sérieusement.
sermon, sermon, m.
servant, valet, m., domestique, m. f., servante, f., bonne, f.
service, service, m.
set, mettre; — *a high value upon*, attacher une grande valeur à; — *about*, se mettre à.
set out, partir.
settle, régler.
seven, sept.
seventeen, dix-sept.
seventy, soixante-dix.
seventy-five, soixante-quinze.

several, plusieurs.
severe, sévère.
sew, coudre.
sewing-machine, machine (f.) à coudre.
shade, ombre, f.
shake, secouer ; — *hands*, se donner la main, se serrer la main.
shall, devoir ; — *I go?*, dois-je aller?, irai-je? ; *we — go*, nous irons ; *what — I sing?*, que voulez-vous que je chante?
shame, honte, f. ; *it is a —*, c'est honteux.
she, elle, ce.
shell, coquille, f.
shelter, abriter.
shepherd, berger, m.
ship, vaisseau, m., navire, m.
shoe, soulier, m.
shoemaker, cordonnier, m., marchand (m.) de chaussures.
shop, magasin, m., boutique, f. ; *to go shopping*, aller faire des emplettes.
shop-keeper, marchand, m.
shore, bord, m. ; *on the lake —*, au bord du lac.
short, court, petit ; *in —*, bref ; *be — of*, manquer de.
shortly, bientôt.
shot, coup, m.
should ; *you — do it*, vous devriez le faire ; *if we — be there*, si nous y étions ; *I — be glad if he were here*, je serais content s'il était ici ; *I — like you to do it*, je voudrais que vous le fassiez.
shoulder, épaule, f.
shout, crier.
show, n., spectacle, m.
show, v., montrer, faire voir ; — *itself*, se montrer ; — *in*, faire entrer ; —*up stairs*, faire monter.
shut, fermer.
side, côté, m. ; *on this —*, de ce côté.
sight, spectacle, m., vue, f. ; *at — of that*, à cette vue ; *lose — of*, perdre de vue ; *by —*, de vue.
sign, signer.
silent, muet, silencieux ; *be* (*become*) —, se taire.
silk, soie, f.
silver, n., argent, m.
silver, adj., d'argent, en argent.
sin, péché, m.
since, prep., depuis.
since, conj., depuis que, puisque, que ; *it is two months — I saw him*, il y a deux mois que je ne l'ai vu.
sing, chanter.
single, seul.
sir, monsieur, m.
sire, sire, m.
sister, sœur, f.
sit, s'asseoir, être assis ; — *down to dinner*, se mettre à table.
sitting, assis.
situated, situé.
six, six.
sixteen, seize.
sixty, soixante.
skate, patiner ; *go —ing*, (aller) patiner.
skill, habileté, f., adresse, f.
skin, peau, f.
sky, ciel, m.
slander, médire (de).
slave, esclave, m. f.
sleep, dormir ; *go to —*, s'endormir.
sleigh, traîneau, m. ; *go for a —-ride*, (aller) se promener en traîneau, faire une promenade en traîneau.
sleigh-bell, grelot, m.
slip, glisser, s'échapper.
slippery ; *be —*, faire glissant.
slow, lent.
small, petit.
smell, sentir.
smile, sourire.
smoke, n., fumée, f.
smoke, v., fumer.
snatch, arracher.
snow, n., neige, f.
snow, v., neiger.
so, si, ainsi, par conséquent, aussi, c'est pourquoi ; —*many*, —*much*,

tant (de), tellement; *not* —...*as*, ne...pas si...que; *I think* —, je le crois; *I am* —, je le suis; — *as to*, afin de, de manière à; — *that*, afin que, de sorte que; — *well*, si bien, tant; *will you be* — *kind as to*, veuillez, voulez-vous bien.
so-called, soi-disant, prétendu.
soft, mou.
soldier, soldat, m., militaire, m.
solve, résoudre.
some, adj., du, de la, des; quelque(s); *for* — *time*, pendant quelque temps.
some, pron., en, quelqu'un, quelques-uns; — *of it*, en; *I have* —, j'en ai.
somebody, **some one**, quelqu'un, on.
something, quelque chose, m.; — *good*, quelque chose de bon; — *strange and mysterious*, je ne sais quoi de mystérieux.
sometimes, quelquefois.
son, fils, m.
song, chanson, f., chant, m.
soon, bientôt; *as* — *as*, aussitôt que.
sooner, plus tôt.
sore; *have a* — *hand*, avoir mal à la main.
sore, adv., fort.
sorrow, douleur, f., chagrin, m.
sorry, fâché, désolé; *be* — *for*, regretter.
sort, sorte, f., espèce, f.; *what* — *of weather?*, quel temps?
soul, âme, f.
sound, son, m.
soup, potage, m.
South America, Amérique (f.) du Sud.
southern, méridional.
sow, semer.
speak, parler; *French is spoken*, on parle français; *so to* —, pour ainsi dire.
speech, discours, m.
spend, (*time*) passer, (*money*) dépenser.
spirited, fougueux.
splendid, magnifique.
spoil, intr., se gâter.
spoon, cuiller, f.
sport, jeu, m.; *make* — *of*, se moquer de.
spot, endroit, m.
spring, n., printemps, m.; *in* —, au printemps.
spring, v., sourdre.
sprout, germer.
square, place, f.
stable, (*for horses*) écurie, f., (*for cattle*) étable, f.
stair(s), escalier, m.; *up* —*s*, en haut; *down* —*s*, en bas; *go down* —*s*, descendre.
stake, pieu, m.; *be at* —, y aller de.
stand, être debout, se tenir, se trouver.
start, (*with fear, etc.*) tressaillir; (*set out*) partir; — *off*, partir.
starvation, faim, f.
starve, mourir de faim.
statesman, homme d'État.
station (*railway*), gare, f.
statue, statue, f.
stay, rester, s'arrêter; — *in*, rester à la maison, rester chez soi.
steal, voler, dérober.
steam, vapeur, f.
steam-boat, **steamer**, bateau (m.) à vapeur, vapeur, m.
steam-engine, machine (f.) à vapeur.
step, n., pas, m.
step, v., marcher.
sterling, sterling (invar.).
St. Helena, Sainte-Hélène, f.
stick, bâton, m.
stick out, sortir.
still, encore, toujours.
stir, remuer, bouger.
stone, pierre, f.
stoop, se baisser.
stop, s'arrêter.
store, magasin, m.
stork, cigogne, f.
storm, orage, m.
story, histoire, f., conte, m.

stove, poêle, m.
straight, droit.
strange, étrange.
stratagem, stratagème, m.
straw, paille, f. ; *a — hat*, un chapeau de paille.
street, rue, f. ; *from one — to another*, de rue en rue.
street-cars, tramway, m.
strength, force, f.
striking part, sonnerie, f.
strip, dépouiller.
stroke, coup, m.
strong, fort.
struggle, n., lutte, f.
struggle, v., lutter.
study, n., étude, f.
study, v., étudier, apprendre.
stupid, sot.
style, style, m., manière, f. ; *in (the) French —*, à la française.
subdue, subjuguer.
subject, sujet, m.
submit, se soumettre.
succeed, succéder à ; réussir.
success, succès, m.
such, tel ; — *a*, un tel ; — *a foolish man*, un homme si bête.
suffer, souffrir, subir.
suffice, suffire.
sufficient, suffisant ; *be —*, suffire.
sugar, sucre, m.
suit, n., vêtement (m.) complet.
suit, v., convenir.
sum, somme, f.
summer, été, m. ; *in —*, en été.
sun, soleil, m. ; *the — is shining*, il fait du soleil.
Sunday, dimanche, m.
sunset, coucher (m.) du soleil.
superfluous, superflu, de trop.
support, soutenir.
sure, sûr.
surgeon, médecin, m., chirurgien, m.
surprise, surprendre.
surprised, surpris, étonné.
suspect, soupçonner, se douter.
swallow, hirondelle, f.
swear, jurer.
Swedish, suédois.
sweet, doux ; *smell —*, sentir bon.
swim, nager.
Swiss, suisse.
Switzerland, Suisse, f.
sword, épée, f.

T.

table, table, f.
tail, queue, f.
tailor, tailleur, m.
take, prendre, porter, emporter, mener, conduire ; — *after*, tenir de ; — *a walk*, (aller) se promener, faire une promenade ; — *up the collection*, faire la quête ; — *place*, avoir lieu ; — *advantage of*, abuser de ; — *care of*, avoir soin de ; — *interest in*, s'intéresser à, s'occuper de ; — *away*, ôter, emporter ; — *care not to*, prendre garde de ; — *a journey*, faire un voyage ; — *off*, ôter ; — *up*, monter.
talk, parler.
tall, grand, haut.
Tasso, Tasse.
taste, goût, m.
tea, thé, m.
teach, enseigner, apprendre.
teacher, professeur, m., maître, m.
tea-pot, théière, f.
tear, n., larme, f.
tear, v., déchirer.
Te Deum, Te Deum, m.
tell, raconter, dire, annoncer ; — (*understand*) comprendre, savoir.
tempt, tenter.
ten, dix.
terrify, épouvanter.
text, texte, m.
than, que, de (before numerals).
thank, remercier ; (*no*) *I — you*, je vous remercie.
thanks, remercîments, m. ; (*no*) —, merci.
that, dem. adj., ce, cet, cette ; ce . . . -là.
that, dem. pron. ce, cela, celui ; *all —*, tout cela ; — *is*, voilà, voilà qui, c'est, celui-là est ; *is — the house ?*, est-ce là la maison ?

that, rel. pron. qui, que, lequel; *all* —, tout ce qui (que).
that, conj., que.
the, le, la, les; — *richer one is*, plus on est riche; — *less one has of them*, moins on en a.
theatre, théâtre, m.
their, adj., leur, leurs.
theirs, pron., le leur.
them, les, leur, eux, elles; *of* —, d'eux, en; *to* —, à eux, leur, y.
themselves, se, eux, eux-mêmes.
then, alors, ensuite, puis.
there, là, y; — *is* (*are*), voilà, il y a; — *it is*, le (la) voilà; — *will be rain*, il pleuvra; — *is a knock*, on frappe; — *happens*, il arrive; *if* — *ever was*, s'il en fut jamais; — *he comes!*, le voilà qui vient!
thereupon, là-dessus.
these, adj., ces; ces . . . -ci.
these, pron., ceux, ceux-ci; — *are*, ce sont; — *books of yours*, vos livres que voici.
they, ils, elles, on, ce; *there* — *are*, les voilà; *it is* —, ce sont eux.
thief, voleur, m.
thine, le tien.
thing, chose, f., affaire, f.; *this good* —, cela de bon.
think, penser, croire, songer; *what are you* —*ing of* (*about*)?, à quoi pensez-vous?; *one would* —, on croirait; *what I* — *of him*, son fait.
third, troisième, trois.
thirsty; *be* —, avoir soif, f.; *be very* —, avoir bien soif, mourir de soif.
thirteen, treize.
thirty, trente.
this, adj., ce, cet, cette; ce . . . -ci.
this, pron., ce, ceci, celui(-ci); — *one*, celui-ci; — *book of mine*, mon livre que voici.
thither, là.
those, adj., ces, ces . . . -là.
those, pron., ceux(-là); *all* —, tous ceux; — *who*, ceux qui; — *are*, voilà.
thou, tu, toi.
though, bien que, quoique.
thought, pensée, f.
thoughtless, étourdi.
thousand, mille, mil.
threaten, menacer.
three, trois.
thresh, battre.
throne, trône, m.
through, par, à travers, au travers de.
throw, jeter.
Thursday, jeudi, m.
thus, ainsi.
thy, ton, ta, tes.
ticket, billet, m.
till, prep., jusqu'à, avant.
till, conj., jusqu'à ce que, que.
time, temps, m., fois, f., époque, f., moment, m.; *some* —, quelque temps; *in the* — *of*, sous; *at that* —, dans ce temps-là, à cette époque, à ce moment; *a long* —, longtemps; *next* —, la prochaine fois; *what* — *is it?*, quelle heure est-il?; *many a* —, bien des fois; *have* — *to*, avoir le temps de; *I have not* —, je n'ai pas le temps; *be* — *to*, être temps de (que); *most of the* —, la plupart du temps; *at a* — *when*, à une époque où; *cost three* —*s as much*, coûter trois fois plus cher; *have a good* —, s'amuser bien; *every* — *that*, toutes les fois que, chaque fois que; *this long* —, depuis si longtemps.
tire, fatiguer, ennuyer; *be* (*get*) *tired* (*of being*), s'ennuyer.
tired, fatigué, ennuyé.
tiresome, ennuyeux.
to, à, chez, de, pour, en, jusqu'à, envers; *at five minutes* — *three*, à trois heures moins cinq.
to-day, aujourd'hui.
toe, orteil, m., doigt, m.; *step on one's* —*s*, vous marcher sur le pied.

together, ensemble.
toilet, toilette, f.
to-morrow, demain ; *day after* —, après demain.
too, aussi ; trop ; — *much*, — *many*, trop.
tooth, dent, f.
toothache, mal (m.) aux dents.
tooth-pick, cure-dent, m.
top, haut, m.
touch, toucher (à).
tour, tour, m.
towards, vers, envers.
tower, tour, f.
town, ville, f. ; *in* —, *down* —, en ville ; *to* —, à la ville.
toy, jouet, m.
trace, tracer.
trade, changer.
train, train, m.
translate, traduire.
travel, n., voyage, m.
travel, v., voyager ; — *over*, parcourir ; *travelling companion*, compagnon (m.) de voyage.
traveller, voyageur, m.
tread under foot, fouler aux pieds.
treasure, trésor, m.
treat, traiter.
treatment, traitement, m.
treaty, traité, m.
tree, arbre, m.
tremble, trembler.
trifling, insignifiant.
trinket, babiole, f.
troops, troupes, f. pl.
trouble, peine, f.
troupe, troupe, f.
true, vrai, fidèle.
trunk, malle, f.
trust, n., confiance, f.
trust, v., avoir confiance en, se fier à.
truth, vérité, f.
try, tâcher ; — *and save*, tâcher de conserver.
try on, essayer.
Tuesday, mardi, m.
tulip, tulipe, f.
turn, n., tour, m. ; *in* —, tour à tour.
turn, v., tourner ; — *round*, se retourner ; — *out of*, chasser de ; — *out of doors*, mettre à la porte.
twelve, douze ; — (*o'clock*), midi, m., minuit, m.
twenty, vingt.
twenty-five, vingt-cinq.
twice, deux fois.
two, deux.

U.

uncle, oncle, m.
under, sous, au-dessous de.
undergo, subir.
understand, comprendre ; *I can — nothing of it*, je n'y comprends rien.
undertake, entreprendre.
unfortunate, malheureux.
unhappy, malheureux.
United Kingdom, Royaume-Uni, m.
United States, États-Unis, m. ; *in the* —, aux États-Unis.
unknown, inconnu.
unless, à moins que . . . ne.
until, jusqu'à ce que, que.
up, en haut ; *to be* —, être levé ; *get* —, se lever, *come* —, monter ; — *to*, jusqu'à.
upholsterer, tapissier, m.
upon, sur.
upright, droit.
up stairs, en haut.
us, nous.
use, n., usage, m. ; *make — of*, se servir de, employer ; *be of some* —, être de quelque utilité ; *have — for*, avoir besoin de.
use, v., se servir de, employer.
used, accoutumé ; *be — to*, avoir coutume de ; — *to* is often expressed by the imperfect indicative.
useful, utile.
useless, inutile ; *be* —, ne valoir rien ; *it is — for you to say so*, vous avez beau dire.
usual, usuel, accoutumé, ordinaire.
usually, ordinairement.
utter, proférer, articuler.

V.

vain, vain ; *in* —, en vain.
valuable, précieux.
value, valeur, f., ; *be of* —, valoir.
vast, vaste.
vegetable, légume, m.
verbal, verbal.
verse, vers, m., verset, m.
very, très, bien, fort, beaucoup ; — *much*, beaucoup, bien, très ; *that — evening*, le soir même.
vest, gilet, m.
vice, vice, m.
Victoria, Victoria.
victory, victoire, f.
view, vue, f.
vigour, vigueur, f.
village, village, m.
violent, violent.
violin, violon, m.
virtue, vertu, f.
virtuous, vertueux.
visible, visible.
visit, visiter, faire (une) visite à, rendre visite à.
voice, voix, f.
volley, volée, f.
volume, volume, m., tome, m.

W.

wag, remuer.
wages, gages, m. pl.
wait, wait for, attendre.
wake, waken, éveiller, réveiller, se réveiller.
Wales, le pays de Galles.
walk, n., promenade, f. ; *go for a* —, *take a* —, (aller) se promener ; faire une promenade.
walk, v., marcher, se promener ; — *in*, entrer.
walking, marcher, m. ; *be good* —, faire beau (bon) marcher.
walnut, noix, f.
walnut-tree, noyer, m.
wander, s'égarer, s'écarter.
want, avoir besoin, vouloir, désirer, demander, manquer (de) ; *you are wanted*, on vous demande.
warm, adj., chaud, chaleureux ; *be* — (*of living beings*), avoir chaud ; *be* — (*of weather*), faire chaud.
warm, v., chauffer.
wash, laver.
watch, n., montre, f.
watch, v., suivre des yeux, veiller.
water, n., eau, f.
water, v., abreuver ; *make his mouth* —, lui faire venir l'eau à la bouche.
wave, vague, f.
way, route, f., chemin, m. ; manière, f., moyen, m. ; *on the* —, en route, chemin faisant ; *by the* —, à propos ; *a long — off*, bien loin ; *lose one's* —, s'égarer ; *in that* —, de cette manière-là ; *in such a* —, de telle sorte ; *have one's* —, faire à sa tête ; *which* —, *the* —, par où.
we, nous, on.
weak, faible.
weakness, faiblesse, f.
wear, porter.
weather, temps, m. ; *what kind of — is it ?*, quel temps fait-il ? ; *it is fine* —, il fait beau (temps) ; *the — is warm*, il fait chaud.
Wednesday, mercredi, m.
week, semaine, f., huit jours, m., pl. ; *a — from to-day*, d'aujourd'hui en huit ; *two—s from to-day*, d'aujourd'hui en quinze ; *from — to* —, de semaine en semaine.
weep, pleurer.
weigh, peser.
welcome, accueillir ; *be* —, être le bienvenu.
well, n., puits, m.
well, adv., bien, eh bien, très ; *so* —, si bien ; *very* —, très bien, eh bien ; *be — off*, avoir de quoi vivre, être à son aise ; *be* —, se porter bien ; *do* —, faire le bien ; *as — as*, aussi bien que.
well-bred, bien élevé.
well-known, bien connu.
were, past tense of **be** ; *if you — to go there*, si vous y alliez ; *if*

he — to say, s'il disait ; — *it only*, ne fût-ce que.
west, ouest, m.
what, adj., quel ; — *o'clock is it ?*, quelle heure est-il ?
what, pron., que, quoi, ce qui, ce que, ce à quoi, ce dont, qu'est-ce que ?, qu'est-ce qui ?, qu'est-ce que c'est que ?, ce que c'est que ; *by — he says*, à ce qu'il dit ; *not to know — to do*, ne savoir que faire ; — *is that to him ?*, qu'est-ce que cela lui fait ?
whatever, tout ce qui (que), quoi que, quel que, qui que, quelconque.
wheat, blé, m. ; —*field*, champ (m.) de blé.
when, quand, lorsque, que, à quelle heure ; *hardly* . . . —, à peine. . .que ; — *you will*, quand vous voudrez.
whenever, quand, lorsque, toutes les fois que.
where, où ; *from* —, d'où.
whether, si, que, soit que ; — . . . *or*, (soit) que . . . ou (que).
which, adj., quel.
which, pron., qui, que, lequel ; *of* —, dont, duquel ; *at* —, où, auquel ; *in* —, où, dans lequel ; *from* —, dont, duquel.
while, prep., en.
while, **whilst**, conj., pendant que, tandis que, tant que.
while ; *a long* —, longtemps.
whistle, n., sifflet, m.
whistle, v., siffler.
white, blanc.
who, qui, quel, lequel.
whoever, qui que, qui que ce soit, quiconque.
whole, tout ; *the — evening*, toute la soirée ; *the — year*, toute l'année.
whom, qui, que, lequel ; *of* —, dont, de qui, duquel.
whose, à qui, de qui, dont, duquel ; *at — house*, chez qui.
why, pourquoi.
wicked, méchant.
wide, large ; — *open*, grand(e) ouvert(e).
widow, veuve, f.
wife, femme, f., épouse, f.
will, vouloir ; *he — come*, il viendra ; — *you come ?*, voulez-vous venir ? — *you kindly ?*, voulez-vous bien ?
William, Guillaume.
willing ; *be* —, vouloir.
willingly, volontiers.
win, remporter, gagner.
wind, n., vent, m.
wind, v., remonter.
window, fenêtre, f. ; *out of the* —, par la fenêtre.
windy ; *be* —, faire du vent.
wine, vin, m.
wing, aile, f.
winter, hiver, m.
wipe, essuyer.
wisdom, sagesse, f.
wise, sage.
wish, désirer, vouloir ; *as you* —, comme vous voudrez ; *when(ever) you* —, quand vous voudrez ; *if you* —, si vous voulez ; *I — you were here*, je voudrais que vous fussiez ici.
with, avec, chez, à, de, envers, par ; *go* (*be*) —, accompagner ; *the man — the big nose*, l'homme au gros nez.
withdraw, se retirer.
within, dans, au bout de.
without, prep., sans ; — . . . *and* (*or*), sans . . . ni ; *do* —, se passer de.
without, conj., sans que (with subj.).
woman, femme, f.
wonder, s'étonner, se demander.
wont ; *be* —, avoir coutume de.
wood(s), bois, m.
wood-chopper, **woodman**, bûcheron, m.
word, mot, m., parole, f. ; *send* —, faire savoir.
work, n., travail, m., ouvrage, m., œuvre, m. f.
work, v., travailler.

workman, ouvrier, m.
world, monde, m.
worse, plus mauvais, pire, pis, plus malade; *which is* —, qui pis est.
worth; *be* —, valoir; *feel his own* —, sentir ce qu'il vaut; — *the trouble* (*while*), valoir la peine.
worthy, digne, brave.
would, past tense of **will**; *if you were here you* — *do it*, si vous étiez ici vous le feriez; *he* — *not do it*, il ne voulait pas le faire; — *to God!*, plût à Dieu!; — *you be kind enough to*, veuillez, voulez-vous bien, voudriez-vous bien; *I* — *as soon...as*, j'aimerais autant...que de; **would** is also often expressed by the impf. indic.
would-be, soi-disant, prétendu.
wound, n., blessure, f., plaie, f.
wound, v., blesser.
wreath, couronne, f.
wrecked; *be* —, faire naufrage.
wretch, misérable.
write, écrire; — *to each other*, s'écrire.
wrong, mal, m.; *be* (*in the*) —, avoir tort; *do* —, faire le mal; *take the* — *road*, se tromper de chemin.
wrong-doing, mal faire, m.

Y.

yard, cour, f.; (*measure*) mètre, m.
year, année, f., an, m.; *last* —, l'année dernière, l'année passée; *in the* — *1860*, l'an 1860; *20 francs a* —, 20 francs par an.
yes, oui, si; — *you have*, si, si.
yesterday, hier.
yet, encore, cependant; déja; *not* —, pas encore.
yield, céder.
yonder, là-bas; *over* —, là-bas.
you, vous, tu, te, toi.
young, jeune.
your, votre, vos, ton, ta, tes.
yours, le vôtre, le tien; à vous, à toi.
yourself, vous, te, toi, vous-même, toi-même.
youth, jeunesse, f.

INDEX.

Q.

R.

S.

T.

APPENDIX.

The following are the deviations permitted by the decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction referred to in the note opposite page 1 of this volume:

§ 29. The hyphen may be omitted.
§ 232, 2. Verb may agree with plur. complement of **de.**
§ 232, 2, *c*. **Plus d'un,** when followed by a plur. complement, may have verb in sing. or plur.
§ 232, 3. Either **est** *or* **sont** may be used before a plur. subst. or a plur. pron. in 3rd pers.
§ 233, *b*, *c*, *e*, *j*. Verb may be either sing. or plur. in such cases.
§ 236, 1. The hyphen may be omitted.
§ 289, *a*, *b*. Agreement optional in either position.
§ 292, 4 and 4, *a*. Past part. may, in all such cases, be invariable.
§ 304, 1, and 3, *a*. **Enfant** and **automne,** masc. *or* fem.
§ 304, 3, *b*. *c*. **Amour** and **orgue** masc. in sing., and masc. *or* fem. in plur.
§ 304, 3, *d*. **Hymne,** masc. *or* fem. in all senses.
§ 304, 3, *g*, *j*. Any adj. agreeing with **gens** or **orge** may be fem.
§ 304, 3, *f*. **Pâques** may be fem., either as a date or as a church festival.
§ 310. Such nouns, if fully naturalized, may have plur. in **-s,** *e.g.*, **déficits, exéats.**
§ 311. All compound nouns may be written without hyphen.
§ 312. Any proper noun preceded by a plur. art. may take the plur. sign.
§ 324, 1. It is permissible to use **du, de la, des,** before adj. + noun.
§ 332, 2. A mistake in this usage is not to be counted an error.
§ 341, 1, *b*. Adj. may be masc. plur., no matter which noun is nearest.
§ 342. Phrases like **l'histoire ancienne et la moderne** may omit the second art.
§ 343, 1, *a*. **Fort** may agree like an adj.
§ 343, 2. Compound adjs., *e.g.*, **nouveau-né, court-vêtu,** etc., may be written as one word, and may form fem. and plur. by the general rule.
§ 343, 4, *a*, *b*. **Nu, demi, feu,** may agree when preceding their subst.
§ 343, 4, *a*. **Franc,** agreement optional when preceding.
§ 343, 4, *c*. Adj. may agree either with the subst. fem. or with **air.**
§ 348. The def. art. may agree.
§ 376, 6. The object possessed may be either sing. or plur.
§ 405, 2, *a*, *c*. Either **son** or **leur** may be used indifferently.
§ 406, 1, *b*. The plur. of **aucun** may be used.
§ 406, 3 (2). Hyphen may be omitted.
§ 419, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. **Ne** may be omitted in all such cases.
§ 421, obs. 1. The hyphen may be omitted.
§ 421, *b*. **Vingt** and **cent** may take **-s** even before another numeral.
§ 421, *c*. **Mille** *or* **mil** may be used.